

P.O. Angl.
153 m

Hearne

<36619766420013

<36619766420013

S

Bayer. Staatsbibliothek

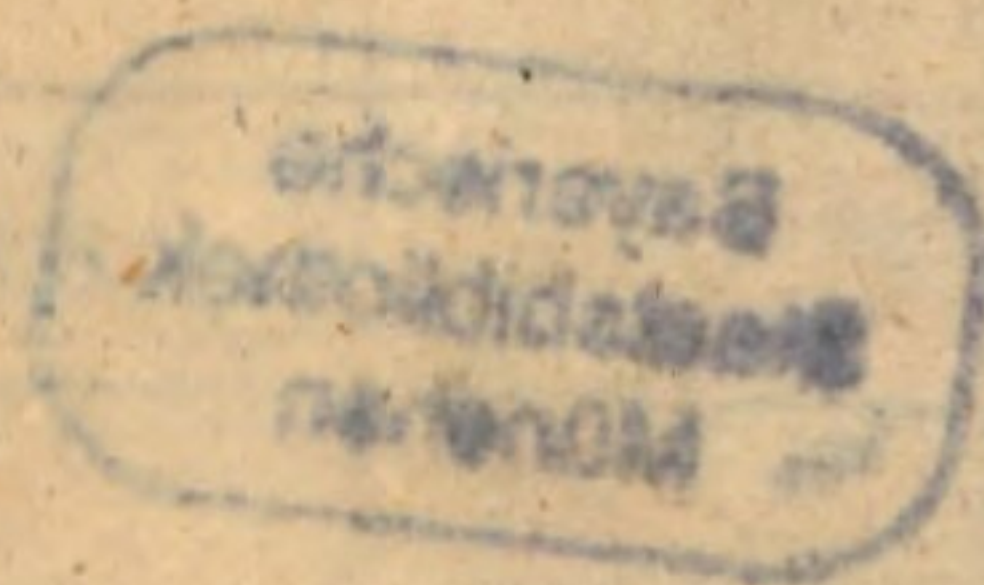
THE
WORKS
OF

Thomas Hearne, M. A.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

VOL. I.

CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF
ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.



Printed and Sold by
Samuel Bagster, Strand.

173. 3.

THE
WORKS
OF

THOMAS BEAUNE, D.D.

PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BAGSTER, IN THE STRAND. 1810.

VOL. I.

CONTAINING THE FIRST VOLUME OF

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER'S CHRONICLE.

Bayerische
Staatsbibliothek
München

Mercier and Chervet, Printers,
Bartholomew Close, London.

**ROBERT
OF
GLOUCESTER'S
CHRONICLE.**

Transcrib'd, and now first publish'd,
from a MS. in the
HARLEYAN LIBRARY
By **THOMAS HEARNE, M.A.**

To which is added,
Besides a Glossary and other Improve-
ments, a Continuation (by the Author
himself) of this Chronicle from a MS.
in the **COTTONIAN Library.**

In two Volumes.

OXFORD,
Printed at the **THEATER,**
M. DCC. XXIV.

ROBERT
OF
GLOUCESTER'S
Marcus Zuerius Boxhornius *ad*
initium Orationis Dominicæ,

antiquissima Alemanorum lingua
à se (una cum aliis id genus) edi-
tæ, Lugduni Batavorum A. D.
CICICCL. 12°.

Ex dialecto vide rerum humana-
rum inconstantiam, & collige
antiquitatem, eamque vene-
rare.

In two Volumes.
OXFORD,

Printed at the THEATER,

M. DCC. XXIV.



THE CONTENTS.

- I. **THE** Publisher's Preface. pag. v.
- II. Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, from a MS. in the HARLEYAN Library; with a Continuation of the same (by the Author himself) transcrib'd from a MS. in the COTTONIAN Library, by the Care and at the Expenses of the learned Dr. RICHARD MEAD. 1, 465
- III. *De mirabilibus Britanniae*, out of an old folio MS. in Vellam, given me by Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Esq. 572
- IV. The Foundation of the Abbey of Gloucester, and the change of the same before the Suppression thereof in the Reign of King Henry the Eighth. By William Malverne, Abbat of that Monastery. 584
- V. A Petegreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelande, lynnyally descendyng, vn to King Henry the vi. Out of the MS. of Robert of Gloucester, that belongs to the Heralds Office. 585

THE CONTENTS.

- VI. A Letter to Mr. Bagford, containing some Remarks upon Geffry Chaucer and his Writings. 596
- VII. The Preface of Mr. John Stowe to one Edition of his Summary (that comes to the Year 1573.) by which my Conjecture about Mr. Murray's Fragments (that I have printed at the End of Heming's Chartulary) is confirm'd. 607
- VIII. Some Remarks, in a late, but unknown, hand, at the Beginning of the Cottonian MS. of Robert of Gloucester, relating to the age of the Author, and containing two Passages from a MS. Copy of this Historian, that was formerly in the hands of the learned Mr. Thomas Allen. 609
- IX. Glossary. 612
- X. Index. 744



THE PUBLISHER'S P R E F A C E.

THE Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester. §. I. The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. **Borstall** the same with the Saxon **Burgtall**. **Brill** an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but **Burgh Hill** or **Burgh on the Hill**. §. II. Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient *Saxtngia* to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle. §. III. Ferdinando Pulton, the great Lawyer,

THE PUBLISHER'S

*yer, a Cambridge, and not an Oxford, Writer. §. iv. Something peculiar in the Copy of the Nuremberg Chronicle in Trinity College Library at Cambridge, that I have not yet met with in any other. The first, and not the second, Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle, the true genuine Work of the Author. §. v. Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the Business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon Times the Princes, and other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wiltshire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly. §. vi. Robert of Gloucester's Account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all it's Circumstances. §. vii. Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet he seems to have had it from second hand. The **Harewell**, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with **Walton Well**. **Walton Well** the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which St. Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called **Holywell**. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them. §. viii. Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to truth in his
Rhythms*

PREFACE.

VII

Rhythms, answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains. §. ix. He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleyan MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Heralds Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI. §. x. Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the end of his MS. which is here likewise printed. §. xi. But these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester, as are likewise those in this MS. that relate to K. Richard I. §. xii. The Author of which Rhythms about Richard I. seems to have been Robert of Brunne. §. xiii. This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurs in Stowe. §. xiv. Instead of the anonymous fabulous Rhythms upon Richard I. I have inserted the genuine ones of Robert of Gloucester, in a Continuation of the Harleyan MS. from the Cottonian Library. §. xv. The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS. §. xvi. Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign.

Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished. §. xvii. Which, however, is pass'd over by one, who endeavour'd to settle his Age from Proofs extracted from his Chronicle. §. xviii. Our Author rightly observes the vast disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edward the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS. §. xix. Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands. §. xx. Mr. Selden and Mr. Wood had a right notion of the Age of our Author, who ought to be reckon'd among the Oxford Writers. §. xxi. Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West side of Stockwell Street. §. xxii. The strange mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester. §. xxiii. Robert of Brunne's true Sirname was Manning. But the true Sirname of Robert of Gloucester does not occur. §. xxiv. The Name of Robert Moille inserted at random, as it seems, in the MS. of the Heralds Office. That MS. concludes with some Verses that are not in Caxton. §. xxv. This Work is a great Curiosity. The Reproach in neglecting the black Letter. §. xxvi.

§. I.



It cannot but be of great Disservice to any branch of Learning, when such Persons, as are fam'd for their skill in it, take all opportunities of depretiating those Books, that are the most proper Helps for obtaining a Knowledge in it. Among such I may, therefore, deservedly reckon those, that decry, and speak against, Robert of Gloucester's Chronicle, as if the Fragments, that have been occasionally published of him by some of our greatest Antiquaries, were sufficient satisfaction to any one, that is curious. *We may probably* (saith ¹ the Compiler of the English Historical Library) *bring in also Robert of Gloucester, for another of his* [Mat. Paris's] *Contemporaries, since Archbishop* ² *Usher and* ³ *Mr. Camden are both positive, that he liv'd some Time in the Reign of King Henry the Third. His Rhyming Chronicle is in* ⁴ *English; and the Reader may have a Taste of it, (as much, it may be, as ever he'll desire) either from* ⁵ *Mr. Selden, or* ⁶ *Mr. Wood. But I know several curious Persons, that are so far from be-*

The Disservice to any branch of Learning, when Persons of skill depretiate the most proper Books for obtaining a Knowledge in it. The Bodleian MS. does not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester.

¹ Ed. fol. p. 62. ² Hist. Eccles. Brit. p. 29. ³ *Re-* mains, p. m. 8. ⁴ Bibl. Cott. Caligula A. 11. ⁵ *Ti-* tles of Hon. p. 535. ⁶ Hist. & Antiq. Oxon. Par. I. p. 112.
ing

ing satiated with the published Fragments, that the more they have read them, the more earnestly they have desired and wish'd to see the whole Work. And tho' I ought not to be reckon'd among such curious Persons, yet I can testify thus much for my self, that, when I first saw a MS. of this Author (which was when I was even a young Undergraduate) in the Bodleian Library, being one of the first MSS. I ever perus'd there, I was wonderfully delighted with it, and could not but often signify, that I was not at all pleas'd with those, that insinuated, that there was enough of him already published to gratify any curious Reader. Nor can I at all think, that my late ingenious and learned Friend Robert Keck, Esq. (who was formerly Gentleman-Commoner of University College, and died¹ in the Year 1719.) repented the Charges he had been at, in having the said Bodleian MS. transcrib'd, for any other reason, than because he found, that it was a very imperfect MS. and did not contain the genuine Robert of Gloucester, which he might have met with in the Cottonian Library, as he was, without doubt, afterwards fully appriz'd of by his Friends.

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 84. p. 7, 8.

§. II. Indeed Mr. Keck was a young Gentleman extremely inquisitive after Books in old English, and the nearer they were to the Conquest, so much the better pleased he was with them. For which reason 'tis no wonder, that he should several times express a great Dissatisfaction, when he understood, that, after all his Charges, he had not got either an intire, or an authentick Robert of Gloucester. He had a design either of publishing this old Historian himself, or, at least, of assisting some body else in the publication of him ; which could not but, therefore, make him the more concern'd, that his Copy was not of better Authority. He knew perfectly well, that such old English Books are of wonderful use in acquiring a knowledge in the Saxon Tongue, which continued to be spoke (tho' with great Alterations) in Robert of Gloucester's time¹, and many Years after, and it began to be most of all disus'd, when Geffry Chaucer undertook to refine (as they termed it) the Language. But now of all Books of this kind, I know none hardly so valuable as this Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, and upon that account, were there no other reason, it is very proper to be read over and considered by all such as are willing to be acquaint-

The Curiosity of Mr. Keck. The great use of Robert of Gloucester in the Study of the old Saxon Tongue. His value upon other accounts. Worstall the same with the Saxon Bupz-rtall. Briff an ancient Burgh, and is nothing else but Burgh hill or Burgq on the Hill.

¹ See page 364. of this Chron.

ed with the old Saxon Tongue, a Language which even the vulgar are very fond of talking of, though they are perfectly ignorant of it; in so much that I have known some of the Country Common People shew an unusual Pleasure, when they have seen so much as the old Saxon Letters. And 'tis with great Attention that they will listen to the Derivation of Places from the Saxon Tongue. The People of **Borfall** in Buckinghamshire are mightily pleas'd, when any one tells them, that **Borfall** is the same with the Saxon **Burȝ-fall**, which signifies *a Seat on the side of an Hill*, which exactly answer to this Place. "**Burȝ-fall**." (saith Mr. Somner¹) "*clivus. a little hill whereon any thing is builded: a seat on the side or pitch of an hill; as that at Whitstable in Kent called Borstall.*" And this account of **Burȝ-fall** pleaseth them the better, when they hear, that these Words in the 33^d. verse of the viiith. Chapter of St. Luke, *Then went the devils out of the man, and entred into the swine: and the herd ran violently down a steep place into the lake, and were choak'd,* are thus read in that which is called Wickliff's Translation², & so *þe deuellis wenten out fro þe man, & entride in to þe swyn, & wiþ a birre þe flok wente heedlyng in to þe pool, & was drenchid.* The Expression *with a birre* here is the

¹ Saxon Dict. voc. **Burȝ-fall**. | penes me. Vide infra in Glossario, p. 728.
² MS. opt. membran.

same with the Vulgar Latin *impetu*, and the Saxon *pære*, (whence our common Word *Race*) and answers very well to any Place situated at the side of an Hill. Upon hearing this Derivation of Borstall, the Inhabitants look upon the story of it's being called so from a wild Boar kill'd by Nigellus in the Forest of Bernwood (on the Edge of which Borstall is placed) to be as weak, as the ascribing the Song of the Boar's Head by some to a wild Boar, that was kill'd, I know not when, by a Tabarder in Shottover Wood, whereas, on the contrary, the Song was so far formerly from being sung only in one Place, that it was a Christmass Carol all over England, the Boar's Head being an ancient Dish, and much in vogue at that Season, being much admired by even the greatest Princes, in so much that it was brought up by K. Henry I. with Trumpets before his Son, when his said Son was crown'd. But tho' the Inhabitants of Borstall are much pleased to hear, that Borstall is the same with the Saxon *Burġ-stall*, yet their Neighbours, the Inhabitants of *Brill*, are as much displeas'd with those, that detract from the Antiquity of *Brill*, and will not allow it to be an ancient Burgh, and to be the same as *Burgh-hill* or *Burgh on the Hill*, which nevertheless is plain enough to any one that considers either the Situation of the Place, or the

¹ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubrigensis, p. 744.

Coyns that have been found there and thereabouts, some of which I have seen my self. Mr. Camden had well weigh'd this matter, and therefore he very clearly established this Notion of it's being an old Burgh. *Hæc tota [vallis] (saith he ¹) fere campestris est, solo item argillaceo, tenaci, & fecundo, pabulosis pratis innumeros ovium greges pascit, quarum mollia, & tenuissima vellera ab Asiaticis usque gentibus expetuntur. Sed sylvis nuda nisi ad Occiduum latus, ubi præter alias Bernewood, circa quam anno à Christo nato DCCCC-XIIII. Danorum furor impotentiùs sævit, tumque forte concidit Burgus ille antiquus, ut Romani nummi inventi testantur, qui postea regia erat villa Edwardi Confessoris. Nunc autem pagus est rusticus, & pro Buri-hill, Brill contractiùs appellant. Thus this great Man, whose words are of better Authority with the Inhabitants and others, than those of any more illiterate and injudicious Writers, especially such as derive the Name from Bryers and Thorns, (from which they also derive Bruern Abbey, when, on the contrary, it was so denominated from the Bruern, Bourn, Bupn or Bypna, there) an Etymology that is more weak, than that of the very learned Dr. Skinner, who thinks ² it was so called from Burrs growing at the Place. Brill, in Com. Bucks (so he writes) contr. à Burr-hill, sc. à Lappis, quæ ibi frequentes crescunt. It's having been a Royal*

¹ Brit. p. 279. Ed. fol. ² Etymol. Dict.

Vill of Edward the Confessor had been sufficient to have stil'd it a Burgh, were there nothing else to rely on. Such Vills in those times were commonly call'd **Burghs**. Whence 'tis, that *κώμαι* in St. Luke ¹ is translated *buphga* in the Saxon, *castella* in the vulgar Latin, and **castels** in that which is termed Wickliff's Version. As there was, doubtless, a Castle or Fortification at Brill, so the Place had a greater right than otherwise to the Title of a *Burgh*. And as here was also a Market, so, withall, it might have been call'd *ῥτηατε*, such as are mentioned in St. Luke, where ² for *greetings in the Markets* the Saxon hath *gpetinga* on *ῥτηαtum*, and Wickliff **salutaciouns in chepyng**. Mr. Somner, in his Saxon Dictionary, hath noted, that *ῥτηατε* signifieth sometimes a **market-place**, having an eye, I suppose, partly upon what occurs in the Saxon Version of the New Testament, and partly upon what he had met with in other old Saxon Monuments. I do not know but **Streath** in Berks was so call'd, not only because the Ikenild ³ street or way pass'd by or through that Place, but as it was formerly a Market Town. Now since the Chronicle, I have here published, is so very usefull for understanding Saxon, what but Prejudice, or some other bad Quality, could induce any one of skill in this Tongue to speak against, and endeavour to

¹ IX. 6. ² IX. 43. ³ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 737.

suppress Robert of Gloucester, an Author of great Worth, even upon other Accounts, that is, for his own Probity and Honesty, and for the History he hath given us, extracted from the best Memoirs he could come at?

Robert of Gloucester's following Geffry of Monmouth in the first Part of his Work, no good Objection against his History. The nature of the ancient *Barngia* to be gathered from an old Roll in the Hands of Mr. Graves. The old use of Horns instead of Cups. Several remarkable Particulars relating to some of our old English Bibles. The Curiosity of the Nuremberg Chronicle.

§. III. I am aware, that it will be objected, that the beginning of this Book is, for the most part, taken from Geffry of Monmouth. But this Objection makes rather for the Reputation, than the Disgrace, of this Historian, and it may be as well alledg'd against our other Historians, that have written since Geffry's time. Geffry was an Author so much in vogue, for the most early Affairs of our British Princes, that he was constantly transcrib'd, and put into most Libraries, which is the reason why there are so many MSS. of him extant. By comparing Robert of Gloucester with him, the Reader will soon perceive, what a faithfull Historian Robert was, when he took care to be very exact in what he extracted from him. I have subjoyn'd some Passages here and there at the Bottom of the Page from Geffry, by way of Illustration, but I took them not from a printed Latin Copy (having none by me) but from a good, tho' (at the End) imperfect MS. that was given me by my Friend, that curious Antiquary, Richard Graves, of Mickleton in Glou-

Gloucestershire, Esq. from whom, much about the same time, I had borrowed the old French Roll, from which I have printed two Passages in the following Work; which Roll is so much the greater Curiosity, as it represents the Figures of our Kings and Princes from the time of Athelstan, where it begins, to the time of Edward the I. with whom it ends. For tho' the Pictures are but rude, yet there are many things in them, that will be of use to curious Men, as even our Saxon Coyns are, notwithstanding the Barbarousness of them. The very first Picture exhibits to us the form of the ancient βακτηρίαι, or βασιλικαὶ "Ραβδοι, which, however, we do not find, that I know of, even in Athelstan's Coyns. We ought not, therefore, to reject old Pictures of this Kind upon account of their Rudeness. I never look'd upon the Bodleian Picture as the less, but rather the greater, Curiosity, that makes Cain slay his brother Abel with a Sithe, tho' in the strange odd MS. Almanack or Conjuring Book, given me by the late Bishop of Ely, Dr. William Fleetwood, (written, as it seems, in the time of Edward III.) he is delineated as killing him with the Jaw Bone of an Ass. 'Tis with pleasure likewise that I have often look'd over the English Bible, that was printed *anno* 1541. (in the 33^d. Year of K. Hen. VIII.) being about five Years after the death of William Tyndale,

in which there are several odd wooden Cutts, that represent the Habits in use in Hen. the Eighth's time. The Picture of the Pit, into which they cast Joseph, is made to be a sort of Stone Fountain. In the Picture of Ahasuerus's Feast is a Horn for a Cup, agreeable to the old way of drinking at great Feasts. Bacchus used to quaff and carowse in an Horn. Hence Nonnus, *Καὶ κέρας ἄγκυλον ἔειχε βόο, δέπας.* *He had an Horn crooked, for a Cup; which was, saith the Scholiast of Nicander, an ancient Custom. Οἱ ἀρχαῖοι κέρασιν ἐχρῶντο ἐν τῇ πόσει, ἀντὶ ποτηρίων. ὁ δὲν καὶ τὸ κέρασαι εἰρηται.* *The ancients in their Carowsings, used Horns, instead of Cups: and thence, to pour out, or to mingle Wine, is called cerasai, of ceras an horn.*

Ὅδ' ἄρα φωνήσασα θεὰ παρέδθηκε τραπέζαν, Ἀμβροσίης πλήσασα κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ ἔρυθρον, saith Homer². Upon which the Scholiast observes thus: *Κέρασσε δὲ νέκταρ.] Νῦν ἐνέχσεν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἀρχαίας συνηθείας· εἰς κέρας γὰρ ἐγχέοντες ἔπινον.* 'Tis no wonder, therefore, that upon the Jollities on the first of May formerly the Custom of blowing with, and drinking in, Horns so much prevail'd, which tho' it be now generally disus'd, yet the Custom of blowing them prevails, at that season, even to this day, at Oxford, to remind people of the pleasantness of that part

¹ See Mountague's Diatribe Tythes, p. 559. ² Odyss. E. against Selden's History of 92, 93.

of the Year, which ought to create Mirth and Gayety, such as is sketch'd out in some old Books of Offices, such as the *Primer of Salisbury*, printed at Rouen 1551. 8^{vo}. of which I have a Copy by me (and 'tis a most rare thing) given me by Mr. Graves, fairer and more perfect than that of another (*viz.* a later) Edition in Balliol College Library. But tho' I have taken so much pleasure in perusing the English Bible of the Year 1541. yet 'tis nothing equal to what I should take in turning over that of the Year 1539. (an Edition that Selden made great use of, as he did also of other old Editions of the Bible in English, in compiling his Work intit'led, *De Synedriis veterum Ebræorum*) which they have in St. John's College Library in Cambridge, in reference to which my learned Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker of that College writes to me thus¹: “ We have such a Bible as you
“ describe (a very noble Book) printed on Vel-
“ lum, and imbellished with Cutts that are Il-
“ luminated, the Leaves gilt, and the Cover im-
“ bost with Brass: but it is printed in the Year
“ 1539. as appears from the Conclusion, thus,

*The ende of the New Testament and of the whole
Byble, fynished in Apryll, Anno. MCCCCC.XXXIX.*

A Dnō factū est istud.

“ The Frontispiece is the same with that of

¹ In his Letter of Febr. 9. 1724.

“ *An.* 1540. described by Mr. Strype [Memorials
 “ of Archbp. Cranmer Lib. 3. cap. 33.] only
 “ Cromwell’s Arms are left there a Blank, which
 “ in our Copy has his bearing (as the rest) in
 “ colors, left out, I presume, upon his fall. It
 “ might probably (as you observe) be the same
 “ Book, that was presented to Cromwell, there
 “ being only one other (that we can hear of)
 “ that is the King’s. But how it came to us
 “ does not appear, unless from the late Earl
 “ of Southampton, who gave us most of those
 “ MSS. we now enjoy, and it has always had a
 “ place amongst the MSS. as it well deserves.”
 Mr. Baker writ this Passage upon account of a
 Letter I writ to him, in which I had menti-
 oned the Bible printed in English with Cutts
 on Vellum, as I had found it spoke of in the
 following remarkable Particulars that I meet
 with in a Quarto MS. of Collections relating
 to Bibles and Testaments from 1526. to 1700.
 made (and written with his own hand) by the
 late ingenious Mr. John Bagford, who was
 pleased to give it me himself:

“ 1540. ——— In the Year 1540. the 32. of
 “ King Hen. the 8. a Convocation was called,
 “ and in the third Session (being Friday) several
 “ Bishops were assigned to peruse the several
 “ Translations of the New Testament, in order
 “ as followeth:

Fol. 4. a.

“ 1. Cran-

PREFACE.

XXI

" 1. Cranmer Archbp. of Canterbury	1. Matthew.
" 2. Longland of Lincolne	2. Mark.
" 3. Stephen Gardiner of Winch.	3. Luke.
" 4. Tho. Goodrick of Ely	4. John.
" 5. Nicholas Heath of Rochester	{ 5. The Acts of the Apostles.
" 6. Richard Sampson of Chichester	6. Romans
" 7. John Capon of Sarum	7. $\frac{1}{2}$ Corinthians
" 8. Will. Barlow of St. David's	8. { Galatians. Ephesians. Philippians. Colossians.
" 9. John Bell of Worcester	9. $\frac{1}{2}$ Thessalonians
" 10. Robert Parfew of St. Asaph	10. { Timothy. Titus. Philemon.
" 11. Robert Holgate of Landaff	11. $\frac{1}{2}$ Peter.
" 12. John Skip of Hereford	12. Hebrews.
" 13. Thomas Thyrlby of Westminster	13. { James. $\frac{1}{2}$ John. $\frac{1}{3}$ Jude
" 14. John Wakeman of Gloster	{ 14. The Reve-
" 15. John Chambers of Peterborow	{ 15. lation,

" Gardiner desired, that certain Latin words
 " in the Text might be preserved intire (as much
 " as might be) in the Translation of the New
 " Testament, and in Fuller's Church History
 " you have a Catalogue of the words:

" And, if I mistake not, I have seen a Testa-
 " ment in English in 4^o. put forth by the above-

“ said Bishops with the King's Privilege. 1540

“ A Bible in folio Recognized by Rich. Taverner. 1540

“ *Id.* a Testament in 4°. by the same hand. 1540

“ A Bible of the larger Volume, the Frontispiece described by Mr. Strype, and supposed to be printed at Paris. 1540

“ There is one of them in the Queen's Library at St. James's, printed on Vellum, and the Cutts curiously illuminated. This is supposed to be the presentation Book to King Henry the 8. 1540

“ I have seen one in the Library of St. John's College in Cambridge, found of late years among some old Books in a private place nigh the Library, printed on Vellum, and the Cutts illuminated as the former, and this, perhaps, might be the presentation Book to Tho. Cromwell.

“ Another very fair of the same Impression in the Collection of Sir Andrew Fountaine on paper. 1540

“ *Id.* another printed in folio by Will. Pettet for Thomas Berthlet. The Title in red and black Letters, with the Picture of King H. the 8. with the Bishops with their Mitres on. 1540

“ The New Testament translated from the Greek by Delayne (who was Librarian at St. James's, and is dedicated by him to K. Henry the 8.) and printed in 4°. in the white Letter by Jo. Mayler. 1540.” And

And here, upon this occasion of mentioning wooden Cutts, I must observe, that the vast Variety of wooden Cutts in the Nuremberg Chronicle, compiled by Hartman Schedel, are not to be at all despis'd for their Odness, but to be the more admir'd. For my part, the oftener I consult it, the more I wonder at the Things in it, and I cannot but esteem the Book as extremely pleasant, usefull and curious, by reason of these very odd Cutts, tho' those Copies are always to be look'd upon as the most valuable, which have the Figure of Pope Joan untouch'd, a Thing I here mention, because in many Copies this Figure is either eras'd, or, at least, defac'd, and the History of her oblitterated. And now I mention this Nuremberg Chronicle, I cannot but take notice of a Copy of it, that was given to Christ's College in Cambridge by the great common Lawyer Ferdinando Pulton. Before which Copy is an Inscription, that is very remarkable, and had it fallen into the Hands of the industrious Author of *Athenæ Oxonienses*, he would not, surely, have rang'd this eminent Lawyer among the Oxford Writers. I shall give the Inscription, with some other Particulars, just as they were all sent me by my foresaid Friend, the Reverend Mr. Thomas Baker, the great Antiquary of Cambridge.

Ferdinando Pul-
ton, the great Law-
yer, a Cambridge,
and not an Oxford,
Writer.

§. IV. "In turning my Papers" (saith
Mr. Baker) "I likewise find, we have
"another Copy of Hartman Schedel &c.
"at Christ's Coll. given the Coll. by
"Ferd. Pulton, with this Inscription before the
"Book. Ferdinando Pulton, Esquier, admitted
"Scholar in his Youth into Christ's Colledge in Cam-
"bridge, the last yeere of the Raigne of King Edward
"the sixt, continued there untill the last yeere of the
"Raigne of Queene Marie, and made Fellowe of the
"same Colledge one yeere before he departed thence.
"Became afterwards a paynfull Student and Professor
"of the Common and Statute Lawes of this Realme
"(as maye appeare by severall Bookes or Workes by
"him composed and published in print, tending to the
"knowledge and divulging of the same Lawes) even un-
"till his age of fourscore yeezes and upward: For the
"love and affection which he did beare to the said Col-
"ledge his Nurse and Schoolmistris, and in token of
"good will to the same House, did, upon the sixt daie of
"September, Anno Domini 1617. & anno Regni Regis
"Jacobi 15. bestowe this Booke uppon the Master and
"Fellowes of the foresaid Colledge & their Successors,
"too meane a gifte for so worthie and well deserbing a
"place, intended nebertheles to have been much great-
"er, had it not been extenuated by the charges & expen-
"ses of his travell and labors in the workes aforesaid,
"willinglie bestowed uppon the Professors of the
"same Studie, for the benefitt of his Countrie and
"Commonwelth thereof.

"By me

"Ferdinando Pulton, of Borton in the Countie
"and Parishe of Buckingham.

"The

“The Subscription is in a different hand,
“and, I presume, his own.

“Nov. 23. 1552. *Ferdi. Pulton coll. Chr. admis-*
“*sus in Album sive Matriculam Acad. Cant.*

“An. 1555, 6. *conceditur Ferdinando Pulton, ut*
“12. *Termini, in quibus Lectiones ordinarias audi-*
“*vit, licet non omnino secundum formam Statuti,*
“*cum Oppositionibus & Respons: requisitis sufficient*
“*ei pro completis gradu & forma Bac. in Artibus:*
“*sic quod examinetur & approbetur, convivetur, &*
“*cætera peragat juxta formam Statuti, quoniam*
“*Determinationem finalem sine maximo suo dispendio*
“*expectare non potest. Reg. Acad.*

“*Pulton actu Bac. ante determinationem Regr.*
“Acad. This great dispatch was, I presume, in
“order to his being elected Fellow, for in a Ca-
“talogue of their Fellows, I find, *Ferd. Pulton*
“*electus Socius an. 1555.* that is, I suppose, in
“Jan. Febr. or March 1555, 6.” The words in
Athenæ Oxon. are¹: “*Ferdinando Pulton alias*
“*Poulton (Son of Giles Pulton, Esq. who died*
“1560.) was born at *Deusborough* in *Northam-*
“*ptonshire,* became² commoner of *Brasnose Coll.*
“in the beginning of *Q. Mary's* Reign, laid
“there a foundation of Academical literature,
“which he found useful to him afterwards when
“he grew eminent in the common Law. But
“leaving that House before he took a degree,
“he went to *Lincoln's Inn,* studied the said Law,

¹ Vol. 1. col. 362.

² Reg. 1. coll. *Ænean.* fol. 92. a.

“took

“took the usual degrees, and became eminent
 “for the knowledge in, and practice of, it, not
 “only in *London*, but the usual place of his re-
 “sidence in the Country, viz. at *Bortcn* in the
 “Parish and County of *Buckingham*. ——— He
 “departed this Life, on the 20. *January* in six-
 “teen hundred and seventeen, aged 82. and
 “was buried in the Chancel of the Church of
 “*Deusborough*, before-mention'd, &c.” Mr. Wood
 here quotes a Register in Brazen-nose Coll.
 and his Quotation is faithfull enough, as I find
 by this *Memorandum*, that, upon this occasion,
 a worthy Friend writ out of it for me: “*Nomina*
 “*Admissorum in Coll. 1556. Junii 28°. Ferdinan-*
 “*dus Pulton Northampt.*”

“Reg. A Coll. Æn. Nas. fol. 92.”

But then Mr. Wood builds too much upon it,
 it being very clear, from the Inscription and
 Notes above, that Pulton was one of the Cam-
 bridge Writers, and not an Oxford one, where
 he only resided a little while, and entered him-
 self of Brazen-nose Coll. tho', at the same time,
 he was actually a Member of the University of
 Cambridge.

Something peculiar
 in the Copy of the
 Nuremberg Chro-
 nicle in Trinity
 College Library at
 Cambridge, that I
 have not yet met
 with in any other.

§. V. Mr. Baker had before given me
 an account of three other Copies (which
 they have at Cambridge) of the Nurem-
 berg Chronicle, one of which is in Tri-
 nity College Library, and hath in it
 something peculiar, that is not in either
 of

of the others, or indeed either in my own Copy (which, by the by, wants the Note about the time when the Book was printed) or in any that I have yet seen. What this is, will be better gathered from Mr. Baker's own words, than from any thing I can say, which are these': ———“Your

thesecond, Edition
of Hollingshede's
Chronicle, the true
genuine Work of
the Author.

“last Letter put me upon turning Hartman Schedel, which is a very entertaining, and (as you say) a very strange Book. We have three Copies, one amongst the Bp. of Ely's, which I had from Dr. Middleton, who presents you with his service. The second in our College Library. The last (the most beautifull) at Trinity College (from Mr. Hadderton) having all the Faces, Maps, and other Figures fairly depicted in Colors.

“At Fol. cclxi. the Picture of Antichrist with seven Heads, (different from the ordinary Prints) and almost as many Colors, makes a frightfull appearance, and upon the Pedestal in a fair hand, which I should have taken for Print, had it not been wanting in the two other Copies, this Inscription,

“*Hec depinxit Jacobus Jaqueri*

“*de Civitate Taurini in pede Montium*

“*Anº. Domini millesimo quater centesimo*

“*primo.*

“And on the opposite Page thus, *This Picture*

¹Out of his Letter to me, dated Dec. 2. 1722.

“*was*

“*was set in the Temple of the Jacobines in Geneva*
 “*in an^o. 1401. a show of Antechriste, and from*
 “*thens abrode into the worlde, that the abhomina-*
 “*tion of the wicked maye be percevid. B. S. M.*
 “*with 5. or 6. ryming Monkish latin verses.*

“*At Fol. CLXXXIII, CLXXXIIII. The Pictures*
 “*of the Emperor, 7: Electors, Princes, and Counts*
 “*of the Empire, with their Arms fairly de-*
 “*picted, with this note, Hæc Scuta recte pin-*
 “*guntur in suis coloribus juxta juditium Heraldii.*

“*I doubt, you can hardly safely show the*
 “*former Inscription to your worthy Friend the*
 “*Author of the Antiquities of Glast. He will*
 “*be apt to observe, that Antichrist was so early*
 “*in the Church of Geneva, for, I think, Ge-*
 “*noua cannot be meant.*

“*In all the Copies Pope Joan stands with*
 “*the face of a Female, a triple Crown, a Child*
 “*in her arme instead of a Cross, which is born*
 “*by the rest of the Popes. Neither face nor*
 “*story are obliterated in any of our Copies,*
 “*only in that of Trin. Coll. septimus, is dasht,*
 “*and the Figure, 8. plac't in its roome. For*
 “*she is styl'd Joannes Septimus in all our Copies,*
 “*tho' another Jo. Septimus had been mention'd*
 “*before. The story is short, I can send it you,*
 “*if you have not the Book by you. Martinus is*
 “*quoted, which shows, she stood in the Copies*
 “*of Martinus Polonus' of that age.*

¹Against the story in a Copy of Suffridus Petrus's Edit. at
 Ant.

“Fol. cclviii. *Cartas aliquas sine scriptura pro*
 “*sexta etate deinceps relinquere convenit, iudicio po-*
 “*steriorum qui emendare, addere &c. possunt &c.*
 “Then follow some blank leaves in all the Co-
 “pies, only the Title and Numbers printed at
 “the top of the pages.

“Fol. cclxvi. *Completo in famosissima Nurem-*
 “*bergensi urbe Operi de Hystoriis etatum Mundi, ac*
 “*descriptione Urbium, felix imponitur finis. Col-*
 “*lectum brevi tempore auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni*
 “*Schedel, qua fieri potuit diligentia. Anno Christi*
 “*millesimo quadringentesimo nonagesimo tercio. die*
 “*quarto mensis Junii.*

“Fol. cclxvii. follows a further account of
 “the European Nations, most or all from Æneas
 “Sylvius: In the Title, over his Picture,

Sum pius Æneas fama super Ethera notus.

“Fol. ccc. *Adest nunc studiose lector finis libri*
 “*Cronicarum per viam Epithomatis & Breviarii*
 “*compilati. Opus quidem preclarum & à doctissimo*
 “*quoque comparandum. Continet enim gesta que-*
 “*cunque digniora sunt notatu ab initio Mundi ad*
 “*hanc usque temporis nostri calamitatem. Castiga-*
 “*tumque a viris doctissimis ut magis elaboratum in*
 “*lucem prodiret. Ad intuitum autem & preces pro-*

Antwerp(exOff. Christophori Plantini 1574. 8vo.) that I pur- chased out of the Study of the late Dr. Arthur Charlett, some learned hand hath written this Note: <i>Antiquissimus auctor</i> <i>hujus fabulæ est iste Martinus</i>	<i>Polonus, qui tamen scripsit</i> <i>479. annos post illud tempus,</i> <i>quo ait asseri, id est, fingi, is-</i> <i>tam Joannam vixisse.</i> <i>Polonus vixit anno</i> <i>Christi</i> <i>Joanna fingitur vixisse</i> <i>hujus fabulæ est iste Martinus</i>	1334 855 479
---	--	--------------------

“vidor

“vidorum civium Sebaldi Schreyer & Sebastiani
 “Kamermaister hunc librum Dominus Anthonius
 “Koberger Nuremberge impressit. Adhibitis tamen
 “viris Mathematicis pingendique arte peritissimis,
 “Michaelē Wolgemut & Wilhelmo Pleydenwurff. quo-
 “rum solerti acuratissimæ animadversione tum
 “Civitatum tum illustrium Virorum figure inserte
 “sunt. Consummatum autem duodecima Mensis Ju-
 “lii. Anno Salutis nostre 1493.

“There is no Name or Title at the begin-
 “ning of any of the Copies. Towards the end,
 “there are five leaves, *De Regno Polonie &c.* not
 “numbred, which seem to have been inserted.

“Fol. cclii. *Matheolus perusinus medicus &c.*
 “— *Preceptor meus eruditissimus. Quem ego Hart-*
 “*mannus Schedel Nurembergensis Doctor Patavinus*
 “*tribus annis ordinarie legentem auscultavi. à quo*
 “*demum prehabita per eum oratione elegantissima*
 “*insignia Doctoratus Padue accepi.*——Follows a
 “large Character of his Master, no more of
 “himself.

“Fol. cclii. *Ars imprimendi libros hiis tempo-*
 “*ribus primum in germania enata est. Quantum*
 “*igitur literarum studiosi germanis debeant nullo sa-*
 “*tis dicendi genere exprimi potest. Hanc apud magun-*
 “*tiam rheni urbem solerti ingenio librorum impri-*
 “*mendorum ratio: 1440. inventam fuisse aiunt.*
 “*Hoc tempore in omnes fere orbis partes propaga-*
 “*tur* —— *Ideo in ejus laudem quidam hos cecinit*
 “*versus.*

“(1) *O felix nostris memoranda impressio seclis.*

“(3) *Desierat quasi totum quod fundis in Orbem.*

“(5) *Omnes te summis igitur nunc laudibus ornent.*

“(2) *Inventore nitent utraque lingua tuo.*

“(4) *Nunc parvo doctus quilibet esse potest.*

“(6) *Te duce quando ars hec mira reperta fuit.*

“These verses stand like Prose (without distinction) in the print, I presume the Printer had jumbled them out of Order.

“This seems to be a good and antient authority for printing at Mentz, being within memory of Man.”

There is no doubt, but there was a great Number of Copies printed of this Book, that so the Charges of the Impression might be the better countervail'd by the sale. They were greedily bought up, and in a little time the Book grew scarce, which caus'd a new¹ Edition,

¹ Concerning which my Friend Mr. Graves writes thus to me in a Letter, dated from Mickleton in Gloucestershire, Saturday, 14th. of Dec. 1723.	“that; and the Cuts are but very small, and few, in comparison with the other, &c.
“Schedel's Chronicle, that is now in the Hands of Mr. Fan-	“Infol. 294. a. is this Note, viz. <i>Completo in famosissima Nurembergensi Urbe operi de</i>
“court Bookseller in Stratford upon Avon, is but a small	“<i>hystoriis etatum mundi, &c. Collectum, &c. auxilio Doctoris Hartmanni Schedel, &c.</i>
“siz'd Folio, tho' pretty thick; containing 338. Leaves, be-	“<i>Anno Christi, 1493. die 4to. Mensis Junii, &c.</i> as in the
“sides a large Alphabetical Index at the End thereof, not at	“other.
“the Beginning, as the other; printed in a black Letter, but	“And in fol. 338. a. at the very End of the Book is this
“much less Character, than	“Note, viz. <i>Finit hic liber Cron-</i>

“*nicorum,*

but in a less Folio, with worse Types, (notwithstanding both Editions are of the black kind) and without most of the Cuts, which omission of the Cuts made this Edition, therefore, much less valued by curious and critical Men than the first. The same Defect likewise makes the second Edition of Hollingshede's Chronicle of less esteem with many curious Men, than the first, which came out in Fol. at London 1577. and is full of wooden Cuts, (as the authentick Edition of Robert Fabyan's Chronicle¹, and the Chronicle of John Ra-

¹ *nicorum, &c. Impressum*

ac finitum, &c. in imperiali

Urbe Augusta à Johanne

Schensperger, Anno ab In-

carnatione Domini, 1497.

"After I had seen your's at

"Oxford, and view'd my own,

"and that at Stratford again;

"I thought there was as much

"Difference between mine,

"and your's, as between

"your's, and that: For tho'

"our's are both the same Edi-

"tion; yet mine is extraordi-

"nary large Paper, with a very

"broad Margin, and extreme

"fair; and the chief initial Let-

"ters are painted with blew,

"and red; and some of them

"are handsomely illuminated,

"&c.

¹ Of which Chronicle I find

the following Particulars, in a

Paper MS. in Folio (containing

a Catalogue of Books relating

to the English and Irish Histo-

ries and Antiquities) written by

Mr. William Cooper, who dealt

in old Books, and made this

Catalogue for his own use [Sic

in Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 92. p.

244.] This MS. belong'd, after

the Collector's Death, [Coll.

nostr. MSS. Vol. 63. p. 14.] to

the ingenious Mr. John Bag-

ford, who lent it to the Compiler

of the English Historical Libra-

ry, and at length (after a great

while) recovering it, he parted

with it to the learned Sir Hans

Sloane, Baronet, in whose

hands it is now, and he was

so kind as to lend it me

in the Month of January

1721.

"Fabyan's Chronicle of the

"Kings of England and France,

"from Brute's entring into this

"Island.

stell', of which last there is a well preserved
 2 Copy in the Harleyan Library, are also im-

"Island, untill the last Year of
 "King Richard the third, anno
 "1485. continued to the be-
 "ginning of Hen. the 8th. Anno
 "1509. in seaven parts, and two
 "Volumes, with the Effigies of
 "the Kings, their Coats of
 "Armes, and other figures, be-
 "ing the first Edition incas-
 "trate. Instead of a Title it
 "hath a figure the Armes of
 "England and France united,
 "the supporters a Dragon &
 "Grayhound, and two Port-
 "cullices, 2. Angels bearing
 "the Motto about the Rose
 "over the Crown, the same fi-
 "gure at the end of the book,
 "fol. circa annum 1509 *.

"— *Idem* newly printed,
 "with some what a larger
 "Chronicle of the Acts and
 "Deeds don in the time of the
 "Reign of King Henry the sea-
 "venth, father to our dread so-
 "veraign K. Hen. 8. London
 "printed by Wm. Rastall 1533.
 "in fol. cum Privilegio differeth
 "from the first, and not gelt
 "soe much as Record's edi-
 "tion:

"— *Idem iterum* named
 "the Concordance of History,
 "with Notes upon the Kings
 "Reigns, and a Continuation
 "from the beginning of K. Hen.
 "7. to the Coronation of Queen

Vol. I.

"Elizabeth Anno 1558. ac-
 "cording to Fabian's method,
 "with Alterations, Correc-
 "tions or Castrations, and Mar-
 "ginal Notes, by Robert Re-
 "cord. Lond. 1559. fol." Coll.
 nostr. MSS. Vol. 93. p. 65.

¹ About which I have insert-
 ed the following Note, out of
 the foresaid MS. of Sir Hans
 Sloane, in my Manuscript Col-
 lections, Vol. 93. p. 83. "The
 "Pastyme of People, the Cro-
 "nicles of divers Realmys, and
 "most specially of the Realme
 "of England, brevely compil-
 "ed and imprinted in Chepe-
 "syde at the sygne of the
 "Meare-Mayd, next to Pollys
 "gate, cum Privilegio. The Pro-
 "logus hath at the top *Johannis*
 "*Rastell*. It begins in the Mar-
 "gin, *Eneas*, then follows *As-*
 "*canius*, *Silvius*, &c. William
 "the Conquerour, a woden Pic-
 "ture of him, in full propor-
 "tion, and soe of all the Kings,
 "the Picture of Richard the
 "third being the last, the word
 "*Tyrannus* Ends. The picture
 "of the Creation. *Johannes*
 "*Rastall cum Privilegio Rega-*
 "*li.* in large folio.

² Sic me docuit amicus eru-
 ditus Timotheus Thomas, A. M.
 collegii Ædis Christi Oxoniæ
 Alumnus.

c

bel-

* [Lond. 1516.]

bellished with wooden Cuts) many of which (considering the time in which they were done) are very good. The Author was then living. The second Edition came out in 1587. in two Tomes also in Folio, with abundance of Additions by other hands, but without the wooden Cuts. This Omission was contrary to the Design and Intent of the Author, who was a curious, tho' illiterate, Man (having never received liberal Education¹) and died before the Year 1582. Mr. Wood says² that it was towards the latter end of 1580. I have printed his Will, which was proved April 24. 1582. in the first Volume³ of my Edition of *Camden's Elizabetha*, as it was communicated to me by the learned Thomas Palmer, of Fairfeild in Somersetshire, Esq. Hence it may appear, that the first (which is very scarce) and not the second Edition, contains the true genuine Work of Hollingshede.

Many things in Robert of Gloucester, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. In the Saxon times the Princes, & other great Personages, did not use to be buried at their Palaces, but at Religious Houses. Cosham in Wilt.

§. VI. Now to return to Robert of Gloucester, as he was an Antiquary, as well as an Historian, so here are interspers'd divers Remarks, that properly belong to the business of an Antiquary. After he hath given an account of some of the Wonders of Britain, such as our Antiquaries usually take notice of, he

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 62. p. 87. ² Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 270. ³ Præf. p. cXLIX.

refers to a Book written particularly about the Marvels of Britain, which I take to have been much more copious, than either the Chapter upon that Subject in *Polychronicon*, or even the little anonymous Tract upon the same Subject, that I found inserted in an old Vellum MS. in Folio, that was lately given me by my learned Friend Richard Graves, Esq. In this Tract (which I have publish'd in the Appendix¹) the four Great Roman Ways are deservedly reckon'd among the Wonders of Britain, and the account of them, however short, agrees with the Scheme of them, that is given us (from a MS. in the Cottonian Library) in the Discourse about the four Great Roman Ways published in the Sixth Volume² of Leland's Itinerary. Robert of Gloucester's writing³ Silchester in Hampshire *Cylycestre* confirms my opinion⁴, that it was so called from the Flints, being no more than *silicium castra*. His Remarks upon many of our Religious Houses are pretty and usefull, and now and then he shews a particular Modesty on the occasion, in so much, that tho' it be certain, that Sir William de Mohun founded Bruton Abbey in Somersetshire, yet he expresses himself after such a manner, as if he only

shire very famous formerly. The Coffin lately found there belong'd to some fine Gentleman since the Conquest. The Knife, with which Edward the Martyr was kill'd, preserv'd at Caversham in the time of Robert of Gloucester. Three kinds of Churches formerly.

¹ Num. I. ² Pag. 96. ³ Pag. 100, 166. ⁴ In Notis ad Aluredum Beverlacensem, p. 154.

thought, and was not certain, that he was Founder. What he says¹ about Alfred, or Æthelfleda, the famous Queen, or Lady, of the Mercians being buried in St. Peter's Porch at Gloucester is exactly agreeable to the Saxon Annals, under the Year DCCCCXX. — heo gefor xii. nihtum ær middan rumepa binnan Tamanpeorðe. þy eahtoðan geape þær þe heo Wýpcna anpald mid niht halforð-dome heal-dende þær. ⁊ hi þe lic lið binnan Gleapceartpe. on þam eart-portice sce. Petper cipecean. What can be a plainer Argument of so great a Lady's Humility, than her chosing to be buried in the Porch, and to lye in a place, that had been famous for the fine Nunnery, that was there, before it was destroyed by the Danes, as is noted not only by others, but particularly by William Malverne (the last² Lord Abbat of Gloucester) in a Piece never yet printed, which I shall therefore publish at the End of this Work³? Her affection to Religion induced her to fix upon Gloucester for the Place of her Funeral, rather than Tamworth, which was otherwise so very famous for a Palace, in which the Mercian Princes us'd to reside, and which she her self had restored to it's pristine Splendour and Magnificence, after it had been destroy'd by the Danes. But, it may be, it will be said, that she pitch'd upon

¹ Pag. 271. ² Leland's Coll. Vol. VI. p. 214. ³ Appendix Num. II.

Gloucester, because the Abbey Church there had been founded by her Husband and herself, rather than for any other reason. Without question that was a considerable Motive; but yet I am perswaded, that the celebrated Nunnery, that had been there in former times, was another very great one, as indeed it was customary, in those Times, even for other great Personages to be buried at Religious Houses, where they had inhabited and resided. In so much, that tho' Cosham, near Chippenham in Wiltshire, was so much resorted to by some of our Saxon Kings and other great Men, where was a Palace for their Reception and Entertainment, as there was after the Conquest a retiring House for the Earls of Cornwall, to whom the Mannour belong'd (one of which, *viz.* Edmund, obtain'd a Charter¹ for a Weekly Market to be held here every Friday, as his Father Richard, a younger Son of King John, had granted the Inhabitants several Privileges, which they still enjoy²) yet 'twas not a burying Place for these Great Men, not so much as for K. Ethelred, who was more than ordinarily delighted with it, and lay sick here in *mxv.* but recovering, he went to London, and dying the Year after on St. George's day³,

¹ Cart. 13. E. 1. n. 39. Dugdale's Baronage, Tome I. p. 765. the Page of Gibson's Engl. Ed. of Camden's Brit. p. 87. ³ Chron. 765. ² Notes at the Bottom of Sax. Gibs. p. 146. 148.

was buried ¹in St. Paul's Church in the North Isle beside the Quire. 'Tis true, indeed, there was a Stone Coffin², with humane Bones in it of a larger Size than usual, in the Skull whereof was a compleat Set of fine Teeth, found lately by Cosham, which may perswade some, perhaps, to think this was a Place of Burial for several of our Princes and Nobility; but, as I take it, this was a Coffin of some private fine Gentleman since the Conquest, different from the illustrious Persons I have been speaking of, and yet of a great Character for his Virtues, and the delicate Form of his Body. And here I must caution the Reader, not to take this Cosham to be the ~~Kaver~~sham, in the Church of which Place Robert of Gloucester tells³ us the long Knife, that St. Edward the Martyr was kill'd with, was preserved in his time. For this was Caversham, commonly call'd Causham, & sometimes writ⁴ Cowsham, a Village situated in Ox-

¹ Milles's Cat. of Honour, p. 28. Dugdale's Hist. of St. Paul's Cathedral, p. 95. Ed. 2d. Lond. 1681. 8vo. where the following Order occurs, as I have entered it in one of my MSS. [Coll. Vol. 79. p. 75.]
² See the Glossary to this Work, voc. byer. ³ Pag. 289. ⁴ See p. 128. of a Book, called, *The Connexion: being choice Collec-*

“ Anno Dom. 1621. An. Reg. Jac. 19.

“ An Order of the Privy Council.

“ Whitehall January 18. 1621.

“ Present,

“ Lord Keeper.

Lord Digby.

“ Lord Treasurer.

Lord Brook.

“ L. President.

Mr. Treasurer.

“ L. M.

fordshire, but is not far from Reading in Berkshire. Not only the Church of this Causham (which is an Abbreviation, as Leland saith¹, for Causeiham) was eminent (for great Men resorted hither) but the fair old Chappel also of Stone, that² stood toward the North End of Causham Bridge, on the right Hand as we come from Reading. To the foresaid Remarks I must take the opportunity of adding, that in the Saxon times abundance of great and illustrious Lay Persons made it their dying Request, that they might be buried in Religious Houses. A Request, certainly, very reasonable, and by no means to be wondred at, since a great³ Number of those Houses were Lay Foundations, and it was, therefore, very proper both

" L. M. Hamilton.	Mr. Secret. Calvert.
" Earle Marshall.	Mr. Chanc. Excheq.
" " L. Visc. Falkland.	Master of the Rolls.
"Whereas his Majesty is Graciously pleased, to enlarge & set at liberty the Earl of Somerset" [Sir Robert Carr] and his Lady," [the Lady Frances Howard,] "now Prisoners in the Tower of London; and that, nevertheless, it is thought fit, that both the said Earl and his Lady be confined to some convenient Place: It is therefore, according to his Majesty's Gracious Pleasure and Command,	"Ordered, That the Earl of Somerset and his Lady, do repair either to Grays or Cowsham, the Lord Wallingford's Houses in the County of Oxon, and remain confin'd to one or either of the said Houses, and within three Miles compass of either of the same, untill further Order be given by his Majesty.
	¹ Itin. Vol. II. p. 5. ² Leland ibid. ³ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p. 150.

for the Founders themselves, as well as for such as were, both at the time of the Foundation and afterwards, particular or special Benefactors, should be buried, if they desired it, in Places that themselves had rais'd, a thing agreeable to the most early Antiquity, as may appear from even the famous Egyptian Pyramids. 'Tis incredible to think, what advantage the burying of such great and devout Persons was to the respective Religious Houses, where they were so laid. These Houses (term'd **Mynsters** in Antiquity) were then esteem'd (and that justly too) to be the principal Mother Churches, and of them we are chiefly to understand these Words¹ in King Edgar's Laws, *7 man a gýfe ylce ælc teoþunge to þæm ealdan mýnstrne ðe reo hýpnerre to hýpþ*; i.e. *and let every one give his Tithes to the old Church, (Monasterie or Mynster) to which the district belongs.* Mr. Selden² translates these Words, *ealdan mýnstrne ðe reo hýpnerre to hýpþ*, *to the ancientest Church or Monasterie where he hears God's Service*, and yet Brompton, in his old Translation, hath³, & *reddatur omnis decimatio ad matrem ecclesiam cui parochia adjacet*, as even Selden himself had before⁴ observ'd. But then tho' these Words are primarily to be understood of Religious Houses (among which are to be reckoned what were afterwards

¹ Spelmanni Concil. Vol. I. ³ Apud X. Script. col. 871. p. 444. ² Hist. of Tithes, p. 262. ⁴ Hist of Tithes, p. 219.

called *Cathedral Churches*) yet they are *secundarily* to be understood also of other Churches, that were afterwards look'd upon likewise as Mother Churches, as having the right of Sepulture annex'd to them. Such inferior Mother Churches were founded generally by eminent Lay Persons, and the Parishes of such Churches were as extensive as the Founders Possessions, (at least as such Possessions as were styl'd *Bocland* or lands possess'd *optimo jure*) and 'twas in these Churches (when they became frequent) that the Founders then often desired to be buried, in allusion to, and in imitation of, the Practise of such Founders of, and Benefactors to, Religious Houses as desired to be buried in Monasteries. These inferior Mother Churches are mentioned in Edgar's Laws¹ by the Name of Churches that had *Legeþrtope*, or *place of Burial*, where is mention also of a third (which is the lowest) kind of Churches, those that had no *Legeþrtope*. The second kind of Churches I have spoke of had likewise (as well as the *principal* Mother Churches) right of Baptism; but wherever there was a Church that had neither *sepulturam* nor *baptisterium*, that was properly to be understood of the third kind, and such Churches of this third Class they styled often *peldcýpican*, or *Field Churches*, what we call now Chappels of Ease, among

¹ Spelmanni Conc. loc. cit.

which

which are to be reckon'd ¹ Binsey, Sandford, and Wolvercote near to, and Holywell in the Suburbs of, Oxford, as well as multitudes besides, which had not anciently *sepulturam & baptisterium*, tho' they have that Privilege since.

Robert of Gloucester's account of the Conflict between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford, in the time of Henry III. very remarkable in all it's Circumstances.

§. VII. But I shall leave all farther Descants upon the several Particulars in this Author immediately relating to Antiquities to the intelligent Reader's own Observation, unless it be that concerning the great Conflict in the Year 1263. between the Scholars and Townsmen of Oxford. This Passage is very remarkable in all it's Circumstances, and for that reason Mr. Wood hath very justly, tho' not without divers Mistakes, inserted it³ at large in his *History and Antiquities of the University of Oxford*. It seems Prince Edward, in his Journey towards the Marches of Wales, came by Oxford, but was hindered by the Townsmen (who shut the Gates against him) from coming into the Place, by reason of the Barons War, whereupon he went to King's Hall (being the fine Royal Palace, called **The Beaumonts**) situated in the West Suburbs, where he lay all Night. The next day he went away, and, after he was gone, the Gates were all open'd but **Smithgate**. This was the Gate, through which the Scho-

¹ Vide Ed. nostr. Guil. Neubr. p. 756. ² See p. 540. ³ Lib. I. pag. 112.

lars us'd to go into the pleasant Fields (particularly the fair open Green, now arable ground, the North Boundary whereof is to this Day call'd **Green-Ditch**) in which they were wont to exercise themselves at several kinds of Sports after Meals, and upon extraordinary occasions, but finding the Gate shut upon them, they were exceedingly enraged, and the more, because they had been before obstructed from seeing the Prince, a sight they were very desirous of, on purpose that they might the better express their Loyalty. They often intreated the Bayliffs to open the Gate, but finding it was in vain, they got it broke down, and afterwards carried it in triumph through the Beaumonts Fields to **Hare well** or **Harewell**, which was such a Grievance to the Townsmen, that they took an occasion to imprison many Scholars, and would have proceeded to the utmost Violence, had they not been overpowered by the Scholars, as they were in all Encounters, unless the Scholars were far outnumbered by the Townsmen's calling to their Assistance (a thing common with them) a parcel of Ruffians and illiterate Fellows out of the Country. John Stowe mentions this difference in the Folio Edition^r of his Chronicle, under the Year 1264. and tho' he doth not refer us to Robert of Gloucester, yet I do not doubt but he took the Story from him, or, at least, from
some

some body that had made use of him. Edward
the kings sonne, (saith he) after his retorne
from Paris, about Lent, tooke his journey
toward the March, and passing by Oxford,
the Burgesles shut up their gates against
him, whereby he was forced to lie at the Kings hall
without the Towne till the next morrow, and then
departed. The Schollers of Oxford being shut within
the Towne, brake vp the gate that leadeth toward
Beaumont, for which deed the Maior sent some of them
to prison: and not long after, while the Schollers
were at dinner, the Maior and Commons, with ban-
ners displayed, thought to have spoyled the Clarke
ere they had beene aware, but being espyed, the schol-
lers ranne together, and with bowes and other wea-
pons, slew and wounded the Burgesles and Commons,
brake up many houses, spoiling the goods, and set the
houses of the Portriues (William Spicer and Geffrey
Hencley) on fire, on the South side of the towne.
Moreouer, because the Maior (Nicholas Kingstone)
was a Vintener, they brake vp the Vintrie, dranke the
wines, and spoyled them, for the which fact the King
caused the Clarke and Schollers to be banished the
Uniuerſitie. This Victory of the Scholars stuck

Clarke
of Ox-
ford ba-
nished.

¹ *Lege Hencley*, so call'd (Ivy Hincksey) or else South
from one of the *Hencseys* or Hincksey, dedicated to St John
Hinckseys, viz. either Laurence [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102. p.
Hincksey, or North Hincksey, 121.] both situated in Berk-
(oftentimes call'd Ferry Hinck- shire (being Chappels of Ease
sey, and, from the vast quantity to Cumnor, the Church of which
of Ivy that was formerly, before is dedicated to St. Michael
the present Church or Chappel [Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 102.
was built, about the Church, p. 119.]) but are near Oxford.

so much in the Townsmen's Stomacks, that it was one main reason of the Barbarity they shew'd the Scholars in the very great Conflict that afterwards fell out in the Reign of Edward the third, which indeed is much the biggest that ever happened between the two Bodies.

§. VIII. But tho' Mr. Wood hath published the beforementioned Passage, and refers to a MS. for it; yet since he hath not told us where this MS. is lodg'd (which, notwithstanding, I have at last found to be that in the Cottonian Library) I am of opinion, that he had it from second hand, either from Brian Twyne's, or Dr. Gerard Langbaine's Papers, which he had glean'd, and out of which, in a very great measure, he collected his Book. I have seen, among other things, two MSS. Catalogues of the Magistrates of the University of Oxford, drawn excellently well, (with references to the several Registers and Books made use of) one by Brian Twyne, and the other by Dr. Langbaine, and 'twas from these Catalogues that Mr. Wood compiled his Catalogue, in which much Reading is shew'd. 'Tis observable, that Mr. Wood does not tell us, what the foresaid *Dare well* or *Darewell* (mentioned in this Fragment)

Which tho' it be published by Mr. Wood, yet these seems to have had it from second hand. The *Darewell*, mentioned in that Account, is, probably, the same with *Walton Well*. *Walton Well* the oldest Well of note about Oxford. St. Edward's Well by St. Clement's, older than the old Well from which Saint Crosse's Parish, in the Suburbs of Oxford, was called *Holywell*. The respect formerly paid to Wells, which occasioned Injunctions against the Worship of them.

ment) was. For my part, I take it to have been what we now call **Walton Well**, (so named from the old Village of **Walton**, now destroy'd¹) which is on this Side of another old Well call'd **Aristotle's Well**, and sometimes **Bruman's Well**, which name of **Bruman** it had from one **Brumman** or **Bruman** the rich or the rich, who lived in the time of **K. Hen. III.** (when **Robert of Gloucester** flourished) or, as others say, about the time of **K. Henry I.**² As **Brumman**, or **Bruman**, was a very wealthy Man, so he had a great Estate hereabouts, was commonly called **Brumman the rich of Walton**³, and was always very civil and obliging to the Scholars. In those times, what we now call **Walton Well** was styl'd **Harewell** or **Horewell** from it's Antiquity, (as **Harwell**, or **Harewell**, near **Abbingdon** in **Berks** was likewise so call'd upon the same account) **hare** or **hore**, as I have lately insinuated⁴, signifying *old*, which Name it retained, among many, divers Years after. I take it to be the oldest Well of note about **Oxford**, where, however, there were formerly a great many famous Wells. **Holywell** cannot come at all in competition with it for it's Antiquity. For the Church or

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. Vol. 57. p. 124. ³ Coll. nostr. p. 14. Item Præf. nostr. ad MSS. Vol. 88. p. 20. ⁴ Vide-
Joan. Rossi Hist. regum Ang- sis Præf. nostr. ad Hemingi
liæ, p. viii. ² Coll. nostr. MSS. Chartular. Eccl. Wig. §. xi.

Chappel of **Holywell** is properly call'd **St. Crosse's** (being dedicated to the Holy Cross, and built too in form of a Cross, tho' the North part be now down) and 'twas first call'd **Holywell** from the Well many Years after the Building of it, when the Water was known and fam'd to have a peculiar virtue for the Eyes, and was thence term'd *holy*. But tho' **Holywell** was so much celebrated, yet the Fame of **St. Edward's**, or, as others¹, **St. Edmund's**, **Well**, without **Bridgset**, or rather **Bridghithe** or **Bridghythe**², commonly, and indeed more anciently, call'd **St. Clement's**, by Oxford was far greater, in so much that there was a Resort of all sorts of People from all Parts to it, and the Water³ of it was believed to be so effectual in curing divers Distempers, and thereupon held to be of so great Sanctity, that here they made Vows, and brought their Alms and Offerings. This was the Case also of abundance of other Wells throughout the Kingdom, which gave occasion to several Injunctions prohibiting such respect, as a Thing indecent and superstitious, and, among others, the Worship of this Well of St. Edward was particularly forbid by Oliver Sutton, Bishop of Lincoln, in the time of Edward the first. This Well-worship was call'd by our Saxon Ancestors Wilpeonþunze or

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 88. | Plot's Natural Hist. of Oxford. p. 26. Ibid. p. 10. ³ Dr. | shire, chap. II. §. 70.

Wilpeonþunga, and is strictly forbidden in King Edgar's Canons and K. Cnute's Laws, as 'twas in a Council at London under Archbishop Anselm in the Year 1102. as is well noted by Mr. Somner¹, and some of our best Criticks observe, that what is translated *Will-worship* in Colossians² should be *Well-worship*. This Well of St. Edward is now quite stopt up, and hath been so for many Years, but it was in the Field about a Furlong S. S. West of St. Clement's Church, and I have heard some of the Ancients of Oxford talk of it, as many old People will likewise speak with great satisfaction of the old Well [call'd by them commonly **Crow-well**, i. e. *Cross-well*] of **Holy-well**, that was also stopt up, as a vast Number of others were, after the Injunctions came to be of force, and were put in Execution; tho' it must be acknowledg'd, that **Crow-well** (which was almost opposite to the Cross that is in the Wall of Magdalen College Grove, notwithstanding Dr. Plot insinuates³, that it was the Well behind Holywell Church, in the Court before the Mannour House) was opened again some Years after it had been stop'd, and continued in great fame 'till the Siege of Oxford, particularly for it's good service to bad Eyes,

¹ Saxon Dict. voc. Wilpeonþunge. ² Ch. II. v. 23. ³ Nat. Hist. of Oxfordsh. ch. X. §. 142.

which occasion'd these Verses to be put upon the Cover of it:

Let no man this Well despise.

It does no harm, but helps the Eyes.

Soon after the Siege, the Stones of it were carried by Mr. Cowdrey the Shoe-maker to the Well, now call'd, from the Person that lives at it, **Newton's Well**, that is on the East side of Holy-well Church. But notwithstanding all this, **Walton Well** (which, I think, was most of all frequented¹ in the time that the King's Palace, called **The Beaumonts**, and the Carmelite Friery at the said Palace flourished) was not concerned in these Prohibitions, because the Water was not esteem'd and look'd upon as holy. Neither was **Aristotle's Well** (which I take to be near as ancient a Well as that of **Walton**) included in the Prohibitions, being fam'd only for it's being frequented by Scholars, not for it's Sanctity, but for a House of Entertainment here built, to which they us'd to resort, especially on Ashwednesdays, when the Batchelours of Arts, that defend Aristotle in the Publick Disputations, are styl'd Aristotles, and formerly, after the hot Disputations in the Schools, they, as well as other Scholars, us'd to go into the Fields by this Well, which was their Place of Refreshment, and exercise themselves in another manner, not so proper

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 67. p. 16.

for them, which some Years agoe was put down.

Our Author's Poëtry agreeable to the Genius of his Age, and his regard to Truth in his Rhythms answers the Custom of the Pythagoræans and old Britains.

§. IX. I am here very sensible, that an Objection against Robert of Gloucester will be started by several upon the score of his Poëtry, as if that were a very cogent Argument to make him neglected and despised. But he (and not Chaucer, as Dr. Thomas Fuller¹, and some others would have it,) is the Ennius of the English Nation, and he is, on that account, to be as much respected, as even Ennius himself was among the Romans, and I have good reason to think, that he will be so by Friends to our Antiquities, and our old History. 'Tis the Genius of the age that is to be regarded in such Pieces of Poëtry. The Poëtry of those times consisted of Rhythms both here and in other Countries, and the Poëts thought they had done their Parts well, if their Rhythms, however mean otherwise, related matter of Fact, and were agreeable to Truth. And truly this exactly corresponded with the Rules of the ancient Pythagoræans. For even Tully tells us, at the Beginning of the IVth. Book of his Tusculan Questions, that the Pythagoræans us'd to put their Precepts and other Things of mo-

¹ Church-History of Britain, l. VI. p. 268. tho' he had before told us, l. III. p. 4. that

he [Rob. of Glouc.] was counted the Virgil of his age, and the Ennius in ours.

ment (among which, to be sure, are to be reckon'd the famous Acts of their Ancestors) into Verse, and that it was usual with the old Romans, according to the Custom of the Pythagoræans, when they sat at Banquets, to recite the Virtues and Praises of Great Men in Verse, and to sing and play upon the Pipe upon such occasions, and thence, as I take it, even the old Britains, who followed the Pythagoræan Doctrines, addicted themselves so much to Verse, tho' as well the Pythagoræans, as Romans and Britains, took care, that no Verse should tend to the Injury of another, one of the Laws of the XII. Tables expressly forbidding any such Indecency, and some of our old Rhythms laying down Rules against any unbecoming Expressions in Poëtry, such as may conduce to Immorality; and in this, as well as his unaffected way of relating matter of Fact in Rhythm, our Author is to be commended, as a true Picture of Antiquity.

§. X. Since, therefore, Robert of Gloucester appears, on all accounts, to be so valuable an Author, what reason can be assign'd, that he hath been so much neglected, and that he was not long since published to the World? 'Tis probable the Obsoleteness of the Language might be the main reason, or, at least, 'tis likely, that some Persons of

He hath continued too long hid from the World. The value of the Harleian MS. which is followed in the Edition, that we now set forth. The Language, as well as the Work, altered in the MS. of the Herald's Office, and that by one who lived in the time of Hen. VI.

Distinction, not pleased with several of his honest Relations of Things, might characterize him as an insignificant Writer, and prejudice the Readers so much against him, that they were not at all sollicitous about an Edition. Be this as it will, as I look upon him to be one of the first Rank in our old Historians, so I, many Years agoe, had thoughts of publishing him according to the Bodleian MS. to which I had then daily access. But finding afterwards, that there are much better Copies in the World, I laid aside my Design of publishing this Author, and did not resume it 'till above a Year agoe, when the Loan of a MS. that formerly belong'd to Sir Simonds D'Ewes, (whose MSS. the Earl of Oxford purchas'd) was procur'd for me out of the Harleyan Library by that most eminent Physician the learned Dr. Richard Mead, who is my very great Friend. It came to me, accompanied with another MS. of Robert of Gloucester, the Loan of which was obtain'd for me out of the Heralds Office by another great Friend, the learned John Bridges, Esq. who was at the trouble of transmitting both these MSS. to me. As soon as I saw the Harleyan MS. I presently concluded, that it was a very good one and authentick, and therefore I immediately transcrib'd it, and resolved to make it my Text. But then as to that of the Heralds Office, I found not only the Language of
Ro-

Robert of Gloucester to be altered throughout in it, but the Work quite changed in several respects, by having some Passages transposed, others omitted, and divers inserted that were never written by Robert of Gloucester, who was of different Principles from this Author. A great deal of Prose History in English (partly taken from Geffry of Monmouth, partly from William of Malmsbury, partly from Brute of England, *Polychronicon*, &c.) is intermix'd in this MS. with what is in Rhythm, but as the Substance of most of this is already published in Stowe (who had seen this MS.) and other Books, I have left out much the greatest part of it, and confin'd my self to the genuine Work of Robert of Gloucester, which, however, I have carefully compar'd with this MS. of the Heralds Office, and taken notice of what I thought proper, and have inserted my Observations from it (among which are to be reckon'd also those of the Prose part) at the bottom of the page, always subjoyning *Ar.* [i. e. *the MS. of the College of Arms*] to them. Who the Author was, that took such a liberty with Robert of Gloucester (a thing that hath happened to many other ancient Remains) I will not pretend, at present, to determine; but this is certain, that he both lived and wrote in the time of Hen. VI. as appears from this *Memorandum*, (written all [excepting M^l.cccc.xlviii.]

in red Letters, but in the same Hand with the Book) at the Beginning of the Work: *A peregreu, fro William Conquerour, of the Crowne of Engelande, lynnally descendyng, vn to kyng Henry the vi. in the end of thys boke lymned in Fygurs. Thys boke, with hys Antecedens and consequens, was ful ended the vi. day offe August, the zere of oure lorde a M^o.cccc.xlviii. and the yere of oure Souerayn lorde kyng Harry the vi. after the conquest the xxvi.*

Who, however, is pleased to conceal his Name, as he does also that of Robert of Gloucester. A Rhythmical Account of the Kings of England at the End of his MS. which is here likewise printed.

§. XI. Tho' this MS. of the Herald's Office (for the use of which I am in a particular manner obliged to my learned Friend John Anstis, Esq. Garter, principal King of Arms) be in several Places imperfect, and hath some of the Leaves transpos'd (as a few Leaves are also transpos'd in the Harleyan MS.) yet 'tis, as I judge, the very original Book. The Author, undoubtedly, took a great deal of pains in new modelling Robert of Gloucester, and in adapting every Thing to his own Scheme. He divers times introduceth the Rhythms by the Name of *old Rhythms*, but never so much as once mentions the Name of Robert of Gloucester, or pretends to discover what his own Name was. Mr. Weever had diligently perus'd this MS. and quotes it sometimes as if the whole were Robert of Gloucester's, a mistake that some great Men besides have

have been guilty of with respect to other Writers, as may plainly appear, as well from other Instances, as from what I observ'd lately with regard to Fordun's *Scotichronicon*. The *Petegreu* mentioned in the Note abovesaid is still to be seen at the end of the MS. together with the Limnings or Pictures (all but that of William Rufus and Henry I. which are cut out) of the Kings of England from William the Conquerour to Hen. VI. inclusively, and this additional Part is also cited by Weever, but in that he happens to distinguish rightly, making it, as it is, quite different from any Piece of Robert of Gloucester's Writings. The Pictures I have omitted, but the rest I have printed in my Appendix¹, and, I hope, I have thereby obliged those that have any respect for our Antiquities.

§. XII. The Reader will perceive at first sight, that these Rhythms are much shorter than those of Robert of Gloucester. And indeed in this very MS. in the Body of the Book, is also a great Number of other Rhythms, that are also shorter than Robert's, I mean such as relate to Richard the First; (which nevertheless are erroneously ascrib'd by Dr. Fuller² to Robert of Gloucester:) but then I have quite

¹ Num. III. ² Ch. Hist. I. the Margin calls them Robert III. p. 43. where he gives us of Gloucester's: the following Rhythms, and in d 4 King

omitted all these, partly because they are (in many respects) strangely Romantick, and partly because they are of the same kind with those that were printed by Wynkyn de Worde in the Year 1528. under the Title of *The Story of the noble Kyng Richard Cure de Lyon*, of which I never yet saw but one Copy, which is that in the Bodleian Library, that I formerly mentioned in a Letter about Geffry Chaucer that I writ in the Year 1709. to the before mentioned ingenious Mr. Bagford, which Letter I shall insert at large in my Appendix², partly because (provided I may be allow'd to say this) it was much approved of by my late very honest and learned Friend Mr. John Urry, to whom somebody had communicated it, and partly because it happened to be, upon several accounts, commended by some other Persons of distinction,

* *Jafes*,
(saith
Fuller)
that is
Joppa in
Palestine.

King Richard wyth gud entent
To yat cite of * *Jafes* went
On morn he sent astur Sir Robert Sakevile
Sir William Wateruile
Sir Hubart and Sir Robart of Turnham
Sir Bertram Brandes and John de St. John.

Which very Rhythms I find also MS. of the Herald's Office, where
in those about Richard I. in the they are thus express'd:

Kyng Richard with good entent
To that cite of *Jafes* went.
On morn he sent astur Robert Sakeuile,
& Sire Willeam the Wateruile,
Sire Hubert & Robert of Turnham,
Sire Bertram Braundis & John de Seynt Johan.

¹ §. III. ² Num. IV.

to

to whom it was occasionally shew'd. Nor have I heard of but one more printed Copy of this Book about K. Richard (tho', without doubt, they were formerly common enough) and that is that in the Harleian Library, which is much more clean and perfect than the Bodleian Copy, as I am assured by my ingenious Friend the Reverend Mr. Timothy Thomas, M. A. and Student of Christ Church, who takes notice¹, that the Title Page of this Book has a wooden Cut of a *Knight on horseback*, attended by a *Squire*, and these words on the top of the Page,

Kyng Rycharde cure dulyon:

that there then follows on the other side of the Leaf,

The prologue

Orde kynge of glorye

Suche grace and suche vyctory

Thou sendest to kynge Rycharde

That neuer was found cowarde

It is good to here Jestes

Of his prowesse and his conquestes

Many romayns men make newe

Of good knyghtes and of trewe

&c.

and ² that at the End of the Book are these words:

¹ In his Letter to me Oct. 22. 1723. ² So in his Letter to me June 20. 1723.

¶ Thus endeth the story of the noble kyge Ry-
charde cure de lyon. Imprinted at London by
wynkyn de worde. The yere of oure lorde.

M. CCCCC and. XXVIII.

The Author of
which Rhythms a-
bout Richard I.
seems to have been
Robert of Brunne.

§. XIII. Now altho' I will not pre-
tend to discover the Author of the ad-
ditional Rhythms about our Kings to
Robert of Gloucester, yet (at present)
I am of opinion, that those about Richard the
first in the Body of the Book, as well as the
printed ones, were written by Robert of Brunne,
the same, I mean, that translated Robert
Grosthead's *Manuele pecche* (or *Manuel de
Pecche*) out of French, of which there is a small
Fol. MS. in the Harleian Library on Parch-
ment, wrote very near the Author's time,
having two Columns on each page, as those
Rhythms about Richard the first, in the MS.
of the Heralds Office, are likewise in two Co-
lumns, contrary to what Robert of Gloucester's
are. This MS. of Robert of Brunne's Transla-
tion begins with this Title in *Red letters*:

*Here bygynneþ the boke þat men clepyn in frenshe
manuele pecche þe whych boke made yn frenshe
Roberd Gros test Byshop of lyncolne.*

Adyr and sone and holy goste }
þat art o god of myztes moſte }

At þy wurschyp shul we bygyn }
To thame þe fend & shew oure synne }

Synne

Synne to shew vs to frame }
 God to wurschyp he fend to shame }

Shameful synne ys god to lete }
 Al þat men do boþe smale & grete }

þe grete withoutyn pryuyte }
 þat ben comune to me & the }

.

This Author became famous very soon, even in the Year 1303. 31. Edw. I. (above thirty Years before he finished his Chronicle, a most rare Work, and known to very few of our Historians and Antiquaries, which was in the Year 1338.) as appears from the following Lines, which conclude the second Column of the first Page of the said MS. Translation of *Manuele pecche*, and were sent me¹, with what I have already said about this MS. by my before mentioned ingenious Friend Mr. Timothy Thomas, and he did it the more readily, not only because they have the *Author's* (or rather *Translator's*) Name, but because there are in them some other Circumstances, which may contribute to know him more perfectly.

.

 To alle crystyn men undir sunne }
 And to gode men of brunne }

¹ In a Letter dated Sept. 19. 1723.

And speciali alle be name }
 he felaushepe of Symprynghame }
 Roberd of brunne greted go to }
 In al godenesse þat may to prow }
 Of brymwake yn kesteuene }
 Syre myle besyde sympryngha euene }
 y dwelled yn the pryorye }
 Fyftene zere yn cunpanye }
 In þe tyme of gode dane Jone }
 Of camelton þat now ys gone }
 In hys tyme was y here ten zeres }
 And knew and herde of hys maneres }
 Sybyn with dane Jone of clyntone }
 Fyue wyntyr wyþ hy gan y wone }
 Dane felyp was mayster þat tyme }
 þat y began hys englysh tyme }
 he zeres of grace fyl þan to be }
 A housynd & þre hundred & þre }

This Robert of Brunne the same with Stowe's Robert Brune. Stowe was certainly the Author of the Fragments, that I have printed in Heming. Stowe's Honesty, and the value of his Chronicle. A very remarkable Passage out of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, together with the same as it occurs in Stowe.

§. XIV. This Robert of Brunne is the same with Robert Brune, that is quoted in the Margin of the Folio Ed. of Stowe's Annals under the Year 1266. in the Reign of King Henry III. But what Book 'twas that Stowe made use of there, he hath not been pleased to acquaint us. Neither, indeed, is either Brune or Brunne mentioned in the valuable Fragments of Stowe, that I reprinted lately at the End of Heming from a Copy communicated to me by my ingenious and curious Friend Mr. John Murray. I call these Fragment's Stowe's, because I find the

the Conjecture I made in my Dissertation about them, *viz* not only that John Stowe was the Author of them, but that they belong'd to some short Chronicle, to which was prefix'd some Calendar, to be very just and true. For indeed they belong'd to Stowe's Summary or Abridgment of the Chronicles of England. For tho' I have not yet met with a Copy of this Summary with these Fragments, in which we have an Account of his Authors, yet in a Preface that he put to one Edition of his Summary, which ends in the Year 1573. he expressly tells us, that he was the Author of those Fragments. I never saw (that I remember) but one Copy of that Edition, and it was given me by my very learned Friend Mr. Baker of Cambridge. This Copy, tho' a little imperfect both at the Beginning and End, is a very great Curiosity (as indeed all Editions of the Summary are now Curiosities) and I esteem it the more, because I cannot learn, that this Preface is in any other edition. There is a Calendar at the Beginning, which confirms my Notion also as to that Point. For better satisfaction I shall reprint this Preface in my Appendix¹, as I should have done in Heming had it then been in my possession. The Reader will perceive by it the disingenuous dealing of Richard Grafton towards John Stowe, a Man tho' of no great Learning, yet of incredible Industry in collect-

¹ Num. V. ing

ing old MSS. and in preserving other Antiquities, and so faithfull an Historian, that he hath been much esteem'd by Camden and our greatest men, in so much that the famous Sir Roger Lestrangle, talking some Years before his Death with a very ingenious and learned Gentleman about our Historians, was pleas'd to say, *that it was always a wonder to him, that the very best that had penn'd our History in English should be a poor Taylour, honest John Stowe.* Sir Roger said a *Taylour*, because Stowe, as is reported¹, was bred a Capmaker (and so perhaps his Father Thomas Stowe was before him) and was of Merchant Taylours Company. The Trade of Capmaking was then much in fashion, Hats being not at that time much in request. But notwithstanding Stowe hath not declared what Book of Brune's it was to which he owed his Information, yet I find, that it was Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, before mentioned. For the very remarkable Verses, that Stowe hath printed (under the seventh Year of Edward I.) from Brune in pag. 201. of the said Fol. Ed. of his Annals, are thus express'd in the old MS. of Robert of Brunne's Chronicle, that I have now before me, and belongs to the Inner Temple Library, being given with other MSS. to that Society by the last Will of William Petit, Esq. late Keeper of the

¹ Coll. nostr. MSS. 62. p. 3.

Records in the Tower of London, one of whose Trustees being my learned Friend, before mentioned¹, John Anstis, Esq. 'tis by his means that I have had the Loan of it from that learned and honourable Society.

Edward did smyte rounde peny, halspeny, ferthyng,
 he croice passed² passed³ he bounde of alle horgbout he ryng.
 he kynges side falle he he hede & his name writen.
 he croyce side what cite it was in coyned & smyten.
 he pouere man ne he preste he peny prayles no þing.
 Men gyf God he lest, he sette him with a ferþing.
 A housand & tuo hundred & fourscore zeres mo,
 On his mone men wondred³ fist whan it gan go.

The Words are somewhat different in Stowe, and for that reason I shall here annex them, by which means they may the more easily be compared together. Whereas (saith he) before this time [A. D. 1279.] the penny was wont to haue a double crosse, with a crest, in such sort, that the same might easily be broken in the middelt, or into foure quarters, and so to be made into halfe pence or farthings: which order was taken in the yeare of Christ 1106. the 7. of H. the I. it was now ordained, that pence, halfe pence, and farthings should be made round, whereupon was made these verses following.

Edward did smite round peny, halfe 4 peny farthing.
 The crosse passes the bond of all throughout the ring:

Robert
 Brune.

¹ §. XI. ² Dele. ³ Sic, pro first. ⁴ There is a comma after *peny* in the 4to. Ed. 1592.

The Kings side was his head, and his name written,
 The crosse side, what Citie it was in, coyned ¹ or smitten.
 To poore man, ne to Priest, the peny fraises nothing,
 Men giue God aye the least, they feast him with a farthing:
 A thousand two hundred, fourescore yeares ² add mo.
 On this money men wondred, when it first began to goe.

The old money (adds Stowe) was not forbidden to goe
 with the new: and besides these monies there was
 coyned groates, containing four pence the peece.

Regist. of
 Bury.

The pound of esterling money at this time contain-
 ing 12. ounces, to wit, fine siluer (such as men take
 into foyle or leaues, & is commonly called siluer of Bu-
 therom lane) 11. ounces, 2. esterlings, and one feyling,
 and the othez 17. d.ob. q. to be alay. Also the pound
 ought to wey of money, 20 s. 3. d. by accompt, so that
 no pound ought to be aboue 20. s. 4. d. nor lesse then
 20. s. 2. d. by account. The ounce to wey 20. d.
 The peny to wey 24. graines, &c.

The late learned Bishop Fleetwood hath re-
 printed the whole Passage from Stowe, to which
 he hath added many curious Particulars of his
 own, in pag. 44. of his excellent Book called
Chronicon Preciosum, to which I shall refer the
 Reader.

Instead of the ano-
 nymous fabulous
 Rhythms upon Ri-
 chard I. I have in-
 serted the genuine
 ones of Robert of
 Gloucester, in a
 Continuation of
 the Harleian MS.
 from the Cottonian
 Library.

§. XV. To what hath been said about
 my omitting the foresaid Rhythms
 (the Author of which, I believe, was
 Robert of Brunne) another reason may
 be added, and that is this, that in their
 stead I have published the true ge-

¹ And pro or in dicta Ed. ² In qua Ed. and pro
 add habemus.

nuine ones upon that Prince of Robert of Gloucester himself, who left out whatever he thought Romantick, as we may gather from his own Words, and would therefore, without doubt, have pass'd by these, had they been in being in his time, which are so very fabulous as to be look'd upon only for their Antiquity, and as a Curiosity. I must confess, that these genuine Rhythms of Robert of Gloucester relating to Richard I. are wanting in the Harleyan MS. which ends in that Year of K. Stephen's Reign, in which the Empress Maud made her Escape from the Castle of Oxford, wherein she had been so long besieged by K. Stephen. But then they are extant in the MS. of the Cottonian Library, in which MS. the History is brought down to the latter End of K. Henry the Third's Reign, and 'tis from thence I have supply'd the Harleyan MS. the intire Continuation out of it being procur'd for me by my most generous Friend, before mentioned, the learned Dr. Mead, who, after he had got it transcrib'd wholly at his own Expenses, put it into the hands of another of my very good Friends the learned John Bridges, Esq. who is likewise mentioned above, and so it came safely to my hands.

The Harleyan MS. perfect, tho' it comes nothing near so low as that of the Cottonian Library. One Leaf, at least, is wanting in the Cottonian MS.

§. XVI. Notwithstanding the Harleyan MS. breaks off so early, yet since it ends about the middle of a Page, and with a full Line, 'tis justly look'd upon by Criticks as a perfect Book. So that, in all likelyhood, the Author carried

on the Work at first no farther, but after some time resumed it again, and brought it down to his own time. The Harleyan MS. seems to have been written in the Reign of K. Edward the Third, but the Cottonian one is judg'd to be about 50. Years older than the Harleyan. The Harleyan MS. agrees, (abating some Variations in the Language) so far as it goes, with the Cottonian one, and yet, without doubt, they were transcrib'd from different Copies, one from the Work as it was first finish'd by the Author, the other from a MS. that was compleated after the Author set about it again after some Intermission. The Cottonian MS. ends in the Year 1270. and so there wants but two Years to compleat Hen. the Third's Reign, who died Nov. 16. 1272. The Author undoubtedly finished that Reign, and 'tis agreed upon by such as have seen and considered it, that the Cottonian MS. which ends at the bottom of a Page, wants one Leaf, if not more, to fill up that Reign. And this, I think, is likewise confirm'd from some MSS. of Robert of Gloucester (whereof one is that in the Bodleian Library) which

which tho' they want all K. Henry the Third's Reign, ending the History with that of King John, yet they have the following Verses, in which a reason (tho' a very poor one) is given for omitting the Author's Account of the Battle of Lewis and Evesham in those MSS.

Henry his sone come aftir, & his londe þan nome,
And fifti zeer & sixe helde his kyndome,
And also twenty daies, and ded was I wis,
And buried at Westmenstre, þer his bodi zit is.
Ther were in his tyme two Batailles in londe,
At Lewes and at Evesham, as I understonde,
That were harde longe, & zit ne ben forzete nougt.
Ther fore in this boke ne ben thei nougt wrougt.
Of grace twelve hundred, & two and seuenti zeer,
Dede was the kyng Henry, as I seide zow eer.

Edward his sone than was, man of gret pris,
At Westmenstre crowyd, stronge kyng & wis,
That of Mallesche londe clenliche al ohte
He wan the Signorie, were thei never so protte¹.

§. XVII. Our Author, therefore, having brought his History to the End of the Reign of Henry the III. and being about to write that of Edw. I. was (as it seems to me) prevented from going farther by Death, but in what Year it was of

Our Author seems to have dyed in the Beginning of Edw. the First's Reign. Himself gives an express Testimony of the Time in which he flourished.

¹ E Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol. 58. p. 75. & Vol. 61. p. 232, 234. uti etiam è schedula quadam, mihi donata ab amicissimo ornatissimoque Juvene Jacobo West, A. B. è Collegio Balliolensi, qui

meam in gratiam eandem perquam benevole è Codice MS. exscripsit. Hanc autem schedulam ad calcem Vol. 97. Collectaneorum nostrorum inserui.

that King's Reign it doth not appear, tho', I think, it must have been after the sixth, because in pag. 224. he mentions K. Arthur's fair Tombe, in the middle of the Quire, before the high Altar at Glastonbury, which Tombe was so rais'd in the Year 1278. or the sixth Year of Edw. I. by order of that King. The chief Characteristick, that himself hath given of the time in which he flourish'd, is that about the Battle of Evesham in the Year 1265. when he tells us, that the day, on which it happened, was very dismal and dark, and that himself, to his great Fear and Astonishment, was an Eye-witness of this dreadfull dark time.

Swich was (saith he ¹) þe morþre of Einesham (uor bataile non it nas)

& þer wiþ Jesu Crist wel bule [i. unele] ipaied was,
 As he ſetwede bitokninge griſlice & gode,
 As it bel of him ſulue, þo he deiðe on þe rode,
 þat þoru al þe middelerd derk hede þer was inou.
 Alſo þe wule þe gode men at Eueſham me ſlou,
 As in þe Norþ Weſt a derk tweder þer aros,
 Sodeinliche ſuart inou, þat mani man agros,
 & ouer caſte it þoʒte al þut lond, þat me miʒte vnneþe iſe.
 Griſloker tweder þan it was ne miʒte an erþe be.
 An betwe dropes of reine þer belle grete inou.
 þis tokninge bel in þis lond, þo me þis men ſlou,
 Alor þretti mile þanne. þis iſei Roberd,
 þat verſt þis boc made, & was wel ſore aferd.

§. XVIII. This being so very clear and manifest a Testimony of the time, when our Historian lived, what reason can be thought of, that it should be overlook'd by the unknown Writer of some Remarks (sent me by the learned John Bridges, Esq.) at the bottom of the first Page of the Cottonian MS. touching the Age of Robert of Gloucester, especially since he pretended to draw his Proofs from the Author himself? One that undertakes such a Task should read every Passage over deliberately, and examine and sift them with the utmost care and nicety. But it seems this Writer rely'd more upon an interpolated MS. in the hands of the famous Mr. Thomas Allen of Gloucester Hall, than he did upon the genuine Work of the Author, and by virtue of that he brings Robert of Gloucester down to the latter End of Edward the Second, whereas he had no such Grounds to go upon in the genuine Book. “ I
“ have got copied” (saith Mr. Bridges ¹) “ half
“ a sheet ² out of the Cottonian MS. viz. The
“ remarks, at the bottom of the first page, in
“ an unknown hand, touching the age of the
“ Author, and his proofs collected from Rob.
“ of Gloucester himself, and also giving an ac-
“ count of two Fragments, which are inserted

¹ In his Letter to me Mar. 12. 172²/₃. ² See it printed in the Appendix, Num. VI.

“ in bits of Paper in the 71st fol. b. and 75. out
 “ of a Copy in the hands of one Tho. Allen of
 “ Oxford, which, as he says, extended no far-
 “ ther than to the Reign of K. Stephen, for
 “ which reason we at first imagin’d it to be the
 “ same with my L^d. Harley’s, but upon looking
 “ for the said inserted passages we find them
 “ both wanting. The said remarks are in a hand
 “ of about 100. Years standing. His first proof of
 “ the age of Robert is from a passage in K. Ar-
 “ thur, where he speaks of the finding that
 “ King’s bones at Glastonbury, from whence,
 “ he says, ’tis plain, that the Author liv’d after
 “ the time of Edw. I. whereas the Coffin with
 “ the Inscription, and that King’s bones were
 “ discover’d, according to Leland, in the time of
 “ Hen. II. of which you will be a much better
 “ Judge. His second proof is from one of the
 “ inserted passages, where ’tis said, that Seg-
 “ brit, or Sebert, King of the East Saxons, the
 “ Founder of Westminster Abbey, was buried
 “ there 706. Years ago; and he dying in the
 “ Year 617. brings the age of the Author to
 “ 1323. or the latter end of Edw. II. The third
 “ proof from fol. 98. b. is plainly a mistake, by
 “ taking Edw. the Confessor, there mention’d,
 “ for Edw. II. The Title in the Cotton MS.
 “ is in a hand very like Camden’s thus, *Historia*
 “ *Regum Angliæ ad Henricum tertium à Rob. Glo-*

“*cestrensi, qui eodem tempore floruit*, but the Latin is not elegant enough for him, in my opinion.”

§. XIX. Thus my excellently learned Friend, (who dyed just as I was putting the finishing stroke to this Work,) from whom I must humbly beg leave to dissent with respect to the last Proof, the Words being, as I conceive, to be understood not of Edward the Confessor, but of the first King Edward after the Conquest, in whose Reign Robert of Gloucester dyed. He justly acknowledg'd this King Edward to be a good Prince, but then as justly observes, that there was a vast Disproportion between K. Edward the Confessor and him, there being no Comparison to be made of the one with the other, if their Acts of Piety, Charity, Munificence and Hospitality be duly considered. But then whereas the Remarker observes¹, that several Leaves, relating to the History of Mellitus, to the Eucharist, and to Cedwall are wanting after fol. 71. in the Cottonian MS. this is certainly a mistake in him, and there is no doubt but the MS. is perfect there, and of much better Authority, than if they had been inserted. Interpolations (such as these are) are always to be look'd upon as Redundancies in any old Authors, and the MSS

Our Author rightly observes the vast Disproportion that there was between the pious Acts of K. Edw. the Confessor, and the first K. Edward after the Conquest. Interpolations are to be look'd upon as Redundancies, not as Perfections, in old MSS.

¹ See in the Appendix, pag. 610.

therefore, that are without them, are by no means deficient. Had I thought otherwise, I might have multiplied them from the MS. of the Heralds Office, where so much of this nature occurs, as I could also have strangely enlarg'd Fordun's genuine Chronicle, when I set him out lately, had I judg'd it proper for me to blend and confound the Interpolations and the authentick Work together, as they are done in some MSS.

Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Small-Coal Man, seems to have had a MS. of Robert of Gloucester. The learned Mr. Thomas Allen had two MSS. of him, one of which came to the Bodleian Library, the other to some unknown Hands.

§. XX. When I first saw by the anonymous Remarks, that the Harleian and Mr. Allen's MSS. notwithstanding their coming down to the same Period of time, were different, I began to be of opinion, that Mr. Allen's might have been the same, that was sometime in the Hands of the late Mr. Thomas Britton, the famous Musical Small-Coal Man, which is thus mentioned in the first Part of the Auction Catalogue¹ of his Books: *A Poëm of the Kings of Britain from Gurguyn Son of K. Belinus down to Henry II.* Tho' there be no Name to that Poëm in the Catalogue, yet I take it to be Robert of Gloucester's; but then that which makes me now think it to be different from Mr. Allen's is, it's not beginning so early as his did. So that perhaps this Copy of Mr. Allen came into some private Hands in

¹ Pag. 34. num. 14. of the MSS. in Folio.

France, and I fear, that it is now quite lost. That which gives ground to this Suspicion is, the Fate of much the greatest Part of Sir Kenelm Digby's admirable Library, which, after Sir Kenelm's Death, fell into some such private Hands in France, and 'tis certain, that his Library consisted, in a very great measure, of Books, that had belong'd to Mr. Allen. 'Tis true, Sir Kenelm gave a good number of the MSS. Mr. Allen had left him, to the Bodleian Library, not long after Mr. Allen's Death, and there is now among them a MS. of Robert of Gloucester, being the same that I have spoke of at the Beginning¹ of this Preface, and was us'd by Mr. Selden when he was writing his History of Tithes²; but then this MS. (which comes to the End of K. John) is different from that referr'd to by the Remarker, and therefore will not at all invalidate what I have said about it's being lost in France. Yet if, after all, it will not be allow'd, that it was among those Books of his that were dispos'd of in France, it is probable it came to some other Person in England than Sir Kenelm. For Mr. Wood observes, that many of Mr. Allen's MSS. did not come to Sir Kenelm, but some to Mr. Richard James, and others to Sir Tho. Aylesbury.

¹ §. I. ² Videsis Historiam nem ejusd. in quo opere citat dictam Decimarum, p. 206. & etiam Codicem Roberti nostri Auctorum Catalogum sub fi- in Bibliotheca Cott.

“ Soon after” [Mr. Allen’s Death, which hap-
 pen’d on Sept. 30. 1632.] “ the chief part of
 “ his” [Mr. Allen’s] “ Library of incomparable
 “ MSS.” (saith Mr. Wood ¹) “ coming into the
 “ hands of Sir *Kenelm Digby*, as the owner be-
 “ fore had appointed, they were the next year
 “ given by him to the *Bodleian* or publick Li-
 “ brary, where they yet remain. Some of them
 “ had before, and about the time of *Allen’s*
 “ death, been got from him by *Rich. James* of
 “ C. C. Coll. for the *Cottonian* Library, and others
 “ came into the hands of Sir *Tho. Aylesbury*,
 “ Master of the *Requests*, but where those are
 “ now, in truth I cannot tell.

Mr. Selden and
 Mr. Wood had a
 right Notion of the
 Age of our Author,
 who ought to be
 reckon’d among
 the Oxford Wri-
 ters.

§. XXI. But tho’ the Remarker was
 not so lucky as to adjust the Age of
 Robert of Gloucester, yet Mr. Selden,
 by distinguishing the spurious Chroni-
 cle from that which is genuine, very
 readily found it out, and accordingly in his
 Notes on Eadmer ², and in his great work *de*
Synedriis veterum Ebræorum ³, places him under
 Edw. I. about which time he hath placed him
 also in his *Titles of Honour* ⁴, and in his Preface
⁵ to Eadmer; (in which Preface he hath given
 us the Passage [something differing from the
 same as it is printed in his *Jani Anglorum facies*
altera] about William the Conqueror’s Sur-

¹ Athen. Oxon. Vol. I. col. 4to. ⁴ Ed. fol. 1631. p. 600.
 493. ² Pag. 169. ³ Lib. I. cap. ⁵ P. IIII.
 10. p. 167. Ed. Amst. 1679

vey) well knowing, that, notwithstanding a Leaf or two is wanting, in all likelihood, in the Cottonian MS. he finished the Reign of Hen. III. in which Reign, from the Passage above transcrib'd, he plainly understood that he flourished, and that, carrying the Work no farther, he could not survive long after, at least not long enough to write the Glories of the Reign of Edw. I. Mr. Selden began very early to be acquainted with him, and no body hath done him more honour. He look'd upon him as a very valuable Historian, and, therefore, hath occasionally quoted him in several Places of his other Works, (particularly many times in his *Notes and Illustrations on the first Part of Drayton's Poly-olbion*) as well as in his *Jani Anglorum facies altera*. Mr. Wood also had a right notion of his Age, but then he hath one Observation, that I have not met with elsewhere, and that is, that he was personally present at Oxford, when the Fray, I have spoke of¹, happened between the Scholars and the Townsmen in MCCLXIII. *Hæc mihi Inquisitio quædam* (saith that Author²) *super eâ re facta succincte exhibuit, cui nec repugnant Poëtæ³, ibi tum præsentis, carmina; quæ quamvis & succo careant & colore, cum ex novitate tamen delectationem nonnullam afferre possint, subjungi forte mereantur.* What authority

¹ §. VII. ² Hist. & Antiq. | ³ Rob. Glocestrensis in Hist. Univ. Oxon. l. I. p. 111. | metrica MS. fol. 152. b. 153. a.

Mr. Wood had for this does not appear, tho', I suppose, he found it either in Brian Twyne or Dr. Gerard Langbaine. But whatever that authority was, I do not doubt but he went upon very good and sure grounds, and I shall, for that reason, reckon Robert of Gloucester not only as an Oxford Writer, but as actually present in that University at the very time of that famous Scuffle.

Our Author seems to have resided in Oxford in an old House on the West Side of Stockwell Street.

§. XXII. It is said by several (and among others by Dr. Thomas Fuller¹) that he was a Monk of Gloucester. Nor do I know (at present) of any good reason to think otherwise. It is very likely, therefore, that as a Monk he was sent hither by some of the Directors of the great Abbey of Gloucester, to take care of the Youth here, that they had under their care. In so

1 " ROBERT of GLOUCE- " STER, so called, because a " Monk thereof. He is " omitted (whereat I wonder) " both by Bale and Pits, ex- " cept disguised under ano- " ther Name, and what I can. " not conjecture; they speak " truly, who term him a " Rhimer, whilest such speak " courteously, who call him a " Poet. Indeed such his " Language, that he is dumb " in effect to the Readers of " our age without an Inter-	" preter, and such a one will " hardly be procured. An- " tiquaries (amongst whom " Mr. Selden) more value him " for his History than Poe- " try, his lines being neither " strong nor smooth, but " sometimes sharp, as may " appear by this Tetrastick, " closing with a pinch at the " panch of the Monks, which " coming from the Pen of a " Monk is the more remark- " able.
--	---

* Cells or Portions.
 + Ruler or Governor, sed quære.

" In the Citie of Bangor a great Hous tho was,
 " And ther vndyr vii * Cellens and ther of ther † Nas
 " That c.c.c. Moncks hadde othur mo
 " And alle by hure travayle lyvede; loke now if they do so.
 " He

much, that I am apt to think, that, upon that score, he resided in an old House, where Monks¹ used to study, on the West Part of **Stockwell-street**, in the same Place where Gloucester College (afterwards styl'd Gloucester Hall, and at length Worcester College, on the West Side of which the Monks of Gloucester had a Mill²) was since founded in the Year 1283³. or, as others⁴ say, in 1281. by John Giffard Baron of Brimsfield, the same that was so famous for his Military Skill in the time of Hen. III. and

“ He flourished some Four
“ hundred years since under
“ King Henry the second,
“ and may be presumed to
“ have continued till the be-
“ ginning of King John,
“ 1200”. Fuller’s Worthies
of England, p. 358. in Glou-
cestershire. Dr. Fuller did
well to put in the Margin, *sed*
quære, his Interpretation of
nas being as wrong, as that of
the Author of an Essay about
the old English Poëts and Poë-
try, printed in the *Muses Mer-*
cury, which I have mentioned
in my Glossary, under the word
non. These Rhythms are ex-
stant also in p. 61. of the In-
troduction to Weever’s *An-*
cient Funeral Monuments,
where Weever likewise, by his
marginal explication (*seuen*
cels, or seuen portions, which
had everyone a seuerall head
or ruler ouer them) seems to
have been equally ignorant of

the true signification of the
word *nas*. By comparing these
Rhythms with the genuine
Robert of Gloucester, they
will immediately appear to be
corrupted. *nas* signifies *was*
not. The meaning of the
Passage therefore is, *and there*
was not one of those Cells,
but what had three hundred
or more monks.

¹ *Domus monachorum stu-*
dentium in Stockwell-street
Oxon. Coll. nostr. MSS. Vol.
88. p. 8. ² Coll. nostr. MSS.
Vol. 62. pag. 116, 117.
³ Hist. & Antiq. Univ. Oxon.
l. II. p. 338, 380. Reyn. A-
postol. Bened. in Angl. Tr. 3.
p. 53. Monast. Angl. Tom. I.
p. 540. b. Dugdale’s Baron.
Tome I. p. 500. Tanner’s No-
titia Monastica, p. 184. ⁴ See
Dr. Leonard Hutten’s Anti-
quities of Oxford, p. 324. pub-
lished by me at the End of
Textus Roffensis.

is mentioned, for that reason, towards the End of this History. Nor will it seem strange, that any Monks of Gloucester should be here before the Foundation of any such College, if it be considered, that they were extremely desirous of having their Youth educated in Academical Learning, and that this gave occasion, in good measure, to the said John Giffard to build that College in this Place, which he had observed his Neighbours, the Monks of Gloucester, to take so much delight in, and he was very willing to free them from hiring any Tenements, and from being at other Charges for the Education of their young Men, for the future.

The strange Mistake of Mr. Weever, with regard to the Age of Robert of Gloucester.

§. XXIII. Among others, that were conversant with the Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester, was John Weever, a person right famous for his very useful Book of ancient Funeral Monuments, where he hath published many Passages of this Chronicle, but with so little skill, that he not only confounds the spurious with the genuine Robert of Gloucester, but even ascribes the Prose part also to him. In pag. 60. of his Introduction, or Prefatory Discourse, he calls him Robert the Monk of Gloucester, and speaks of him as a Writer about the Year 1231, or the 15th. of Hen. III. And in the Book pag. 458, 459. brings him as low as Edw. I. in which he is right enough, provided he had not attributed

ted that to Robert of Gloucester which is none of his. But then he is quite out, when, in pag. 589. he brings him as low as Edw. II. and there transcribes a Passage in Prose, and calls it his, when it was really written by one, that lived in the time of Hen. VI. as the rest of the Prose was. 'Tis very strange, that so diligent a Man as Mr. Weever, should not see his Mistake, especially when he had the use of the very MS. that now belongs to the Heralds Office.

§. XXIV. As I find, that the true Sir-
name of Robert of Brunne was Man-
ning (for he calls himself in one Place
¹ of his Chronicle **Robert Mannyng of**
Brunne, now *Bourne* a Town in Lin-
colnshire where was a Monastery) so I wish also,
that I could discover the true Sirname of Robert
of Gloucester. I have endeavour'd to do
this, but as yet in vain. His Name does not at
all occur, either in an ancient or modern Hand,
in the Harleian MS. Nor does it so much
as once appear (that I know of) in the Text
of the Cottonian MS. except in the Passage
I have transcribed, where, however, we have no
Sirname of any kind. Indeed I have before
observed², that, at the beginning of that
MS. the History is ascribed to Robert of
Gloucester in a modern Hand, and 'tis by this
Name that he is called by Antiquaries and Hi-

Robert of Brun-
ne's true Sirname
was Manning.
But the true Sir-
name of Robert of
Gloucester does
not occur.

¹ See in the Glossary to this Work, p. 706. ² See §. XVIII:
storians,

Robert of Gloucester, but the Words being written on a Page, where no new matter begins, and it being in a Prose part of the Book, and that too in the Story of the Saxon Times, and there being not the least reference to any Thing in the Volume, I take them as put down at random, and not to belong, in the least, to the Author. And this is all I have to say with respect to this MS. unless it be, that, after the Reign of Henry the Third, the History goes on in Prose (being the same, abating some Alterations, as usually happens in MSS. of this kind, with Caxton's Chronicle, which John Stowe¹ is pleased to style a fabulous book, compiled by a nameless Author, but printed by William Caxton, and therefore called Caxton's Chronicle) to the famous Battle of Halidowne Hill, in the Year 1332. which was the sixth Year of K. Edw. the Third's Reign, in which the English got such an intire Victory of the Scots, and slew such a vast number of them, that, the Father of the Scottish Historians, John Fordun thought it too lamentable² a Subject, to enter into the particulars of it. In relation to this Battle there are some Verses in this MS. that are not in Caxton, for which reason I shall here publish them, advertizing at the same time, that, tho', perhaps, formerly there were other Leaves (for there are the Remains of

¹ Annals, p. 307. Ed. fol. ² Scotichronicon, p. 1022.

one, that had been cut out, now plainly to be seen in it) in which, probably, the History had been carried somewhat farther, yet, at present, these Verses are the very last part of the History, and are brought in thus: — and þan þe Englyſſhe mynſtrelle betyn hure tabrys, & blowyng hure trompys, and pypers pypendyn loude, and made gret ſhoutte vppon þe Scottes, & þan hadde þe Englyſſhe bachelerys eche of hem two whynges of archers, þe whyche at þe aſſemble orpydly drawyn hure bowes, and ſo þey ſmot þe Scottes, þat þey felle to grounde by many þouſandys, and anone þe Scottes by gonne to fle fro þe Englyſſhemmen, for to haue hure lyues. But whan þe knabyſ, þat were byhynde þe Scottes, to kepe hure horſis, ſawe þe diſcomfitour, þey prikyd away hure maiſtryſ horſ, to kepe hem ſelf fro perile. And þan þe Englyſſhemmen toke many of þe Scottyſſhe horſ, and þey priked after þe Scottes, and ſlow hem doune ryghte, and ſo men myghte ſe þe worþy and noble kyng Edward of Engelond, and his folk, how manfully þey chaſtyde þe Scottes.

¶ There þan men myghte ſe,
Many a Scott ſwiftly fle,
And þe Englyſſhemmen after prikyng,
With ſharpe ſwerdys þe Scottes ſtykyng,
& þer hure banerys weryn founde
Al diſplayd lyeng on grounde,
And þay lay ſprad on blood,
As þey fougheten on þe flood,
That þe Englyſſhemmen drent ſhold þe,
For þat þey hoppyde to ſe.

For so hey hoppyde to spede,
 Seyng he flood hat was on Twede.
 For he Englishemen myghte not fle,
 But yf adrent hey shold be.
 & han herto lob hey were,
 For hey boughte noughte in suche fere,
 But hey kept hem on londe,
 So hat he Scottes myghte noughte stonde.
 For hey were fillid to grounde,
 Many a housand in hat stourde.
 & he Englishemen purseywid hent so,
 For the flood was al a go;
 And hus he Scottes discomfityd were
 In lytil tyme wip gret fere.

This Work is a
 great Curiosity.
 The Reproach in
 neglecting the
 black Letter.

§. XXVI. I have now finished what I
 had to say (and, I fear, I have writ
 too much) by way of Preface about
 Robert of Gloucester. He is certainly a

great Curiosity, and I do not doubt, but he will
 be esteem'd as such. As the Acts of the Apo-
 stles, that I published from Archbishop Laud's
 MS. is the first intire Book, that was ever
 printed in England in Capital Letters, so this
 Chronicle of Robert of Gloucester is the very
 first intire Book, that was ever printed in this
 Kingdom (it may be, in the whole World) in the
 manner I have done it, that is, in the black Let-
 ter,

ter, with a mixture of some Saxon Characters, which is the very Garb that was in vogue in the Author's time. The Saxon Characters, that are intermix'd, are ȝ or ȥ, (which some represent by ȝ,) þ or ƥ (the top of which in many MSS. among which are to be reckon'd those of this Author, is made a little too short, viz. p, just like the Saxon double u) p or w (which, however, is but here and there) and y or ƿ. I am very sensible, that the Obsoleteness of the Language will deterr many from Reading this very usefull Historian; but to such, as shall be pleased to make themselves acquainted with him (in order to which the Glossary, I have drawn up and subjoyn'd, may be of some service) he will appear very pleasant, entertaining and diverting, and they will value him the more, as he comes out in his primitive Dress. As it is a Reproach to us, that the Saxon Language should be so forgot, as to have but few (comparatively speaking) that are able to read it; so 'tis a greater Reproach, that the black Letter, which was the Character so much in use in our Grandfathers days, should be now (as it were) disus'd and rejected, especially when we know, the best Editions of our English Bible and Common Prayer (to say nothing of other Books) are printed in it.

Oxford April 14.

1724.

[In the present Edition, for the convenience of the Reader, the Roman Character has been adopted.]

Advertisement.

THE first Payment for this Work to Subscribers was one Guinea the large, and half a Guinea the small, Paper. The second Payment is to be the same with the first.

The Publisher is now printing (from a MS. in the Inner-Temple Library) **Peter Langtoft's Chronicle of England** (*as illustrated and improv'd by Robert of Brunne*) from the Death of Cadwalader to the end of K. Edward the First's Reign. To which will be added, besides a Glossary and other curious Papers, (1) *A Roll concerning Glastonbury Abbey, being a Survey of all the Estates belonging to that House at the Dissolution, taken by King Hen. the Eighth's order and for his use.* (2) *An Account of the Hospital of St. Mary Magdalen (near Bautre) in Nottinghamshire, by John Slacke, Master of that Hospital.* The Price of this Work (which will make two Volumes in 8^{vo}. and was never before printed) will be two Guineas the large, and one Guinea the small, Paper; whereof half is to be paid at the time of Subscribing, and the rest when the Copies are delivered. Subscriptions are taken in either by the Publisher at Edmund-Hall, or by John Rance at the THEATER Printing House, in Oxford.



¹ROBERT of GLOUCESTER's CHRONICLE."

ENGELOND² ys a wel god lond, ich wene of eche lond best,
Y set in þe ende of þe world, as al in þe West.
þe see goþ hym al a boutē, he stont as an yle.
Here fon heo durre þe lasse doute, but hit be þorw gyle
Of³ fol of þe selue lond, as me haþ y seye wyle.
From Souþ to Norþ he ys long eigte hondred myle:
And⁴ foure hondred myle brod from Est to West to wende,
A mydde þo lond as yt be, and noȝt as by þe on ende.
Plente me may in Engeland of alle gode y se,
Bute folc yt for gulte oþer zeres þe worse be.
For Engeland ys ful ynow of fruyt and of tren,
Of wodes and of parkes, þat ioȝe yt ys to sen.
Of foules and of bestes of wylde and tame al so.
Of salt fysch and eche fresch, and fayre ryueres þer to.
Of welles swete and colde ynow, of lesen and of mede.
Of seluer or and of gold, of tyn and of lede.

¹ *Adjeci.* ² *Vide Camdeni* | *pag. 7. Ed. Lond. 1629.* ³ *I. e.*
Remaines concerning Brittainē, | *folc.* ⁴ *Two Ar.*

Of stel, of yrn and of bras, of god corn gret won.
 Of whyte and of wolle god, betere ne may be non.
 Wateres he haþ eke gode y now, ac¹ at "be fore alle oþer þre
 Out of the lond in to þe see, armes as þei be.
 Ware by þe schippes mowe come fro þe se and wende,
 And brynge on lond god y now, a boute in eche ende.
 Seuerne and Temese, ²Homber yt is þe þridde.
 And þenne is as wo seiþ þe pure lond a midde.
 Homber bryngeþ by Norþ muche god and wyde,
 Seuerne by West³ Souþ," Temese by þe Est syde.
 So þat of god y now, þat in oþer londes ys,
 þer by comeþ to Engeland, þat no defaute nys.
 Yles þer beþ mony on a boute Engelande.
 Ac þer beþ to fore alle oþere þre ich vnderstonde:
 The yle of Man þat me clepuþ, by twene vs and Yrlonde:
 þe grete yle of⁴ Orkeneye bi gonde Scotlonde.
 þe þridde ys, toward Normandye, þe yle of Wyȝt by Souþe.
 þre þe beste yles þese beþ and ⁵mest couþe.
 þe firste lordes and maystres, þat in Engeland were,
 þese chef townes heo lette in Engolonde rere.
 London and Enerwik, Lyncolne and Leycestre;
 Colchestre and Canterbury, Bristow and Wircestre.
 Chichestre and Grauntebrigge, and þanne Cirencestre;
 Dorchestre and Wyncestre, and seþþe Gloucestre.
 And oþer grete tonnes, þat þo were in Walis.
 þis was þo in Engolond ⁶Brytones were y wys.

¹ Deest in Ar. ² And Hum-
 ber is the þrydde Ar. ³ Deest
 Ar. ⁴ Orcades Ar. ⁵ Most

of name couþe Ar. ⁶ þat Bru-
 tones Ar.

Engolond haþ i be y nome and ¹i worred y lome.
 First þoru grete lordes þe emperoures of Rome,
 þat fogte and wonne Engelond, and þat lond nome.
 Seþþe þoru ²Picardes and Scottes, þat to Engelond come,
 þat worrede and destruiode, ac al clene ne wonne it nogt.
 Seþþe þoru Englische and Saxones, þat hider were y brougt
 þoru Brutones forto helpe hem, and seþþe hem ouercome
 þe Brytones, þat hem hyder brougte, & þat lond hem bi nome.
 Seþþe haþ Engelond y be ³y werred y lome
 Of þe folc of Denemark, ⁴þat beþ nogt get wel y some,
 þat ofte wonne Engelond, and hulde yt by maystrie.
 þe fyfte tyme won Engelond þo folc of Normandie,
 þat a mong vs woneþ get, and schulleþ euer mo :
 We schul here aftur in þis boke telle of al this wo.
 Brytones were þe firste folc þat to Engelond come.
 Foure kynges heo maden þo in þis kyndome.
 þe kyng of West sex, & of Kent, & of Norþomber þe þridde,
 And þe kyng of þe March, þat was here amidde.
 þe Saxones and þe Englische þo heo hadden al an honde,
 Fyue and þritti schiren heo maden in Engclone.
 Souþsex and Soþerei, Kent and Estsex,
 Barkschire and Hamptschire, and þenne Myddelsex,
 Dorsete and Wiltschire, and Somersete al so.
 Deneschire and Cornewayle, and Gloucestre þer to.
 Schropschire, and of Wircestre, and of Herford.
 Chestre schire and ⁵Warwil, Derby and Stafford.

¹ Y wonne *pro* i worred *in* | red and y nome *Ar.* ⁴ þat were
Ar. ² Pictes *Ar.* ³ Y wer- | nought welcome *Ar.* ⁵ *Sic.*

Lyncolne ant Hontyndone, and of Bedesford.
 Bockyngham and Norþamptoun, and of ¹Oxenfoþ.
 Norþfolc and Sopfolc, and Grauntebrigge al so.
 Hertfort & Leycestre, and Nothyngam þer to.
 Euerwik and Cardoel, and Norþomburlonde.
 þese schires wiþ oute Walis beþ alle in Engolonde.
 Seuentene bischopriches in Engeland beþ also.
 Cardoil, and Duram, and Euerwik þer to.
 Of Ely and of Cauntarbury, of Norþwiche, of Rouchestre,
 Of London, of Salusbury, of Chichestre, of Wynchestre,
 Of Lyncolne, and of Chestre, and of Wircestre,
 Of Herford, and of Baþe, and al so of Excestre.
 þenne þer beþ in Walis þre wiþ oute more,
 Seynt Daud, and Landap, and seþþe Bangore.
 Of Euerwik and Canterbury beþ erchbischopes two.
 Duram beþ and Cardoil vnder Euerwik y do.
 And alle þe oþer of Engolond, and al so of Walis,
 Under þe erchbischoþ beþ of Canterbury y wis.
 þe Saxones in heore power þo heo were so riue,
 Sene kynges heo maden in Engelande, and seþen bute fyue.
 þe kyng of Norþomberlond, and of Est Angle al so;
 Of Kent, and of West Sex, and of þe March þer to.
 þe kyng of þe March þilke tyme hadde wel þe beste,
 Muche del of Engolond, þe on half al bi Weste.
 Wircestre schire, and Warwik, and also of Gloucestre,
 þat ys nez al þe bischoþ riche of Wircestre.
 He hadde eke þer to Chesturschire, and Derbyschire also,
 And Stafford schire, þat beþ alle in on bischopriche y do,

¹ L. Oxenford.

In þe bischop riche of Chestre; and get he hadde þer to
 Schropschire som, and half Warwik schire al so.
 þis kyng hadde eke Herfortschire, þat on bischopriche is;
 Ac Schropschire naþ haluendel to þilke bischopriche i wis.
 And som of Gloucestre schire, and of Warwik schire al so.
 get hadde þe kyng of þe March wel more lond þer to,
 Northamptschire, & Bokyngham, and þe schire of Oxenfort;
 Leycetre, and Lyncolne, and þe schire of Hertfort;
 þat is al on bischopriche, þat of Lyncolne ys,
 þat wule was at Dorchestre bi syde Oxenfort iwis.
 get hadde þe kyng of þe March Notyngham schire þer to,
 In þe bischop riche of Euerwik, ac þo nas hit nogt so.
 And al Walis get þer to, þat a gret lond ys:
 Al þis was þenne y cleped the March of Walis.
 For þat lond þat bi twene Homber & the water of Temese y wis
 Ich wene in þe bischop riche of Lyncolne ys.
 And þe bischop riche of Lyncolne, and bi West al þat lond,
 þe kyng som tyme of þe March hadde al in hys hond.
 þe kyng of West sex hadde þo al Wilt schire y wys,
 And Dorsete and Barkschire, þat o bischopriche is.
 þe bischopriche of Salesbury, & al Souþsex, he hadde also,
 þe welde & al þe bischopriche of Chichestre þer to.
 And Souþampschire & Soþerey, þat on bischop riche ys.
 þe bischopriche of Wynchestre, þat get ys þere y wys.
 And Somersete, þat to Welles þike tyme drow,
 And now ys þe bischop riche of Baþe, ge wyteþ wel y now.
 Sepþe hadde þe kyng of West sex al Denene schire y wys,
 And Cornewayle, þat in þe bischopriche of Exetre ys.

þe

þe kyng of Kent was þo kyng of al þo lond of Kent,
 þer were two bischopes, & get nys it nogt y went.
 þe bischopriche of Canterbury, þat of Engelond ys hext,
 And þe bischopriche of Roucestre, þat in the West syde is next,
 þe kyng of Est Angle kyng was of Northfolc,
 þe bischopriche of Northwych, and al so of Sopfolc.
 And of þe bischopriche of Ely, þat þe yle of Ely ys,
 And of al Cambrugge schire, þat þerto falleþ y wys.
 þe kyng of Northumburlonde kyng was ich vnderstonde
 Of al þo lond bi gonde Homber anon in to Scotlonde.
 þese fyue kynges were þo, ac bute on now þer nys.
 For þe kyng of West sex al þe oþer wan y wys,
 And was seþþe al one kyng, as oure kyng now ys.
 Here afturward in þis bok me schal here al þis.
 In ¹þe contre of Canterbury mest plente of fysch ys.
 And mest ²chase a boutte Salesburi of wylde bestes y wys,
 At London schippes mest, & wyn at Wyncestre.
 At Herford schep & orf, & fruyt at Wircestre,
 Sope a boutte Couyntre, yrn at Gloucestre,
 Metel, ³as led & tyn, in þe contre of Excestre.
 Euerwik of fairest wode, Lyncolne of fayrest men,
 Grantebrugge and Hontyndone mest plente of dup fen.
 Ely of fairest ⁴place, of fairest sigte Roucestre.
 Euene ageyn Fraunce stonde þe contre of Chichestre,
 Norwiche ageyn Denemarc, Chestre ageyn Yrlond,
 Duram ageyn Norwei, as ich vnderstonde.

¹ *Vide* Camden's Remaines, | ry, & wild bestes y wys *Ar.*
 p. 8. ² Chalke at Saresbu- | ³ And *pro* as in *Ar.* ⁴ Plate *Ar.*

þre wondres þer beþ in Engolond, none more y not.
 þat water of Baþe ys þat on, þat euer ys yliche hot.
¹ And fersche & euere springe, ne be chele no so gret.
 Suche baþes þer beþ fele in þe clos & in þe stret."
 Upon þe pleyn of Salesbury þat oþer wonder ys,
 þat ² Stonhyngel ys y clepud, no more wonder nys.
 þe stones stondeþ þer so grete, no more ne mowe be,
 Euene vp rygt & swyþe hye, þat wonder it is to se :
 And oþer liggeþ hye aboue, þat a mon may be of a ferd,
 þat vche mon wondre may how heo were first a rered.
 For noþer gyn, ny monne's strengþe, yt þynkeþ, ne mygte yt do.
 Telle me schal here afturward of þis wondres boþe two,
 And how heo were first y mad. þe þridde wonder ys
 Up þe hul of þe pek. Norþ wynd þere y wys
 Out of the erþe ofte comeþ, of holes as yt were,
 And bloweþ vp of þilke holes, so þat yt wolde a rere
 And bere vp grete cloþes, gef heo were þer ney,
 And blowe hem here and þere vpon þe lofte on hey.
 Fayre ³ weyes monyon þer beþ in Engolonde,
 Ac foure mest of alle þer beþ ich vnderstonde,
 þat þe olde kynges mad, wer þoru me may wende
 From þe on ende of Engeland uorþ to þe oþer ende.
 From þe Souþ tilleþ in to þe Norþ ⁴ Eningestret ;
 And from þe Est in to þe West Ikenildestrete.

¹ *Desunt in Ar.* ²Stonhenge
Ar. ³ *Vide Dugdalii Antiqui-*
ties of Warwickshire, p. 6. &
Ductorem nostrum Historicum,
Vol. II. p. 77. ⁴ Erming-
 street vulgo. *At in Ar.* lyne

pro Eningestret habemus. Sic
enim illic :

Lyne me clepeth eke thulke
 wey, he goth thorgh Glou-
 ceter,

And thorgh Circetre euene
 also,

From Douere in to Chestre tilleþ Watlingestrete,
 From Souþ Est in to Norþ West, and þat ys som del grete.
 þe ferþe is mest of alle, þat tilleþ from Tottenais,
 From þe on ende Cornewayle anon to Catenays,
 Fro þe Norþ Est in to Souþ West in to Engelande's ende:
 Fosse me clepuþ þike wey, þat by mony god toun doþ wende,
 So clene ¹ lond ys Engolond, and so pur with outen ore,
 þat þe fairest men of þe world þer inne beþ y bore.
² So clene, and fair, & purwyt, among oþer men heo beþ,
 þat me knoweþ hem in eche lond bi sygte, where me hem seþ.
 So clene al so is þat lond, & monne's blod so pur,
 þat þe gret vnel comeþ not þer, þat me clepuþ þo ³ holy fur,
 þat ⁴ for^u freteþ monnes lymes, rygt as heo were ⁵ brende.
 Ac men of France in þilke vnel ⁶ me syþ sone a mende,
 gef heo ben brougt in to Engolond: war þorw me may wyte,
 þat Engeland ys lond best, as yt is y write.

also, and thorgh Wynchestre.
Verum his de viis videsis trac-
tatum egregium, (ab Amico
doctissimo Rogero Galeo scri-
ptum, & à nobis in VI. Volu-
mine Itinerarii Lelandi edi-
tum,) cui titulus, "An Essay
 towards the Recovery of the
 Courses of the four great Roman

ways," *ubi (p. 106.) frag-*
mentum Roberti nostri de iis-
dem, ad fidem Codicis Digbei-
ani, exstat.

¹ A lond *Ar.* ² So clene, so
 whyte, so fayr of hew, among
Ar. ³ Wilde fuyr *Ar.* ⁴ Deest
Ar. ⁵ For brende *Ar.* ⁶ Ofte
 me sykþ amende *Ar.*

FRO þe by gynnyng of þe world, to þe tyme þat now is,
 Sene ages þer habbeþ y be, as sene tyme y wys.
 þe firste age & tyme was from oure firste fader Adam
 To Noe, & seþþe þo oþer from Noe to Abraham.
 þe þridde was from Habraham forte Moyses com,
 þe ferthe fro Moyses to Daud kyndom.
 þe fyfþe was from Daud to þe transmigracion
 Of Babilonye, & þe sixþe to þe incarnation,
 þat is, forte God was y bore. þe sene was & ys
 From oure Lorde's burþe time to þe worlde's ende y wys.
 'þo Adam was first y mad, & hys of spryng wex wyde,
 Heo by gonne at þe on ende of þe world, al in þe Est syde.
 Seþþe it wex wyde a bout, fro lond to londe,
 So þat in þe þridde age it wes er it come to Engelande.
 For in þe tyme bi twene Abraham & Moyses it was,
 þat men come to Engolond. ich wol telle gou þat cas.

A Batayle þer was while in þe contre of Rome,
 þe meste þat euer was, as me hap herd y lome :
 þe bataile of Troie, þat laste fele ȝer.
 Mony was þe gode body, þat y slawe was þer.
 For þer nas knygt in mony londe, ny stalewarde man,
 þat in þe o syde þer was; & al for a² wommon,

After þat Adam maked
 was his ofspryng wax wyde,
 At on eynde of þe worlde hit

gan in þe Est syde *Ar.*
² Womman *Ar.*

þat

þat Elyne was y clepud, þis bataile first bi gan.
 An hey mon þer was by fore, þat me clepude Dardan.
 Of hym com þe gode Bruyt, þat was þe firste man
 þat lord was in Engeland, as y zou telle can.
 Dardan bi get Troye, þat god mon was & wys.
 Troie bi get Priamus, & al so Anchis.
 þese were in þis batail of mest mygt and mayn.
 Anchis bi get Eneas, and Eneas Ascayn.
 Ascayn bi get Silui, of whom þe Brut com.
 For Eneas aftur þe bataile Ascayn ys sone nom,
 And Silui Ascaine's sone, & oþer þat þer were,
 In to þe lond of Lumbardy wende, & wonede forþ þere.
 þo Silui hadde bi gete a child, fayn he wolde y wyte,
 What mon þat child schulde be, þat he hadde y gete.
 A clerk þoru enchantement hym bi gan to telle,
¹þat þe schulde first fader and moder quelle :
 And seþþe he schulde mony lond ouer passe and wende,
 And mony bataile ouer come, and seþþe, at þe ende,
 To a noble lond he scholde come, & þere al lord be,
 And kynges come of hys blod, & þat me schulde se.
²þat Eneas bi gan hys of spryng to Lumbardie first brynge
 þre þousant & sixe & tuenti ger fro þo worlde's bi gynnyng.
 þo þe clerk hadde y seid hys enchaunterye,
 þer fore Silui hym let sle. ac þat was lytel maistrie.

¹ þat þat childe sholde furst
Ar. ² þre þousend yer and
 foure skor fram þe worlde's
 gynnyng Was, byfore þat
 Eneas hys tem to Itaille

þus gan brynge. þo þis clerk
 hadde y sed al hys enchaun-
 terye, Siluius let hym sle.
 litel was þat maistrye. *Ar.*

For hit com ner þe later, as he hadde y seyð.
 For ¹ in trauayl of hys beryng hys moder was first ded.
 þo þis child was y bore, me lette hym clepe ² Bruyt.
 First lord he was in Engolond, of wham me spekeþ get.
 þe child wex & wel þrof, as þe clerk seyde er.
 Sepþe þo yt hadde þe elde of fyftene ger,
 As he wolde schete an hert, al a zeyn hys wille
 To deþe he schet ys owne fader, þat he lay þer stille.
 Hit hym for þougte sore y now, ac noþeles get he was
 Out of þat lond ydriue for þat deolful cas.
 In to þe lond of Grece he wende, & þo wonede he þere
 Of þe kynde of Priamus mony men, þat þor were,
 þat wer þer of hys nexte blode, þat were þer in seruage.
 Here elderne þer by fore were y nome in ostage
 Fram þe bataile of Troie, in wreche as it were,
 For þe grete slaugt and wo, þat here kynde dude þere.
³ þe Bruyt among hem com, to such prowes he drow,
 þat ⁶ al þe kyn, þat hym say, hadde of him joye ynow.
 So þat at þe laste, þo he ⁷ in stat was,
 And þem þougte, þat ys pere in þe world nas,
 þe folc of þat ilke blode aboutein hym drowe faste,
 þat he scholde ys owne kynde of þat seruage caste.
⁸ Heo comen alle a bouten hym, so þat þe Brut y sey,
 þat heo were of gret power, & noble folc & hey,

¹ In trauail as he was bore,
 his moder was þo deed *Ar. è*
regione vero (in margine)
manu recentiori, his mother
 dyed in childe bede. ² Brut
Ar. ³ Yut *Ar.* ⁴ And þenne

Vol. I.

fond he þere *Ar.* ⁵ þo þat
 Brut *Ar.* ⁶ Al his kyn, þat
 wisten hit, þer of had ioie y
 now *Ar.* ⁷ Manne's stat *Ar.*
⁸ Hy come al a bouten hym,
 & whanne hem alle he sey,

G

Hym

Heo garkeden hem to gedere, þat a fair ost yt was.
 To þe kyng of Grece he sende, þat hatte Pandras,
 þat heo scholde so noble folc, þat of so gret blod come,
 Out of seruage lete, and out of þraldome,
¹ Or hym ne schulde not wondry, þay heo dude here mygt
 With here bodies, þat aȝte be so free, for to wynne here rygt.
 þo kyng hadde in hys þoȝt gret ² bysmar of þis kyng.
 He ³ garkedede is ost anon, to grounde hem to bryng.
 þis Brut a ȝeyn hym with ys ost wel wyssyche drowe.
⁴ Heo smyton þer a batayle hard and strong ynow.
 þe prowes þat þe Brute dude no tonge no telle ne may,
 Mony was þe gode body þat hym self slou þat day.
 What halt yt longe to telle? Hys son he ouercom,
 And Pandras, þe stronge kyng, as ⁵ pryson he nom.
 þis kyng þo he was y nome, here wille dude anon,
⁶ And broȝte hem out of þraldom, þo he say non oþer won.
 He by gan to loue Brut so muche, for ys faire cheiance,
 þat he wyllede, mest of alle þynge, to hym enlyance.
 "Brut," he seyde, "þou art now þe beste body þat ys.
 "For þe noble kyn, of wom þou art, & for þi prowes y wis,
 "Ych obligi me to þe, and my kyndom al so.
 "A doȝter ich haue of gret prys, & noble & god al so,
 "Y ȝeue here þe to þi wyf, &, ȝef þou wolt by leue here,
 "þe þridde del ⁷ my kyndom y ȝeue þe to be my fere.

Bellum.

Capcio
regis.

Hym þoughte he hadde power
 ynow of noble folk & hey. He
 gaderede hem alle to gedere
 faste, a fayr oste þer was *Ar.*

¹ Oþer hym ne sholde nought
 wondry, þough hy, for hure
 ryht, Wiþ hure bodies make

hem fre dude þer to hure
 myght *Ar.* ² Skorne *Ar.* ³ Or-
 deyned *Ar.* ⁴ Hy *Ar.* ⁵ Pri-
 soner *Ar.* ⁶ þo he non oþer
 bote y sey, he yaff hem hure
 fredom *Ar.* ⁷ Of my *Ar.*

" And

“ And gef þou nylt not here be, ac wolt get fonde more,
 “ Gold & seluer ich wol þe geue, & y now of eche store:
 “ And take ¹ þe my dogter: for mon þou art y wys,
 “ To wynne get a kyndom, wel beter þan myn ys.
 þis kyng & þe Brut were at on, þat to wyf he tok
 Hys dogter Innogen, ac hys lond he for sok.
² þe kyng tok Brut ys owne body, in ostage as yt were,
 For te hit were to gedere y brogt al þat ³ he wolde a rere.
 He lette sende hys messageres in to al Grece wel wyde,
 And ⁴ lette fulle corn, and oyl, & wyn, by ⁵ iche syde.
⁶ Me chargede þre hondret schippes, & foure & twenti þer to,
 þer wyþ, & mid al oþer god þat mygt þer inne do.
 þo þis schippes gare were, and ful of ⁷ ruche gode,
 And þis mayde y spoused was of so ⁸ riche blode;
 þe kyng de lyuerede þat folk out of seruage,
 And Brut de liuerede þe kyng out of hys ostage,
 And nom hys leue fayre of hym, and þonkede hym all gode,
 And nom with hym al þat folk, þat he fond þer of hys blod,
 And hys wyf Innogen, and to schip wende,
⁹ Heo nuste toward wuche lond, but as God hem sende.
 þe deol þat made Innogen, no tonge ne telle ne may.
 Heo cryede and wep with sorwe y now, & ofte y swone lay.
¹⁰ þo ho wende from al hire kyn, & from al þing þat heo knew,
 And nuste on erþe whiderward, bute as þe wynd hem blew,
 And wiste þat heo ne schulde neuer a geyn com ny go,
 Ne se fader, ny oþer kyn, lord! þat hire was wo?

Sponsacio
Innogen.

Recessus
Bruti.

¹ To þe my doughter, for	Ar.	⁵ Euery	Ar.	⁶ He	Ar.
noble þou ert and wys,	Ar.	⁷ Eche	Ar.	⁸ Heygh	Ar.
² þe kyng to Brut his body		⁹ þey	Ar.	¹⁰ When sheo	
toke, Ar.	³ Hy	Ar.	⁴ Het	wende	Ar.

Brut hire cluppede and cussede, & comfortede hire y now,
¹ þat he ne mygte hire herte change, þat heo to sore ne drow.
 Twey dayes ² heo wende in þe se fro the lond of Grece,
³ So þat heo comen to an yle, þat me clepuþ Leogece.
 þider ⁴ heo gonne ryue, and Brut sende vp þere
 þre hondred men y armed wel, to loke wat lond yt were.
 þis men wende a boutte wyde, & mon fonde ⁵ heo non,
 Bute faire contre & wylde bestes mony on.
 A temple ⁶ heo fonde fair y now, & a mawmed a midde;
⁷ þat ofte tolde wonder gret, & wat þing mon bi tidde.
 þis men of þis wylde bestes cagte & schete y nowe,
 And to a store hem of mete faste to schip drowe.
⁸ Of the mamet heo tolden Brut, þat heo fonden þere,
 And he nom with hym taelue men þe beste þat with hym were,
 And a clerk þat kouþe enchantement, & to þis temple drowe,
 And offrede to þis mamet, and ⁹ honourede hym ynowe,
¹⁰ And ¹¹ forte wyte in what stude hys wonyng were.
 þo he hadde hys bone y do, he fel on slepe rygt þere.
 Hym þougte þe ymage in hys slep tolde hym hys cheance.
 “ Brut,” he saide, “ passe norþe al þe lond of France
 “ West, toward þike stude as þe sonne draweþ agen eue.
 “ þer þou schalt fynden a place ¹² god in to byleue.

¹ He ne myghte hure sorwe
 slake nought, to sorwe so heo
 drow *Ar. omisso þat.* ² He
 saileyde *Ar.* ³ Fort he come
 to *Ar.* ⁴ þey *Ar.* ⁵ Hy *Ar.*
⁶ Hy *Ar.* ⁷ þat Dyane god-
 esce cleped was, and tolde ofte

what bi tydde *Ar.* ⁸ Of þat
 godesce hy tolde Brut, þat hy
Ar. ⁹ Worsheped *Ar.* ¹⁰ O-
 mittit *Ar.* ¹¹ Forto *Ar.* ¹²
 Good and fair inne to byleue
Ar.

“ An

“ An yle god & riche y nowē, þe se goth al a boutē :
 “ Wule þat lond was y fulled with ¹ geandes strong & proude.
 “ And now yt ys as a wildernessē, for no mon ther inne nys.
 “ To þe it wole be god and riche, & to alle þyne y wys.
 “ And yt worþ an oþer Troie to þe, and so god,
 “ þat þer schul kynges come & springe of þi blod.
 þo Brut a wok of hys slep, & al þis vnder stod,
 Hys men he tolde al þis cas with wel ² bliþe mod.
 Heo garkedē hem & wendē uorþ, þe wynd was god y nog,
 So þat toward þe West here schippes euene drowg.
 So þat ³ with þritty dayes to Affric heo come,
⁴ And arst heo wende vp on þe lond, & fette hem prey y lome,
 And fogte & slowe mucche folk, for no mon hem at stod.
 From Affric þei wente uorþ with the wynd þat was god.
 So þat heo fonden in a stude here kynrede bi cas
⁵ Of noble mon Hercules, þat wyle of Troie was.
 Corineus hatte here souereyn, þat so strong was of honde,
 þat hym ne mygte no mon ne geant at stonde.
 þo þis folc to gadere com, and Brut Corineus fond
 þo strengest mon & þe meste þat hym þogte in eny lond,
⁶ Heo a coyntede hym a non, and bi comen frendes gode,
 Boþe for here prowes, and for heo were of on blode.
 þo þis company was strong, & more þan it was er,
 Al in on company heo wendē uorþ þer
 In þe see with god wynd, so þat at þe laste
 In to þe on ende of Gasycone þe wynd here schippes caste.

¹ Geauntz ferce & proute	a londe, and hure preye nome
Ar. ² Joyful Ar. ³ Byþynne	Ar. ⁵ Of þe noble Ar. ⁶ Hy
Ar. ⁴ And þer hy wende eft	a queyntede Ar.

Corineus þis stronge mon to hondred men with hym nom,
 And wende ¹ on lond to honty þo he to lond com,
² Forte porchase hem mete, and þe kyng Goffare
 (þat was kyng of þe lond) þo he was ware,
 þat such folk was y armed (as me seyde) & ryuen vp hys lond,
 And nuste wat folk it was, to hem he sende hys sonde,
 To wyte, weþer ³ he wold pes, oþer ³ heo nolde non.
 þe messageres ⁴ þei wenden uorþ metten hem ech on.
 Corineus with hys company as heo dude honte þere,
 Heo aschede at Corineus, how heo so hardi were,
 To honte vp þe kynges' lond, bute he leue hem geue.
 Corineus saide, þat he nolde nomon asche leue,
 To ⁵ honto and to wyne hys mete, & habbe solas & game.
 þe maister of þe messageres (⁶ Imberd was ys name)
⁷ Bende ys bowe & schette a non to Corineus to gronde.
 Corineus tok hys bowe of hym, & smot hym a wonde
 A bouen on þe scolle with ys owne bowe a non,
 þat þe scolle to breke in peses mony on.
 Hys felawes þo heo say þis bi gonne to fle echon,
 And tolde þe kyng fore how the game was al igon.
 þe kyng ⁸ made hym wroȝ y now, & no wonder yt was,
 þat strange men in hys owne londe dude hym such trespas,
 þat a sailede ys lond, and to robbery drowe,
 And robbede ys bestes and ys game, and hys men slowe.

¹ Up to hunt	<i>Ar.</i>	² Forte	hym, & Corneus in þat stounde.
<i>Ar.</i>	³ Hy	<i>Ar.</i>	⁴ As hy
wende forþ mette hem	<i>Ar.</i>		Bynam Hymbert his bowe
⁵ L. honte.	⁶ Hymbert	<i>Ar.</i>	anon, & ryght hym one wounde
⁷ Bende his bowe to shete			Right euene vpon þe skulle <i>Ar.</i>
			⁸ Hym made wroȝ ynow, <i>Ar.</i>
			He

He wende with al ys power, and sailede hem a non. Bellum.

And Brut & Corineus ¹ prest were, and here men echon;

And smyten a batail so strong, þat no tonge telle may

þat folk, þat þer was y slawe on cyþer side þat day.

Corineus ys ² swert sone brac, so strong he smot & faste.

For no swerd mygte with ys dunt none lengur laste.

Mid hym he hadde a stronge axe, þat mony mon brogte to deþe,

So strong & so gret, þat an oþer hit scholde hebbe vn neþe.

Corineus þer with harde smot & stured ³ hym a boutte,

And made his wey bi eiþer syde, and percede þe route.

Mid þre hondred knyghtes a duk, þat het Siward,

A sailede Corineus hymself ⁴ a forward.

He smot Corineus harde y nog, þat he hit sore felde,

And zet he hente þe stroc muche del vp on þe schelde.

Corineus was þo somdel wroþ, ys axe on hey he drow,

And smot hym vpon þe hed mid god earnest y now,

⁵ And for clef al þat hed, & the bodi a non to gronde.

þo mygte Siward segge, þat he hadde ys ⁶ is ¹¹ pere y fonde.

þo Corineus ⁷ was alles wroþ, so grete strokes he gaf,

þat þe body of eche þat he smot or þe hed he to clef,¹¹

Oþer he smot of þe ⁸ arm, or þe hond, or þe heued :

No lym þat he smot ⁹ mid þe bodi bi leued.

Amty place he made a boutte, ¹⁰ & folc fleu hym faste.

A wonder maister ¹¹ he was on, þat hem so kowþe a gaste.

¹ A redy were, to meten hem

echon *Ar.* ² Swerd *Ar.* ³ Hym

swyþe aboute *Ar.* ⁴ Al a

voreward *Ar.* ⁵ He for cleu-

ede al þat heued, his body fel

to grounde *Ar.* ⁶ Redundat.

⁷ Was forsoþ so wroþ, þat

such dundes he yaf, þat euery

þat he hitte aright, his deþ

forsoþ he haþ *Ar.* ⁸ Eren

Ar. ⁹ Was wiþ *Ar.* ¹⁰ þe

folk fleygh fulfaste *Ar.* ¹¹ þere

he was, þat hem *Ar.*

¶ 4

So

So faste he slow of þis men, and to gronde caste,
 þat þe kyng with a fewe men hymself flew at þe laste.
 þo þe batail was y do, Brut and þis Corineus
 A storede hem a bout of richesse and chateus,
 Of corn, of wyn, of alle god, & to schippe faste drowe,
 And brende þe contre, and þe folc faste slowe.
 þo heo hadde al bare imad þe contre al aboute,
 And ¹ heo wel y stored, of noþing þei were in doute;
 Heo wende to schip anon, & euene gonne dryue
 To þe contrei of Toures, & þere þei gonne a riue.
 A fair place heo cheson hem, & þere heo gonne a rere
 Walles wyde and strong ynow, casteles as hit were,
 And a storede hit wel y now, & here god þer inne bere,
 For to a bide þe kyng, gef he wolde a sayle hom þere.
 þe kyng Goffar þiderward gret power and ost nom
 Of France and of oþer londes, and toward Toures come.
 þo ² heo seye þe grete walles, casteles as it were,
 Ou! he seide, þe grete despit, þat y se to me here,
 þat ³ þis file and komelynges casteles leten rere
 Op on my lond baldeliche, as me for to a fere.
 Ne doþ heo me schame ynoz. how myzte heo do more?
 Bute y be þer of a wreke, y schal dye for sore.
 For Gode's loue, staleworþe men, armeþ zou faste,
 To sle þese komlynges, and here casteles a doun caste.
 þis folc hem armede anon, and baneres gonne rere,
 And departede here ost in twolf partyes þere.

¹ Hem self *pro* heo in *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* ³ þese foule kemelynges
Ar.

Brut ordeynede ys ost, and sette hem wyslyche,
 And with god herte a geyn þe folc wende baldeliche,
 þere heo smyton a batail, harde and strong ynow,
 And þis folc of Troie of þe Frensche faste slow,
 ge two þousand and mo in a lytul stonde,
 So þat þe Frenche were neg y brougt to gronde.
 And napeles here ¹ ferd wax faste a boutte wyde, Bellum.
 For heo hadde suche þritti men, as were on þe ² oper.
 For here power and here ost wax euere so faste,
 þat þis gode folk of Troie ouer come were at þe laste,
 And flow into here casteles, þo heo nadde oper won.
 þe ost withoute of France bi segede hem a non,
 And bi lai hem so faste, þat neg to gronde hem brogte.
 So þat Brut and Corineus an quoyntyse hem by þogte,
³ þat þis Corineus bi nygt wende out with gret route
 At a posterne stilleliche, þat heo nuste it not with oute.
 A morwe Brut with inne with ys ost out drowe,
 And smot with þis Frensche men batayle strong y now.
 þere were mony þousand ⁴ slawe in a stonde.
 Brut hadde a ⁵ neuue, þat mony brogte to gronde.
 For he slow mid his power, and ⁶ brogte to schame,
 Six hondred, as me seiþ, ⁷ Tourus was ys name.
 At þo last he was hym self y slawe, þer was deol y nowg.
 þo þe batail was ney y do, Corineus uorþ hym drowg.
 With six þousant noble men, out of an wode þere,
 And com vp þis Frenssche men, þo heo al weri were,

¹ Ost *Ar.* ² Adde, syde. ⁴ A slawe in a litel stounde
³ þat þis Corneus sholde out *Ar.* ⁵ Cosyn *Ar.* ⁶ Broughte
 wende by nyghte wiþ *Ar.* eke to *Ar.* ⁷ Tours *Ar.*

And slow hem to gronde al for nogt, so þat at þe laste,
 Heo, þat mygte of scape, bi gone to fle faste:
 And heo of Troye siwede with oute eny feyntyse,
 For wen þe strengþe faileþ, me mot take quoyntyse.
¹ þe Brut and Corineus hadde here wylle of þis þing,
 Heo lette here men, þat were y slawe, faire on erþe bryng.
 And Tours þe gode knygt, þat so muche folc er slowg,
 Brut lette brynge on erþe with honoure y nowg,
 And lette a fair tabernacle in honour of hym rere,
 And fair hous al abouten hym, & bi gan þe cite þere,
 þat noble cite was and ys, and for Tours þat þer lay
 þe cite me clepede Tours, as me doþ get to þis day.

BRUT & Corineus þo he hade here wille in al þe londe,
 He ² wende & saide al a boutte, for noþing mygte hem at stonde.
 Heo chargede here schippes faste and wel with alle gode,
 And wende uorþ with god wynd & wel dryuyng flode;
 And driue euer West ward, so þat in god pais
 Heo come here to Engolond to ³ hauene of Tottenais,
 To þe on ende of Engolond, as in þe West Souþe,
⁴ A lute bi fore Cornewail, as is an hauene's mouþe.
 þis was þre þousant, and foure score, and þre zer
 From þat þo world was first mad, þat ⁵ þat heo ariuede þer.

¹ þo *Ar.* ² Wende a boutte
 & preyede faste, ne myght hem
 nought astonde *Ar.* ³ þe ha-
 uene *Ar.* ⁴ A lyte by Norþe

Cornewaille, in Deueneshire
 hit is couþ. Hit was þre þou-
 sand *Ar.* ⁵ *Redundat.*

And

And er God were y bore euene yt was al so

¹ Ellene hondred ger and þritti ger and two.

þus com to Engeland þe firste men y wis,

þat euere wonede in Engeland, þat were Brut & hys.

þo Brut and his men þus come first a londe,

Heo wende a boutte wyde þe ² contreis forto fonde.

Gret plente heo fonde of fisch, as heo wente, by þe weye,

Of wodes and of riuers, as is in þe contrey.

Lond heo fonde god y now to tilie, and alle god,

So þat ³ to bi leue þer here herte fel and stod.

⁴ Heo fonden a vewe geandes, for broide men as yt were. Gigantes.

In to Cornewaile heo driue hem, in to olde diches þere.

Heo howsede and bulde faste, and erede and sewe,

So þat in lutel while gode cornes hem grew.

Corn & fruyt hem wex ynow, & fisch ynow þei fonde,

And of flesch, so þat heo were riche y now in astonde.

Bruyt bad Corineus forto chese of eche contre ywis,

Wuch hym were leuest to habbe to hym and to hys.

Cornewaile hym likede best, þerfore he ches þere

Corineus
elegit Cor-
nubiam.

To hym and to hys ospryng, ⁵ & for þer geandes were."

For he willede to fygte with geandes, & do hem schame.

þat londe he clepude Cornewaile, astur hys owne name,

Cornewaile astur Corineus, and in þis maner y wys

Corineus bi wan Cornewaile, to hym and to hys.

¹ Eneleuene hundred hit	hertes wel stood <i>Ar.</i>	⁴ Ge-
was, & þrytty yer þer to (o-	auntes a fewe hy fonde her,	
misso two) in <i>Ar.</i>	² Contrey	vnmete men as hit were <i>Ar.</i>
<i>Ar.</i>	³ þer to byleue hure	⁵ þe Geauntes to a fere <i>Ar.</i>

Brut

Brut huld to hym Engelond, he ne durste ¹ hym not playne,
 And aftur Brut ys owne ² nome he clepede hit Breteyne.
 Brytones me clepude alle men þat were of Engelond,
 As me clepede hem longe seþþe ³ for to now late ich vnder-
 stonde."

Gogmagog. **G**OGGOMAGOG was a geand swiþe grete and strong.
 A boute four & twenti fet me seiþ he was long.
 A gret ok he wolde ⁴ breide a doun, as it a smal gerde were,
 And bere forth in his hond, ⁵ þat folc forte a fere.
 He com with twenti geandes, and a sailede Brut faste.
 Brut with ys power slow þis geandes at þe laste,
 Alle bute Gogmagog, for hym ne slow he nogt;
 For he schulde with Corineus wrastele he hadde y þought.
⁶ So þat Corineus and he to gedere were y brogt,
Luctacio. þe wrastolyng bi twene hem was som del togt.
 þer was mony a strong breid, so þat ribbes þre
 þe geant brek of Corineus, as me mygte þer y se.
 In þe rigt syd two, and in þe list syde on.
 þo was Corineus somdel wroþ. he steredde hym a non,
 And gripte þis geant, and to an hey roche hym drow,
 þat stod a boue þe see an hey, & þer a doun hym ⁷ slow.
 So þat he was al to raced pecemel in a stonde,
 Eche lym from oþer, among þe roches, er he com to gronde.

¹ Hym no þyng playne *Ar.*

² Name *Ar.* ³ Fort Saxo-

nes gonne hit fonde *Ar.*

⁴ Braye a doun *Ar.* ⁵ þe folk

alto' a fere *Ar.* ⁶ þo *Ar.*

⁷ Flough *Ar.*

þat Corineus was al one lord of Cornewaile þo.
 Wan þe geandes were alle y slawe, þat þer bi leuede no mo,
 Brut wende forþ into Engolond, and aspiede vp and doun
 For to seche an ese place, to make an heued toun.
 He com and fond al vp Temese a place fair y now,
 In god contre & plenteus, þat is herte muche to drog,
 þat ¹ þe¹¹ schippes migte from eche lond bryng ² to¹¹ god ywis.
 þer he rerede hys heued toun, þat London i clepud is:
 Ac so ne clepude he yt nogt, bute þe Newe Troie.
 þer habbeþ kynges and moni oper ofte y be in ioie.
 Brut þis noble prince sones hadde þre
 By hys wyf Innogen, noble men and fre:
 Locryn, and Kamber, and Albanak al so.
 At þe laste dyede Brut, þo al þis was y do,
 Aftur þat he com to Engolond in þo four & twentipe ger.
 Y buried he was at London, þat he lette first rere.
 þis lond was deled a þre among þre sones y wys,
 Bi West Seuerne Kamber hadde, and so al Walis.
 Albanak bi gonde Homber: ac Locryn hadde best
 Al out that lond bi twene hem, fro þe Est to þe West.
 For þat he was eldeste, me lokede hym best by rigt.
 þese were as þre kynges, and men of muche mygte.
 þe kyng of Hungri ³ seppe com, Homber was ys name,
 In to Scotlond to werre, and do Albanak schame,
 And werrede vp hym faste, and at the laste hym slog.
 þo Locryn herde þis, sore he wes y nog.
 Aftur hys broþer Camber hasteliche he sende,
 And boþe with gret ost to ward the kyng wende.

Inceptio
Londini.

Obitus
Bruti.

Bellum.

¹ Deest Ar. ² Deest Ar. ³ Sup Ar.

He

He smyte a batail strong ynow (ne strengor mygte be)
 So þat Homber kyng of Hungri ¹ seþþe bi gan to fle
 In to a gret water þer, & a dreynt hym self with schame;
 þar fore me clepude þat Water þo Homber, aftur hys name,
 As me deþ get, and euer more wole, for þe cas
 þat Homber, kyng of Hungri, þer ynne a dreynt was.
 þo Locryn hadde al his ville, he a storede wel ys lond
 Mid Homber kynge's god, þat ² me of hys fond.
 þo fond ³ he þre damyseles, gent and fair ynowȝ,
 þat Homber with hym broȝte, to þe on ys herte drow,
 þat was of hem cheuenteyn, and þe kynge's dogter was
 Of Germanie, as hym þougte, in þe World hire pere nas,
 So whit, ne of such colour, ny in eche maner so gent.
 Kyng Locryne's herte was al clene vp hire y went,
 And tok hire forþ with hym mid gret honour y nowȝ,
 And þogte hire to spouse, so ys herte to hire drog.
 Ac Corineus, duk of Cornewaile, ⁴ wroȝ y now was
 Toward kyng Locryn, þo he herde þis cas.
 For he hadde hym a forward hys dogter habbe to wyue,
 Hys gret axe he nom in hys hond, & to hym ⁵ hyede bi lyue.
 His axe þo he to hym com, so grisliche he schok & faste,
 þat þe kyng quakede & ys men, so sore heo were a gaste.
 " Sei (he seide) Locryn, wat þenkestow for to do?
 " þenkestow me Corineus to bi traye so?
 " Hast þou forȝete þe gret wo, and þe mony harde wonde,
 " þat ich habbe y þoled for þi fader, & ⁶ þe ⁷ mony ⁷ luper stonde,

¹ Sone *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* | *Ar.* ³ yede as blyue *Ar.*

³ Men *pro* he in *Ar.* ⁴ Wroth | ⁶ Deest *Ar.* ⁷ Wicked *Ar.*

" For to wynne hym lond & gou, and þou hast now forsake
 " My dogter, þat schulde be þi wif, & to a kemelyng take?
 " þou ne schalt (bi hym þat made ¹ me) of scapie so lygte,
 " þe while þer ys in my rygt hond eny strengþe & mygte;
 " And while y may þer wyt myn hond axe vp drawe,
 " Wher with ich habbe geandes mony on y slawe.
 He bi gan to schake ys axe, for to smyte anon,
 Ac knyghtes criede, & gede bi twene hem mony on.
 So þat þo kyng Locryn vnder fong wel fayn
 And spoused ² hys dogter, that hette Guendoleyn,
 And ³ dude al his wille, (for he lokede so ⁴ rowe,)
 More for eye þan for loue, (mony mon serueþ howe)
 And noȝt for þan þat oper maide he louede more y now,
 Astrild hire name was, and more to hire he drow.
 He made hire vnder erþe a wonyng coynteliche,
 And huld hire þer to his wylle longe priuiliche,
 And drow to hire wan he wolde, þat no mon yt nuste,
 Bute it were eny priue mon, þat hys priuite al wyste.
 Whan he wolde to hire go, to hys mayne he seyde,
 þat he wolde to his Godes his ofryng lede,
⁵ And þat he hadde, to honoure hem, a priue stude þere,
 To sacrifice to his Goddes, þat moni war nere.
 Segge he wolde eke al so to þe Quene ys spouse,
 " And nopeles such sacrifice y ne kepte not at myn howse?"

Sponsacio
 filiae Cori-
 nei.

¹ Me a scapy *Ar.* ² Cor-
 neus *pro* hys *in* *Ar.* ³ Dude
 tho al Corneus wille, *Ar.*
⁴ Rough *Ar.* ⁵ And that he
 hadde made a vow, to do a
 sacrifice Priueliche to his God,

as he gan hym deuyse. Segge
 he wolde right al thus to his
 owene spouse, " Thes wiues
 " suche sacrifice loueth at hure
 " owene house." So longe
Ar.

So

So longe he dude ys sacrifise, and pleide such game,
 þat he hadde a dogter, ¹ Auerne was hire name.
 And þe Quene hadde al so in ² spoused bi gete
 A sone, þat hette Madan, as it is ³ y writon.
⁴ Sone so þe quene fader Corineus was ded,
 þe kyng hadde þer aftur wel sone y nome red.
 He for sok is wyf al out, and Astrild made quene.
 He ne dradde nogt þo ⁵ that handaxe, as it was y sene.
 þo wende þe quene forþ to Cornewail a non,
 And ⁶ gonge staleworþe men gederede mony on.
⁷ þat poer al þat was hire fader, & also of Engelande,
 So þat heo hadde sone gret power on honde,
 And grot ost made and strong, and vp the kyng sette,
⁸ And þe kyng al so a geyn hire, so þat heo hem mette,
 And a batail vp Stour smite strong y now,
 And þere þe quene folk þe kyng Locryn slow,
 And mucche of his folk eke bute hem þat flowe.
 So þat ⁹ a luper beuerage to here bi hosþe þei browe.
 þo kyng mygte segge er þe while he was aliue,
 þat in a luther time he striuede with his wyue.
 gef alle ¹⁰ luper holers were y serued so,
 Me schulde fynde þe les such spouse bruche do.
 Ellene hundred ger þis kyng was þus bi fore
 And ¹¹ eygte ger y slawe er God were y bore.

¹ Sabrene *Ar.* & *in marg.*
 (*à manu recenti*) Sabrine.

² Spoused *Ar.* ³ Y write *Ar.*

⁴ So sone so the quene's *Ar.*

⁵ The *pro* þat in *Ar.* ⁶ yonge

Ar. ⁷ Al the power that was

hure fadere's, and mucche of

Engelande, *Ar.* ⁸ The kyng
 also a yensst hure, so hy to ge-
 deres mette, *Ar.* ⁹ A foul
 beuereche to hure byhoue
 they brough *Ar.* ¹⁰ Foule holo-
 yers *Ar.* ¹¹ XVIII. *Ar.*

þo was þis sturne wommon Guendolyn þe quene
 Kyng y mad in þis maner, for heo was som del kene.
 Astrilde hire bedsuster (hire lorde's concubine)
 And hire dogter ¹ Auerne heo let nime atte fine,
 And drenche boþe two in þe water of Seuerne.
 And for yt was hire lorde's dogter þat mayde ² Auerne,
 And for honour of hire lord, and for heo was of hys kynde,
 Heo wolde þat hire name euer more in mynde,
 And lette clepe þat water aftur ³ Auerne,
 And seþþe þorg diuerse tonge me clepede hit Seuerne,
 And deþ a letre þer to, and no more y wys.
 In þis manner þike water Seuerne y clepud is.
 Guendolyn was kyng fiftene zer þo.
 And hire lord was kyng bi fore hire ten zer, & no mo.
⁴ And Madan here sone fourti zer, þilke tyme þat Samuel Samuel.
 þe prophete wardede þat folk of Israel,
 Meynpris, Madane's sone, kyng was tuenti zer,
⁵ þe kyng Saul was of Ysrael kyng, and non er. Saul.
 þis was (as me may in bok rede and se)
 Ar God were bore a þousand zer, and fourscore & þre.
⁶ Ebran, Meynprise's sone, sixti zer was kyng.
 He made þe toun of Euerwik, þat strong ys in alle þyng,

¹ Sabrene *Ar.* ² Sabrene,
Ar. ³ Sabrene, *Ar.* ⁴ Ma-
 dan hure sone kyng was tho
 fourty yer ech del, In pro-
 phete's tyme Samuel that
 wardede Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Whan
 that Saul of Israel was kyng,
Ar. ⁶ Ebrac, Mempris

Vol. I.

is sone, sixty yer was kyng.
 He bygan Ebrac wik atte
 bigynnyng. And suth me
 clepeth Euerwike this ilke
 toun y wis, And York
 also, thorgh light speche, y
 hote also hit is. After þis
 kyngus name his name hit
 hym

David
rex.

And, aftur his name Ebran, Euerwik clepede it wel,
þat tyme Dauid was kyng in Yrael.

Brut ys sone þrottene kyng was, and no mo.

And ¹ Leir kyng ² fyue and twenti ger Brutesone was þo.

Salomon.

And he rerde þo town of Leycetre, & nempnede yt owne name,
þo þat Salamon þe wyse (mon of gret fame)

Kyng was of ³ Irael, þat kyng Dauid sone was,
þat made þe temple of Jerusalem, such temple ner nas.

⁴ Leile's sone þritti ger kyng was ⁵ and fyue^{ll} al so.

He rerde first Canterburi, and Wynchestre þer to.

⁶ Bapulf his sone aftur hym kyng was twenti ger.

He bi gan þe toun of Bape, and ⁷ þo hote bapes ⁸ þer

In þe veynes of þe water, as yt doþ vp walle.

He lette close ⁹ fuyr in metal quoynteliche withalle,

þat as ¹⁰ þo water comeþ þer bi þer it cacheþ hete.

þat metal ys now y turned into roches grete,

þat beþ euer y liche ¹¹ hoto, & þo water þer of al so.

And eke þoru enchaument yt was first y do.

For þe kyng Bapulf, þat yt made, gret enchanter was.

And þat hym mygte ¹² seþþe rewe. ich wol telle þat cas.

For þat me schulde ys chaument y se,

He lette hym make wyngon, an hey for to fle.

hym by fel. This was whan
Dauid kyng regned in Israel.
Brut grenshild, his sone, aftur
hym tho Regned her in Enge-
lond xxx. yer and mo *Ar.*

¹ Leil *Ar.* ² xv. yer *Ar.*

³ Israel *Ar.* ⁴ Lo his sone
Ar. sed Rudhudibras dicitur

aliis. 5 Omittit Ar. 6 Bladup
Ar. 7 þe Ar. 8 Potest etiam
ita distingui, ut periodus post
þer, comma vero post walle,
ponatur. 9 Fure and metal
Ar. 10 þe Ar. 11 Hote Ar.
12 Suth Ar.

And

And þo he was y flowe an hey, & ne cowþe not a ligte,
A doun mid so gret eir to þe erþe he fel and pigte,
þat al to peses he to rof, þat beter hym hadde ybe
Haue bi leued þer doune, þan y lerned for to fle.

² þis þilke tyme þat þe prophete Elyc Tempus
Ely.
In ² Irael prophete was, and ³ in oure Lord bi gan to crie,
þat þer ne schulde þre ger ⁴ ny six moneþes þer to
⁵ No reyn no come on erþe, and yt bi fel al so.

AFTUR kyng ⁶ Bapulf, Leir ys sone was kyng,
And regned ⁷ sixti ger wel þoru alle þyng.
Up þe water of ⁸ Soure a cite of gret fame
He ⁹ endede, & clepede yt Leicestre, aftur ys owne name.
þre dogtren þis kyng hadde, þe eldeste ¹⁰ Gornorille,
þe mydmost hatte Regan, þe ¹¹ yongost Cordeille.
þe fader hem louede alle ynoz, ac þe ¹¹ yongost mest:
For heo was best and fairest, & to hautenesse drow lest.
þo þe kyng to elde com, alle þre he brogte
Hys dogtren to fore hym, to wyte of here þougte.
For he þogte hys kyndom ¹² dele among hem þre,
¹³ And lete hem þer with spousi wel whare he mygte bi se.
To þe eldest he seide first, “Dogeter ich bidde þe
“ Sey me al clene þin herte, how mūche þou louest me.”
“ Myn heye Godes,” quop þis mayde, “ to wytnesse I take echon,
“ þat y loue more in myn herte þi leue bodi one,

¹ This was in thulke tyme
Ar. ² Israel Ar. ³ On Ar.
⁴ Ne Ar. ⁵ Reyn non in
erthe come, and aftur hit fel
so Ar. ⁶ Bladuth Ar. ⁷ xxx.
ger Ar. ⁸ Sore Ar. ⁹ Rerde,

and clepede Ar. ¹⁰ Gono-
rille, Ar. ¹¹ Yongeste Ar.
¹² To dele Ar. ¹³ And eke
forto wedde hem wel wher he
myghte by se Ar.

" þan myn soule and my lyf, þat in my bodi ys.

þo fader was þo glad y now whan he herde þis.

" My leue dogter," he seide þo, " for ¹ þou hast in loue y do.

" Myn olde lyf by fore þis, and bi fore þi soule al so.

" Ych wol þe marie wel with þe þridde part of my londe

" To þe noblest bacheler, þat þyn herte wol to stonde.

þo oþer dogter he aschede þo þat same askyng.

" Sire," quod heo, " ² bi hye Godes, Lordes of alle þyng,

" Y loue more þi leue lyf þan al þat in þe world ys.

" And þei al þe world were myn, & al þe richesse ywys,

" Al and eke myn owne lyf leuer ich hadde lese,

" þan þi lyf, þat me is so lef, gef y mygte chese.

þe fader was þo glad y now, and bad hire vnderstonde,

To whom heo wolde y married be with þe þride del ys londe.

þe ³ zongost he askedo þo as he hadde þo oþer y do.

Heo ⁴ no kouþe of no fikelyng, and ne onswerede not so.

" Sire," heo seyde, " y leue not þat my sustren al soþ seide.

" Ac for me my self, ich wol soþ segge of þis dede.

" Ych the loue ⁵ as þe mon that my fader ys,

" And euer habbe y ⁶ loued as my fader, & euer wole y wys!

" And gef þou wolt get þer vppe more asche & wyte of me,

" Al þe ende of loue & þe grond ich wol segge þe.

" As muche as þou hast, ⁷ as muche þou art worþ y wys,

" And ⁸ as muche ich loue þe : þo ende of loue ys þis.

¹ Though hast thi loue y
do In myn old lyf to fore
thyn, & to fore thi soule also
Ar. ² By the heyghe God,
Lord *Ar.* ³ Yongeste *Ar.*

¹ Ne couthe of no flatteryng,
& aunswered nought so *Ar.*
⁵ As a man *Ar.* ⁶ The *addit*
Ar. So muche *Ar.* ⁸ So
Ar.

þe

þe kyng was þo wroþ y now, for heo seide al þat soþ.
 For he seide, " þou ne louest me noȝt as þi sostren doþ,
 " Ac despisest me in myn olde liue, þou ne schalt neuer ywis
 " Part habbe of my kyndom, ne of lond þat myn ys.
 " Ac þyn sustren schulle habbe al, for here herte ys kynde,
 " And þou for þyn vnkyndenesse be out of al my mynde.
 " Ac y ne segge noȝt for þan, ȝef y mai to mariage þe vrynge,
 " þat y ne wol with oute lond with som lytel þinge."
 " For þou art my doȝter, & ich habbe more þan þi sostren boþe
 " Y loued þe one, & þou ȝeldest now my loue wroþe.
 þer aftur euene a two he delede hys kyndom,
 And ȝef hys twei doȝtren half, & half hym self nom.
 And þe eldest doȝter mid hire del he ȝaf with oute faile
 þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe oþer þe ² kyng of Cornewale,
 To haue half ys lond myd hem at þe bi gynnyng,
 And seþþe al ys kyndom aftur ys endyng.
 And þe gode Cordeille vn married was ³ so.
 For heo ⁴ nolde fikele, as hire sustren hadde y do.
 Ac ⁵ God þouȝte on hire for hire trewnesse.
 For þe kyng of France herde telle of hire godnesse,
 And bad hire fader graunt hym þe gode Cordeille.
 þe kyng send word a ȝeyn, þat it was ys wille:

Particio
regni.

Maritacio
filiarum.

¹ Ac nought for than, with
 oute lond, with some litele
 thyng. Ich wole the to some
 god man to mariage brynge.
Ar. Non dico tamen, cum
filia mea sis, quin te alicui
externo, si illum fortuna ob-
tulerit, utcunque maritem. Il-
lud autem affirmo, quod nun-

quam eo honore, quo sorores
tuas, te maritabo. Quippe
cum te plusquam ceteras huc
usque dilexerim, tu vero me
minus quam ceteræ diligas.
 Galfredus Mon. ² Erl *Ar.*
³ þo *Ar.* Couthe flattery
 nought, as *Ar.* ⁵ Almyghty
addit Ar.

Ac he nolde with hire geue tresour, nȝ lond.
 For ys two oþer doȝtren hadde it al on hond.
 þo þe kyng of France herde þis, he answerede þer to,
 þat he hadde hym self lond y now, and tresour al so.
 Ne þat he ne kepte bute hire one, withoute oþer þing,
 þat heo myȝte som eyres bi twene hem forþ brynge.
 So þat at þe laste þis maide y spoused was
 'To þis kyng of France, as God gaf þat cas.
 þo þis kyng Leir eldore was, heo bi gan to loþe,
 For he so longe liuede, hys leue doȝtren boþe.
 Here lordes heo entisede, ¹ to gedere to holde faste,
 And wyne al þis lond to hem, & here fader out caste.
 þis twei kynges nome here ost, and endede þis dede,
 And bi nome þis olde mon ys lond, as here wyues bede:
 Ac þe kyng of Scotlond, for rewþe and ² kundede,
 Hym nom to hym in to his hows, a zeyn ys wyue's rede,
 Sixti knyȝtes with honour to fynde hym al ys lyf,
 As wo seyþ, for ys kyndom, & for honour of ys wyf.
 With inne two ȝer þer aftur it þouȝte þe lufur quene,
 þat ³ hire hadde to muche, & wolde to muche spene.
 Heo made, þat of ⁴ sixti knyȝtes hire lord with droȝ,
 And made hym holde to þritti, & þat was hire þoȝte ynog.
 þis Leir was a schamed þo, & in wrappe at þe ende
 To hys oþer doȝter, þe quene of Cornewail, he gan wende,
 And playnede of þe vnkynde dede of hys doȝter ⁵ Gornorille,
 And wende þere amendement to habbe aftur ys owne wille.

Spoliacio
reg.

¹ To holde to gedre faste
Ar. ² Manhede, Tok hym
 hom in to his hous, *Ar.* ³
 Hure fader hadde so moche,

and to moche wolde spene *Ar.*
⁴ xxx. knyhtus hure lord hym
 withdrough *Ar.* ⁵ Gonorille,
Ar.

þilke dogter hym to fonge with honour, as he wende,
 Ac heo was al ful of hym er ¹ þe gere's ende.
 For heo entisede hire lord þo, þat ys knyghtes echone
 For cost by nyme hym alle, bute a ² fyue men one,
³ Wuche so it were to serue hym, & þat was y nowe.
 þo þis seli mon þis herde, to sorwe ys herte drowe.
 He nuste to weper dogter beter truste þo,
 And nopeles he wende ageyn to þe oþer with mucche wo,
 And hopede for to fynde of here beter ⁴ meuske & grace.
 And heo swor bi hire hye Godes anon in þe place,
 þat he ne schulde mid hire be, bute it ⁵ one were,
 And on knygt with oute mo, þe while he hym wel bere.
⁶ And askede, wad sorwe hym were, wan he nadde hym self
 no god,
 To wylne so gret cost, and be of so gret mod?''
 þis word dude much sorwe þis seli olde kyng,
 þat atwytede hym & ys stat, þat he nadde hym self noþing.
 þat word brak neȝ ys herte, & longe he yt vnderstod,
 þat ys child at wiste ys pouerte, þat hadde al is god.
⁷ Neuer kyng ny quene glad, when heo hym seye,
 Ac to þe joiful day hopede, that heo myȝte dye.
 He bi leucde, as he nede moste, forþ mid on knygt,
 And þe quene ys dogter alle wo hym dude boþe day & nyȝt.

¹ þre pro þe in Ar. ² x. Ar.
³ That were bileft to seruy
 hym, and that hure thoughte
 y nouȝe Ar. ⁴ Mylce Ar.
⁵ Onliche were, With o
 knyght, with oute mo, Ar.
⁶ And seyde, what sholde an
 old man be so heghe of mod,

And an [f. in] ydel, and in
 wast, spende so mucche good?
 Ar. ⁷ Ther nas ther nother
 kyng ne quene glade, whan
 hy hym sey, But lokede euer
 after his deth, whan he sholde
 dey Ar.

So þat he moste ¹ for fyn myseise awei at þe ende.
 þe oþer dogter he hadde a sayed, þat he ne durste to hire wynde.
 þe quene of France þe þridde hym þog mid vn rygt
 He misdude hire, þat he ne durste come in hire sygt.
 Ac at þe laste þo he sei, þat he moste nede at þe ende
 For pore miseise, (for fare leuer he hadde wende,
 And bidde ys mete, gef he schulde, in a strange lond,
 þan þer he hymself kyng was, & such þing hadde on honde)
 At þe laste in sorwe ynow in to þe see he wende,
 To do ys beste yn meseise were so God hym sende.
 In þo schip as oþer prynces in gret pruyde he ² bi hulde,
 And he naddemid hym bute tweimen, ³ hym þogte ys herte feld;
 He þogte on þe noblei, þat he hadde in y be:

Planctus.

He wep, þe terus rounedoun, þat deol it was to se.
⁴ Mid goxing & mid gret wop þus bi gan ys mone.
 "Alas! alas! þe lufur ⁵ wate, þat fylest me þus one,
 "þat þus clene me bryngust a doun, wyder schal y be brogt?
 "For more sorwe yt doþ me, when it cometh in my thoht
 "þe noblei þat ich habbe y had, þat ich was wond to wynde
 "Mid so many hondred knyghtes a bout in eche ⁷ ende,
 "And casteles nyne & tounes, & myn fon brynge to gronde,
 "þan do al þe miseise, þat ich in i bonde.
 "Leue dogter Cordeille, to soþe þou seidest me,
 "þat as muche as ych hadde y was worþ, þei y ne leuede þe.

¹ For mysaise (*omisso* fyn)
in Ar. ² Bi held *Ar.* ³ Alas!
 his herte was cheld *Ar.* ⁴
 With wepyng & wailynge
 thus he made his mone: "A-

las! though lethur desteny,
 whi leuest though me thus al
 one? *Ar.* ⁵ *i. e.* fate. ⁶ Of
 the *Ar.* ⁷ Eynde *Ar.*

"þo

" þo wyle ich ogt hadde ich was worþ, & now it ys al a gon.
 " Mi childeren, þat ich gef my god, beþ myne meste fon.
 " For my god heo louede me, & now he habbeþ euery del,
 " He nul not geue me of myn owne mid god herte a mel.
 " A wey! doȝter Cordeille, wyder schal ich now fle?
 " So muche ich habbe þe ¹ mys do, þat y ne dar þe y se.
 " Mid wuche bodi dar y come in þi sigt ene,
 " þat bi nom þe myn frenschipe for þi soþnesse al clene?
² þis men mowe here ensample nime, to late here sonas wyue,
 And geue hem vp here lond al bi here lyue.
 For wel may a symple ³ Francoleyn in mysese hym so bringe
 Of lutel lond, wan þer fel such of a kyng.
 þo þis kyng hadde go a boutte in such sorwful cas,
 At þe last he com to Caric, þere ys doȝter was.
 He bi leuede with oute þe toun, & in wel gret fere.
 He sende þe quene ys doȝter word, muche is ⁴ antres were,
 And þat pur miseise hym þider drof, & defaut of bi liue:
 And bed hire, for þe loue of God, hire wrappe hym for geue.
 þe quene þo heo herde þis, nei yswounyng was.
 " Alas!" heo seyde, " ys my fader y broȝt in such deolful cas?"
 " Mid how mony knyȝtes ys he come?" þe oþer ageyn seyde,
 " Ma dame, bute mid o mon, & ȝet þilke in ⁵ feble wede."
 " Alas!" quop þe quene þenne, " ys it now mid hym so?
 " Nymeþ anon tresour y nowȝ, þat he haþ nede to,

Mandavit
filie.

¹ A gilt *pro* mys do *in* Ar.

² These sample men moughe
y se, to lete hure children

wyue, Ar. ³ Man *pro* Fran-

coleyne *in* Ar. ⁴ Auntres Ar.

⁵ Simple wede Ar.

And

" And cloþeþ hym myd þe best cloþ, þat ge mowe y se,
 " And fourti knyghtes mid hym, þat of hys siwte be;
 " And doþ hem alle wel an horse, as a kyng bi comeþ to,
 " And whan ² no defaute nys, þat al þis nys wel y do,
 " Sendeþ my lord word & me, þat my fader in londe ys.
 Wat halt it to telle longe? Y do wes al þis.

þo kyng Leir arayed was, & men hem worde sende,
 þe kyng & þe quene faire y now ageyn þe oþer kyng wende,
 And with gret honour hym fongon, þo he to hem com,
³ And token hym to ys owne wille al clene the kyndom.
 þis was, lo! þe gode dogter, þat nolde fikele nogt.
 Ofte þing þat is fikeled to worse ende ys brogt.

Reditus
 Angliæ.

þe kyng of France astur folc wide aboute sende,
 To a wreke hym of þe Iuper men, þat ys frend so schende.
⁴ þo he hadde power y now, þe kyng Leir he nom
 And þe quene ys dogter, & to þis lond com.
 Mony kynde men of þis lond with kyng Leir huld also,
 For þe vnkynde suikedom þat his dogtren hadde y do.
 So þat of France & of þis lond poer he hadde y now.
 Toward hys fon with hem alle with god herte he drow,
 And ouer com þis false ⁵ kynges & here wyues also,
⁶ And a geyn in his kyndom mid gret honour y do.

¹ Bad hym clothe in the
 beste, that he myghte byse,
 And xl. knyghtes with hym
 of his suyt to be; *Ar.* ² No
 faute ther nys, and al is wel
 y do, *Ar.* ³ *Dederuntque ei*
potestatem totius Gallia, do-
nec eum in pristinam digni-

tatem restaurassent. Galfridus
 Mon. ⁴ *Quo facto, duxit se-*
cum Leyr filiam suam, &
collecta multitudine iuit in
Britanniam. Galfr. Mon. ⁵
 Lordes *Ar.* ⁶ Leir in his
 kyndom a ye with honour
 was y do *Ar.*

Cor-

Cordeille ys leue dogter eir of al ys lond
 Aftur ys day he made, ¹ þo þat he so kynde fond.
 By þis tale me may iyse, þat men trewest we seþ,
 And best me may to hem truste, þat of lest wordes ² boþ.
 With inne þre ger þe kyng of France dyede & þe kyng Leyr, ^{Obitus regis.}
³ And Cordeille þe kyndom fong as þe rygt eyr,
 And lette hire fadur burie with gret prude & honour
 At Leicetre, þat he made hym self be side þe water of Sour.
 þis gode quene Cordoille as kyng and quene þo
⁴ Bi leuede hire in þis lond fyue ger, and no mo,
 Er hire twei suster sones, stalworþe men þat were,
⁵ Hennin and Morgan, werre ⁶ hire' gone a rere,
 And hadden despit, þat wommon kyng schulde ⁷ be,
⁸ And napeles wyþ alle rygte hij were ner þan heo.
 Heo gederede vp here aunte here ost aboute wyde,
 And destruyde hire londes eyþer in his syde.
 So þat at þe laste to ⁹ baile heo come.
 þere þe quene here aunte in bataile heo nome,
 And dude in strong prison, and þe kyndom
 Delden bi twene hem, and eyþer ys part nom.

Capitulum
regium.

¹ So kynde he hure fonde
 Ar. ² L. beþ. ³ Cordille
 aftur hym auenge Brutayne
 as ryght heir Ar. ⁴ Cum er-
 go Cordeilla regnum per quin-
 quennium pacifice tractasset,
 cæperunt eum inquietare duo
 filii sororum suarum Marga-
 nus & Cunedagius, quæ Mag-
 lauro & Hennino ducibus con-
 jugatæ fuerant. Ambo iuue-
 nes præclaræ probitatis for-

*mam habebant, quorum alte-
 rum, videlicet Marganum,
 Maglaurus generavit, Cune-
 dagium vero Henninus. Galfr.
 Mon. ⁵ Hemyn Ar. ⁶ Deest
 Ar. ⁷ Beo Ar. ⁸ And also by
 ryght hy were fortherer than
 heo. Hy gaderede to gedere
 hure ost aboute by eche side,
 And destrude her and ther
 bothe in eche side Ar. ⁹ Ba-
 taille Ar. Morgan*

Morgan kyng of Scotlond, as heo dele koupe,
Hadde al þat lond bi Norþ, and ¹ þe oþer bi Souþe.

With inne two ger þer aftur somme to Morgan come,
And, for he of þe elder soster was, bed hym nyme gome;

And seide hym it was gret despit, þat þer wer in þis lond

Guerra. Twei kynges, wan rygt was, þat he it hadde al on hond.

þis kyng was enticed so, þat he nom atte laste

Ys ost, and vp hys cosyn bi gan to werri faste,

And bi gan to brenne & quelle, & atte laste y wys

þe oþer bi gan to turne a zeyn, and drof hym in to Walis.

And þer heo smyte a batail in þe Souþ half of þe londe,

And þer was Morgan y slawe, þat longe ² was vnderstonde.

þe stude, þat he was at y slawe, me clepuþ zet Morgan,

And euere wole aftur hym, for he was so worþi man.

Cunedag was þo al one kyng, & þe kyndom to hym nom,

And nobliche ³ þre and ⁴ þritti ger held þe kyndom.

þe twey holy prophetes were Osee and Ysaie

þilke time in ⁴ Irael, and dude here prophecie.

Inceptio Romæ. Romulus and Remus þe twei breþeren y wys

Bi gonne þo first Rome, þat noble cite ys.

Four hundred ger it was, and ⁵ fourti euene al so,

Aftur þe batail of Troie, þat al þis was ydo.

And Rome was fyue hundred ger þus y mad bi fore.

And þre and fyfty ger eke, er God were y bore.

Aftur þis kyng Cunedag hys ⁶ sone, that hatte Riual,

Kyng was mad aftur hym, a wys mon þorz out al.

¹ Hemen *pro* þe oþer in *Ar.* | sunt *Ar.* ⁴ Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Four-

² Is *pro* was in *Ar.* ³ De. | tyne also, *Ar.* ⁶ Brothur *Ar.*

Aftur hym Gurgust ys sone, and seþþe anoper Sisille,
 And mony on ¹ seþþe afturwar, of wam mote be stille.
 So þat atte laste Gurguont was kyng,
 Stalworþe mon and hardy, and wys þorȝ alle þyng.
 Muche þing, þat ys eldore loren þorw feyntyse,
 þoru strengþe he wann seþþe a ȝeyn, & þoru ys koyntise.
 þe kyng of Denemark ² ber eche ȝer with lawe
 Truage to Engeland, and bi gan hym to wyþ drawe.
 þe kyng Gurguont hym porueyede of power y now,
 And þer wyþ in gode schippes to Denemark he drow,
 And þe kyng of Denemark in bataile he sloȝ,
 And wan a ȝeyn þe truage þat ³ he held with woȝ.

AS þe kyng Guorguont fro Denemark wende a ȝe
 Hider toward Engolond, he mette in þe see
 þritti schipful of men. and of wymmen also,
 Of children, and of oþer god þat heo hadden with hem y do.
 þe kyng askede, wad heo were? þei were a drad ful sore.
 þe maister fel a doun on kne, & criede mercy & ore.
 "Lord," he seyde, "we beþ men wyde y driue aboute
 "From contrey to contrei, þat we mown nower route.
 "Of þe kynde of Egypt oure firste more com.
 "4 For þo folc of Irael Moyses with hym nom,
 "And ladde hem out of Egypt bi þe 5 liuerede see,
 "And þe kyng a drete & alle hys, þat 6 he ne com neuer a ȝe:

¹ Suth afterward, of wham
 we mote be stille *Ar.* ² That
 bar ech yer with lawe Tru-
 age to Brutayne, gan hit tho

with drawe *Ar.* ³ At heold
 with wrough *Ar.* ⁴ For tho
 that folk of Israel *Ar.* ⁵ Rede
Ar. ⁶ They *Ar.*

"Among

" Among hem, þat bi leuede o liue, stryf me mygte se,
 " Wuche mest maistres were, & hoo schulde lord be :
 " So þat heo, þat maistres were, hadde wel gret onde
 " To þe kyn þat we come of, & dryue hem out of londe,
 " For drede þat heo ne schulde nogt here maistres be.
 " þus heo were y dryue a wei, & nuste wyder to ¹ tee.
 " Heo duden hem forþ in to þe se, & by mony a lond wende.
 " ² Se þat God in to Spayne atten ende ³ hom sende.
 " þer heo bi leuede, & wox, & al þat of hem come
 " Forto now þis oþer day, þat we mygte not be y some.
 " ⁴ For þe kunde folk of þe lond hadde to ows onde,
 " And, þat we to grete maistres nere, drive ous out of þe londe.
 " Oþer half ȝer we habbeþ nowc y went with oute reste
 " In the grete see of ocean, forto seche vr beste,
 " þat owre lyf ys vs loþ, & we nuste war bi leue;
 " þer fore we wolde bidde þe, þat þou vs sum place geue
 " þat amty were in þi lond, ware þou woldest by þenche,
 " ⁵ þat we mygte of swynke oure mete, & libbe by oure swynke.
 þe kyng hem nolde graunte noþing of þis lond,
 Ac he sende hem by god condyt in to Yrlond,
 þat al amty was of men, & no mon ne wonede þere,
 And þese were þe firste men þat in Yrlond were.
 A þousant ȝer yt was and two, þat y do was al þis,
 Aftur þat ⁶ folc of Irsrael of Egypt wende i wis.
 Fyf hundred ȝer and ⁷ tuenti it was eke bi fore,
 Er þan oure Lord Jhesu Cryst on erþe was y bore.

Prima
 gens in
 Ybernia.

¹ Fle *Ar.* ² So *Ar.* ³ Hem
Ar. ⁴ Therefore the vnne-
 kynde folk *Ar.* ⁵ That we
 moughe oure lifode, as othur

doth, byswynke *Ar.* ⁶ The
 folk of Israel *Ar.* ⁷ Nyne
pro tuenti in *Ar.*

• Hit

¹ Hit bi fel þer afturward swyþe longe ynow Picti.
 Out of þe lond of Scitie oþer folk þider droȝ.
 For into þe grete see of occean a gret companye
 Of Pycars wende som tyme out of ² Scisie.
 From lond to lond wyde ³ he gonne wende,
 So þat atte laste heo come to Yrlonde's Norþ ende,
 A geyn þe lond of Scotlond, & ⁴ þo folk þat heo fonden þere
 Of ⁵ þis eldore kunde, Scottes y clepud were.
 þe ⁶ Picardes bede þe Scottes an ende of here lond
 To geue hem, forto libbe by with swynk of here hond.
 þe Scottes seide, þat þat lond nolde not y now be
 To hem boþe to lyue ⁷ bi, as heo mygte y se.
 Ac þat heo mygte ofte y se, in cler weder, þere
 Est ward, as þe sonne a ros, a lond as yt were.
 Mury & fair yt þogte y now, & þat heo þider wende,
 To wonye & to lyue þer, & þat heo hem word sende,
 gef any mon hem greuede, & þat heo wolde, heo seyde,
 Warde hem from alle men, þat hem bi tidde no drede.
⁸ þis Picardes þenne wende forþ Estward euer faste.
 To þe Norþ ende of Engelond heo comen at þe laste.
 þat ende heo fonden al bare. heo bi leuede þere,
 And swonke & tilede here lyflode, & al maistres were.
⁹ Heo fonden hem sustynance y now, and ¹⁰ lyueden þus forþ Missio post mulieres.
 þe Brytones in ¹¹ þo Souþhalf, and heo in þe Norþ.

¹ ¶ The comynge of Pictes, that some clepeth Pikerdys, *Ar. in margine.* ² Scithie *Ar. cum i. Nauerne (ab ead. manu) supra lin.* ³ Hij *Ar.* ⁴ The *Ar.* ⁵ The el-

dere *Ar.* ⁶ Pictes *Ar.* ⁷ By, by aught that hij couthe se *Ar.* ⁸ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ⁹ Hij wonne hem *Ar.* ¹⁰ Lyuede so forth *Ar.* ¹¹ The *Ar.*

¹ Pycars fonden ese ynow, and defaut none,
 To libbe in plente y now, bute of wymmen one.
 For þer ner none among hem. þer fore to Yrlond
 Heo sende to Scottes þat þer were, þat heo schulde hem vn-
 derstonde

And lene hem wymmen, þat heo mygte here ² of pryng eche so."
 For þyng þat ³ woneþ, & noþing wexeþ, ⁴ sone it ys ydo."
 Scottes hem sende wymmen in þis forme þere,
 þat wan a child were y bore, and me in doute were,
⁵ Who were þo fader, þat me schulde name & eritage
 Boþe habbe in þe moder half, for drede of out rage,
 Laste yt geode out of kynde þorg child mys bi gete.
 For me may bet soþnesse of þe moder þen of þe fader wyte.
 In þis maner ⁶ Picars with Scottes ⁷ myngen here blod,
 So þat yt siwede þe wymmen, when me ogt mysvnderstod.
 And when mon withouten eyr of hym to deþe were ybrogt,
 Hys moder kun was ys eir, & ys fader kun rygt nogt.
 And for þe moderes Scottes were, ⁸ so forþ yt ys bi come,
 þat ⁹ Scottes name ys al a boue, & ¹⁰ Picars al bi nome.
¹¹ þus Scottes among Pycars come out of Yrlond,
 And ¹² þat lond me clepuþ aftur hem seþþe Scotlonde.

¹ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ² Os-
 pring forth bryng *Ar.* ³
 Waneth *Ar.* ⁴ Hath sone an
 endyng *Ar.* ⁵ Who the
 childe's fader were, the name
 and heritage Of his moder
 hit sholde bere, for drede of
 outrage, Lest the name yede
 oute of kynde thurgh mysby-
 yityng. Of the moder half

rather than in the fadre's me
 may haue knowyng *Ar.*
⁶ Thes Pictes *Ar.* ⁷ Med-
 lede blod *Ar.* ⁸ So fer forth
 hit is y come, *Ar.* ⁹ The
 Scottes *Ar.* ¹⁰ Pictes *Ar.*
¹¹ The Scottes myd the
 Pictes *Ar.* ¹² The *pro* that
 in *Ar.*

Yrlond

YRLOND ys ¹ aler yle best with oute Engelande.
 þe see goþ al abouten hym eke as ich vnderstonde.
 More he ys þan Engolond, & in ² þo Souþ half he ys
³ Bradder & more of ynow þan in þe Norþ ende y wys.
 Ageyn þe lond of Spayne he stond in þe ⁴ Norþ syde rygt.
 Selde snowe þer inne ⁵ liþ, & nameliche þre nygt.
 So euene ⁶ hot þat lond ys, þat men durre ⁷ selde
 Here orf in howse awynter brynge out of þe felde.
 Lese lasteþ þer al þe wynter. Bute hyt þo more wonder be,
 Selde me schal in þe lond eny foule wormes se.
 For nedres ny oþer wormes ne mow þer be nogt.
 And gef he beþ þider ⁸ bi cas'' from oþer ⁹ londes y brogt,
 Heo dyeþ þorg smel of þe lond, oþer þorg towchyng y wys.
 Eche gras þat þer inne wexeþ a zeyn venym yt ys.
 For men, þat ben venymed, þorg grasses of Yrlond
 Y dronke he beþ y clased sone, þoru Gode's sonde.
 Hony & mylk þer ys muche. mony folk & bolde.
 þis ys þe stat of Yrlond, as iche habbe y tolde.

AFTUR kyng Gurguont, kynges mony on
 þer were here in Engeland, me may not telle echon.
 A boutte a four hundred zer aftur hym þer com
 A kyng, þat was Lud y clepud, þat wel hult þe kyndom. Lud.

¹ Al ther Ile best, ontake
 Engelande *Ar.* ² The *Ar.*

³ Bradder a gret del than in
 the Northside ywys *Ar.*

⁴ Northwest rygt *Ar.* ⁵ Lith,

Vol. I,

nameliche but thre nyght *Ar.*

⁶ A tempre *pro* hot in *Ar.*

⁷ But seylde Hure bestes an
 house *Ar.* ⁸ By happe *Ar.*

⁹ Lond *Ar.*

Grete townes in Engelond he amendede y nowe.
 And London ¹ aller most, for þer to hys herte drowe.
² þat folk he hett of þe town so noble bold þer rere,
 þat in al Engelond so noble a cite nere.
 Walles he lette make a bonte & gates vp & doun,
 And aftur Lud, þat was hys name, he clepude yt Lude's toun.
 þe hexte gate of þe toun, ³ þa get stond þere and is,
 He lette yt clepe Lude's gate, aftur ys owne name ywis.
 He let hym, þo he was ded, burye at þilke gate.
 þer fore get aftur hym me clepof hit Lodegate.
 þe town me clepuþ Lude's town, þat ys wyde cowþ :
 And now me clepeþ it London, þat ys lygter in þe mouþ.
 And Newe Troie hit hette er, ⁴ ac þus yt is a go
 þat Londone he ys now y cleped, and worþ euermo.

ENGELOND haþ i be with strengþe y wonne y lome,
 And first, as ich telle can, þorþ þe emperoures of Rome.
 Aftur kyng Lud þer was kyng ys broþer Cassibel,
 þat noble Prince was y now, & þat lond gouernede wel.
 July þe emperour of Rome by his day com,
 And mucche del of þe world bi Est to hys power nom.
⁵ Sepþe he drow hym Westward, & werrede in mony londe,
 And wan lond ⁶ aftur oþer, hym ne mygte non at stonde.
 þo he hadde y wonne France, þe see he wende ney,
⁷ And bi huld Westward, and som del of Engelond y sey.

Julius.

¹ Alther *Ar.* ² He het in
 thulke toun the folk suche
 buldynge a rere, *Ar.* ³ That
 yut stant *Ar.* ⁴ Ac nough hit
 is so ago, That Londone is

hit cleped, *Ar.* ⁵ And tho he
Ar. ⁶ Aftur lond, ne myghte
 hym no man astonde *Ar.*
⁷ And as he lokede West-
 ward, Engelond he seygh *Ar.*

He

He askede, wat lond yt were, & wat folk þer inne was?
 Me seide hym þat it was Bretayne, ne betur lond nas,
 And þat þe folk was of þe kynde of Troie, & of þe Brut y come.
 “¹ þenne beþ heo, quop þe emperour, of þe kynde of Rome.
 “ For, aftur þe batail of Troie, þe noble mon Eneas
 “² To Lumbardye com, and oure firste fader was.
 “ And Brut al so com of hym, þat seþþe hys fader slowg,
 “ And þer fore was þenne y dryue, & to þilke lond drowg.
 “ þanne we beþ of on kynde,³ ac, bute ich þer to lye,
 “ A gen kynde he beþ a geyn vs, as of chiual rye.
 “ For þer of ne mowe heo konne nogt, y not how he mygte,
 “ To be by hem self in an hurne as þe rof with oute sygte.
 “ For nogt we schulleþ hem ouercome, ac napeles as þe hende
 “ We schul hem warne of oure þogt, er we to hem wende.

¹ *Cumque nomen regni didicisset & populi, dixit, Hercle ex eadem prosapia nos Romani & Brittones orti sumus, quia ex Trojana gente processimus. Nobis Æneas post destructionem Trojæ primus pater fuit. Illis autem Brutus, quem Silvius Ascanii, filii Æneæ, filius progeniuit. Sed, nisi fallor, valde degenerati sunt à nobis. Nec quid sit militia noverunt, cum infra oceanum extra orbem commaneant. Leviter cogendi erunt tributum nobis dare, & continuum obsequium Romanæ dignitati parare. Prius tamen mandandum est*

eis, ut inaccessi à Romano populo & intacti vectigal reddant, ut ceteræ etiam gentes subjectionem senatui faciant, ne nos, ipsorum cognatorum nostrorum sanguinem fundentes, antiquam nobilitatem Priami patris nostri offendamus Galfridus Mon. ² To Itaille com, that is now Rome, and oure aun-
 cetre was *Ar.* ³ And ich can a spie, Hit were a ye kynde to be a yenst vs, as of chiual-
 rie. For ther on ne mowe hij konne nought, y not how hii myghte, To be in an herne by hem self, ther with oute fighte *Ar.*

þe emperoure's messingeres to Engeland hire come,
 þat þe kyng abowe ys herte ¹ to þe noble stude of Rome,
 And alle oþer kynges dude, and ys rygt seruage
 Dude to þe hye emperour, and sende hym hys truage,
 And hys lond huld of hym, and dude hym homage,
 Laste þe hye emperour for his outrage
 Come and destruye al hys lond; & zet þat worse were,
² þe blod schedde of ys owne kynde, & defoule yt so þere,
 And þe olde heynesse of Priamus werrede so,
 Of was kynde heo come echon, & þat were hym loþ to do.
 For þer ³ schulde in al ⁴ þo world no lond be for bore.
 þis was euene sixti zer er God were y bore.

Manda-
tum regis.

þe kyng ⁵ sende þis word a geyn a non for þis tyþing:
 " Cassibel, kyng of Breyteyne, to July sendeþ gretyng.
 " Wonder it ys, Sire emperour, ⁶ þat noble gentrise
 " þat is so noble & eke y fuld with so fyl couetyse,
 " þat ⁷ worde's nobleye hast so muche, of eche mon mest,
 " þat for couetise art y come so fer fro þe Est,
 " To wilne oure lutel god, þat God vs wolde sende
 " þat beþ hire bi oure self, as at þe worlde's ende:

¹ To the cite of Rome, As
 alle othur kynges dude, in
 hys ryght seruage, And his
 lond holde of hym, & dude
 hym homage, Lest the heigh
Ar. ² To shede his owene
 kynde blod & defouled there;
 And take hede of Priame's
 prude, that werrede so. Of his
 kynde hij come echon, & that
 hij were loth do *Ar.* ³ Ne

sholde *Ar.* ⁴ The *Ar.* ⁵ Hym
 sende word a ye, tho he hurde
 this tydyng: *Ar.* ⁶ Of thy
 gret gentrise, That though so
 foule anetherest hit with thy
 couetyse, That wordles welth
 hast so muche, of alle men
 mest, That for couetyse ert y
 come so fer fram the Est *Ar.*
⁷ *L.* worlde's,

" And

“¹ And þou nart one y payed oure tresour to nyme at ene,
 “ Bute þou þer aftur vs binyne oure franchise al clene,
 “ To brynge vs so fre as we beþ in to ² fyl seruage,
 “ þat we bere þe and þyne euermore truage.
 “ Gret wrong þou woldest don vs, wen of on kynde
 “ We beþ y come ge & we, as þou hast þi self in mynde.
 “ þenne agte yt be y nowȝ, wen we beþ of on blod,
 “ Loue & frenschipe aske vs, gef þou þe wel vnderstod,
 “ Thaw þou ne askedest ³ þer vppe þralhed euermo.
 “ Sikerliche we ne konne nogt of þralhed ne of wo.
 “ So muche we habbeþ euer y be in ⁴ franchise zet her to,
 “ þat þei oure owne Godes wolde in þralhede vs do,
 “ Fonde we wolde a zeyn hem ⁵ our franchise withstonde.
 “ þei þou þer fore, Sire emperour, grete power hadde on honde,
 “ Wyte ⁶ to soþe, þat we wollep for oure franchise fygte,
 “ And for our lond, raþer þen ⁷ we lesed with vn rygt.
 þis was eke four hundred ger, and four score, & þrottene,
 Aftur þat þe borg of Rome first was mad iche wene.
 þo þe emperour herde þis, to schippes he wende faste,
 And al hys power forþ with hym, and sailes vp caste.
 þei entrede in at Temse mouþ, and þer heo gonne a riue.
 þo Cassibel herde þis, ⁸ he garkedede hym bi lyue.
 Now hadde kyng Lud, ys broþer, zonge sones twei,
 Androge and Tennant, þat þo zonge were beye,

Julius ve-
nit Angli-
am.

¹ And þat though nert nought
onliche apayd *Ar.* ² Gret *Ar.*

³ Eke ther to thraldom euere
mo. For on thraldom konne
we nought, ne of such other wo
Ar. ⁴ Franchise hider to. For

theygh that the Godes hem self
wolde in to thraldom vs do *Ar.*

⁵ For oure *Ar.* ⁶ For soth *Ar.*

⁷ We wol leue hit with vnryghte
Ar. ⁸ He greithed hym as
blyue *Ar.*

þo here fader dyede to holde þe kyndom.
 1 þer fore þer to Cassibel al þat lond nom.
 Ac þo nolde not Cassibel, þat heo schulde allyng faille.
 Tennant þe zonger he made erl of Cornewale,
 And Androge erle of Kent, & gaf hym London þer to.
 Boþe heo were noble men þo þis dede was y do.
 þe kyng hadde 2 eke a broþer, Nenny was hys name,
 Strong knygt and hardi, and mon of gret fame.
 þe kynges's chef conseleres þese þre were of þis þing.
 Alle heo come to Canturburi at þe bi gynnyng.
 þere þe kyng & ys power such conseil to gedere nome,
 To kepe þe emperoure's folc er 3 heo to fer income.
 For ȝef þei hadde eny þing y wonne of castel or of ton,
 Wel þe worse it wolde be to brynge hem þer don.
 4 þo kyng wente toward þe se mid fair ost ynowȝ,
 5 And as þe emperour hadde y pigt ys panelon he drowȝ.
 þo 6 he hadde y ordeyned here ost in eyþer syde,
 7 þo batail heo smyton strong ynowȝ, þat cowþ was ful wyde.
 Bellum. Myd arwen & myd quareles so muche folk 8 first" me slow,
 9 And seþþe with speres smyton a doun, þat deol was ynow.
 þo heo were þorg out y mengd with swerdes & with mace,
 Myd axe & mid aules, so muche folk in þat place

1 þerfore Cassibelan this
 lond to hym nom, And also he
 nolde, that eny thyng these
 children sholde faille *Ar.* 2 Eke
 a nothur brothur *Ar.* 3 Hij to
 bataille come *Ar.* 4 The *Ar.*

5 And toward themperoure's
 tente euene he hym drough *Ar.*

6 Hij *Ar.* 7 An *pro* tho in *Ar.*

8 *Deest* *Ar.* 9 And with sword
 and with speres, that deol hit
 was y nough *Ar.*

Me

Me slow, þat al þe erþe a boutē stod ¹ as in flode
 Er þe bataile were y do al of red blode.
 Nenny þe kyng's broþer and þe erl of Kent al so,
 Mid al here power of Kent, & myd þe Londreis þer to,
² Awatede hem to þilke ost, þat þe emperour inne was.
 So þat ³ Nennyn þe emperour bi cas,
 Anon he willede in herte with so hey mon to fygte.
 He asailede hym & drow ys swerd, & smot with al ys mygt.
 Ac þe emperour mid his ⁴ scheld þo strok hente ynow,
 And drow hys swerd ⁵ an hey, & to þe gronde faste slow,
 And smot Nennyn þorg þe helm ⁶ somdel toward þe brayn.
 And seþþe toward þilke stude he smot with more mayne,
 To haue y cloue ⁷ hym' al þat hed, ac ⁸ Nennyn ys scheld
 nom,
 And dude by twene, þat þe strok so depe þer inne ⁹ ne' com,
 þat þe emperour ne mygte yt out drawe with al ys mayn.
¹⁰ Nennyn caste ¹¹ caste' ys owne swerd anon a wey wel fayn,
 And ¹² nom þet swerd to hym, þat so noble was & riche.
 For þer nes in al þe world swerd hym yliche.
 For þer nas non þer with y wonded, þat euer keuer mygte.
 þer fore yt was rede dep y cleped and mid rygte.
 þo ¹³ Nennyn hadde þat gode swerd, a boutē he smot to gronde.
 Ech mon þat he þer with smot, he gef depe's wonde.

Lucracie
gladii.

¹ Al on a flode *Ar.* ² Or-
 deyned hem *Ar.* ³ Neny than
 Emperour y segh as fel by cas,
Ar. ⁴ Swerd thane strok *Ar.*
⁵ Anon, and to groundeslough.
 He smot Neny *Ar.* ⁶ Almost in

to the brayne *Ar.* ⁷ Deest *Ar.*
⁸ Neny *Ar.* ⁹ Deest *Ar.* ¹⁰ Ne-
 ny *Ar.* ¹¹ Redundat. ¹² Nam
 to hym themperoure's swerd,
 that *Ar.* ¹³ Neny *Ar.*

Victoria
Brytonum.

þe Romaines laie sone a doun, he made emty place.
 And þe Brytones a ryse faste, so þat, þorw Gode's grace,
 Heo hadde þe maistry of þe feld. ¹ þo Romaines flowe ² bi lyue,
 Ac mony was þe moder child þat arst was brogt of lyue.
 þe emperour and ys power to schip flowe faste,
 And to France flow ageyn, somdel þei were agaste.
 Here folc heo loren in þe se þorȝ tempest monȝon,
³ Wat in batayle wat in se, & heore horses ney echon.
 Cassibel was glad y now þo he hadde þe maystrie.
⁴ Fayre he þonkede ys gode folc, and of gret corteysie
 Of ȝiftes ⁵ delde among hem euer as heo were.
 So þat joye and ⁶ murþe y now among hem was þere.
 Ac þer was among hem deol ynow for ⁷ Nennyn y brogt,
 þat þe emperour þe wonde ȝef, þat he ne mygt hele noȝt.
 He lai for ⁸ pyned in þe wonde, and to deþe drowȝ,
 And dyede þe ⁹ fyfþe day myd sorwe & deol y nowȝ.
 Atte Norþ ȝate of London heo buryode þis gode knyȝt,
 And buryede with hym in hys chest þat swerd þat was so
 bryȝt,
 þat he wan of þe emperour with honour y nowȝ,
 þat rede deþ was y clepud, war wyþ he hym slowȝ.
 Y buried it was forþ with hym, as in tokenynge
 Of ys prowes, þat he yt wan of on so hey a kyng.

¹ þe *Ar.* ² Blyue *Ar.* ³ Many
 in bataille & many in see, and
 hure hors euerichon *Ar.* ⁴
 Faire gan to thonke his folk,
 and dude hem courtasie *Ar.*

⁵ He delde a mong hem euere
 as worthy were *Ar.* ⁶ Blisse
Ar. ⁷ Neny *Ar.* ⁸ Pynyng
Ar. ⁹ Fiftenethe *Ar.*

Cassibel þe gode kyng hym gan euer vnderstonde,
 þat þe emperour þougte zet werre in hys londe.
 þe fyf townes of þe fyf portes he lette walle aboute,
 And so gode knyghtes dude þer, þat he nadde þer no doute.
¹ Stakes of yrn mony on he pygte in Temese gronde,
 A boue scharpe & kene ynow, bi neþe grete & ronde,
 þat, gef þer eny schippes come er me y war were,
 Heo schulde piche hem þoru out & a drenche hem so þere.
 Here was coyntyse ynow, he lette al so a rere
² Vp þe water strong hows, þat heo vn warned nere.
 And of þe gonge folk of þe lond þer inne dude y nowe,
 To be prest to kepe here fon, wen þei ³ to hem drowe.

JULIUS ⁴ þe emperour with strong power y nowg,
 Two ger aftur þe bataile, to Engeland a zeyn drow,
 And þougte sle al þat folk, & wyne þis kyndom,
⁵ Ac he caste þer of ambes, as þo he to londe com.
 For as þis schippes with gret eir come toward londe
 In Temse, as þei al þe world ne schulde hem at stonde,
 þe pykes smyte hem þoru out, or þei wyste wat yt were,
 And daschte and a dreynte fourty schippes þere.
 And a þousant gode knyghtes þer inne were adreynt,
⁶ And al here atyl and tresour was al so a scynt.

Reditus
 Julii.

¹ Piles he pighte manyon
 vpon Themese gronde *Ar.*

² Upon Themese toures stronge,
 that hij vnwarned nere *Ar.*

³ To londe droughe *Ar.* ⁴ The
 seconde comynge of Julius *Ar.*

in margine. ⁵ And forto do
 this ilke dede, gret people with
 hym he nom. And as hure
 shipes *Ar.* ⁶ And hure catel
 and tresour *Ar.*

Bellum.

Numerus
animalium.

And so heo mygte lerne, wuch Brytones were.
 Betere hem hadde be at Rome, þan y osted þere.
 þe emperour with drow hym þo, and by an oþer ende
 To londe he com¹ wroȝ y now, þis lond forto schende.
 And kyng Cassibel y sei so muche folk y lore,
 And adreynt of hys fon, glad he was þer fore.
 And naþeles he was sori, and made gret mone
 Of hem þat of scapede, þat heo nadde be dreynt echone.
 þo þe Romaines were y come to þe lond at þe laste,
 Cassibel with ys power a ȝeyn hem sette faste.
 Heo smyton batail strong y now, þer was y do gret wo,
 And mony slawe on eyþer half, ac of þe Romaines mo.
 For þe Brytones wox faste, þe Romaines by neþe were.
 þo þe emperour say, þat ys fare nas noȝt þere,
 Mid lute folk, þat hym was bi leued, to schip he goþ faste.
 Hyt were men of a god lond þat² hem so kouþe agaste.
 þe kyng Cassibel anon for joye made ys heste,
 þat alle þe knyȝtes of hys lond come to ys feste,
 To London at a certeyn day, and here wyues al so,
 Here sacrifice to here Godes, as ryȝt was, to do.
 Fourti³ þousant of roþeren he lette quelle þer to,
 And of fatte weþeres an hundred þousand al so.
 Of wilde bestes he lette þritti þousant quelle.
 þe wylde foules & þe tame ne mygte nomon telle.
 þo þis fest ȝare was, þat folk first in here wyse
 To heore Godes as heo wolde dude here sacrifice.

¹ Wroth *Ar.* ² Hem so wel a gaste *Ar.* ³ Thousand oxen he
 let kulle ther to *Ar.*

þer aftur þe sete to heore mete with so gret noblei echon,
þat me nuste þer bi fore so noble ¹ fest non.

Aftur mete, as rygt was, þe menstrales geode aboute,

And knyghtes and ² sweynes in carole gret route.

Occisio ne-
potis regis.

So þat þe kyng's neuw, and þe erle's neuw of Kent,

þat twei gonge bacheleres noble were and gent,

³ In þis noble companye strif bi gonne arere,

So þat þe erle's neuw þat oper slowg rygt þere.

þo was al þe court anyed, as þei moste nede,

þe kyng ferde eke for wrappe as he wolde wede.

⁴ Androge he sende word, þat he ys neuw toke

And brogte hym forþ ⁵ forte fonge þat þe court hym wolde loke.

Contencio
regis & An-
drogei.

Androge was a drad ⁶ for he uuste þe kyng's wille,

And loþ ⁷ he hadde ys neuw to honge or spille.

þe kyng he sende word a geyn, þat he hadde ys franchise

In ys owne court, forto loke domes and asise,

And þat, gef ys neuw hadde mys do, in hys owne court he scholde

Onswere to eche mon, ⁸ þat to hym siwe wolde.

þo ⁹ þis kyng herde þis, þat he ne mygt bi rygt lawe

Juge hym, þat ys neuw brogte of ys lyf dawe,

He greypede ys ost ¹⁰ faste vp þe erl of Kent,

To brynge ys neuw with strengþe ¹¹ to stonde to juggement.

¹ A feste *Ar.* ² Ladyes *pro*
sweynes *in Ar.* ³ As they
pleide atte chesse, stryf they
gonne arere *Ar.* ⁴ To An-
droge erl he sende word, *Ar.*
⁵ Forto a vonge *Ar.* ⁶ Tho
he wuste *Ar.* ⁷ Hym was

that his cosyn hange sholde or
spylle *Ar.* ⁸ That hym folwe
wolde *Ar.* ⁹ The *pro* þis *in*
Ar. ¹⁰ Swythe anon vpon
the *Ar.* ¹¹ To fonge jugge-
ment *Ar.*

Oper

Oþer mid fuyr or mid swerd bryng he wolde al out,
 Hym to noȝt and al ys ¹ þing, ner he ner so prout.
 þis erl bi grete lordes to þis kyng ofte sende,
 þat he schulde for Gode's loue ys wylle ² som del amende,
 And þat he for ys neuew wolde, for to a baty stryf,
 Do hey amendement, sawue lyme and lyf.
 þo þer nas non oþer wey, bute stonde al out to dome,
 þe erl of an oþer wey bi þouȝte ³ bi þouȝte'' hym ylome.
 And as he and ys conseil stable conseil nome,
 þese letres sende to July þe emperour of Rome.

Litteræ
 missæ im-
 peratori.

“ To July þe emperour of Rome Androge, erl of Kent,
 “ Greeting and stable loue, aftur wrappe, ⁴ send.
 “ Sire, wyte to soþe, þat sore of ⁵ þinket yt me,
 “ þat ich habbe for oure kynge's loue y holde ageyn þe,
 “ þat ⁶ my power nadde y be, þou haddest hym ouer come.
 “ Acfor he haþ now þe maistry, such pruyd hym haþ y nome,
 “ þat now me, þoru wam he haþ of ⁷ þe maistrie,
 “ Dryue he wolde out of ys lond myd gret vilenye.
 “ Ich habbe y holde hym in hys lond, & my mede þer of ys,
 “ þat he wol me dryue of ys lond vnderued ywis.
 “ For oure Godes y take witnesse, þat oþer gult non þer nys,
 “ Bote þat i nelle my neuew, þat a lytel dude amys,
 “ Bi take hym to juggement, to honge oþer to drawe,
 “ ⁸ Ich wole, saue lym & lyf, brynge hym ⁹ to'' eche lawe.
 “ þer fore ich bidde, þat ich mowe my stat holde þorȝ þe,
 “ And þat þou ¹⁰ vp hym Bretayne mowe wyne þorȝ me.

¹ Men *pro* þing in *Ar.*

² Somwhat amende *Ar.* ³ *Dele.*

⁴ Sent *Ar.* ⁵ Thynketh *Ar.*

⁶ Yf my *Ar.* ⁷ The the *Ar.*

⁸ Ac ich wolde, *Ar.* ⁹ *Deest*

Ar. ¹⁰ Of hym *Ar.*

And

“ And ne þenche þou, Sire, noþing, þat ich treson þenche.

“ For siker ¹ þis þe soþe wei, withouten eny wrenche.

“ ² And God wole, þat men ofte in wrappe & in sore,

“ þat after here grete wrappe here loue be þe more.

þo þe ³ emperou herde þis, he ne tryste not wel her to,

With oute siker ostage, such þing to do.

þe erl þritti noble men, þat were of ys blod,

Sende hym and ys owne sone, þat were ostages god.

Siker ⁴ was þo þe emperour, he ne leuede nogt by hynde,

Ac com here to Engolond mid þe nexte wynde.

þe kyng ⁵ þe while London by segede faste,

And destryede þe erle's lond, & ys ⁶ contreis a doun caste.

Ac þo he herde, þat þe Romaines y come were in hys londe,

To hem he wende hastyliche, & lette London stonde.

⁷ þo he com ney Canterbury, in a valei þere by syde

He sey þe emperoure's ost ysprad a boute wyde.

þe emperour first ⁸ in ys half, & he hym self al so,

Ordeynede first here ⁹ ost, þe bataile forte do.

Ac mid fyf þousand hors ¹⁰ ywrye, as it was bi speke,

þe erl of Kent was in ¹¹ a wode, hym forte a wreke,

þer of nas not þe kyng war, ac with oute faile

Myd god herte he wende forþ to smyte þis bataile.

Ostages.

Adventus
Julii.

Paracio
belli.

¹ This is the *Ar.* ² And
ofte hit falleth, that men, that
buth in wrathe and in sore,
After hure grete wrathe, hure
loue wexeth the more *Ar.*

³ *L.* emperour. ⁴ The thirde
comynge of Julie Emperour
Ar. in marg. ⁵ Thulke while
Ar. ⁶ Courtes *Ar.* ⁷ *Ut igi-*

*tur vallem prope Dorobernium
intravit, aspexit in eadem Ro-
manorum exercitum castra &
tentoria ponentem Galfr. Mon.*

⁸ On his half, and the kyng
on his also, *Ar.* ⁹ Ostedes, the
bataile for to do *Ar.* ¹⁰ Y
heled, as *Ar.* ¹¹ A wode, for to
be a wreke *Ar.*

By

By twene þe see and Canterbury þis bataile was,
 Neuer ich wene more ¹ slagt in so lute wyle nas.
 þat folk fel doun for wonded & y slawe in eyþer syde
² Ac þikke as leues doþ of tren a ȝeyn wyntre's tyde.
 Ac þo ³ þat folk of þis lond neyȝ hadde þe maistrye,
 Com þe erl of Kent mid ys ost þorȝ ys tricherie
 Al fresch bi hynde þe Britones, alas! þikke stonde.

Fugit Cas-
 sibellanus.

So þat þis lond was y broȝt þorȝ þis treson to gronde.
 Ac þe kyng and somme of ys defendede hem so faste,
 þat heo for hem alle o liue a scapede atte laste,
 And nolde hem ȝelde for no þing, ac among here fon þere
 Of scape vp an hey ⁴ hul, as mony roches were,
 And þer heo cudde here prowes, & kepte hem þere an heyȝ
 With stones, þat nomon ne durste come hem neyȝ.
 Ow! lord þe noble folk, ⁵ þat ys of þis londe,
 Wan heo þe emperour of Rome, þat no lond ne myȝte of stonde,
 In bataile and al ys ost ouer come tuey,
 And euer wolde, as ich wene, nadde ybe tricherie.
 þer fore ich wene, þat þis lond neuer y wonne nere,
 Bute yt þorȝ treson of þe folk of þe selue lond were.
 þo þe emperoure ne myȝte þe kyng myd strengþe ouer come,
 þat hul he kepte for to he hadde myd hongur hym y nome.
 Atte laste ⁶ þe kyng was y brouȝt to gronde
⁷ For hunger for defaut of mete, alas! þilke stonde.

Rex mittit
 comiti.

¹ Slaught *Ar.* ² *L.* as.
³ The folk *Ar.* ⁴ Hulle, ther
 many roches were, *Ar.* ⁵
 That was on this londe, *Ar.*

⁶ Tho the kyng was al y
 brought *Ar.* ⁷ Thurgh hun-
 ger *Ar.*

And he sei wel, þat he moste nede for honger dye,
 Or gelde hym to þe emperour, as al ys men seye,
 And þe emperoure's prison he dradde eke ful sore,
 þer fore þe erl of Kent he by sougte milce and ore,
 þat he hadde rewþe of hym, ¹ and for ys genterise
 Made ys pes with þe emperour with oute feyntyse,
 And þat þe kynde blod of þis lond, of wham ² heo boþe,
 Nere þoru hym y brogt to schame, & þat he toke þer of gome.
 And þat gef he hadde ogt misdo ageyn hym myd wowz,
 þat he yt wolde amendy ageyn hym wel y now.
 þo Androge herde þis, som del he was in þoht.
 "þe prynce," he seide, "oþer kyng nys to preyse noht,
 "þat in tyme of werre as a lomb ys boþe meke & mylde,
 "And in tyme of pes as a lyon boþe cruel & wylde.
 "Mi Goddes of heuene and of erþe, wat segge now ge?
 "My lord bi secheþ now my grace, þat myzte er ³ hoto me.
 "Mid þe emperour and mid me pes he secheþ to drawe:
 "And we boþe of hym bi fore pees wilnede wel fawe.
 "þer fore he schulde hym habbe y þoht, þat þoht me he was
 aboue,
 "And þoht me he myzt haue come a doun, & y kud ⁴ me loue.
 "For yt ys to ⁵ eche prince y wis and kyng vilenye,
 "To de foule ys knyghtes, þoru wam he haþ maystrie.
 "For þe maistry nys not a kyng's, ne be he neuer so god,
 "Ac knyghtes, þat vnder hym fyghteþ, & schedeþ here blod.

¹ And of his gentrise *Ar.*
² *Deest vox.* Nam hii both
 come in *Ar.*

⁴ My loue *Ar.* ³ Ech a kyng
 or prince vilanye *Ar.*

" And napeles ich wol fonden, to brynge hym of ys sore.
 " For ich hadde of hym wreche ynow, wen he bi secheþ myn ore.
 þe erl wende ¹ to emperour, & ² set a doun on kne:
 " Sire," he seide, " al þi wille þou hast þou mygt y se
 " Of þe kyng, þat ys myn vncle, he ys at þi wille.
 " Haue merci of hym ich bidde, & let hym nogt a spille.
 " What woldest þou more of hym, bute þat he þe truage bere?
 þe emperour was stille, & ne gef hym non onswere.
 " Sire emperour," quoth þe erl þo, " ³ ne be ge nogt so bolde.
 " Understond, þat forward ich hadde al þe y holde,
 " To brynge þe kyng bi neþe þe, & þat þou wonne ys londe.
 " Wat schulde ich þe more do, nast þou al þis in þin honde?
 " Nolde God, þat y suffrede my lord, þat is and was,
 (" ⁴ þat bid me for gefnesse, & to amende hys trespas)
 " þat he in þyne bendes come, ⁵ God yt schyld me.
 " For þou ⁶ ne schalt ⁷ so lygtliche hym nyme, y segge þe.
 " Wyle ich libbe for ich wole in eche maner fonde,
 " To helpe my lord & myn vncle, bute þou me vnderstonde.
 þo þe emperour herde þis, he by gan hym by þenche,
 And hys wrappe toward þe kyng, for drede of þe erl, quenche.
⁸ þo emperour & þe kyng in þis forme a cordede were,
 þat þe kyng of þis lond to þe emperour bere

¹ The emp. *Ar.* ² Sette hym
 doun a kne *Ar.* ³ Ne bere ye
 yough nought to bolde *Ar.*
⁴ And biddeth me foryeue-
 nesse to a mendy his trespas
Ar. ⁵ God for shulde hit me
Ar. ⁶ Ne shalt nought so
 lightlyche hym take, ich segge

the. Al the while that ych
 lyue, euere ich wole fonde
Ar. ⁷ *Non leve est interficere*
Cassibelliaunum me vivente,
cui auxilium meum reddere
non erubescam, nisi consilio
meo parueris Galfr. Mon. ⁸ Tho
 the Emperour *Ar.*

þre þousant pownd of seluer from ȝer to ȝere,
 As to truage to Rome, þat non ¹ ner bore nere.
 And in þis manner was Engolond brouȝt first in seruage,
 And þorȝ treson of þis selue lond first ȝef truage.
 þer fore a kyng ne may noȝt among ys knyȝtes be
² To sturne of hys juggement, ac somdel hym by se,
³ þat he haȝ to hem neode he not wuche stonde.
 For a such wille, as ȝe y seȝ, broȝte þis lond to gronde.
 þe emperour & þe kyng to grete loue drowe,
 And eyȝer ⁴ to'' oȝer by twene hem ȝiftes ȝeue ynowe,
 And bi leuede al þe wynter to gedere in þis lond.
 Ac aȝeyn somer þe emperour, ⁵ þo he hadde al on hond,
 Wende toward Rome, and myd gret loue
 Nom with hym þe erl of Kent, þorw wam he was a boue.
⁶ And þoru nobleȝo þat he was man of so gret fame,
 He let a moneȝ of þe ȝer clepye aftur ys owne name,
 Julius, as he het ym self, þe moneȝ þat next ys
 Bi fore heruest, as me clepuȝ ȝet so þe moneȝ y wys.

Vocacio
 mensis
 Julii.

CASSIBEL þe gode kyng, as God ȝef ⁷ þat cas,
 Deide aftur ⁸ sene ȝer þat he ouer come was,
 And y buryed was at Euerwyk, ⁹ & þis kyndom
 Temiwant, ys broȝer sone, aftur hym nome,

Obitus Cas-
 sibellani.

¹ Forbore *Ar.* ² To strange
 of his juggementz *Ar.* ³ And
 that haueth to hem nede he not
 whuche stounde. For thurgh
 such a wilfulnesse this lond was
 brought to grounde. The em.

perour tho & the *Ar.* ⁴ Deest
Ar. ⁵ Whan he hadde *Ar.*
⁶ This Julius the Emperour
 was of so grete fame, *Ar.*
⁷ The *pro* þat in *Ar.* ⁸ Se-
 uen *Ar.* ⁹ And tho this *Ar.*

þat was erl of Cornewaile, and þe erle's broþer of Kent
Androge, that was to Rome mid þe emperour y went.

AUGUSTUS was emperour aftur July of Rome,
þe truage boþe of þis lond from ȝer to ȝer heo nome.
þe kyng's sone Tenwant, Kymbel was ys name,
He huld with hym at Rome, man of noble fame.
He ȝaf hym armes & made him knygt ¹ ys owne honde.
þis Kymbel aftur hys fader kyng was of þis londe.
So muche he louede þe ² emperour, þat þei he myȝt out
Hys truage at holde a ȝer, for loue he nolde noȝt.
þo þis August hadde y be emperour two & fourti ȝer,
He let make a descriuyng, þat y mad nas neuer er.
He sende aboute ys messageres (as yt ys y write)
To eche lond in al þe world a certeyn ³ forte wyte,
How mony schiren were in eche lond, & townes in eche schire,
And how mony men in eche toun, (he was a gret sire)
And þat ech mon paide a peny, & þat me hym þe money bere,
War þoru he wiste, how mony men in al þe world were.
And me made þis descriuing in þis lond, as wel
As in any oþer lond, bi þe kyng's day ⁴ Kinbel.
And napeles ⁵ y leue yt not, þat he ne dude al wel þanne
For loue of þe panes, as to wyte þe noumbre of þe menne.

Kymbel
rex.

¹ With his owen honde
Ar. ² Emperour, than whan
he myȝhte he nolde, The tru-
age that his fader bar, he
wolde nought with holde *Ar.*

³ For to *Ar.* ⁴ Kymbel *Ar.*
⁵ Ich leue hit wel, he dude
hit somdel thanne, As wel for
loue of the pans, as to knowe
the numbres of manne *Ar.*

A bouthe Jerusalem þis noumbryng he bi gan,
 As in þe myddes of þe world, to noumbre eche man,
 þilke tyme oure lord was in ¹ Bedleem ybore
 Of ² Marie, to saue men, þat arst were for lore;
 By Kinbele's day, þat kyng was of Breteyne here,
 And in þe emperoure's August two and fourti gere,
 þat was y clepud Octouian in an oþer name.
 þis emperour August was of so gret fame,
 þat, for Juli þe emperour, (þat bi fore hym was er)
 Hadde aftur hym y clepud a moneþ in the ger,
 þe nexte ³ moneþ afturward, þat heruest moneþ ys,
 He let clepe aftur ⁴ hym August y wys.
 þo August hadde y be emperour fyfty gere and fyue,
 And wel y holde ys power, he wende out of þis lyue.

Ortus
Christi.

TYBERI, ys stepsone, aftur hym com,
 þat nobliche huld ys power, & eke ys kyndom.
 þe ⁵ Gywes, & Herodes (þat here ⁶ kyng was)
 He a dauntede harde y now, and non harm yt nas.
 Pilatus he sende þider, ⁷ here'' justise to be þere,
 Forto holde hem harde y now, as heo wel worþi were.
 And get for al þan, by ys day, þoru here luper mode,
 Heo brogte oure lord Jhesu Christ ⁸ to dye on þe rode.

Pylatus.

Passio
Christi.

¹ Bethlem <i>Ar.</i>	² Maide	& fourty yere, <i>Ar.</i>	³ Moneth
Marie, to saue mankynde, that	theigh nere for lore; By	in the yer, that harueste	<i>Ar.</i>
kynges day Kymbelyn of this	⁴ His name <i>pro</i> hym in	⁵ Juwes <i>Ar.</i>	⁶ Kyng tho was
Brutayne here, And the Em-	⁷ <i>Deest</i> <i>Ar.</i>	⁸ To dethe	
peroure's tyme August two	vpon the Rode	<i>Ar.</i>	

þre and twenti ȝer emperour he was by fore ys deþe,
And aftur hym was Gayus fyf ȝer vn neþe.

¹ Kynbel, oure kyng of þis lond, sones hadde twei,
Guyder and Aruirag, noble men beye.

Guyder aftur ys fader kyng was of þis lond,
And Claudius emperour aftur Gay ich vnderstonde.

Y mad he was emperour sixti ȝer, ich wene,
Aftur þat God¹ was y bore, and a bouten an eigtetene
Aftur oure lorde's deþ. a sene hundred ȝer.

And euene eigte and nyenti Rome was y mad er.

GWIDER, our kyng of þis lond, ys truage at huld sone,
² To Rome þat ys eldore were y wond to done.

Claudius
venit An-
gliam.

Claudius þe emperour þer of hym gan bi se,
þe ferþe ȝer þat he hadde emperour y be
Mid gret ost he wende here to þis londe,

³ A boutte Souþhamto he a ryuede ich vnderstonde.

þo kyng Guyder vnder ȝet, þat heo a riuede þere,
Hym þouȝte long mid ys ⁴ ost er he at hem were.

⁵ Heo mette hem to gedere ⁶ mid power ynog.

Bellum.

Muche folk ⁷ in eyþe half to gronde me slog.

þe kyng Guyder more folk ⁸ slowe ys owne honde,

þan muche del of ys ⁹ ost, as ich vnderstonde.

¹ Kymbelyn, kyng of Bru-
taine, sones hadde tweye *Ar.*

² That his auncetres to Rome
were woned to done *Ar.* ³ In
the contreie of Southamtone
Ar. ⁴ Power *pro* ost in *Ar.*

⁵ Hii *Ar.* ⁶ With gret power
ynough *Ar.* ⁷ On aither side
to grounde me faste slough
Ar. ⁸ Slough with his honde
Ar. ⁹ Folk *pro* ost in *Ar.*

¹ þis Romaines were for nogt ouercome atte laste,
² þat þe emperour with ys ost bi gan to fle faste.
 A cheuenteyn þer was with hym, ³ Haym was ys name.
 He sey, þat ⁴ heore partye wrogt was ney to schame.
 He by þougte hym of felonye, and lette hym arme þere
 Mid armes of Brytones, as he of þis lond were.
 He sywede myd þe Brytones vp þe Romaines so faste,
 þat vr Kyng ⁵ hym louede, & ys herte al vp hym caste.
 He spek Englisch, for he was at Rome ynorisched bi fore
 Myd ostage of þis lond, me louede hym þe bet þer fore.
 He was euer ur kyng nex, and atte last he drow
 Hys swerd, ⁶ ar he were y war, & oure kyng so slow.
 þer was tricheri y now. for nomon ne may bet do
 Gyle ⁷ an oþer, þan þilke þat he trusteþ mest to.
 To hys felawes he ⁸ wende anon, & bad hem hardi be;
 So þat þe Brytones were ⁹ vp þe poynt to' fle.
 Aruirag, oure kynge's broþer, wende forþ anon þere,
 And dude on þe kynge's armes, hym self as yt were.
 And lepte on ys stede, and siwede and slog fast ys fon,
¹⁰ And þe Brutones with hym, for heo wende, þat it were þe kyng
 echon.

Haym in-
terfecit re-
gem per
fraudem.

¹ The Romaines, *Ar.* ² So
 that themperour *Ar.* ³ Lellius
 Haym *Ar.* & Lellius Hamon-
 dus *in marg.* ⁴ His partye
 was neygh y brought to shame
Ar. ⁵ Hym louede wel, & his
 herte to hym caste. He spake
 Brutone, for he was with osta-
 ges at Rome byfore Of this
 londe a queynted, and hadde

hit nought y lore. He was
 euere oure kyng nexte *Ar.*
⁶ Er me were y war, and oure
 kyng a slough *Ar.* ⁷ To a
 nothur, than he that a man
 trusteth most to *Ar.* ⁸ Yede
 anon, *Ar.* ⁹ In poynt forto
Ar. ¹⁰ The Brutones wende
 hit were hure kyng, & siwede
 hym echon *Ar.*

Heo were alle þo so ¹ harde, and þat folk slowe so faste,
 þat þe emperour bi gan to fle mid ys folk at the laste
² To schippes, & into þe see with wrechede hed y now.
 Ac þe lufur Haym with ys folk toward þe wode hym drowe.
 Aruirag hym sywede, and ³ to grounde euer slowg.
 Atte laste ys tricherie wel lutel he ⁴ by lowg.

Hamptone. He ouer tok hym at an hauene & slog hym rygt þere.
 Lutel harm thei tricherus ⁵ so alle y serued were.
 þe hauene þer he was y slawe, aftur ⁶ Haym ys name y wys,
 Hamptone was y clepud, as he zet y clepud ys.
⁷ For Souþhamptone he ys y clepud, and worþ euermo.
 In þis maner þe Britones þis lond ⁸ wiste þo.
 Claudius þe emperour nolde not zet bi leue.
 Eft sone he ⁹ gan with ys ost into þis lond weue.
 Aruirag at Wynchestre with ys men was echon.
 With ys power þe emperour ¹⁰ bisegede hym anon.
 Aruirag greypede hym and ys folk a boutte,
 And wendeþ forþ to geue hym batail with oute.
 þo he com out ward with ys folk, þe emperour with stod,
 And dredde of hys hardynesse, & þougte yt was not god,

¹ Wel y hardied, *Ar.* ² To
 his shipes in to the see with
 wrechede ynough. The luther
 Haym with othur folk to ward
 a wode hem drough *Ar.* ³ Euere
 to grounde slough. And atte
 laste *Ar.* ⁴ By lough *Ar.*
⁵ Alle so y serued *Ar.* ⁶ Haym
 ywis, Haymtone was *Ar.*

⁷ Southamtone hit is eke y clu-
 ped, *Ar.* ⁸ Kepte tho *Ar.*
⁹ Com with his ost in to the
 lond weue *Ar.* ¹⁰ Bysette hem
 echon [*l. anon.*] Aruiragus
 araiede hym, and ordeynede
 his route, Wende forth to yeue
 hem bataille that were with
 oute. He com outward *Ar.*

To

To do his lyf¹ an aunte, and ys men al so.
 He þougte te speke of a cord, gef it mygte be y do.
 To þe kyng he sende word, þat he schulde hym² be se
 And make a forme of a cord, as yt mygte best be.
 For wen heo hadde al y fogte, & here lyf³ an aunte y do,
 And here folk slawe on eyþer syde, & peraunte hem self also,
 Al for a lutel couetyse⁴ þe bi gete war þanne lute,
 Beter yt were⁵ a cordy, and bi leue heore⁶ prude.
 For he was so god⁷ knygt, and also so noble kyng,
 He⁸ beod for to geue hym ys dogter in spousyng,
 þe nobleste damesel þat was in eny londe,
 And to spouse þe emperoure's⁹ dogter yt ner hym no schonde,
¹⁰ For wat he bere ys truage, as rygt¹¹ were, to Rome
 As¹² alle oþer kynges dude; and ys eldren y lome.
 þe kyng for ys heye herte anon yt with seide:
 Ac noþeles ys conseil hym gan þer to rede,
 And saide, þat it was to hym gret prow and honour,
 To be in such mariage alied to þe emperour,
 þo¹³ hexte prince of þe world, and þo maide so noble al so,
 And þat it¹⁴ nere hym no schame, ys truage to do

¹ In auenture, and his men-
 nes also *Ar.* ² By se *Ar.* ³ In
 auenture *Ar.* ⁴ The by yete
 were thanne lyte *Ar.* ⁵ To
 acordy *Ar.* ⁶ Pruyte *Ar.* ⁷ A
 knyght *Ar.* ⁸ Praide hym for
 to *Ar.* *At beod rectè se habet.*
idem nempe est atque offered.
⁹ Doughtur nere to hym no
 shonde, For thy that he bere
Ar. ¹⁰ *Ea conditione (ait) ut.*

imperio Romano subditus es-
set. Sic enim Galfridus Mon.
"Mandabat igitur ei [Arvi-
"rago] concordiam, daturum-
"que promittebat sese filiam
"suam, si tantummodo reg-
"num Britanniae sub Roma-
*"na potestate recognosceret."
¹¹ Was *Ar.* ¹² The *pro* alle in
Ar. ¹³ Heighest *Ar.* ¹⁴ Were
*Ar.**

To þe noble stude of Rome, wan oþer kynges echone
Hit dude þorg al þe world, ¹ & in so noble forme none.

þe kyng, þei he hawteyn were, ches þe best won,

Sponsacio
filiae Clau-
dii.

² And vnder stod ys conseil, so þat heo were at on,

þat he bere ys truage, as oþer dude, to Rome,

And þat he þe emperoure's dogter in spoused þus nome.

þat maide was to lond y brogt of so noble gentrise,

Fairor womman nas þo non, y hote heo was Gewise.

At a lute toun, þat was þo bi Est Walis,

þat vp Seuerne stod, y spoused ³ heo were y wys.

þe kyng louede ys wyf a non so purliche & so faste,

þat al ⁴ ys herte ⁵ outliche on hire one he caste.

Vocacio
Glouce-
stræ.

For honour of þe mariage, þe emperour and he

⁶ Rerde, as heo y spoused was, a swyþe fair cite,

And aftur þe emperoure's name, þat Claudius was,

Heo lette þe cite clepe Claucestre for þis cas.

And þe emperour bi get seþþe in þilke toun bi cas

A sone, þat me clepede Glow, þat gret mon seþþe was,

¹ *Ac pro & in Ar.* ² And
dude after his consail, *Ar.*

³ *Hii Ar.* ⁴ His herte toward
hure al outryght he caste *Ar.*

⁵ Ontliche *forsitan malint*
nonnulli, ut only denotet. At

outliche lectio verissima, idem
scilicet quod utterly valens.

Id quod etiam è Galfr. Mon.
liquet. Sic enim ille: "Erat

"autem nomen puellæ Genui-
"sa, eratque tantæ pulcritu-

"dinis, ut aspicientes in ad-
"mirationem deduceret. Et

"ut maritali lege copulata

"fuit, tanto fervore amoris

"succendit regem, ita ut

"ipsam solam cunctis rebus

"præferret." Ettamen ont-

liche ferri potest, ea, qua dixi,

significatione, pro more An-

glo-Saxonum, qui vocum ad

unam eandemq; rem signifi-

candam repetitionem amant.

⁶ *Thar (omisso rerde, quod*

tamen præfigi debet) that he y

spoused was, a noble cite, Ar.

¹ An hey duk of al þat stude, he clepede þat toun y wys
 Aftur ys name Gloucestre, as he gut y clepud ys.
 A boutte four & twenti ȝer, as þis clerkes vnderstode,
 Aftur þat oure ² lord was y do on þe rode.
 Gloucestre þorȝ þe emperour first þus a rerð was,
 And Souþhampton þer bi fore, ȝe habbeþ y herd þat cas.
 Sente Peter þer bi fore so muche ³ so^{ll} it were
 Pope was ⁴ at Rome first, Cristendom to lere,
 And sende Sent Mark þe euangelist in to Egypt for to preche
 þe gospel þat he hadde y mad, and Cristendom to teche.
 Sent Poul eke þilke tyme to Cristendom wende,
 Sent Denys, & monȝ oþer, as vr Lord a boutte hem ⁵ semde.
 Sent Peter fyue and twenti ȝer Pope bi leuede so
⁶ Forto yt was þe laste ȝer of þe emperour Nero.
 þo þe emperour in þis lond hadde is wille i do y nowȝ,
 He lette þe kyng ⁷ al y worþe, & to Rome a ȝeyn drowȝ.
 þe kyng dyȝte þo þis lond nobliche with alle:
⁸ He lette bulde vp grete townes, þat were ney a doun falle.
 þo Claudius þe emperour to ys ende was y do,
 Aftur hym was emperour þe lupur mon Nero,

Nero.

¹ That duk was aftur of the
 toun, and clepede hit y wis
 Aftur his name Glowcestre, as
 hit nough cleped is *Ar.* ² Lord
 Crist do was on the roode *Ar.*
³ *Erasit quispiam in Ar.*
⁴ Of Rome, Cristendom *Ar.*
omisso first. ⁵ *L.* sende *cum*
Ar. ⁶ Fort hit *Ar.* ⁷ *Totam*
Britanniæ potestatem, sua ab-

sentia, Arvirago concessisse
Claudium, hęc indicat auctor,
illis verbis fultus, quæ Gal-
fridus protulit, viz. "Ædi-
"ficata igitur urbe, ac paci-
"ficata insula, rediit Claudius
"Romam, regnumque pro-
"vincialium insularum Arvi-
"rago permisit. ⁸ And pro
"he in Ar.

¹ prot.

Passio Pe-
tri & Pau-
li.

¹ þrottene ȝer and an half, and þat was longe y now,
And Seynt Peter & Seynt Poule in hys ² laste ȝer he slowȝ.
He bi com ³ sone þer aftur pur gydi and wod :
⁴ For he was in ys moder wembe, as he vnderstod.
He þoȝte he wolde wyte, & se how ⁵ fair þe chaumbre were,
⁶ War inne he was & kenede, ar ys moder hym bere.
Ys moder he let quelle a non, forto se with inne
How fair þe inneward was, þat he kenede inne.
þo ys moder y slaw was, me blamede hym þer fore,
And seyde, þat heo boȝte hym dere, er he were y bore.
“ ⁷ ȝe is hyt,” quop he, “ so strong, myd childe to be stonde?
“ Bi þe fey, þat ich owe Mahone, þe soþe ich wol fonde.
Hys ficianses he ⁸ clepede, and swor ys oþ anon,
Bute heo maden hym with childe, he wolde hem sle echon.
Heo bi speke hem ⁹ bi twene, and, þe deþ forto fle,
þei ȝeuen hym a koynte drench, with childe for to be.
Hys wombe bi gan to ¹⁰ grete, & euer þe lenger þe more,
So ¹¹ longe,“ þat hym þoȝte strong, hys wombe ok wel sore.
He clepede ys ficianses, ¹² and swor grete a non,
Bute heo made hym bere child, he wolde hem honge echon.

¹ Trittene *Ar.* ² Repone
laste *ex Ar.* *Nec est cur pu-*
tes, laste recte posse retineri,
ut sententia sit, eo anno, quo
fuerit mortuus relictus. SS.
Petrum atque Paulum occi-
disse. ³ Sone afterward puȝr
Ar. ⁴ And hough he was in
his moder wombe he thoughte
& vnderstood *Ar.* ⁵ Mury
Ar. ⁶ What that he was ynne

y kenned, er *Ar.* ⁷ Ye, quath
he, is hit strong, with childe
to be bystonde? By the fey
ich owe to my Godes, the sothe
Ar. ⁸ Clepede tho, and *Ar.*
⁶ Bitwyne than, deth *Ar.*
¹⁰ Grety, *Ar.* ¹¹ Deest *Ar.*
¹² And swor his oth anon,
Bute hii delyuerede hym anon,
hii sholde deye echon. Hii
yef *Ar.*

¹ þe

¹ þe geue hym an oþer drenche, to habbe child þer,
So þat atte laste a sory child he ber.

Rana.

² For it alles com forþ, yt was a foul frogge.

For gode me þinkeþ litel harm, þei yt hadde i be a dogge.

ȝet þis ȝredi wreche louede þis foule best,

As ³ wommon deþ hire child ⁴ alle þing mest,

And ⁵ let hym rere a noble court, with gret quoyntyse and gynne,

At þe on ende of Rome, to norische þe schrewe inne;

And clepude þe court Laterane, astur þe frogge y wys,

For in þe langage of Rome, rane a frogge ys.

So ys þat stude y clepud now, & euer worþ for þat cas.

Feble was þe Godfader, astur wam þe name was.

⁶ þe firste chirche þat me lette in þo lond rere,

Seyn Jone's þe Lateran me rerede seþþe þere,

þat stond ȝet, & heued chirche þat of al Cristendom ys,

Ac a beter chef þer ys now, þan þe frogge was y wys.

Seþþe þe luper emperour hadde in his herte joie,

To þenche ⁷ on fuyr, þat was in þe bataile of Troie,

Combustio
Romæ.

þo me barnde grete townes & courtes day & nyȝt,

And þoȝte yt was mury joie, to se so fair alyȝt.

¹ Hii *Ar.* ² For tho hit al
forth com, hit was a wel foul
frogge. His fisiciens hadde y
holde hym wel in the gogge.
Yut this gidy wreche *Ar.* ³ A
woman doth *Ar.* ⁴ Alther
thynge *Ar.* ⁵ Let arere (*omis-*
so hym) in *Ar.* ⁶ The ferste
cherche me rerede there of al
Cristendom. And of Seynt

Johanes de Laterane thus the
name com. Suth the luthure
Emperour *Ar.* ⁷ On fair fuer,
that brend the toun of Troye,
When the grete toures brende
& courtes day and nyȝt, Hym
thoughte hit was a mury game
to se such a syȝt. The wood
wretche *Ar.*

þe

þe gydye wretche lette sette þe ¹ toun of Rome on fuyre,
 To habbe game of þe lygt, þe while yt mygte dure.
 þo wende forþ þe toun folk, as heo moste nede,
 And nolde no more suffre þe schrewe among hem wede,
² And slowe þe schrewe in fyl deþ ynow,
 And þus hym fel wreche of God for he þe apostle slowg.

VASPASIAN þe emperour aftur Nero com,
 þat beter man was þan he, & ³ ne^{ll} worrede nozt Cristendom.
 þe Giwes he worrede ⁴ y now, & brozt hem ⁵ first to nozt,
 For as muche as þe luper men oure Lord to deþ brozt.
 For he and Tytus ys sone of oure Lord vnderstode,
 Fourti ger aftur þat he deide on þe rode,

Occisio Ju-
dæorum.

⁶ And wende to Jerusalem, and þat toun felde to grounde,
 And slowe ⁷ þe luper Gywes al þat heo founde,
⁸ Bute a schipful þer of a scapede, þat were to fele y wys,
 War of com þe luper broð, þat a-mong men zet ys.
 Ten ⁹ ger Vaspasian emperour was þo,
 And Tytus ys sone aftur hym ¹⁰ ten ger, and no mo.
 Domician, Tytus broþer, emperour þo was,
 Fiftene ger aftur hym. no more schrewe þer nas.

¹ Cite <i>Ar.</i> ² He sleigh for fere out of toun, and hym self slough, And for he Petur & Powel slough he hadde ven- geance y nough <i>Ar.</i> ³ <i>Deest</i> <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Stronge ynough <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ Al to <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ Wonne the toun	of Jerusalem, and fulde hit doun to grounde, <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ There the <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ Som yut of hem a skapede, & that was harm y wis, <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Yer afterward Vas- pasian <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ Two <i>Ar. recte.</i> <i>Adeo ut teu reponerem.</i>
--	--

For

For he ¹ worrede Cristendom, as þe luper Nero,
And let ² martri Seyn Denys, & mony oþer al so.

³ **A** NERUA was þo emperour a ȝer, & somdel more.

Trajan ⁴ com aftur hym, mon of gret lore.

Trajanus.

Nyentene ȝer & an half emperour he was,

⁵ þe noblest þat myȝte, bote þat he Cristene nas.

So ryȝtful he was, þat ⁶ þan he hadde a dede hym self ydo,
þat a ȝeyn ⁷ ys lawes was, and ys sone al so,

⁸ For such dede a man schulde, þat þis hadde y wroȝt,
Lese ys on eye, & he hym self ne sparede hym self noȝt,
Bute let pulte out ys own eye, & ys sone's al so.

⁹ Wel'' fewe kynges ¹⁰ me syþ, þat yt wolde do.

þer fore Seyn Gregori, þo he o londe was,

More þan fyf hundred ȝer aftur þis ryȝtful cas,

þat such a mon schulde in helle be, he carede in hys þoȝt,
þe soule ¹¹ þorp Gode's grace out of helle he broȝte,

And to ys body ¹² ys joyned, & gef hym Cristendom,

¹³ War with, as he worþi was, to blisse of Heuene ¹⁴ com.

¹ Werrede *Ar.* ² Martire
Seynt *Ar.* ³ *Litteram hanc
majusculam A rectissime omit-
tit Ar.* ⁴ Com tho after hym,
a man *Ar.* ⁵ Noble man for
soth he was, but he *Ar.* ⁶ Theigh
pro þan in Ar. ⁷ The lawe
were, or his sone *Ar.* ⁸ For

which dede a man sholde, for
that he hadde y wrought, Lese
eny of hys lymes, hym self ne
sparede he nought, Ac let *Ar.*
⁹ *Deest Ar.* ¹⁰ Me nough
sikth *Ar.* ¹¹ Thurgh *Ar.* ¹² Hym
Ar. ¹³ Whar thurgh, as *Ar.*
¹⁴ He com *Ar.*

Adrian

ADRIAN com þo next, and twenti ger and on
 Aftur hym emperour he was, of Giwes ne louede he non.
 þe ¹ boru of Jerusalem he let somdel a ² zeyn^{ll} rere,
 þat Vaspasian felde adoun, þo he slow þe Giwes þere.
 Ac he nolde ³ þe Giwes leue geue for noþing, þat heo mygte,
 þat þe moste of þe boru enes habbe a sygte.
 He dude hem schame y now, & temprede hem fulwel,
 And made ⁴ hem sone milde y now, þo heo were rebel.

ANTONIN was þo emperour twenti ger and two,
 And aftur hym twei breþeren in þe emperie were y do,
 Marcus & Aurelius, nyentene ger heo were,
 Cristendam bi here day ⁵ me by gan faste lere.
 For ⁶ Eleuthere a god mon was þo pope of Rome,
 þorw wam first ⁷ Christenemen in to Engolond come,
 Ych wol sone telle how, as ich vnderstonde,
 And telle aftur þis emperoures of kynges of þis londe:

Reges.

AFTUR kyng Aruirag, of wam we habbeþ y told,
 Marius, ys sone, was kyng, quoynte mon & bold.
 And ys sone was aftur hym, ⁸ Coil was ys name,
 Boþe it were quoynte men, & of noble fame,

¹ Burgh *Ar.* ² Deest *Ar.*³ The Jewes loue for no thyng,
 that hii myghte, That hii moste
 of the burghe ones haue *Ar.*⁴ Hem meok and mylde ynough,
 that erst were rebel *Ar.* ⁵ Megan faste to lere *Ar.* ⁶ Eleu-therie the good man *Ar.* ⁷ Cris-tendom *Ar.* ⁸ Kyng Coel was
 his name, A noble man &
 queynte, and of good fame,
Ar.

And

And here truage dude to Rome, as hem agte to do.
 For þer nas ¹ nower so noble prince, þat ne dude ² so.
 Lucye, Coile's sone, aftur hym kyng was.
³ For, as me may þe soþe segge, by fore hym no beter nas.
 For he herde ⁴ of telle of miracles, þat come
 þorw Cristenemen al a boutē, as wel as at Rome.
 He willede anon in hys herte to fonge Cristendom.
 þer fore ys messageres mid gode lettres he nom,
 þat to þe pope ⁵ Eleuchere hastiliche heo wende,
⁶ þat he quik in to ys lond Cristendom hym sende,
 þat ⁷ heo mygte serue God, for he wilnede mucche þer to,
 And he ne schulde not be glad, er þe dede were y do.
⁸ þo pope here of was glad, & twei holy men hym sende,
 Fagan and ⁹ Dimian, hys soule for to amende
¹⁰ þat rygt bi leue hym tagte, and gef hym Cristendom.
 þo folk þo faste a boutē wyde þer to com.
 þis was an hundred ȝer, and sixti ȝer and two,
 Aftur þat God was ybore, þat þis dede was y do.
¹¹ þus com lo into þis lond first Cristendam,
 Bute yt were any holi man, þat priueliche arst yt nom.

Prima
 Christiani-
 tas Angliæ.

¹ None *Ar.* ² Also *Ar.* ³ To
 fore hym in Engelande Cris-
 tendom none nas *Ar.* ⁴ Ofte
 telle *Ar.* ⁵ Eleutherie *Ar.*
⁶ And that *Ar.* ⁷ He *Ar.* ⁸ The
Ar. ⁹ Damian *Ar.* ¹⁰ The
 ryght bileue to teche, & yaf
 hym Cristendom. That folk
 faste a boutē wide ther to com
Ar. ¹¹ Thus com lo Cristen-

dom in to Brutayne londe, But
 ther were erst some preueliche
 Cristendom hadde fonge. As
 at the place of Glastyngbury
 Joseph of Arimathie Lyuede
 ther in Criste's laȝ, with hys
 companye. Ther were tho
 in Brutayne, false lawes to lere,
Ar.

þer

þer were arst in Engelond, hor false lawes to lere,
 Eygte and twenti chef studes, bischopriches as it were,
 And þre architemples, as it were ¹ hext of echon,
 London, and ² Euerwik, and in Glomorgan on.

Episcopa-
tus.

þis gode kyng & his holi men lette felle hem alle þere,
 And eigte & tuenti bischopriches in here studes lette rere.

Archiepi-
scopatus.

And þe erchbischopriches as þe þre architemples were,
 As yt were of alle chef Cristendom to lere.

Alle þo bischopriches vnder Euerwik were ydo
 þat ben bi Norþ Humber, as heo deþ get al so.

London ³ hadde þo al þis lond, þat bi Norþ Humber ys,
 From Douere to Seuerne, and al Cornewaile iwis.

þe þridde erchbischopriche was at Carleon in Walis
 Vp Osk in Glomorgan, ac þe see a doune ys,
 Ac endes of olde walles þer stondeþ get ⁴ euerne,"

Under hym Walis þilke hadde, & al bi West Seuerne.

Reditus
incredulita-
tis.

⁵ þus com lo in to þis lond first Cristendom,
 Ac þoru a luper emperour, þat þer aftur com,
 þat het Dioclician, it was seþþe i brogt to gronde,
 And ⁶ heþenes y brogt ageyn for to Seynt Austyn it vn bonde.

¹ Heyghest *Ar.* ² Ebrack-
 wik, and ther to Carlyon. The
 kyng and othur holy men de-
 struyde hem alle y fere, And
 eighte and twenty bisshopes in
 hure stede dude there, And
 thre Erchebisshopes ther the
 Erchetemples were, *Ar.* ³ Had-

de that othur del, that a this
 side Humber is, Fram Douere
 in to Cornewaille to the see
 ywis *Ar.* *Adeo ut Souþ pro*
Norþ reponi debeat. ⁴ *Deest*
in Ar. ⁵ Thus com in to this
 lond the lawe of Cristendom,
Ar. ⁶ Hethenesse *Ar.*

Lucie þis gode kyng, þat þus Cristene bi com,
Deide aboute four ger aftur ys Cristendom.

At ¹ Gloucestre he deide, ac eir nadde he non,
þat a corede al þis lond, and ys men echon.

SOUER was emperour þilke tyme at Rome,
So þat þe tyþinges sone to hym come,
þat ² þo kyng of Breteyne with oute eyr was ded.
Sone he þoru is court þer of nom ys red,
And wende hider hastiliche ³ with power y now,
And folk, þat stode a geyn hym, faste to gronde he slow.
A duk þer was of þis lond, Fulgence was ys name,
He stod ageyn hym mid ys ost, & dude hym gret schame;
And, forto be þe sikerore, he wende ⁴ to Scotlond,
And made hym þere ⁵ gret ost of folk of þat lond,
And wende oft vp hym, and slow and barnde faste.
Ac euer hadde þe emperour þe maystre atte laste.

⁶ þe emperour in þis lond weddede þo a wyf,
þat was Fulgence's ⁷ sotre, þo in al þis strif.
Bi hire he hadde a god sone, y clepud Basian;
An oþer he hadde, y hote Get, þat he at ⁸ Rome biwan.
þo Fulgence seiþ, þat he ne mygte ageyn hym stonde,
To þe ⁹ lond of Scicie he wende out of þis londe,

Imperator
sponsat so-
rorem Ful-
gencii.

¹ Gloucetre he was y buried,
ac heir hadde he non, Muchel
sorwe to the lond, and to the
men echon. Seuer was tho Em-
perour *Ar.* ² The *Ar.* ³ With
gret power y nough. That
folk *Ar.* ⁴ In to *Ar.* ⁵ A

gret ost of landfolk of the
londe, And wende out vpon
hym *Ar.* ⁶ Themperour here
in this lond tho weddede a
wife, *Ar.* ⁷ Suster in this ilke
strife *Ar.* ⁸ Rome wan *Ar.*
⁹ Contreie of Sithie *Ar.*

¹ And a gret ost of Picars, whas cheuenteyn he was,
Of stronge men he gederede, to helpe hym in þis cas.
þo he y mad hym a fayr ost of þis bachelerie,
He com a zeyn in to þis lond out of ² Scicie.
He by lay first Euerwik op þe emperour faste.

Bellum.

So þat þe emperour hym zef batail at þe laste.

³ Ac muche del of þis lond to Fulgence toke,
For ⁴ he more of kynde was, & þe emperour for soke.

Bataile þei smyte strong ynow, & mony slowe to gronde,
So þat Fulgence þere hadde deþeiswonde.

Ac þe emperour ⁵ was y slawe, & y buried at Euerwyk.

⁶ Ac Fulgence deide seþþe, þo he hadde y ley sik.

Contencio.

þo þis men were boþe ded, me moste hadde a kyng.

Bi twene þo Romaines & þis lond þer bi gan þo stryuyng.

⁷ Get, þe emperoure's sone, þe Romaines to kyng nome.

For he was ⁸ of fader and moder of þe kynde of Rome.

Ac þe Brutones of þis lond nome Basian þer to.

For ys moder was of þis lond, & ys vncle al so.

⁹ þo þer were twei kynges þus, þer nas not wel gret loue,

Ne mygte, þei heo breþren were, er þo on were a boue.

¹ And of Pictes gedered an
ost, and hure cheuenteyn was,
Staleworthe men and hardy,
to helpe hym in this cas. Tho
this ost y gadered was of yonge
bachelrie, *Ar.* ² Sithie. He
byseged Euerwyk vpon them-
perour faste *Ar.* ³ For *pro ac*
in Ar. ⁴ He of hure kynde
was, *Ar.* ⁵ Was er y slawe,

Ar. ⁶ And Fulgence deyde
afterward, tho he hadde longe
be sik. Tho these men *Ar.*
⁷ Geth, themperoure's *Ar.*
⁸ Of the fader blod, & of the
kynde of Rome *Ar.* ⁹ Theigh
they were bretheren beye, ther
was nought gret loue, Ne they
myghte reste haue, forte on
was a boue *Ar.*

So

Bellum.

So þat eiper ¹ vp oþer werrede ² faste,
 And a batail strong y now smyten at þe laste.
³ And Basian and ys power slow ⁴ Get ys broþer,
⁵ And Basian bi leuede kyng, for þer nas þo non oþer.

A STALEWORþE zong bachiler in þis lond was þo,
⁶ Caraus was yclepud, þat coupe of muche wo.
 For þo he hadde in werre y be, ⁷ & do gret maistrie,
⁸ And hym self muche yfounded, he þougte do tricherie.
 He wente and bed leue þo of þe emperour of Rome,
⁹ To wyte þe se a boutte þis lond fram stronge men þat come,
 And bi het hym, þat, gef þer of wel anaunsed he were,
 To zelde more god to Rome, þan al Breteyne þider bere.
 þo þe conseil of Rome y leuede ys faire bi hest,
 And þat he was strong mon, & of gret power with þe meste,
 þe emperour with god cartre, & mid ys owne ¹⁰ cel,
¹¹ Hym gef of þe se a boutte þe warde euer y del.
 þis false mon wende ¹² þo mid ys cartre a boutte,
 And of ¹³ willesful men hym zederede a gret route,
 And bi het hem ¹⁴ god y now of purchas, þat God hem sende,
 And purueide ¹⁵ hem gode schippes, & in to þe se wende,

¹ Upon *Ar.* ² Swithe faste,
Ar. ³ So Bassian *Ar.* ⁴ Geth
Ar. ⁵ And so he was al one
 kyng, for ther was non other
Ar. ⁶ Karant cluped he was,
 & couthe on muchel wo *Ar.*
⁷ Y do *Ar.* ⁸ And a sayd
 muche hym self, he thoughte
 in trecherie *Ar.* ⁹ To kepe

the Bruttýsshe see fro strange
 men. that come *Ar.* ¹⁰ Sele,
Ar. ¹¹ Hym yaf the power of
 this lond to hym euery dele *Ar.*
¹² Forth tho with his chartre
Ar. ¹³ Euel doynge men ga-
 derede *Ar.* ¹⁴ Good *Ar.* ¹⁵ Hym
Ar.

And won hem sone muche god mid strengþe & quoyntise,
 And seþþe mid robbery, bute þei mygte ¹ in'' oþer wyse,
² Of hys purchas so large he was to men þat he fonde,
 þat he hadde a gret ost in a lutel stonde.
 þe yles he robbede in þe see, & þe hauenes ³ seþþe'' a boutē.
⁴ So þat men of purchas come to hym so gret route,
 þat þer nas ⁵ prince vn neþe þat hym mygte at route.
 Hys power wex euer so, þat eche lond hym gan doute.
 So þat he spek mid hey men here of þis lond,
 And bi het hem faire y now, & dude hem to vnderstonde,
 þat ȝef heo abowe to hym, and to here kyng hym nome,
 þat he ⁶ wole al out hem brynge of þe daunger of Rome,
 And ⁷ deliuere þis lond of Romaines, & of stronge men echon,
 þat so fre lond as þis ne schulde nower non.
 þe lond hym made þo here kyng, for he was so quoynte man,
 And he bi gan to werre anon vp þe kyng Basian,
 And eyþer ageyn oþer gederede ys ost faste,
 So þat þei comen and smyton a batail atte laste.
⁸ Ac ⁶ Caraus of felonye hym gan vnderstonde,
 And þogte, þat ¹⁰ Picars were of ¹¹ strong londe,

Bellum.

¹ *Omittit Ar.* ² So large he was to hys men of thynges that hii fonde, *Ar.* ³ *Deest in Ar.* ⁴ *Sic igitur ipso agente confluebant ad illum quicunque in aliena anhela-*
bant; ita ut in brevi tantum haberet exercitum, quanto nullus vicinus princeps resis-
tere quivisset Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Prince non that *Ar.* ⁶ Wolde hem brynge al out of *Ar.* ⁷ De-

lyuere out of this lond, the Romeynes echon: So freo a lond as this in the worlde sholde be non. That folk hym made tho hure kyng, *Ar.* ⁸ *Quod cum impetrasset, dimicavit confestim cum Bassiano & interfecit eum, & gubernaculum regni suscepit. Prodi-*
derant enim Bassianum Picti, quos dux Fulgentius, ma-
tris

þat ¹ were with Basian þe kyng, þat Fulgence ² hider broȝte,
 þat ³ heo wolde ligitliche to hym turne ⁴ he þoȝte.
 Mid hem he spek so quoyntoliche, & mede ⁵ bi gan bede,
 So þat þe kyng Basian heo by traide in hys nede.
 For þo heo come to batail, heo turnede a ȝeyn hym echon:
⁶ Heo nuste wich were ⁷ here frend, ne wych were ⁸ here fon.
⁹ Ac Basian and al ys folk eode a non to gronde,
 And he hym self, and mony oþer y slawe were in astonde.
 þo was þis false ¹⁰ Caraus kyng of þis lond here,
¹¹ Unel it bi com hym of kynde to ben of such power.
 þo tyþing com þo to Rome, þat he dude hem such schame,
¹² Heo nome a gret lordyng, Allect was ys name,
 And sende hym in to þis lond, & men mid hym ynowe,
 So þat in batail þis ¹³ Caraus heo slowe.
 þo þis batail was y do, heo bi gonne arere
 Werre vp men of þis lond, for ¹⁴ heo with Caraus were.

*tris suæ frater, in Britanniam
 conduxerat. Nam dum sibi
 auxiliari debuissent, promissis
 & donariis Carausii corrupti,
 in ipso prælio divertunt se à
 Bassiano, & in commilitones
 suos irruerunt. Unde stupefacti
 ceteri, cum ignorarent quis
 socius esset, quis hostis, ocius
 dilabuntur, & victoria cessit
 Carausio. Qui ut triumphum
 habuit, dedit Pictis locum
 mansionis in Albania, ubi cum
 Britonibus mixti per subsequens*

ævum permanserunt Galfr.

*Mon. 9 Carant of his felonye
 gan hym Ar. 10 The Pictes
 Ar. 11 Strange Ar.*

¹ Hii were *Ar.* ² His Uncle
 broughte, *Ar.* ³ Hii *Ar.* ⁴ Hure
 thoughte. To hem he spak
Ar. ⁵ Bygan hem beode, *Ar.*
⁶ He *Ar.* ⁷ His *Ar.* ⁸ His
Ar. ⁹ And *Ar.* ¹⁰ Carant
Ar. ¹¹ Unele by cam hym of
 kynde to haue such power *Ar.*
¹² Hii *Ar.* ¹³ Carant hii *Ar.*
¹⁴ Hii with Carant *Ar.*

þe Brytones þo of þis lond, to schilde ¹ hem fro schame,
² Cheson hem anew kyng, ³ Asclepiod was ys name,
 þat was erl of Cornewail. he ⁴ gedere ys ost anon
 To werre, & to stonde a ȝeyn þe ⁵ Romaines ys fon.
 He ⁶ wende hym to Londone, as kyng Allect þo was,
 To honoure ⁷ here false Godes, as it fel þo bi cas.
⁸ þo þis kyng þis vnder ȝet, þat þis folk þus come,
⁹ He bi leuede ys sacrifise, & ys folk with hym nom,
 And wende out ageyn hem, & strong bataile heo smyte.
 So muche folk þer was y slawe, þat deol yt was to wyte.
¹⁰ þis Britones were so egre, and wox euer so faste,
 þat ¹¹ þo Romaines and here kyng gonne fle atte laste.
¹² þo Britones siwede aftur, as heo aȝt do,
 And slowe mony þousant, and Allect þe kyng al so.
 A ¹³ lordyng of þe Romaines, þat y hote was Galle,
 Com & ¹⁴ gold hym to oure kyng, & ys men ney wat alle.
 þe kyng hym nom to prison, to London he was y broȝt.
 þe kyng hym wolde ȝeue lyf, ac ys men nolde noȝt,
 Ne suffre, þat þer were ¹⁵ o liue eny of here fon,
 Ac ladde hym in to London, & ys men echon,
 To a rennyng water, þat ȝet ys þer y wene,
 And smyten of alle here hedes, to bryng hem out of tene.
 þe water þer heo were y slawe me clepude Galle brok,
 Aftur Galle þilke prince, þat þer ys deþ tok.

¹ Hem self fram *Ar.* ² Chese
Ar. ³ Asclepedot *Ar.* ⁴ Ga-
 derede *Ar.* ⁵ Romeynes, that
 were his fon *Ar.* ⁶ Wende
 thuder sone anon, ther as
 Allect was, *Ar.* ⁷ His *Ar.*

⁸ Tho Allect this vnder yat
Ar. ⁹ He by lefte *Ar.* ¹⁰ These
Ar. ¹¹ The *Ar.* ¹² The *Ar.*
¹³ Lordlyng *Ar.* ¹⁴ yeld *Ar.*
¹⁵ Alyue *Ar.*

þo was Breteyn þis lond of Romaynes almost lere,
¹ Ac albysi were yt ten ȝer, ar heo here ageyn were.
 Asclepiod let hym þo crowne to kyng a non,
 And kept a boute ten ȝer þis lond ² wel mid.
 Ac þoru Romaynes, þat ³ here come, þat heþene were echon,
 And þoru ⁴ oþer, Cristendom was nei wat al agon.

TWEI ⁵ emperoures ⁶ of Rome, Dyoclician,
 And an oþer, ys felaw, þat het Maximian,
⁷ Were boþe at on tyme, þe on in þe Est ende,
⁸ And þe oþer in þe West, Cristendom to schende.
 For þe luper Maximian Westward hider sogte,
 And Cristenemen, þat he fond, to strong deþ he brogte.
 Chirches he fel al a doun, þer ne moste non stonde.
 And al þe bokes, þat he mygte fynde in eny londe,
 He wolde lete hem berne echon amid þe heye strete,
 And ⁹ þo Cristenemen ¹⁰ alle sle, and none ¹¹ o liue lete.
 Seþþe God was ¹² y bore, þer nas for Cristendom
 In so lute stonde y do so gret martirdom.
 For þer were in a moneþ seuentene þousant and mo
 Y martired for oure Lorde's loue, (¹² nas not here gret wo?)

¹ Unnethe was hit ten yer, that hii her a yen nere. Ascleopedot hym let tho crouny kyng a non *Ar.* ² *Pro* wel mid *legend. potius cum Ar.* fram his fon. *Id quod carminis ratio postulat.* ³ Hider *Ar.* ⁴ Othur mysbeleuede, Cristendom was al gon *Ar.* ⁵ *Vide Editionem nostram vitæ Ælfredi Magni Spelmannianæ,*

p. 4. ⁶ At Rome were, on Dioclician, *Ar.* ⁷ And were bothe *Ar.* ⁸ The othur in the West of the worlde, al Cristendom to shende *Ar.* ⁹ The *Ar.* ¹⁰ A sle *Ar.* ¹¹ A lyue *Ar.* ¹² Y bore, vpon Cristendom Such persecucion as tho was hadde ther be non *Ar.* ¹² Nas there a gret wo? *Ar.*

With oute ¹ grete halwe, þat heo hulde longe in torment,
 As Seynt Cristyne & Seynt Fey, & al so Seynt Vincent;
² As Sebastian, & mony oþer, as me may in Chirche rede,
 And monyon turnede a geyn to heþene for drede.
 Among alle þese in þis lond, þat were monion
 Y martred as þilke tyme, Seynt Albon was on,
³ þat was þe firste martir, þat to Engolond come,
 Dere hap, Lord! mony a mon y bogt Cristendom.
 Under þis luper ⁴ emperoures þer was a noble mon,
 As of ⁵ heore luper lawes, þat vnder hem muche won.
 Constance was ys name, he conquerede of Spayne
 þe truage, and of Fraunce, & seþþe here of Bretayne.

Constan-
 cius.

COLE was a noble mon, & ⁶ gret power hadde on honde,
 Erl he was of Colchestre here in þis londe,
 And Colchestre aftur ys name y clepud ysich vnderstonde.
 Oure lord, among oþer þinges, hym sende a fair sonde,
 þat ⁷ he hadde an holy dogter al Colchestre in þis londe,
 þat Seynt Helene was y clepud, þat ⁸ þo holy croys fonde.

¹ Othure grete halwen, *Ar.*
² Fabian and Sebastian, and
 othur, as men rede, that helde
 faste in the fey, and hadde
 non drede. And, among men
 of these londe, ther were ma-
 nyon I martred at thulke
 tyme, *Ar.* ³ He was the furste

martir of Brutayne that com.
 Muche was the shame me dude
 tho to Cristendom. Under *Ar.*
⁴ Emperour *Ar.* ⁵ Hure luthur
 lawe, and vnder hym muche
 wan *Ar.* ⁶ Muche *Ar.* ⁷ He
 gat a fair doughter at Coel-
 chestre *Ar.* ⁸ The *Ar.*

Bi

Bi twene oure kyng ¹ Asclepiod & þis erl with oute faile
² þer wox gret worre, so þat heo smyte bataile. Bellum.
 And þis erl Cole slow þe kyng, & þo he hadde ³ þo ouer hond,
 Kyng he let hym crowne þo of ⁴ al þis lond.
 þat folk was þo of þis lond y payed wel ynow,
 þat he hadde y wonne þe kyndom, & þat he þe oþer slow.
 þe tyþing to Rome com, ⁵ þat he y slawe was,
 þat hem hadde y do schame, heo were glad of þat cas.
 þe noble prince ⁶ heo sende hyder þe gode knygt Constance,
 þat wan hem al þe power of Spayne & eke of France,
⁷ þat he scholde eke þis lond wynne a zeyn to Rome.
 So þat þis noble prince, and ys men hyder come.
⁸ þe kyng Cole yt vnder zet, he dradde in ys mod,
 For he was so noble ⁹ knygt, þat no mon hym with stod.
 To hym he sende of acord, gef it were is wille, Concordia.
 þat he wolde to Rome abowe, & lete alle strif be stille,
 And þider bere ys truage, as oþer dude bi fore,
¹⁰ For wat he huld þe kindam, wen þe truage were ybore.
 Constance it grantede, and nom ys truage,
¹¹ And nom also to be siker of hym god ostage,
 And grantede hym þe kyndom and þe pes of Rome,
 And bi leuede in þis lond ¹² to godere y some.

¹ Astleopedot <i>Ar.</i> ² Gan ther were a kontek, so that hii smyte ane bataille <i>Ar.</i> ³ The heygher <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Al the Bru- tayne lond <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ The kyng a slawe was, <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ Hii <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ And that <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ Tho Coel <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Prince <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ And to kepe the kyndom, that hit	nere forlore. Constancius grauntede this, & <i>Ar.</i> ¹¹ And to be the sikerour, of hym toke good ostage, <i>Ar.</i> ¹² To ge- dere botho y come. Sone by fel afterward, That Coel kyng sik lay, And deide sone afterward with ynne a short day, <i>Ar.</i>
--	---

Sponsacio
Helene.

A moneþ it was þer aftur, þat Cole syk lay,
And deide, as God wolde, with inne þe eigteþe day,
And oþer eir nadde he non, bute Seynt Helene þe gode,
Ys dogter, þat seþþe fond þe swete holy rode.

Constance, for hire eritage, þis maide to wyue nom,
And nom with ¹ hire so þis lond, and þis kyndom,
And let hym ² crowne kyng, & god kyng was and fyn.
By hire he hadde a god sone, y clepu Constantyn.
þo Constance hadde y be ellene ger kyng y wys,
He deide at ³ Euerwyk, and y buried was þer and ys.

CONSTANTYN, is gonge sone, ycrowned was þo kyng.
Noble mon he bicom, & ⁴ wytty þorp alle þing.
Kyng he was þritti ⁵ ger. he ladde þis kyndom
Rygt nobliche and swiþe wel with quoyntyse and wysdom.

A LUTHER emperour bi fore, þat het Maximian,
þat was ⁶ vp Cristenemen (as we seide) so luper a man,
A sone he hadde ⁷ schrewe y now, Maxencius to name,
Hym me made emperour, mony mon to schame.
He wes, as wel as ys fader, gret schrewe y now.
⁸ For in strong martirdom Seynt Kateryn he slow,

¹ Hure al this lond, *Ar.*
² Crouny to kyng, that good
knyght was & fyn, *Ar.* ³ E-
bracwyk, and ther y buried
ys. Constantyn *Ar.* ⁴ Wys
thurgh *Ar.* ⁵ Yer of this
kyngdom, And gouernede hit
swythe wel with queyntise &

wysdom. The luthur *Ar.*
⁶ Upon Cristendom a swithe
luthur man, *Ar.* ⁷ Sherewed
ek, Maxent was his name,
Hym he made *Ar.* ⁸ For
Katerynē, and other mo, in
stronge deth he slough. Much
folk he dude shame, and the
folk

And mony oþer martir, and þat folk of Rome al so
 He fondede to deserie, and mony schames do.
 So þat þe deserites in to þis lond come
 To Constantyn, þe gode kyng, for de faute from Rome.
 And he hem faire vnder fong, so þat mo and mo
 þer come for enlegeance to habbe of heore wo.
 So þat ¹ þese deserites bi gonne al on hym grede.
 “Sire,” heo seiden, “for Gode’s lone bryng vs of þis
 wrechede.
 “Of þe kynde blod of emperie þer nys bi leued non,
 “² Ne þat bi kynde were emperour, non bute þou on.
 “How longe wolt þou suffre þe schrewe’s out rage?
 “Go and wyn þi kynde lond and þyn eritage.
 “þou schalt habbe þer help y now of þi kynde londe.
 “Wel þou wost, þat ³ lute while þe schrewe þe at stonde.
 Constantyn hym vnderstod of ys kynde londe,
⁴ And god it were to habbe þis and þat on honde.
 Muche power of þis lond mid hym forþ he nom,
 And seþþe also of France, as he þer forþ com.
 And wende toward Rome to wynne þe emperie,
 To brynge þe schrewe adoun, þat dude þat robberye.
 As he wende, he bi huld toward heuene an hey,
 And þo vp in þe firmament an angel he sey,

Visio
 crucis.

folk of Rome also He fondede
 to disherite, and brynge hem
 to wo. The disheritez of
 Rome to this londe come To
 Constantyn, and bysoughte
 hym of hem to take gome.
 And he hem *Ar.*

¹ The disherites gonne on
 hym to grede *Ar.* ² That
 sholde be kynde emperour,
 non but though al on *Ar.*
³ Lytel while they shulleth
 the withsonde *Ar.* ⁴ And
 that hit were good to haue *Ar.*
 þat

þat huld a croys, and þer on y write was lo! þis,
 “¹ Costantyne þorg þis signe þou schalt be maister iwis.”
 Constantyne þis vnderstod, heþene þai he were.
 A crois, in stude of ys baner, ² ys men bi fore hym bære.
 Maxencius þo he wiste him come, he hadde of hym gret
 doute.

He let at Rome a strong dich make al a bonte
 And dep agen Constantyne, and a geyn al ys route,
 Forto holde hem þer þoru wan heo come with oute.
 As he was a bonte þis dich, he ne gan not mucche wyne.
 For he fel al amidde, and dreynt hym þer inne.
 þoru þe vertu of the crois he was sone ouercome,
 And Costantyn hadde al so sone þe toun ynome,
³ Costantyn ne com nower in batail non,
 þat he nadde þorg þe crois þe maistri of fon.
 So þat he hym vnderstod ⁴ of þe beste won,
 And of Seynt Siluestre þe pope hym let baptize anon.
 And he was (as yt is ywrite) pur mesel þo,
 And he bi com in hys baptizing hol of ys wo.
 Seynt Siluestre was pope þo, and þe first þat þer com
 Of alle popes þat deide with outh martirdom.
 For þer nas non by fore him þat he martired nas
 Of þe luther emperoures, for eche heþene was.

Baptiza-
cio Con-
stantini.

Levacio
ecclesia-
rum.

A chirche of Seynt Jon þe baptist Constantyn let rere,
 And clepude yt ⁵ Costantiniane, for he was ybaptized pere.

¹ Constantyn *Ar.* & sic in-
fra. ² Tofore hym he let rere
Ar. ³ Constantyn ther after-

ward com in bataille non *Ar.*

⁴ What best was to don,

Ar. ⁵ Costantiniane, *Ar.*

Of

¹ Of Seynt Petur & of Poule an oþer he rerede al so,
And in strong ² mastlyng he hap þer inne boþe heore bones
y do.

Of seynt Laurence he rerde anoþer, of seynt Anneis eke on.
And of oþer Seyntes þat zet stondeþ he rerede eke monion.
þo sende he Seynt Elene ys moder, ³ þat wys was y kud,
To Jerusalem to seche þe croys, þat þere was y hud.
So þat it was þer y founde ⁴ þe by gyng of þe Maȳ,
As ȝe habbeþ ofte yherd, þe holy rode day.
Costantyn lette also in Jerusalem chirches rere,
And ⁵ wyde aboute elles wer, Cristendom to lere.
So þat þoru Gode's grace so noble mon he was,
þat þer nas prince in al þe world, þat vnder ys power nas.
þre vnclen ys moder hadde, þat on hatte Honyn,
And Trahen þo oþer hette, and þe þridde Maryn.
Alle þre Costantyn nom with hym to Rome,
And grete lordes þoru hym alle þre þer bi come.

AN erl þer was in þis lond, Octaui was ys name :
Romaines, þat ⁶ here bileuede, he dude ofte schame,
And slow hem faste her & þer, ⁷ þat me schulde uewe y se.
þe Brutones hym crownede þo heore kyng for to be.
⁸ þis word com to Costantyn, he þougte was to done :
Trahen, ys moder vnclen, hyder he sende sone.

¹ To *pro* of *in* *Ar.* ² Mast-
lyng he let hure bones do *Ar.*
³ That wys womman was
kud, *Ar.* ⁴ In the gynnyng
of May, *Ar.* ⁵ Wende a

boute *Ar.* ⁶ Were byleued,
Ar. ⁷ That few me myghte
y se *Ar.* ⁸ Whan this word
cam to Constantyn, he nuste
what best to done : *Ar.*

With gret power ynow, to wynne þis kyndom.

At an hauene bi Souþe þis ¹ folk o londe com.

þe kyng was of hem ywar, ageyn ² hem he sette.

Bi side Winchestre in a feld to gedere heo hem mette.

Bellum. Batail heo smyten þer, & to gronde slowe faste,

So þat Octaui oure kyng aboue was ³ tte laste,

And Trahen, & mucche of hys folk, y wonded ney to deþe,

⁴ Flowe to se to heore schippes, and of scapede vnnep̃e.

To Scotlond heo wende bi water, & þer þei gonne ariue,

And gederede þer ⁵ al new ost ageyn þe kyng bi liue,

And robbede faste and barnde al þe contrei a boutē.

Oure kyng wende þiderward faste mid ys route.

Bellum. In Westmerlond þei mette hem, and gonne figte biliue,

Ac oure kyng Octaui of scapede vnnep̃e ⁶ o liue.

He of scapede ⁷ in t̃or Norwei, to wynne hym help faste.

þo was Trahen ⁸ al a lord, þe wyle yt wolde laste.

Ac as he out of Londen wente in a tyde,

A gret erl hym kepte þer in a wode syde,

With an hundred knyghtes y armed wel ynow.

þis prince al vn ywar toward hem drow.

Heo comen ageyn ⁹ hym vn war, & slowe ¹⁰ hym al for nogt.

þis tyþing was ouer se to þe kyng sone y brogt.

He com hyder sone a geyn joyful y now,

And ¹¹ þo Romaines, þat he fond, to gronde faste he slow.

¹ Folk to londe *Ar.* ² Hem

sone he sette *Ar.* ³ Atte *Ar.*

⁴ Hii flough faste to hure

shipes, and a scapede vnnethe

Ar. ⁵ A newe ost a yenst

the kyng as blyue, *Ar.* ⁶ A

lyue *Ar.* ⁷ *L.* into *cum* *Ar.*

⁸ As lord, *Ar.* ⁹ Hem *Ar.*

¹⁰ Hem for nought *Ar.*

¹¹ The *Ar.*

þo gederede he so gret ¹tresour, and al so so gret route,
 And so gret power, þat he nadde of no prince in þe world doute.
 For þer nas prince non þat hym dorste arere strif.
 So þat he huld þo þis lond in pes al is lyf.
 He ²ascode at ys conseileres, þo he to elde com,
 How he myȝte best do mid ³þis kyndom,
 For he nadde bote a dogter ho myȝte ys eir be?
 Some of ys conselers hym gonne þus bi se,
 þat he schulde nyme ys neuwe, þat ⁴hatte Conan,
 And crowne hym kyng of þis lond, for þat he was ⁵man,
 And lete ys dogter ⁶spousi mid richesse y now
 To an oþer prince elles ware, as ys ⁷herto to drow.
⁸Oþer radde, þat he schulde al myd þe kyndome
 Late ys dogter spousi to an hey prince of Rome,
 And þenne, for ⁹þe' aliance þat were hem ¹⁰by twene,
 Heo myȝt þis lond al in pes holde with oute tene.
 So þat þer was among hem gret strif for þis dede.
 Cradok erl of Cornewaile ¹¹hy a vys seide,
 þat a senatour of Rome, y hote Maximian,
 Was of þe kynde of þis lond, a swyþe noble man.
 For he was Leoline's sone, þat ¹²Elene vnclē was
 þe gode Costantyne's moder, ¹³for non betere nas.

¹ Ost, and so gret	<i>Ar.</i>	he sholde with the kyngdome
² Axede	<i>Ar.</i>	³ His <i>Ar.</i>
⁴ Was hote	<i>Ar.</i>	⁵ A Man,
<i>Ar.</i>	⁶ Be y wedded with	by twene, Hii <i>Ar.</i>
⁷ Herte drough	<i>Ar.</i>	⁸ A nothur radde, that
<i>Ar.</i>	⁹ Deest <i>Ar.</i>	¹⁰ So
	¹¹ His a	¹² He-
	¹³ That non	<i>Ar.</i>

And

And wan he was a prince of Rome, gef he were eke þer to
 Kyng ¹ eke¹ her of þis lond, swiþe wel yt were y do.
 Siker me mygte þenne be, to habbe here pais god;
 For he was y bore at Rome, & of þis londe's blod.
 And for he was of þis kyng's kynde, þat of þis lond was,
 þe beter pays þer scholde be for the rigtful cas.
 Conan, þe kyng's neuw, þo he herde þis,
² Was wroþ, and destourbede al þe court y wys.
 And napeles Cradok hym held al euene and stille,
 And þe kyng stilleliche brogte al to hys wille.
 To Rome he sende Morice, þat ys owne sone was,
 Pryueliche to Maximian, to telle hym of þis cas.
 þer was þo stryf at Rome bi twene þis Maximian,
 And þo emperour, þat was þo, þat hatte Gracian.
 þo Morice þider com, and faire was vnderfonge,
 And herde þis kontek, þat ilaste longe,
 To þis senatour he seide, "Sire Maximian,
 " ³ Whi art þou so sore a drad of þis Gracian,
 " ⁴ Wen þou migt of hym god wei alto þin wille y se?
 " For com with me to Bretayne, & þou schalt þere kyng be.
 " For þe kyng ⁵ now in elde naþ non eyr y wys
 " Kynde, bote ys dogter one, þat hym fol lef ys,

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Wex wroþ,
Ar. ³ *Ut quid Gratianum ti-*
mes, Maximiane, cum tibi pa-
teat via, qua ei imperium eri-
pere poteris? Galfridus Mon.
⁴ Thugh myght of hym haue

al thi wille, & thugh konne
 the by se. Com with me *Ar.*
⁵ Nough is old, & ne hath
 non heir y wys, But a dough-
 tur that is yong, that hym lef
 is, *Ar.*

And

" And he haþ god wille to þe, , as me deþ hym to vnderstonde,
 " þat þou hire spousedest. for þou art of þe kynde of the londe.
 " And such mygt, wan yt so ys, þou mygt þer þoru a fonge,
 " þat þou mygt perauntre ² Rome wyne ar come ogt longe,
 " For þi gode cosyn Costantyn Rome wan al so,
 " And mony oþer of our kynges in þis maner come þer to.
 þo þis Maximian vnderstod al þis,
 He dude hym sone hyderward mid gret power y wis.
 He ariuede at Souþ hampton, as ³ þo wynd hym had y lad.
 þo our kyng herde her of, he was somdel a drad,
 Leste he hadde for vnel y come. ⁴ Ac þe he wiste wad he was,
 He vnder feng hym fayr y now, & conseilede of ⁵ þe cas.
 Some seyde, ⁶ þat hym wer beter take ys neuew Conan
 þe kyndom of þis lond, and some ⁷ Maximian,
 And some, an hey mon of þis lond þat he ys dogter toke,
 And ys kyndom mid hire, for he yt wolde best loke.
 Ac ys hext conseil napeles, that he mest vnder stod,
 Radde hym to Maximian, ⁸ for he was of so hey blod,
 Of þe gode quene Elene, & of þe noble Costantyn,
 (þat was kyng here of þis lond, & emperour atte fyn,)

¹ As he is vnderstonde,
 To wedde to the, by cause
 thugh ert of kynde of this
 londe. And such power whan
 hit is so though myght ther
 thurgh avonge, *Ar.* ² Be
 lord of Rome er longe *Ar.*
³ The *Ar.* ⁴ And tho he
 wiste hough hit was, *Ar.*

⁵ This cas *Ar.* ⁶ Betere
 hit were to take *Ar.* ⁷ To
 Maximian, And some othur
 lordes of this londe that his
 doughtur toke, And the kyng-
 dom with hure, that hit
 couthe best loke *Ar.* ⁸ That
 was of heygh blod, And of
 the good *Ar.*

¹ And of þe kynges blod Cole kyng of þis lond he com,
 þat god yt were to al þe lond to take hym þe kindom.
 þe kyng and ys meste men hulde al þis wisdom.
 So þat þe kynges dogter mid þis lond he nom.
 Ac Conan, þe kynges neuw, ne likede not þis game.
² He garkedede power a zeyn hym to hym alle schame.
 Ac ys power ³ lute was. for þe kyng was euer aboue,
 So þat atte laste þei were y brogt ⁴ in loue
 Bi Graciane's dai þe emperour. þis was, as ich wene,
⁵ A boutte þe ger of grace CCC. & LX. & seuentene.
 Withinne fyf-ger aftur þis kyng so prout bi com,
 For þe grete tresour nameliche þat he alday nom,
 þat he ⁶ nas not ene y paid to habbe þis kyndom,
 Bute he hadde France al so with strengþe wyþ oute dom.
 He nom with hym of ⁷ hys lond gret power y now,
 And to þe lond, þat was yclepud ⁸ Armore, he drow,
 þat Breteyn ys now yclepud, as he it ⁹ nempde þo.
 Fyftene þousant ¹⁰ hors y wrye þer were ageyn hym, & mo,
 Of þe lond of France, and of oþer londes bi syde.
 þer heo smyte a batail, þat cowþ was fulwyde.
 þer was þe ¹¹ duk of France y slaw, and al is folk ney.
 þo þe kyng Maximian þis grete slagt y sei,

Bellum.

¹ And of kynges blood	tene, (<i>sine</i> & LX.) <i>Ar. minus</i>
Coel of this londe com, <i>Ar.</i>	<i>recte.</i> ⁶ Was nought onlich
² He ordeyned with his pow-	a paid to haue the kyngdom,
er to du hem alle shame <i>Ar.</i>	<i>Ar.</i> ⁷ This <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ Armorike,
³ Litel <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ To loue <i>Ar.</i>	<i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Clupede <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ Hors
⁵ In the yer of oure Lord	y heled there were <i>Ar.</i> ¹¹
Crist thre hundred & seuen.	Kyng <i>Ar.</i>

He

He was glad, for he wiste wel to wynne þo al ys wille.
 Conan, ¹ þe quene cosyn, he clepude out þo stille.
 He bi gan som del to ² lihe. "We habbeþ now," he seyde,
 "Y wonne an ende of France, of þe oþer nys no drede.
 "þei ich be kyng of Breteyne, þat was þin ³ vncl lond,
 "Ne be þou not sori þer fore, for ich wol habbe more an hond.
 "Ych wol make þe of þis lond kyng, þou schalt yse,
 " ⁴ And þis lond schal be þyn, and þe oþer Breteyn be.
 "For honour of Breteyne, to wam þou haddest kynde,
 "þe oþer Breteyne yt schal hote, as to habbe of þe mynde.
 "Deliuere we schul yt of þis folk, þat ⁵ hire inne ys,
 "And of folk fulle it fol of ⁶ oure kynde y wis.
 Conan bowede a doun to hym, & þonkede hym ⁷ faste,
 And bi het to serue hym trewliche, þe while ys lyf laste.
 Heo wende a boutē in al þe lond, & heye townes nome,
 And al þe men, þat heo fonde, heo slow euer as heo come,
 And let þe wimmen go aliue; & þo heo hadde al ⁸ an honde,
⁹ And hadde y slawe al clene a boutē þat folk of þe londe,

¹ The quene's cosyn, he let tho clepe hym tille, And thus he began to speke to hym. We haueth nough, he sede, Wonne that on ende
Ar. ² *Id est*, to laugh. *Sic enim Galfr. Mon.* "*Vocavit ergo Conanum ad se extra tur-*
mas, & paulisper subridens
ait: Ecce unum ex potioribus
regnis Galliæ subjugauimus,
ecce spem ad cetera habere
possumus. &c. ³ Uncle's *Ar.*

⁴ And this, in mynde of that othur, the lasse Brutayne shal be. In honour of the more Brutayne, to what thugh haddest kende, The lasse Brutayne this shal be, to haue the more in mynde *Ar.*
⁵ Ther *Ar.* ⁶ Thyne kynde *Ar.* ⁷ Ful faste, *Ar.* ⁸ On *Ar.* ⁹ And hadde delyuered al a boutē clene that folk of londe, *Ar.*

In eche stude heo sette þere strong warnesture and god
 Of folk of þis lond ¹ here, and of here owne blod.
 þe kyng an hundred þousant ² men in þis lond fette,
³ And þritti þousant knyghtes ⁴ here wardeynes he sette.
 And delde among hem al þe lond, & gef eche diuerse þing,
 And made Conan of hem alle, & of al þe lond kyng.
⁵ And þus was Breteyne y wonne þoru oure ⁶ prince here,
 And aftur þis lond Bretayn iclepud in þis maner.
 Maximian wende ⁷ forþ þorw ys grete maistrie,
 And wan with strengþe al France, and seþþe Normondie.
⁸ For he gef ech mon, þat to hym com, his purchas in eche
 londe.
 So muche power fel hym to, þat noþing mygt hym at stonde.
 And Gracian þe emperour at Rome ⁹ seþþe he slowg,
 þat for hys hardy dedes of hym me dradde ynowg.
 Ac þoru þe emperour, þat seþþe com, y hote Theodose,
 Maximian was seþþe y slaw, ¹⁰ magrei ys nose.
 And so þe schrewe robboures hadde here wille at stonde,
 And cheui in here robberi, atte laste it goþ to gronde.

¹ Here of hure <i>Ar.</i> ² Men of this londe let fette, <i>Ar.</i> ³ <i>Prætereā xxx. milia militum,</i> <i>qui ipsos infra patriam, qua</i> <i>mansuri erant, ab hostili ir-</i> <i>ruptione tuerentur.</i> Galfr. Mon. ⁴ Hure <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ Thus was litle Brutayne <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ Princes <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ Tho forth <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ He yaf ech man that to hym com of purchas of his londe. So muche people drough to hym,	myghte hym no man with- stonde <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Suth he dude to dethe, And his brothur Valentinian a scapede a lyne vnnethe. Ac thurgh an em- perour <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ Maugre al his nose. But erst these sher- rewe robboures hadde hure wille a stounde, And suth for hure roborie hii were y brought to grounde. þe Bru- tones <i>Ar.</i>
--	---

þe Britones, þat Maximian of þis lond broȝte þo,
¹ In þe lasse Breteyne bi leueþ get, and schul euer mo.
 And so þilke Brutayne of þis lond com
 More þoru strengþe, as ge yseþ, þan þoru ryȝt dom.
 Of ² þe lasse Bretayn Conan þat was þus kyng,
 Among hem nolde of ³ þilke lond habbe no myngyng,
 Ne children of þilke kynde, þer fore he lette sende
⁴ To hye men of þis lond aboute in eche ende,
⁵ þat of hye menne doȝtren maydenes me nome
⁶ Ellene þousant at þe leste, & to hym þat heo come;
 And of ⁷ simpler maydenes an sixti þousant gode,
 þat heo migte ⁸ make here kynde al clene of heore blode.
⁹ þis maidenen wer y gedered, and ¹⁰ to London y come.
 Mony were glade þer of, and ¹¹ ful sori some
 þat heo schuld of lond wende, & neuer eft here frend s se,
 And somme to lese here maidenhed, wyues for to be.

¹ Byleuede in Brutayne,
 that Conan com thus ther to,
 That Armorike erst cluped
 was, & to newe name thus
 com By conquete, as who
 seith, more than thurgh *Ar.*
² *Cumque sibi cessisset victoria,*
voluit commilitonibus suis con-
juges dare, ut ex eis nasceren-
tur heredes, qui terram illam
perpetuo possiderent; & ut
nullam commixtionem cum
Gallis facerent, decrevit ut ex
Britannia insulamulieres veni-
rent, quæ ipsis maritarentur.

&c. Galfr. Mon. ³ That lond
Ar. ⁴ To the heigh *Ar.* ⁵
 That heighe menne's doughtren
 maydens me nome Enleuen
 thousand atte leste, *Ar.* ⁶ *xi. ml.*
 maydenes fre. *lx. ml.* madenes
 thewe *Ar. in marg.* ⁷ Simple
 menne doughtren sixti *Ar.*
⁸ Fulle that lond al clene *Ar.*
⁹ These *Ar.* ¹⁰ To shipe hii
 come *Ar.* ¹¹ Wel sory some,
 Somme for hii sholde of londe
 wende hure frendes neuere to
 se, *Ar.*

þo þei were in þe schippes y do, & in ¹ þe fer were,
² So gret tempest þer com, ³ þat drof hem here & þere,
 So þat þe meste del a dreynt were in þe se,
 And to oþer londes some y driue, and ne come ner age.
 A kyng þer was of Hongri, Guayn was ys name,
 And Melga, kyng of Picardye, þat couþe ynow of schame,
 þe wateres for to loke a boutē þe se heo were,
 A companye of þis maydenes so þat heo mette þere.
 To here foly he wolde hem nime and hor men al so,
 Ac þe maydenes wolde raþer dye, þan a centē þer to.
 þo wende forþ þe luþer men, & the maydenes slow echon,
 So þat to þe lasse Breteyne þer ne com aliue non.

OF þe wo, þat þer haþ in Engeland y be,
 þoru emperoures of Rome, here ge mowe y se.
 In oþer manere þat Scottes & ⁴ Picars, as ich seide,
 Habbep y worred þis lond, ich wol telle þe dede.
 Guain þe kyng of Hongri, and þe kyng of Picardie,
 þo heo hadde, as ych haue y seit, mid so gret vilenie
 Y slawe of þis maydenes þat swete companie,
 Bi þougte to do þis lond more tricherie.
 Heo vnderstode, þat þis lond ymad was al clene
⁵ Of god folk þoru Maximian and Conan ⁶ as'' at ene,
 And þat heo mygte þis lond al for noȝt wynne,
 Heo gederede folk faste, þe werre to bi gynne.

¹ *Lege potius, cum* Ar. þe
 see fer were. ² A gret Ar.
³ And blew hem Ar. ⁴ Pictes

Ar. ⁵ Of people thurgh Ar.

⁶ *Deest* Ar.

To þe se heo sende mid heore folk, þat heo hadde on honde,
 And come, as hem leuest was, first in to Scotlonde.
 Toward þis lond heo bi gonne forto robby faste,
 þat folk to sle, and townes and castles adoun caste.
 þe simple men, þat heore were, here red þer of nome,
 And sende aftur more help to þe emperour of Rome.
 A duk, þat ¹ het Gracian, from Rome me sende,
 þat mid gret power to þis lond hyder wende.
 þo lond folk, þo he hyder com, turnede to hym faste,
 So þat þer was slawgt gret, þe wyle it wolde laste.
 And þis kyng of Picardyo, and al so hys felawe,
 Wer of come atte laste, þat heo nuste wyder to drawe.
 Viliche þei were & mid strengþe ydryue into Yrlonde.
 þo hadde Gracian þis lond al clanliche on honde,
² He let hym þo crowne kyng, and þo he alord was,
 No more schrewe, þan he bi com, ych wene non nas.
³ þat lond folk eode forþ, and to gedere drowe,
 And, ar he dude to muche wo, þo foule schrewe slowe,
 þat þo kyng was y slawe, it was sone couþ
 In eche half from lond to lond, boþe Norþ & Souþ,
 So þat it to þe kynges come, þat wende in to Yrlond.
⁴ Heo porueide þat heo haddo folk y now on honde
 Of Norwei, and of Denemark, and al so of Scotlonde,
 And barnde and to gronde slowe faste in þis londe.

¹ Height Gracian, Maximian hider sende. With two legiones of men hiderward he wende. The landfolk *Ar.*
² And let hym self crouny kyng, & tho he al lord was, *Ar.*

³ The landfolk so hii sey this, to gedre faste hem drough, *Ar.* ⁴ Hii purueyede hem, that hii hadde sone power an honde *Ar.*

So þat þe folk of þis lond al clene was ouercome.
¹ For þe kyng had arst of þis lond þe knyghtes so clene y nome.
 Eft sone heo sende ȝet to Rome, wepyng ful sore,
 þat heo schulde in here wo ȝet hem helpe more,
 And ² hem wolde obligi, and sikernesse finde gode,
 To bere hem clene here truage, wyle þe world stode.
 Eft sone ȝet þo Romaines power hyder sende,
 Knyghtes and oþer werroures, þat to þis lond wende,
 And in þe Souþ half ariuede of þis lond her.
 Heo gadered folk ynow, þat heo hadde gret power,
 And wende faste vp here fon, þat ne myȝt hem noȝt at stonde.
 For some were y slawe sone, and some flow out of londe.
 þo ³ þis lordes of Rome al here wille hadde,
 Heo nomen here conseil, & þe folk of þis lond radde,
 þat heo bi twene þis lond & Scotland schulde a wal rere,
 Strong and heyȝ on eche syde, þer no water nere,
 From þat on se to þat oþer, þat were hem bi twene,
 To lette hem wen heo come, & to saue hem fro tene.
⁴ For Scotlond haþ euer y be a luper recet y lome,
 Wan þer any werroures toward þis lond come.
 þe Romaines seide eke, þat heo nolde in nomaner so wende
 Out of heore lond hiderward, ne heore power so sende;
 Ne to rokke hem so in þe se, ne heore lyf ⁵ an auntre do,
 Bote wite heore lond at home, and heore god al so:

¹ For Maximian hadde out byfore al clene the knyghtes y nome <i>Ar.</i> hem oblege wolde, and <i>Ar.</i> ³ These lordlynges <i>Ar.</i> Scotlond haueth for vs y	be luther recet y lome, And euere enemys to this lond, & wolde neuere be some. <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ In a venture do, Ac witye hure owene lond at hom, and hure good also. For hii no more
--	--

Ac ge schulde of oure gonge folke teche for te fygte,
 For heo ne more in þis lond nolde come, ne mygte.
 þat folk þo of þis lond, þo heo nuste non oþer red,
 Bi gonne to rere þe stronge wal, as hem was y seyd.
 A rerde he was strong ynow, as þe stude is get sene.
 Muche me moste swynke er, and ther aboute spene.
 þo þe wal wes gare y mad, a conseil heo nome,
 þat al þe ¹ conseil of þis lond schulde to London come.
 þo heo were alle ² ycome wisliche for to rede,
 þe bischop of London in þis maner him seyde:
 “ Mi leue frende, to telle gou, as þis heye men me bede,
 “ Beter wille ich habbe to wepe, þan to do oþer dede.
 “ ³ For pite yt ys of þis lond, & of oure ⁴ wrecched hede,
 “ Aftur þat Maximian our ⁵ fol gan awei lede,
 “ Al our knyghtes, and swaynes, and al oure gong hede,
 “ And ⁶ astored þer with oþer lond, alas! þat deolful dede!
 “ For ge ben men beter y tagt to schouele and to spade,
 “ To cartestaf and to plowstaf, and a fischyng to wade,
 “ To hamer and to nedle, and to marchandise al so,
 “ þan ⁷ with swerd or ⁸ hauberk eny batail to do.

more in this lond wolde come
 ne myghte, And that hii sholde
 hure yong folk teche for to
 fyghte. That folk *Ar.*

¹ Grete *pro* conseil in *Ar.*
² Thuder y come wisliche to
 rede, Therchebisshop Gwi-
 thelyn of London thus sede:
Ar. ³ *Miseret enim me orpha-*
nitatis & debilitatis, quæ vobis
accessit, postquam Maximianus

regnum istud omni militia om-
nique juventute spoliavit. &c.
Galfr. Mon. ⁴ Wrecchede, Af-
 ter that *Ar.* ⁵ Folk *Ar.*
⁶ Othur londes storede ther
 with, alas! the deolful *Ar.*
⁷ With sper or with swerd
 bataille for to do. Whan your
 enemyes cometh yow to, ye ne
 kunneth bute fle, As shep by-
 fore wolues. *Ar.* ⁸ *Id est,*
 haber-

- “ For wen oure fon to ow comeþ, ge ne konne nogt bote fle,
 “ As schep to fore wolues : (how mygte more wo be?)
 “ And þe se bi set ow al ¹ a boutte, bote twei weyes ge mowe
 þenche,
 “ Oþer ligge a doun and be slawe, oþer fle and drenche.
 “ ² Wor þere ³ any hope of ow, bote clanliche al þat lond,
 “ Al þe help and lokyng, ys in oþer monne honde?
 “ ⁴ And þe Romaines beþ anyed of here trauail so sore,
 “ Of perel on se, & eke on lond, þat heo nul come her no more.
 “ Heo wol raþer bi leue here truage, þat ge hem bereþ aȝer.
 “ Ne konne ge nogt lerne þing, þat ge dude neuer er?
 “ ⁵ Change goure hond, & to vse of swerd & lance ys ydo.
 “ For no men ne beþ strengor þen ge, gef ge turnede þer to.
 “ ⁶ Me may se a bonde mone's sone ⁷ oþer wyle knygt bi
 come,
 “ And some gromes and squiers, and seþþe knyghtes some.

habergion sive lorica. *Potest tamen & haubert legi, quomodo & ipse legisse videtur Codicis Ar. interpolator. Et quidem hodie itidem bipennem halbert vocitare solemus.*

¹ A boutte, hough mowe ye thanne by thenche? *Ar.*

² Help is ther non with yow, but clenlich al this londe, Al the helpyng and lokyng, ys in othur manne's honde. *Ar.*

³ *Eritne ergo spes vestra semper in alieno tutamine, & non, instructis manibus vestris, ensibus & hastis depelletis la-*

trones, nequaquam vobis fortiores, nisi segnitia & torpor adesset? Jam tædet Romanos tam assidui itineris &c. Galfr. Mon. 4 Malim ac pro and.

⁵ Aplieth your hondes to the spere and to swerd also *Ar.*

⁶ *Nonne homines transverso ordine nascuntur, ita ut ex rustico generetur miles, & ex milite rusticus? Miles etiam de mangone venit, & de milite mango. Galfr. Mon. 7 Somtyme a knyght by come, And of a grom a squyer, and after knyghtes some Ar.*

“ Wen

“Wen ge habbeþ ¹ forme of men, beþ men ² on alle wise,
 “And turneþ your hond to manhede, & ³ wyteþ oure franchise.
 “þis bischop, þat hatte Gocelyn,” þoru heor ⁴ alle rede,
 To þe lasse Breteyne wende for þis dede.
 King Conan he fond ded, ⁵ an oþer of gret fame
 Kyng he fond in hys stude, ⁶ Androw was ys name.
 “Sire kyng,” quoth þe bischop, “gef þou wolt vnderstonde,
 “Deol þou mygt habbe in þin herte of þi kynde londe,
 “Of þe more Bretayn, ⁷ as þin eldre were y bore.
 “For þou wost wel Maximian þe kyng, & Conan her bi fore
 “þe bachelerie al þat ⁸ agt wes out of þat lond nome,
 “And a stored here þis ⁹ lond and þe power of Rome,
 “And londes abouten vs habbeþ wel vnder gite,
 “þat þer nis no folk bi leued, þat lond forto wyte.
 “Heo sleþ & destruyeth al, þat þer nys noþing bi leued,
 “Warbi men ¹⁰ mow libbe, and al for defaut of leued.
 “And þer nys no mor þat kynde haþ þerto bute þou ¹¹ on.
 “Help ¹² þi kynde eritage, & þou worst þer kyng anon.
 þe kyng gan som del to ¹³ lyghe, þo he herde þis.
 “Ych ¹⁴ habbe,” he seyde, “sirebischoþ, such tyme y sey y wys,

¹ The fourme *Ar.* ² In *Ar.* ³ Kepeth youre *Ar.* ⁴
 The erchebisshop Gwithelyn, *Ar.* ⁵ Aldre [*l. alre*] *Ar.*
⁶ And a nothur *Ar.* ⁷ An-
 droge *Ar.* ⁸ Ther thyne el-
 derne *Ar.* ⁹ Ought was *Ar.*
¹⁰ Lond thurgh the power
Ar. ¹¹ Myght *Ar.* ¹² Al
 on *Ar.* ¹³ Nough thyn olde

heritage, *Ar.* ¹⁴ Laughe, *Ar.*
¹⁵ *Olim tempus erat quo non
 negarem insulam Britanniae
 accipere, si quis eam mihi lar-
 giretur. Non enim existimo
 alteram patriam fertiliorē
 fuisse, dum pace & tranquil-
 litate frueretur. At nunc,
 quoniam infortunia accesse-
 runt &c. Galfr. Mon.*

" ¹ þat y nolde nogt habbe for sake þat lond ho me hadde y
 brogt þer to.
 " Ac so muche ² wrecched hed þer ys, þat nys not now so.
 " And nameliche for þe folk of ³ Rome þat so muche seruise
 habbeþ þere,
 " ⁴ þat in such þraldam forto be ⁵ eche god mon loþ were.
 " þis lond ich ⁶ habbe here so fre, þat to non herre y schal
 abuye,
 " Bute wite fram þe kyng of France, þat doþ me ofte anye.
 " And for to wyte me from hym, y nyl not ⁷ henne wende.
 " Ac for myn ⁸ eldore hadde þat lond, ⁹ y segge þe atte ende,
 " To brynge it ageyn ¹⁰ to oure kynde, ich wol þider sende
 " Costantyn my broþer, þat god knygt ys and hende,
 " And wel ¹¹ yfounded in armes, & two ¹² hondred knyghtes
 al so,
 Wel ¹³ y wrye with þe atyl, þat god dede mow do
 " Mid þe folk of þe lond, gef ¹⁴ heo agtes beþ,
 " And ge mow hym make goure kyng, wen ge ¹⁵ tyme seþ.
 þis Costantyn was of send, and ¹⁶ þis knyghtes also,
 And ¹⁷ schippes and here a tyl prest, such prowes forto do.

¹ That ich hit wolde
 nought haue forsake, yf hit
 hadde ther to be brought *Ar.*

² Wrecchede now ther is,
 that now is hit so nought *Ar.*

³ Rome such seruice *Ar.*

⁴ *Deest Ar.* ⁵ Ech man ful
 loth were *Ar.* ⁶ Holde as

freo, y ne dar non othur ⁷ a
 buye, But witie me fro the
 kyng of France, *Ar.* ⁷ Hens

Ar. ⁸ Elderne *Ar.* ⁹ Y
 seigh yow atten eynde, *Ar.*

¹⁰ To ryght, ich *Ar.* ¹¹ Y
 founded *Ar.* ¹² Thousand

Ar. cum Galfrido Mon. ¹³ A
 rayd in good a tire, dedes of
 armes to do With the folk *Ar.*

¹⁴ Hii *Ar.* ¹⁵ The tyme *Ar.*

¹⁶ These *Ar.* ¹⁷ Hure shipes
 redy mad, this dede for to
 do *Ar.*

Ac heo ne mygte ¹ so raþe come, þat þe kynges twei
 Nere y come out Yrlond, ² wyt gret power bey
 Of Scottes and of Picars, of Denemarch, ³ of Norwei,
 þat euer ⁴ habbeþ þis lond y hated, bote it were for eye.
 Fer bi Norþ ⁵ bi gonne, and hider faste drowe,
 And caste a doun ⁶ þis stronge wal, & townes grete y nowe.
 þe Britones, þat mygte of scapie, by gonne faste to fle,
 Some in roches, some in wodes, þat ⁷ rewþe yt was to se.

COSTANTYN ⁸ myd ys power, among al þis wrechedom,
 At þe hauene of Tottenais ⁹ stilleliche o lond com.
 Glad were þo þe Britones, & joyful & proute.
 Heo comen out of þe wodes sone, and of þe roches aboute.
 So þat Costantyn hadde sone ¹⁰ power y now,
 And toward þis luper men Norþward sone drow.
¹¹ He cudde þat ¹² heo were men, & slowe ¹³ to gronde,
 þe prude ¹⁴ of Scottes & Picars abouten in a stonde.
 For heo flowe þat mygte fle, and some fel to gronde.
 Heo mygte ¹⁵ segge, wen heo come home, þat heo hadde here
 pere y fonde.
 To Yrlond heo flowe ageyn, & elles wyder heo mygte.
 Heo ne þougte not a god while with þe Brytones to fygte.

¹ So sone come, that the
 luther kynges tweye *Ar.*
² With *Ar.* ³ And of *Ar.*
⁴ Haueth hated this lond, but
Ar. ⁵ Bigonne (*simplici voce*)
 in *Ar.* ⁶ Pict Wall *Ar.* ⁷
 Deol *pro* rewþe in *Ar.* ⁸ And
 his power in al this *Ar.*

⁹ Stille a lond *Ar.* ¹⁰ Gret
 power y nough, *Ar.* ¹¹ Hii
Ar. ¹² Hii *Ar.* ¹³ Faste to
Ar. ¹⁴ Of this luther men
 hii batide in a stounde *Ar.*
¹⁵ Truly seigh tho, hure peer
 hii hadde y founde *Ar.*

þe Brytones nome þo Costantyn, & glade þoru all þyng
 In þe town of ¹ Cicestre crowned hym ² to here¹¹ kyng.
³ þis was so wel y wist in pes, with oute strif,
 þat þer ne come ne Scottes þider, ne ⁴ Pycars al ys lyf.
 þre ⁵ sones he hadde al so, Costantyn was on,
 And Aurely and Uter, gode children echon.
 Costanteyn, ys eldeste sone, in Gode's seruise
 Monk he made at Wynchestre, & dude as þe wyse.
 God mon he was y now, and gode lawes forþ caste,
 And god pais ⁶ wes al ys lyf, ⁷ & to lute wyle þat laste.
 For þer com a ⁸ Pycard, þat ys maners wel ⁹ wiste,
 And þat he louede wel y now, & mucche to hym truste.
 He ladde hym into an ¹⁰ orchard, ¹¹ as yt gret ned were
 To speke wyþ hym priueliche, þat noman ywar nere.
 Ac þo heo were al bi hem selue, & no mon hem neyȝ,
 He drow ys knyf, & slow þe kyng, þat no man ¹² yt y seyȝ.
 He was ¹³ sone forþ y went, er any mon were war.
 And þo me hadde al y sought, þe kyng lay ded þar.

¹ *Rectius* Silchestre *cum*
 Galfr. Mon. *At Cirecestria in*
Aluredo Beverlacensi, quem de-
floravit Galfridus. ² *Desunt*
Ar. ³ The lond was tho wel y
 kept in pais. *Ar.* ⁴ Picardes *Ar.*
⁵ Sones hadde this Constan-
 tyn, Constans [*Constans quoque*
in Aluredo Bev. & Galfr. Mon.]
 het that on, Aurelie Ambrose
 the other, the thridde Uter
 Pendragon. Constans his el-
 deste *Ar.* ⁶ Was in his tyme,

while his lyf y laste *Ar.*
⁷ F. ac. ⁸ Picte *Ar.* ⁹ Wuste,
Ar. ¹⁰ *Postremo, cum x. anni*
præterissent, venit quidam Pi-
ctus, qui in obsequium suum
fuerat, & quasi secretum collo-
quium habiturus, in virgulto
quodam semotis cunctis eum
cultro interfecit Galfridus Mon.
¹¹ For consail as hit were,
 And to speke *Ar.* ¹² Hit ne
 seigh *Ar.* ¹³ Anon *Ar.*

þo was þis lond kyngles, wat halt yt to telle longe?
 Gret word was among þat folk, ho myȝte þe crowne fonge.
 For þe eldoste sone monk was, & ¹ þe twei zonge were,
 And to nyme ² ferre of ys kynde no ryȝt nere.

VORTIGER, ³ þe quoynte swike, þat was erl of ⁴ Corne-
 wail,

Forto do ⁵ a swykedom no conseil schulde hym fail.
 To þe sone þat was monk to Wynchestre he wende y wis.
 “Lo,” (he seide) “now þou ⁶ syst, þat þi fader ded ys,
 “And þi breþeren to zonge beþ to a fonge þe crowne,
 “And þei þou be in oper cloþes, þi ryȝte ⁷ nys not þer downe,
 “Wel ⁸ me ⁹ wot eldest þou art, & myd best ryȝt kyng also.
 “ȝef þou wolt ¹⁰ wol be my frend, & bi my red al do,
 “Ich wole brynge ¹¹ þat folk in wille, to crowne þe to kyng.
 “And þei þin ordre be þer ageyn, þer to ich wole it brynge.
 “þo monk was joyful y now, þo he hurde þis,
 “And bi het hym, ȝef it were so, euer more to be al hys.
 Out of ys abytt anon Vortiger hym drow,
 And cloþes, ¹² as to kyng bi come, dude on him faire ynowȝ.

¹ The othur two *Ar.* ² For-
 ther of his kyn no ryȝt
 men thoughte hit nere *Ar.*
³ The luther swike, *Ar.* ⁴
 “*Cronica Latina vocat eum*
 “*ducem Gewiseorum*” *Ar. in*
marginē. Et quidem Consul
Gewissorum in Aluredo Bev.
At in Galfr. Mon. “consul
 “*Gewiseorum, i. Orientalium*
 “*Anglorum.* ⁵ A swykedom

he caste hym sanz faille. To
 the monek at Wynchestre sone
 he wende y wis *Ar.* ⁶ Sukst
Ar. ⁷ Is nought ther *Ar.* ⁸
 Thugh wost *Ar.* ⁹ *Nec alium*
video in progenie tua, quem
populus in regem promoveret
Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ Wel *Ar.* ¹¹ The
 people in wille, *Ar.* ¹² As a
 kyng *Ar.*

And bi fore al þe Parlement to London he gan hym brynge,
 And seide he was purest eyr, to be crowned ¹ to¹¹ kyng.
 No mon ne mygt wel it wyþ segge. ² me may rygt y se,
 Wan he was þer, & was pur eyr, þei he hadde ³ monk.
⁴ Up hym self þe perel were, bote yt mygte wel do.
 þo hey men þoru Vortiger ⁵ a fong hym alle þer to.
 þe erchbisshop of London ⁶ Gocelyn was þo ded,
 And non oþer ⁷ nolde hym crowne, for al þat þe erl bed.
 For he hadde so longe in ordre be, & so was out y brogt.
 For al þat ⁸ Vortiger nolde bi leue yt nogt,
 Ac hym self hym crownede, & made hym kyng so.
 þe sacryng was lute worþ, and napeles yt was y do.
 þo he was kyng ymad, ys hest he made a non,
 þat clanliche to Vortiger ys men ⁹ abuyde echon.
¹⁰ For¹¹ hymself he ¹² nolde þenche nogt, bute take hym al on
 honde.
 For he cowþe wel bet þan he gouerne such a londe.
 þo bi þougte Vortiger mest þoru alle þyng,
 How he mygte do quoynteliche, þat he hym selue were kyng.
 For that ¹³ euer ys þogt, and þer fore þe monk he nom
 To ¹³ kyng be. for he was nyce and kowþe no wisdom,

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Me may the
 ryght y se, That he ne is ver-
 rei heir, *Ar.* ³ *Addē y be cum*
Ar. ⁴ Upon hym self a peril
 hit were, but he hit wolde do.
 The heigh *Ar.* ⁵ Assentede
 alle ther to *Ar.* ⁶ Gwýthe-
 lyn *Ar.* ⁷ Hym crouny wolde,
 theigh Vortiger hem bed *Ar.*
⁸ Yut Vortiger wolde by

leue nought, that hym self ne
 croune hym, and made hym
 kyng ryght tho, And were hit
 ryght othur wough, yut hit
 was y do *Ar.* ⁹ Aboughwed
Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Wolde
 thenke on nought, *Ar.* ¹² E-
 uere was his thought, *Ar.*
¹³ Be kyng. for *Ar.*

And

And ys twei breþren were broȝt out of cradel vñneþe.
 And þe heye men mest of þe lond were y broȝt to deþe
 Myd batailes & myd oþer wo, þer fore he was so prowȝt,
¹ And þe kyng ² nas bute a schade, & let hym worþe al out.
 To þe kyng he seide, þat he moste ys castles astore,
 þenne wolde ys fon aboute ³ doute hym þe more.
 And for þe ⁴ Picars were ys fon, some he wolde take
 To be pryue with þe kyng, for þilke schulde make
 Here felawes, þat were leued at home, to loue þat lond þe bet.
 Ac ⁵ napeles þer fore ⁶ nas yt noȝt þo yt wes al bi set,
 Ac for þei louede not þe kyng, & in trayson were quoynte,
⁷ þat heo schulde þe kyng sle, wen heo come ⁸ vp þe poynte.
 þe kyng grantede al ys wil, and for ys gode ⁹ wende.
 Aftur an hundred ¹⁰ Picars into Scotlond he sende
 By certeyn messageres, so þat heo gonne brynge
¹¹ An hundred knyȝtes of Picars, þat bi leuede mid oure
 kyngge,
 Of mest priue men, þoru þis luper Vortiger.
 And þe kyngge's tresour he delde eke a boutte fer & ner,

¹ The kyng hym self was but a shade, & let him al one al out. And to the kyng *Ar.*
² *Totum namq; dispositione ejus regnum commissum fuerat, & Constans rex dicebatur, qui nisi pro umbra principis astabat* Galfr. Mon. ³ Douty *Ar.*
⁴ Pictes *Ar.* ⁵ *Ecce occulta occulti amici proditio. Non enim id laudabat, ut salus inde proveniret Constantis, sed quia sciebat, Pictos gentem esse*

instabilem, & ad omne scelus paratam Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Was hit nought what hit was al by set, *Ar.* ⁷ And that *Ar.* ⁸ To the *Ar.* ⁹ He wende *Ar.* ¹⁰ Pictes to *Ar.* ¹¹ An hundred Pictes soudeours to by leue with oure kyngge, And to be most preue with hym thurgh this Vortiger. Of the kyngge's tresour he delt fer and ner, Ac most to the Pictes *Ar.*

And mest to þe Picars, for to hem mest loue he drow.
 Myd alle þat he wolde hym self he made hym bi loued ynow.
 Alle ¹ þat seruede þe kyng, þoru hym ² were echone,
³ So þat ech mon was a boutte for to paye hym one,
 And ⁴ songe al day bi þe strete ⁵ al for hys honour,
 “ Worþi were Vortiger ⁶ to kyng oþer emperour.
 þo þis Vortiger hadde ⁷ þat folk al ⁸ in ys hond,
 He seyde, he moste wende awyle out of þis lond,
 To purchace more tresour þe kyng for to spene,
 For he nadde noȝt y nowȝ, ys knyȝtes to sustene.
 And ⁹ atte Picars nom ys leue, and at oþer þere,
 And wende hom ¹⁰ to ¹¹ hys fir, sori as he were.
 þer was sorwe and deol ynow among al þe mayne,
 For he schulde from hem ¹² wend, (for þer was no kyng
 bote he)
 And nameliche among Picars, þat were of so luper þouȝt,
 þat he hadde do such honour, & þat ne louede þe kyng noȝt.
 “ Wat,” heo seyden, “ wat is ¹³ vs to lete þis badde kyng
 “ Go þus o liue as a ¹⁴ schade, þat nys worþ noþing?

¹ The seruantes of the kyng
Ar. ² Were made echone
Ar. ³ *Ita ut eum pro rege*
haberent. Adulantes igitur ei
per plateas psallebant, “ di-
gnus est Vortigernus impe-
rio, dignus est sceptro Bri-
tanniæ, Constans vero indig-
nus Galfr. Mon. ⁴ Synge *Ar.*
⁵ As for *Ar.* ⁶ To be kyng or
 emperour *Ar.* ⁷ This *Ar.* ⁸ On
Ar. ⁹ Of the Pictes tok his

leue, and of othur there, *Ar.*
¹⁰ *Ad hospitium suum Galfr.*
Mon. ¹¹ His contre in sorwe
 as hit were *Ar.* ¹² Wende,
 (that was so large and fre)
 And among the Pictes most,
 that were of luther thought,
 That he hadde do so muchel
 honour, and louede the kyng
 nought *Ar.* ¹³ This *pro* vs
 in *Ar.* ¹⁴ Shadewe, *Ar.*

Warto tarie we so longe, to quelle hym atten ende
 þat Vortiger¹ were kyng, þat a gen vs ys so hende?
 In gret² wayþe & hastinesse to þe kynges chaumber heo
 wende,

And smyten of hys hed, and to Vortiger yt sende.

Vortiger made deol y now,³ and sori was þer fore:

Ac napeles so glad he nas seþþe he was y bore.

For⁴ y compaced he hadde þat atte bi gymmyng,

First⁵ wen he brogte on so nyce a mon to kyng.

And seþþe þo he lette ys fon &⁶ Picars to court brynge,

þat hatede mucche þe kyng,⁷ & al was for þis þinge.

And þo he was so large & hende of hys giftes al so.

⁸ þo hadde he al ys wille, for when yt was al ydo,

⁹ And¹⁰ to suc ende yt was y come, as he hadde y compaced
 in ys þogt,

And napeles he feynede hym, þat me vnder get yt nogt.

At London þis kyng was y slaw. he let þo nyme anon

¹¹ þe Picars, & þoru jugement let smyt of þe hedes echon.

þer he kudde¹² wat he was, vn kynde schrewe & quoynte.

¹³ Ac al he dude, þat me ne vnder get in swykdom in no poynte.

Decolla-
tio Picto-
rum.

¹ Myght be kyng, that to
 vs is so heynde? *Ar.* ² Wrath
Ar. ³ And wep fol sore ther
 fore *Ar.* ⁴ He hit hadde by
 compaced atte *Ar.* ⁵ Tho he
 made the monek, þat nyce
 was, to kyng *Ar.* ⁶ Pictes
Ar. ⁷ And mucche was for
 these thyng. And that he
 was *Ar.* ⁸ Tho he hadde al
 his wille, when this was *Ar.*

⁹ *Omittit Ar.* ¹⁰ As he cast
 in his thought. And euere he
 made hit so queynte, that me
 wiste hit nought *Ar.* ¹¹ Alle
 the Pictes thurgh juggement,
 and hefdede hem echon *Ar.*
¹² That he *Ar.* ¹³ And al
 was, that me ne sholde asprie
 his falshede in no poynte. Ac
 natheles some hit vnderyedede,
 & ne leuede *Ar.*

And napeles men yt trowede, and leuede not ys glose.
 þe kynges ¹ breþren, Aurele and Ambrose,
 Dradde, for here eritage, ymorþred for to be.
 And ² heo, that hem hadde ³ to ward, þer fore gonne by se,
 And to þe lasse Breteyne wende to þe kyng,
 And he ⁴ susteynede hem wel, for drede of þis þinge.
 þo Vortiger al one was, and no pere ⁵ nad a londe.
 Sone he lette hym ⁶ crowne kyng, & þe power nom on honde.
 Princes ouer al aboute of ⁷ eche kyndom
 Speke hym vnel, & hatede hym for hys ⁸ swikedom.
 þe ⁹ Picars were wroþ eke, and ¹⁰ þratten hym ynow,
¹¹ For he myd such vnkyn dede heore felawes slow.
 From þe lasse Bretayne eke hym com word ylome,
 þat ¹² þo twei children gret power to hem nome,
 And ¹³ þat hit stronge childre were of here age,
 And þat þei wolde hyder come, to wynne here heritage.
 Such strong tyþinges in sorwe and in sore
 Brogt þis false kyng, and er þe lenger þe more.

¹ Yonge bretheren, Uter
 and Aurelie Ambrose, *Ar. re-*
ctius. ² Hii, *Ar.* ³ In warde,
 ther fore hem goune by se.
 To the lasse Brutayne hii
 wende to Budic the kyng,
Ar. ⁴ Hem let wardy wel,
Ar. ⁵ Hadde in londe, *Ar.*

⁶ Crouny *Ar.* ⁷ Euery *Ar.*
⁸ Swikeldom *Ar.* ⁹ Pictes
Ar. ¹⁰ Hatede *Ar.* ¹¹ That
 he with so vile deth hure fe-
 lawes he slough *Ar.* ¹² The
 two *Ar.* ¹³ That hii stale-
 worthe were, as of hure age,
Ar.

HORS and Hengist bothe, þat twei breþre were,
 Come to Kent þilke tyme, and a riuede þere,
 Myd þre schip ful of ² knyghtes y armed wel ynow.
³ þo þis folk was on lond, forþ into Kent hit drow.
 þo kyng was þo at Canterbury, and herde her of anon:
 Bi fore hym he lette brynge ⁴ þis knyghtes⁵ echon.
⁵ þo kyng bi huld hem faste ynow, (for it muchel men were)
 And nameliche þe twei breþren, (⁶for so muchel non þer nere.)
 He ⁷ascode hem, of wanne þei, and ho⁸ hem þider br ȝte,
 And for wat encheson heo come. & wat þing þei soȝte?
 “ Sire kyng,” (quoth Hengist, þat for al oþer spek y wys) Hengistus.
 “ ⁸ Of Saxonie we beþ y bore, ⁹ þat of Germanie ys.
 “ þe maner ys of þilke lond, þat wen þer ys forþ ybroȝt
 “ So muche folk ¹⁰ of men,” þat ¹¹ þo lond may ¹² susteyne
 noȝt.
 “ ¹³ þo¹⁴ heye men of ¹⁴ þo lond schulle come bi fore þe kyng,
 “ And ¹⁵ alle þo ȝonge men of þe lond lete bi fore hym brynge.
 “ þe strengeste me schal bi choys and bi lot al so
 “ Chese out, and sende in to oþer lōnd,” here beste forto do.

¹ Horn *Ar.* ² Men *pro*
 knyghtes *in Ar.* *At militibus in*
Galfr. Mon. ³ The tydynges
 hough they come, were in
 contreie a brod drough. The
 kyng *Ar.* ⁴ These men *Ar.*
⁵ The *Ar.* ⁶ *Nam ipsi præ*
ceteris & nobilitate & decore
prænitebant Galfr. Mon. ⁷ Ax-
 ede hem, whans hii were, &
 ho *Ar.* ⁸ *Saxonia tellus edi-*

dit nos, una ex regionibus
Germaniæ Galfr. Mon. ⁹ Of
 Germanye that is *Ar.* ¹⁰ *De-*
sunt Ar. ¹¹ The *Ar.* ¹² Hem
 susteyne *Ar.* ¹³ *Deest Ar.*
¹⁴ The *Ar.* ¹⁵ Alle the yonge
 bachelrie me shal to fore hym
 bryng. The stalewortheste me
 shal by loth and by chois also
 Chese, & sende hem out of
 londe, *Ar.*

“ And ¹ heo schulle be such, þat no prince ² dorre hem for sake,

“ ³ Ac for heore prowesse gladliche in to here seruise take.

“ þis cas ys to vs y come, y chose we beþ þer to,

“ ⁴ For so.muche ys in the lond, oure beste forto do.

“ And forto be maistres of þis folk we beþ y chose & ynome

“ Mi broþer & ich, (for wo beþ of dukes kyn y come.)

“ For þoru our Godes in to þe se we wende ich vnderstonde,

Mercurius. “ And Mercurius haþ vs y lad into sþi londe.

þo þe kyng herde nempne Mercurius in þis cas,

He askede, wat God and wat þing Mercurius was?

“ Oure bi leue (quoth ⁶ þis oþer) in þe hye ⁷ Godes ys y do,

“ Saturnus and Jupiter, and al þe oþer al so,

“ þat vp holdeþ þe world, & in Mercurius mest y wys,

“ ⁸ þe heye God,” þat in oure tonge Woden y clepud ys.

“ ⁹ þer ner vrel dore him bi toke of þe woke þe ferþe day,

“ In honour of hym y clepud in oure tonge Wednesday.

Venus. “ Aftur hym we honoureþ Venus mest, þat Frie y clepud ys

“ In oure tonge, & in þe wyke Friday for hym y wys.

“ Her of ge schul vnderstonde, þat in þe firmament beþ

“ Planetes, y liche cler sterres, seuene, as ge seþ :

“ Saturnus and Jubiter, Mars and þe Sonne y wys,

“ Venus and Mercurius, and þe Mone lowest ys.

¹ Hii shulleth Ar. ² Ne

der Ar. ³ But Ar. ⁴ And

for ther was to muche folk,

oure beste we mote do. And

to be Ar. ⁵ This Ar. ⁶ That

Ar. ⁷ God Ar. ⁸ Omittit

Galfridus Mon. ⁹ Lege, þer

uer vr eldore, i. e. therefore

our elders &c. Nam in Galfr.

Mon. “ huic veteres nostri

“ dicaverunt quartam feriam

“ septimanæ, quæ usque in

“ hodiernum diem nomen

“ Wodnesdei de nomine ipsius

“ sortita est.

“ Aftur

" Aftur ech of hem in þe wike y clepud ys a day:
 " First ¹ os Sonne, & so of oþere and þe seneþe Saturday.
 " And for weder, & oþer ² þing on erþe, aftur hem mucche is,
 " ³ þis mýs bi leuede men hem clepede Godes while y wis.
 " Sori ich am" (quoth Vortiger) " þo he herde þis.
 " For goure bi leue, þat ⁴ ge segget, for no bileue yt nys.
 Ac for goure coming ich am glad, ho so ow hider ladde,
⁵ Were yt God, were yt oþer, for nede ich hadde.
 For ich am myd my fon ⁶ on ech half by set,
 And gef ich hem may ouer come þoru gou þe bet,
⁷ Ich gou myd me at holde, & in grete richesse gou do
 Of giftes, and of chatews, and of londes al so.
 Heo ⁸ maden certeyne couenaunt þat heo were al at on;
 So þat þei bi leuede forþ with ⁹ þe kyng echon.
 Hit was not longe ¹⁰ þer aftur þat þis Picars ne come
 Out of Scotlond Souþward, and townes faste nome.
¹¹ þe tyþing her of to oure kyng com,
 þe wey mid al ys power agen hem faste he nom.

Bellum.

¹ Of the Sonne, & so forth
 the senethe *Ar.* ² Thynges
Ar. ³ These mysbyleuede *Ar.*
⁴ Ye bileueth, no bileue is. But
 of youre come ich *Ar.* ⁵ Were
 hit God, or eny othur, for al
 nede ych hadde *Ar.* ⁶ In
 euery half *Ar.* ⁷ Ich yough
 wole with me witholde, &
 gret honour yut do, And
 yiftes yiue ynough of londes,
 & othur catelles also. Hii
 made a certayn couenant, so

that hii were at on; *Ar.*
⁸ *Paruerunt illico barbari, &*
fædere confirmato in curia
ipsius remanserunt. Nec mora
emergentes ex Albania Picti,
exercitum valde grandem mit-
tunt, aquilonaresque partes
insulæ vastare cæperunt Galfr.
Mon. ⁹ Our *pro þe in Ar.*
¹⁰ Afterward that the Pictes ne
 come *Ar.* ¹¹ Tho the tydyng
 of this thyng to Vortiger
 come, *Ar.*

Strong bataile heo smyte þer, ac þe Saxones anon
 So god were, þat þe opere bi gonne to fle echone.
 þo Vortiger þoru hem hadde þe maistrie,
 He ȝef hem ȝiftes grete ynow, and dude ys corteyse.
 Hengist, þat here maistre was, he ȝaf in Lyndeseȝe
 Londes faire, and rentes and ¹ townes grete and heye,"
² War þoru hym & ys men ³ in fair wareson he broȝte.
⁴ þo Hengist hadde þis, forþer more he þoȝte.
 þo he hadde þe kyng in priuete al clene at ys wille,
 "Sire," he seide, "of derne ⁵ cas ich wol þe warne stille.
 "þine fon beþ in ech half, & þis ys þe meste doute,
 "þat þin owne men ne loueþ þe noȝt, þat þe beth aboute.
 "Heo þretneþ þe stille, & seggeþ heo wolleþ ⁶ þe" brynge
 "þe twei breþre from Breteyne, & ⁷ crowne þat on kynges:
 " ⁸ þer fore ich ⁹ rede, þat me sende into my contrei ywys
 "To ¹⁰ Saxoine aftur more help, for help y now þer ys.
 For ¹¹ habbe þou power ynow, þou myȝt be glad & bliþe.
 Ac oþing ich ¹² wolde bidde þe, þat þou me woldest tȝpe.

Peticio
Hengisti.

¹Tounes, & gret nobleȝe
Ar. ²*Quibus sese & commilitones suos sustentaret* Galfr.
Mon. ³In to rȝchesse *Ar.* ⁴
 And yut tho he hadde al this,
 forthermore he thoughte *Ar.*
⁵*Thyng pro cas in Ar.* ⁶*Voculam hanc erasit in Ar. eadem, ut videtur, manus quæ & scripsit.* ⁷Crouny on to kyng *Ar.*
⁸*Si placet tibi, mittamus in patriam nostram, & invitemus milites ex ea, &c.* Galfr. *Mon.*
⁹The rede, that we sende to

my *Ar.* ¹⁰*Sic in Cod. Harleyano. At Saxonie in Ar.*
¹¹If thugh hast power y
 nough, thugh maist be *Ar.*
¹²Wole bidde the, & thugh
 wolt me lithe. Bidde what
 thugh wolt, quath the kyng,
 ich wole the graunte ywis,
 Elles forsothe ich were to
 blame, yf hit to graunty is.
 And fetthe [*l. fetch*e] help al
 that thugh maist, that be of
 good araye, And ich wole hure
 while yelde, and hure huyre

paye

"Send ¹ aftur help," quoth þe kyng, "þat þou me noȝt bi traie,
 "And wole heore while ȝelde, so þat scholle holde hem wel
 paie.

"And bidde of me wat þou wolt, & ich wol þe grante ywis,
 "For elles ich were vnkynde, ȝef it to grante ys.

Hengist faire hym þonkede, and hys hed lowtede a doun.

"þou hast," he seide, "ȝeue me mony a fayr town.

"And napeles such þing ² nabbe y noȝt, as it to duk bi come.

"For wan ich am ³ duke's sone, yt bi comeþ to me"

"For to ⁴ habbe som ⁵ gret" cite or castel me to ⁶ ware,

"⁷ War inne y myȝte to þyn nede habbe my folk ȝare.

þer fore," as ich am þi knyȝt, & ⁸ prest to þi nede al so,

Grante me ⁹ castel oper cite þi nede in to do.

"Hengist," quoth þe ¹⁰ kyng þo, "ner me not to done

"Such þyng, as þou me biddest to graunte þe, so sone.

"For þou art mon off strange lond, & Cristene mon non.

"And eke, þei ich wolde, my barones wolde yt with segge
 echon.

"Sire, grante me þonne," quoth Hengist, "ȝef yt ys þi wille,

"¹¹ As muche place, as myd a þong ich may a boutte tille,

paye. Hengis faire hym
 thonked tho, and his heed
 bowed a doun *Ar.*

¹ *Ad hæc Vortigernus,*
 "Mitte ergo legatos tuos ad
 Germaniam, & invita quos vo-
 lueris, & pete à me quod de-
 sideras, & nullam repulsam
 patieris Galfr. Mon. ² Haue
 ich nought, as a duk *Ar.* ³ A
 duke's sone, me thinketh hit

were to done *Ar.* ⁴ Haue *Ar.*

⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ Where, *Ar.*

⁷ And, yf that ich nede hadde,
 kepe me fro dere. Therfore, *Ar.*

⁸ Redy to the also, *Ar.* ⁹ Cite
 or castel my nede inne to do *Ar.*

¹⁰ Kyng, hit were me nought
 to done *Ar.* ¹¹ As much as

with a bole huyde ich may
 ouer tille, *Ar.*

"¹ þat

þongca-
ster.

“¹ þat ich þer ² vppe mowe a siker bold” a rere,
 “þat ich ³ mowe in þi seruise wytie, gef yt nede were.
 þe kyng ne hulde þat bute a ⁴ lutel, he grantede hys bone.
 Hengist sende in to hys contre aftur more power sone.
 þo carf he a bole hyde smale al ⁵ to a þong
 þoru out, wil he wolde laste, & þo was he somdel long.
 In an hard ⁶ roche stude ys þong aboute he drow,
 And þer wyþ inne al to ys wille markede place ynow,
 And rerde þer an castel god y now and strong,
⁷ þat þangcaster, oþer Tangcaster, yclepud was for þe þong.
 þer come out of Germanie vnder þat, ych wene,
 Y charged mid gode knyghtes, schippes eigtetene.
 And Rowen, Hengiste's dogter, among hem y brogt was,
 þat fairor wommon now a bout in no lond nas.
 þo þis castel ⁸ gare was, Hengist þe king bi sogte
⁹ To come to hys castol, & se þe knyghtes þat he brogte.
 þo kyng com þider priueliche, & ¹⁰ þis knyghtes y sey,
 And þis castel, ¹¹ so” sone a rerd, so ¹² strong and so hey.

¹ *Quo me, si opus fuerit, re-
 cipiam* Galfr. Mon. ² Vppon
 may a siker place *Ar.* ³
 Myghte in thyne seruise me
 wytie and nede were *Ar.*
⁴ Lite, & grauntede al his
 bone *Ar.* ⁵ To one thonge
 Thurgh out, while hit wolde
 y laste, and that was somdel
 longe *Ar.* ⁶ Roche's stode *Ar.*
Saxorum locum habet Galfr.
 Mon. ⁷ And Thwong castel, or

Tancastel, cleped is for the
 thwong. Thenne come ther
 out of Germanye vnder that,
 ich wene, Charged with or-
 pede men, shipes eightetene
Ar. ⁸ A redy was *Ar.* ⁹ To
 come and se his castel, and
 men he hadde y broughte.
 The kyng *Ar.* ¹⁰ These *Ar.*
¹¹ *Deest* *Ar.* ¹² Noble pro
 strong in *Ar.*

¹ Mid

¹ Mid al ² he was wel a payed and bi leuede atte mete.

his mayde out of chambre com, þo ³ þei hadden y gete,

With a coppe of gold, fol of wyn, syde drow hire tail

⁴ A kne to þe kyng heo seyde, ⁵ "lord kyng wasseyl.

Wasseyl.

¹ With al *Ar.* ² *Ut vero regis epulis refectus fuit, egressa est puella de thalamo, aureum ciphum, plenum vino, ferens. Accedens deinde propius, flexis genibus dixit,* louerd ching woschail Galfr.

Mon, ³ Hii hadde y yete *Ar.* ⁴ A kne sheo sette hure byfore the kyng, & seide, "sire wassail *Ar.*

⁵ *Vide Seldeni Notas in Draytoni Poly-olbion, pag. 153.*

ubi locum quendam è Roberto nostro (alio tamen usus MS.) adduxit, innuitq;

Louerd kyng was-heil *idem esse quod* Lord kyng a health;

Drinc-heile *vero idem quod* Drinke the health.

Verum his de rebus scripserunt plures, in quibus & ipse numerandus est Somnerus.

Atqui tot auctorum verba non est cur exscribam. Sate est si ea tantummodo in medium profe-

rum, quæ observavit in Itinerario Cantiano (p. 20.) doctis-

simus Lambardus. idque ea potissimum de caussa, quod &

illum hac occasione plane consulendum esse monuerit erudi-

tissimus Spelmannus in Glos-

sario. [Hengist] espying there-

fore, that king *Vortiger* was much delighted in womens companie, and knowing wel, that *sine Cerere & Libero, friget Venus*, he bad him to a solempne banquet, and after that he had (according to the maner of *Germanie* yet continuing) well plied him with pots, hee let slip before him a faire gentlewoman, his owne daughter, called *Roxena*, or *Rowen*, which being instructed before hande how to behaue hir selfe, most amiable presented him with a goblet of wine, saying in hir own language, *pær Hæile Hlaforð cýnynz 7 wessail Lorde king*, that is to say, bee merie Lord king: with which hir daliance, the King was so delighted, that he not onely vouchsafed to pledge hir, but desired also to performe it in the right maner of hir owne countrey. And therefore he answered (as he was taught) vnto hir againe, *þpinc Hæile 7 drinke merily*. Which when shee had done, himselfe tooke the cup, and pledged hir so hartely, that from thencefoorth hee

The first wasseling cup.

could

þe kyng bi huld hire ¹ swiþe ynow, & wondrede hire ² fair hede.

³ For so fair wommon nuste he non. He askede wat heo seide?

Men, þat knew þe langage, seide, wat was wassayl,

And þat he scholde þat broȝte onswere, “ drynkhayl.

“ Drinkhayl, quop þis kyng agen, & bed hire drinke anon.

þe coupe ⁴ he nom seþþe of hire among h m echon,

And custe hire, & sette hire a doun, & glad dronk hire hail.

And þat was lo! in þis lond þe firste vassayl,

As in langage of Saxonie, þat me myȝte euer y wyte,

And so ⁵ wel he paiþ þat folk aboute, þat he nys not get for gete.

No sire, ne be þe day so ⁶ long, þe while heo sit'ep o benche,

And som of þe nyȝt nimeþ þer to, þe drynke forto sthenche,

The issue of
an ungodly
marriage.

could neuer be in rest, vntill he had obtained hir to wife, little weighing, either how deeply he had endangered his conscience in matching himselfe with a heathen woman, or how greatly he had hazarded his *Croune* by joyn- ing handes with so mightie a forein Nation.

¹ Faste ynough *Ar.* ² Fair- hede *Ar. unica voce. Necta- men idem quod forehead esse judicari.* *Non aliud enim plane est quam facies pulchra. id quod è Galfrido Monumetensi constat, qui sic ait: Atille, visa facie puellæ, admiratus est tan- tum ejus decorem, & incaluit.*

³ And of men of hure langage

couthe he axede what sheo sede? A non men tolde the kyng fore what was to seye wassail, And that he sholde to hure that tyme answeere ther to drynk hail. Drynk hail, seide the kyng a ye, *Ar.* ⁴ He toke of hure anon, and a mong echon Kussed hure & a doun hure sette, & gladly dronk hure hail. And thus was here in this londe furst y knowe wassail *Ar.* ⁵ Wel yut hit paieth the folk, that hit is nought for yite *Ar.* ⁶ Long, and sitteth murye a benche, And of the nyght yut nymeth ther to, drynke ther by to shenche, On an holy prechoure's word hii wol nought

Of an holi prechoure's word heo nolde not so ofte þenche,
 As of the muri word, þat hem þinkeþ of þe sely wenche.
 So foul lechour was þe kyng, that anon" in þe howse
 He willede, for foul lecheri, þis mayde ¹ forte spouse.
 Hengist wiste wel ys wille, ² & þat he wes hastyf.
 He grantede ³ in lys felonye ys dogter to be ys wyf,
 For wat þe kyng geue hym þe" contre of Kent y wis.
 þe kyng in ys foule wille grantede al þis,
 And weddede þis mayde ⁴ in a wel luper cas,
 For þat he was Cristene, and heo a paynen was.
⁵ þat lond wes vnel y paied þer wyþ, & ys þre sones also,
 Vortimer, and ⁶ Catigen, and Passen þer to.
 Four hundred ȝer and fourti and ⁷ nyene, ich vnderstonde,
 Yt wes of grace, þat þe Saxones þus come to þis londe.
 þo were among Cristenemen ⁸ þis paynes þus y menged,
 þat mys bileue ⁹ into al þis lond a mong men was y sprenged.
 Hengist seide to þe kyng, "Sire, þou myȝte y se,
 "þat ich am in stude of þi fader, & þi conseiler schal be.
 "Do al aftur my conseil, and þou schalt þoru me
 "Ouer come al þi fon, to soþe ich segge þe.

Consilius.
Hengisti.

nought so wel thenche, As
 hii doth of that mury word
 of that sely wenche. The
 kyng on hure gan madde so,
 that anon *Ar.*

¹ *Pro*, forto. ² And knew
 his nycete, And grauntede
 al for felonye his doughtur
 his wif to be, By so the
 kyng hym wolde yiue the *Ar.*

³ *Sed omnibus unum consilium*

*fuit, ut puella daretur regi, &
 ut peteret pro ea provinciam
 Cantie ab illo. Nec mora, data
 fuit puella regi Wortigerno, &
 provincia Cantie Hengisto,
 &c. Galfridus Mon. 4 This was
 a sory cas Ar. 5 The people
 was Ar. 6 Katigern Ar. 7 Sic
 plane in Cod. nostro Har-
 leyano. At fyue in Ar. 8 The
 hethene thus Ar. 9 In al Ar.*

"Sende

Duo filii
Hengesti.

“ Sende we get aftur my sones ¹ Octe and Ebise,
 “ þat quaynte werroures heþ, and stalworþe and wyse.
 “ In þe Norþ half gef hem lond, wher þou wolt by se,
 “ þat heo mowe bi tuene þe and þe Scottes be.
 “ þenne þou ² mygt siker be by Souþ Humber ywys.
 þe kyng he sende aftur hem, and grauntede al þis.
 So þat mid þre hundred schipes heo ariuede here,
³ Ful of armes and of men, here was gret power.
 þe kyng wel ⁴ fayn gaf hem lond, as Hengist hym bi sogte,
 And Hengist euer mo and mo schippes hyder brogte.
 þo þe Brytones þis y seye, of treson heo were in drede.
 For þo lond was al mid hem y fuld, þer fore þe kyng ⁵ heo
 bede,
 þat he schulde hym vnder stonde, & out of ⁶ lond hem do.
 For yt ne bi com nogt to payns among Cristen men be so.
 For yt was Cristendam, & in mony studes me nuste
 Wuch was on, ne wuch was oþer, ne to wam me mygte truste.
 Some faderes were Cristene, & þo moderes heþene were.
 Me nuste to weþer heo bi come þe children þat heo bere.
 þe kyng louede þe Saxones, for loue of ys wyue,
 And nolde, for al þe Britones, out of ⁷ hys londe hem dryue.

¹ Octa & Ose, *Ar.* ² Maist
Ar. ³ Ful of trauaillyng
 men, this was gret power

Ar. ⁴ Fawe *Ar.* ⁵ Hii *Ar.*
⁶ This londe *Ar.* ⁷ This
Ar.

Seynt

SEYNT ¹ Germain þe bischop to þis londe com,
 For mysbileue þat tyme, & to amende Cristendom,
 And prechede, as yt nede was, & faire miracles wroȝte,
 So þat þe Cristene men in beter stat he broȝte.
 And heo a forcede hom" þe more, þe heþene a wey to dryue.
² He nolde bileue here porpos for þe kyng, ne for ys wyue.
 Heo for soke þe kyng al out, and binome ³ ys power,
 And hys eldest sone made kyng, þat hatte Vortimer.
 þis Vortimer with gret power and god earnest ynow,
 þoru conseil of Seynt Germain, agen ⁴ þis heþene drow.
⁵ þo sene ger yt was aftur, þat heo to londe come,
 þe kyng was, God i þonk, a boue in four batailes, þat heo nome.
 Alle heo were in one ger. atte firste, withoute one,
 Catigen, þe kynge's broþer, myd hys men echone,
 Asailede Hors and hys ost, so þat heo fouȝte faste,
 So þat þis Catigen yslawe was atte laste.
 þo kyng for ys broþer deþ sori was y now.
 To þis Hors he smot anon, & among al ys folk hym slow.
 þo þis strong mon was slawe, þat so strong was in fyȝt,
 Ys men bi gonne to fle ⁶ and" fayn þat heo myȝt.

Bellum
 Hors.

¹ Germain bysshop of Auferne, as ich vnderstonde, And of Treueros seynt Lup, come to this londe, For mysbileue among men, and othur here-sye, That me clepede Arriane and also Pelagye, And prechede the people, as nede was, and faire miracles wroughte,

So that thurgh hem Cristendom to betere stat was broughte. And hii a forcede hem *Ar.* ² And wold nought leue for the kyng, *Ar.* ³ Hym his *Ar.* ⁴ The *pro* þis in *Ar.* ⁵ The senethe yer ther after hit was, that hii *Ar.* ⁶ *Deest Ar.*

þe

Fuga
Hengisti.

þe þridde batail, þat heo smyte, was rygt¹ vp the se,
 þer com þe kyng myd ys ost, and Hengist hym a ge.
 þer was batail strong y now, and mest yt was vp tweye,
 Up þe kyng and Hengist, þat were so stronge beye.
 þo stronge dyntes, þat heo smyten, grisliche yt was to se.
 So þat Hengist bi gan atte laste to fle.
 He, þat neuer er ne fley, fond þer ys pere.
 He fley in to þe yle of Tenet, he no dorste a bide no ner.
 zet eft heo fougten in þe se, and by side þere;
 Ac þe Britones at eche tyme þe maistrye a wey bere.
² þo Saxones heo seye, þat heo mygte no leng at stonde,
 To þe kyng þei sende, þat þei³ most wende hom to here londe.
 þo heo were alle henne y went, here was joye y now,
 þe kyng gef ys men grete giftes, & gret loue to hem drow,
 And let arere chirches vp, þat þe schrewes a doun caste,
 And bi gan to make a muri lond, ac to lute wyle yt laste.
 þe Deuel hadde enuy þer to, þat he susteynede Cristendam,
 And in ys⁴ stepmoder herte ys woniung he nom.
 So þat⁵ þo luper wommon of poyson hire bi þougte,
 And apoysnede þe godeman, and to⁶ þe" deþe hym brogte.
⁷ þis kyng, þo he sey þen deþ, ys knyghtes he let of sende,
 And schewede hem al þe wey wyder he schulde wende,
 And gef hem gold and" soluer, and giftes riche and gode,
 And⁸ bad hem for þe loue of God, þat heo hem vnderstode,

¹ Upon *Ar.* ² The Sax-
 ones sey, that they ne myghte
 a yent the Brutones stonde,
Ar. ³ Myghte *Ar.* ⁴ Step-
 modere's herte sone his In
 he nom *Ar.* ⁵ The *Ar.*

⁶ *Deest Ar.* ⁷ The kyng, tho
 he sholde be ded, his knyghtes
 let of sende, And shewede hem
 of his stat, and of his lyf is
 ende, And yaf hem goold *Ar.*
⁸ *Audaces autem & bellicosos*
juvenes,

And ¹ stabliche holde to gedere, to saue þat lond,
þat neuer þe luper payns yt hadde eft an hond.

² And ȝef he myȝte libbe lenger, he nolde drede noȝt.

And wan it alles so was, þat he wes to deþe y broȝt,

He bed, wan he were ded, þat me schulde ys bodi nome,

And burie yt ³ þe hauene, wer þe payns come,

In a temple swiþe heye, þat heo myȝt yt fer yse,

þat heo, for drede of þe syȝte, myȝte sone fle.

⁴ Hardi was is herte to hem, wen he wolde þat þei hadde

Drede of ys bodi ded, ⁵ wan heo o liue hym dradde.

þer was deol & sorwe y now, þo þis gode mon was ded.

Ac noþeles heo ne buriede hym noȝt, as he hym self bed.

For hem þoȝte yt nas bute a wille, ac, as hee hem by þoȝte,

In London myd honour þis bedi an erþe broȝte.

VORTIGER, þe luper mon, þo hys sone ded was,

Underfong ageyn to hym þe kyndam, alas!

For sone, þoru ys wyue's red, aftur Hengist he sende,

þat he þider to hym with ⁶ simple folk wende.

For he dradde, ȝef he hadde to gret power an honde,

þat þer schulde a rise strif by twene hym and þe londe.

*juvenes, qui ei in debellationi-
bus suis astare solebant, horta-
batur, ut pro patria pugnan-
tes, eam ab hostium irruptione
tueri niterentur* Galfr. Mon.

¹ Stabelliche helde hem to
hepe, forto sauȝ that lond, *Ar.*

² And if he langor myȝt
haue leued, he wolde haue
drad ryȝt nought. But whan

hit ther to come were, he
were to deth y brought, *Ar.*

³ At an hauene, þer the he-
thene men vp come, In a
tumble swithe an heigh, þat
me myȝhte hit fer y se, *Ar.*

⁴ Hard *Ar.* ⁵ As they a lyue
hadde *Ar.* ⁶ *Ut iterum in Bri-
taniā rediret; attamen priva-
tim & cum paucis* Galfr. Mon.

Reditus
Hengisti.

þo Hengist herde telle, þat Vortimer was ded,
He gaderede power y now, and sone nom ys red.
And þre hundred þousond ¹ men mid y armod he nom,
And mid al þe atyl þer to in to þis lond he com.
þo þe kyng & ys consel wiste of ² ys grete companye,
Heo bi þougte & dradde sore, ³ þat^{ll} it were for tricherie.
And napeles he sende hem word a gen in ys felonye,
þat in gret loue hider he com, and no þogte no vilanye,
Bute for drede of Vortimer, ⁴ last he o liue were,
Such folk myd hym he brougte, for he hadde of hym fere.
Ac wen he nas o liue nogt, he bad þe kyng be hende,
þat he mygte myd ys folk ⁵ vp ys lond wende,
Bi fore hym and ys conseil, ⁶ a certeyn tyme and place,
⁷ With any maner arme to fonde ys grace,
And þat ⁸ þo kyng of hys men at huld wuche he wolde,
And dryue ageyn ouer þe se þilke þat he nolde.
þe kyng was her wyþ wel ypayd, & sette hem þo day,
And al ys owe folk, þat heo come þe firste day of May
At Ambresburi, ⁹ for to of þis þing som ende,
To at holde wuche he wolde of hem, & þe oþer agen sende.
þo þis folk in eyþer syde y war was of þe day,
In a newe maner Hengist þougte þe kyng & ys ¹⁰ bi tray.

¹ Men yarmyd with hym
he nom, And with al hure
atyr to this londe he com.
Whan the kyng *Ar.* ² This
comp. *Ar.* ³ *Deest* *Ar.* ⁴ Lest
he a lyue *Ar.* ⁵ Upon his
Ar. ⁶ In certeyn *Ar.* ⁷ With

oute eny manere armes to
fondy of his grace *Ar.* ⁸ The
Ar. ⁹ For to speke of this
Ar. rectius. Et tamen Auc-
tori magis commodum, for to
do (*i. e.* to make.) ¹⁰ To by
traye *Ar.*

He

He hette al ys knyghtes, þat myd hym þer were,
 þat in ys hose stilleliche ych of hem a knyf bere,
 And, wan heo to ¹ þis semble among þis Britones come,
 þat ech of hem an hey mon in conseil to hym nome,
 And swyþe faire speke with hym, & wan he þanne seyde,
 “Nymeþ goure saxes,” ² þat he a non mid þe dede
 Drow ys knyf, and slow a non al an on ywar,
 þat heo mygt of þe hexte men þat lond make bar.
 þis word was wel vnderstonde, ³ so þat þo heo come
 In eyþer syde to Ambrisbury, þo day þat heo nome,
 And þe Brutones al simpliche in god pay, as heo vnderstode,
 And Hengist spek with þe kyng, as yt were for gode,
 And þo he say ys time wel, he gan to grede anon,
 “Nymeþ goure saxes,” and ys men ⁴ þer with echon
 Kypte heore longe knyues, and slowe faste to gronde,
 So þat heo slow ⁵ four hundred & sixti in astonde
 Of erles and of barons þe ⁶ hexte þat þer were.
 Alas! þe deol to þis lond, ⁷ wuch treson was þere?
 Now ne kouþe þe Britones non Englisch y wys,
 Ac þe Saxones speche it was, & þorw hem y come yt ys.

Nymeþ
owre
sexes.

¹ The assemble among the Brutones *Ar.* ² Thanne anon with that ilke rede, Ech drough his knyf, & slough his felawe an vnywar, *Ar.* ³ And to hure day they come To Ambresbury on aithur side, as they the day nome. Sym-

pleliche the Brutones come for pees they vnderstode, *Ar.* ⁴ Tho anon echon Kaughte out hure longe knyues, and slough ther with to grounde, *Ar.* ⁵ Ita & Galfr. Mon. Sed thre *Ar.* cum Aluredo Bev. ⁶ Heighest *Ar.* ⁷ Such *Ar.*

Hengist anon ¹ mid þe word ² þe kyng hente faste
 Bi þe mantel, and anon to his fet hym ³ caste.
 So þat þis gode men were y broȝt myd treson to gronde,
 Ac some, þat of scapede, mid stones, þat heo fonde,
 And mid staues of hegges, defondede hem a boutē,
 And slow of þis luper men mony on in þe route.

Pugna.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, ⁴ þat a strong knyȝt was,
 Hente a strong leuour, þat hym a com at honde bi cas.
 þo he say ys felawes ymorþred so viliche,
 God ernest he nom to hym, and sturde hym harde liche.
 He smot to gronde, & lyȝtliche he ne ȝef strok non,
 þat he ne brak hed oþer arm, or som oþer bon.
 He ne ȝef of hys lyf noȝt, ys felawes for to awreke,
 So þat he slow in þe place, er ys staf gonne breke,
 Sixti mon and tene, and wondede mony on,
 And ȝet he of scapede o liue for hem euer ech on
 And þe luper folk, þat slowe þus þat folk myd tricherie.
⁵ þo kyng þei bonde faste ⁶ y now, þat rewliche he gan crie,
⁷ And defouledde hym myd bendes, forto he swor ys oþ,
 Alle here wille euer eft to do, ner hym ner so loþ.
 þo wende forþ þis luper folk, and nome ⁸ London,
 And Euerwyk, and Lincolne, al ⁹ þoru þis treson.

¹ With that word the kyng
 to hym caughte *Ar.* ² *Et*
ilico Vortigernum accepit, &
per pallium detinuit Galfr.
 Mon. ³ Raughte *Ar.* ⁴ That
 staleworthe man was, Hente a
 tronchon on his hond that
 hym com by cas, *Ar.* ⁵ The

Ar. ⁶ Anon *pro* y now in
Ar. ⁷ And so they gonne fare
 with hym, forto he swor his
 oth, Al hure wille for to do,
 were hym neuere so loth *Ar.*
⁸ Town *adjicit* *Ar.* ⁹ With
 tresoun *Ar.*

And

And ¹ seþþe'' Wynchestre bi Souþe, & oþer ² grete'' townes mo,
 And robbede euer as heo wende, & slow, & dude gret wo.
 þese were ³ lo! our faderes, of wam we beþ of y come,
 þat mid such traison habbeþ þis lond þus y nome.

VORTIGER, ⁴ oure feble kyng, þat lute was worþ þo,
 As he it hadde of serued wel to lutel hadde of wo,
 He flow in to Walis, þider he com sone,
 He ascode of hys conselers wat was best to done?
 Me radde hym, for ys casteles al hym bi nome were,
 þat he in som siker stude a castel ⁵ bulde þere,
 þat he mygte sikerliche wyte hym from hys fon.
 þe kyng ⁶ a god stude þer to let seche out a non,
⁷ And bigan a strong castel of lym and off ston,
 And of quoynte werkmen let hym brynge mony on.
⁸ þo heo bi gonne þis castel, al þat heo made a day,
 O morwe, wen þei come þer to, al clene þer downe it lay.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² *Omittit Ar.*
³ Oure olde fadres lo! of
 wham we both y come, And
 with such trechourie this lond
 thus hii haueth ynome. Vor-
 tiger this luthur kyng, that
 litel worth was tho, As he
 hadde of serued wel, hadde
 muche wo, And was let go a
 lyue. To Walis he wende
 sone, And axede tho of his
 consaillers, what best hym
 was to done? *Ar.* ⁴ *Cum*
igitur tandem tantam cladem
inspexisset Vortigernus, se-

cessit in partes Cambriæ, in-
sciens quid contra nefandam
gentem ageret. Vocatis de-
nique magis suis, consuluit
illos, iussitque dicere quid
faceret? &c. Galfr. Mon.
⁵ Sholde rere, *Ar.* ⁶ A good
 place therfore let *Ar.* ⁷ And
 let bygynne a castel of strong
 lym and ston, *Ar.* ⁸ In He-
 refordshire vp the mont of
 Eirik [*Eir Galfr. Mon.*] ful
 high Was this castel by gon-
 ne, vpon the water of Wigh.
 Tho hii bygonne the castel *Ar.*

Invencio
Merlini.

¹ No beter sped heo, nere þat werk ner so strong.
 þe kyng ascode at enchanteres, war on yt was ylong?
² þe enchanteres seide, þat me a childe sogte,
 þat were y gete with oute fader, & þat me yt þider brogte,
 And slow yt, and mid þe blode bisprenge wel here ston"
 And here mortar, & yt scholde stonde þenne anon.
³ Hem þogte yt was euel y do, ac heo bi leuede yt nogt,
 þat in mony a contrey such a child nas y sogt.
 So þat some⁴ þe messingeres to Kermerdyn come,
 And ⁵ how children bi fore þe gate pleyede he toke gome.
 þo seide on to ⁶ an oþer, "Merlyn, wat ys þe,
 " ⁷ þou faderles schrewe wy ⁸ misdostow me?
 " For ich am of ⁹ kynges ycome, & þou nart not worþ a fille.
 " For þou ¹⁰ naddest ner no fader, þer fore hold þe stille.
 þo þe messageres herde þis, heo astynte þere,
 And askede ¹¹ at men aboute, wat þat child were?
¹² He ne bod neuer fader, heo seyde, þat me mygte vnder-
 stonde,

And ys moder a kynges dogter was of þilke londe,

¹ Euere more hit ferde
 thus, nere that werk so strong
Ar. ² The kynges enchaun-
 tours seide hym tho, ther most
 a child be sought, That hadde
 neuere fader, and thuder hit
 moste be brought, And sle that
 child, and with the blood me
 sholde bysprenge the ston *Ar.*
³ This thoughte hem won-
 der for to do, & yut they left
 hit nought, *Ar.* ⁴ Of the *Ar.*

⁵ Of children in the strete
 that playde they toke gome
Ar. ⁶ That other, "what
 " myschaunce is the, *Ar.*
⁷ *Quid mecum contendis fatue?*
Galfr. Mon. ⁸ Mysdoist thugh
 me? *Ar.* ⁹ Good men *pro*
 kynges *in Ar.* ¹⁰ Haddest
 neuere fader, *Ar.* ¹¹ Of the
 men *Ar.* ¹² Men seyde, he
 hadde fader non, as hii couthe
 vnderstonde. His moder
 kynges

And wonede at Seynt Petre's in a nonnery þere.
 þo þe messageres herde þis, joyful y now þei were.
 To þe baylys of þe toun hastiliche heo wende,
 þat he þe moder and þe sone to þe kyng sende.
 þo me wiste wat ¹ heo were, me ne durste with segge it nozt,
 So þat þe moder & þe sone to þe kyng were y brozt.
 þe kyng ² bad þe wommon segge soþ, ³ þat heo noþing lete,
 þat he ne seide in soþnesse, ho þat child bi gete.
 "My lord ⁴ kyng," quop þis oper, "to þe soþe i segge it þe,
 "þat neuer mon ney me ⁵ com, þat yt bi get on me.
 "Ac of o þing ich wot, wan ich ofte was
 "In chambre mid my felawes," þer com to me bi cas
 "And swyþe fair mon with alle, & bi clupte wel softe,
 "And semblant made fair ynow, & custe me wel ofte.
 "þenne wende he forþ, as in schade, y nuste how ny ware.
 "þo he hadde y siwed me longe in þis fare,

kyng's doughter was of
 i. Southwales

Demecie londe, And duelleth
 and [l. at] Seynt Petre's
 church, as a nonne there Ar.
Adeo ut hod, *sive* had, *pro*
bod reponerem.

¹ They Ar. ² Het Ar.
 For no thyng shold heo lete,
 That heo ne told openlich, who
 þat child was by yete Ar. *per-*
inde ac si who *idem quod*
how valeret. *Illud tamen noto,*
in margine (ab eadem autem
manu) voculam was, adjectam

esse, hac nota (viz. ^) in
textu posita. ⁴ Kyng, seide

heo tho, the sothe ych sey the,
 Ar. ⁵ Cam, þat hit by gat in
 me. And of on thyng ich wote,
 whan ich al one was In priue
 chaumbres with oute felawes,
 Ar. ⁶ *Folia octo in Ar. ex-*

cisa esse deprehendo, in quo
proinde de sequentibus, usque
ad hanc notam ¶ (quam in
margine apposuimus, utpote
ad quam iterum occurrit Ar.)
longe fusius quam in Codice
Harleyano tractatum est.

" Atte laste in forme of mon ofte he lay bi me,
 " Ac oþer mon neuer non, to soþe y segge it þe.
 þo þe kyng herde þis, gret wonder he þougte þere.
 He asched at is clerkes, ^a wer yt to leue were?
 þe clerkes seide, þat yt is in philosophie y fonde,
 þat þer beþ in þe eir an hey, fer fro þe gronde,
 As a maner gostes, wygtes as it be,
 And me may hem ofte on erþe in wylde studes y se,
 And ofte in monne's fourme wymmen heo comeþ to,
 And ofte in wymmen forme þei comeþ to men al so,
 þat men clepuþ eluene, and perantre in þis maner
 On of hem in þis wommon bi get þis child her.
 þo Merlyn hadde al þis y herd, to þe kyng he sede:
 " Sire kyng, wy duest þou my moder & me bi fore þe lede?
 " My enchantoures," quoth þe kyng, " me habbeþ þer to yrad,
 " þat a child, þat nadde no fader, bi fore me were y lad,
 " And þat þe werk myd ys blod, þat we habbeþ on honde,
 " Be sprenged þat falleþ adoun, & þenne yt schulde stonde.
 " Lat þin enchantors," quoth Merlyn, " sone bi fore me brynge,
 " And ich wol preue bi fore þe, þat heo telleþ al lesynge.
 þis enchantors were ybrogt sone bi fore þe kyng.
 " Wad segge ge," quoth Merlyn, " of þis newe þinge?
 " Radde ge, þat me by sprengede þat mortar mid my ^a blod.
 " Here me schal sone y se, þat ne konne no god.

^a I. e. whether he might believe it? *Nam, si id, quod mulier dixerat, fieri potuisset, in Galfr. Mon. ² Potest & interrogandi nota distingui, nisi quod plenam sane distinctionem in Co-*

dice eximio (utcunque ad finem manco) Galfridi Monumethensis, mihi donato ab amico illo eruditissimo Richardo Gravesio de Mickleton in agro Gloucestriensi, reperiam. Sic enim ibi:

“ Seggeth me, zef þat ze konne, wat ys bi neþe þe gronde,
 “ þat makeþ þat þo fundement no stond none stonde.

þei ne kouþe onswere nozt, as it ys y wryte.

“ Lord kyng,” quop Merlyn, “ zef þou wolt þe soþe wyte,

“ Lat delue vnder þe fundement, & þou schalt bi neþe fynde

“ A water pol, þat haþ y mad, þat þis werk ys bi hynde.

Me dalf bi neþe, and fond þe water, as Merlyn hadde y seid.

“ Wat segge ze maistres,” quod Merlyn, “ þat zeue þat cole
 red,

“ To bi nyme blod & my lyf, was ys bi neþe now þere?

þe maistres sete stille y now, ryzt as heo doumbe were.

“ Dop out þis water,” quop Merlyn, “ & wen it is a weye,

“ ze schul bi neþe zet y fynde holwe stones tweye,

“ And in eyþer a dragon þer inne slepe faste.

Me let sone out of þis pol þe water clene caste,

And fonde, as he hadde y seid. Men wondred ynow,

And þogte, þat ys monhede to Godhed drow.

As þis Vortiger and þis folk token gome,

Twei grete dragones out of þis stones come,

þat on was red, þe oþer wyte. þo gonne to fygte faste

Strong batail, and þe fuyr out of þe moup caste.

Pugna
draconum.

So þat þe white was aboue, as þe folk y seye,

And drof þe rede al abak out of þe put ney.

þe rede, as for sorinesse, by turnede hym atten ende,

And asailede þe wyte, & made hym abac wende.

As þis dragones fogte þus, þe kynge hette Merlyn þere,

Forte segge, zef he couþe, wat þe tokonyng were.

Laudavistis, ut sanguis meus
 diffunderetur in cœmentum, &
 quasi illico opus constaret. Set

dicite michi quid sub funda-
 mento latet?

Mer-

Prophecia
Merlini.

Merlyn gan to wepe þo, and bi gan ys prophecie :

“ Awey ! ” he seide, “ þe rede dragon ! for ys endegynneþ to hye,

“ And þe white dragon schal in to ys holes wende,

“ þat bi tokeneþ þe Saxones, þat þou let aftur sende.

“ þe rede bi tokeneþ þe Britones, and goure kynde þat is,

“ þat þe Saxones schulleþ zet ouer come, and here londe

wynne ywis.

“ Grote watres worþeþ zet rede of monne's blode,

“ Cristendom worþ y cast a doun, & chirchon þat er stode.

“ Ac zet schul þe Britones som tyme ageyn stonde,

“ For þe bor of Cornewail schal helpe þis londe,

“ And þo Saxnes hedes vnder fet trede.

“ Mony yles wynne he schal, lond and oþer stude

“ Lord he worþ of France, & Rome schal hys sturnhede

“ Doute, & quake þerfore, ac ys endyng worþ in drede.

“ ¹ þat folk schal euer speke of hym, and ys noble dede

“ Worþ to hym a swete mete, þat it con a rede.

“ ² Sipe, þat comeþ aftur hym, schulleþ holde þe seynorie.

Ac aftur hem schal aryse a worm of Germanye,

And þe ³ se wolf hym schal brynge vp, ⁴ & þanne religion

And holychirche eftsone worþ y brogt al a don.

Change worþ of bischopriches, & þe digne sege y wys

Worþ y brogt to Canterbury, þat at London now ys.

¹ *In ore populorum celebra-
bitur, & actus ejus cibus erit
narrantibus Galfr. Mon. ² Sex
posterij ejus sequentur scep-
trum, sed post ipsos exsurget
Germanicus vermis, Galfr.*

Mon. ³ *Æquoreus lupus*
Galfr. Mon. ⁴ *Delebitur item
religio, & transmutatio pri-
marum sedium fiet. Dignitas
Londoniæ adornabit Doro-
berniam Galfr. Mon.*

¹ Al þis bi fel afturward, as ge schul ² y hure,
³ þo Cornewaile's bor, of wam he spek, þat" was kyng Arthure,
 þat so wel huld vp þis lond, and ys fon ouer com,
⁴ þat þoru ys nobley wan mony a kyndom.

Of prophecie of Merlyn we ne mow telle no more,
 For it so derk to symple men, bute me were þe bet in lore.

Gret wonder hadde þat folk of þe wisdam, þat he seyde,
 Of þing, þat to come was, and of his zong hede.

þe kyng bed þo Merlyn, þat he hym tolde an dede,
 In wat deþ he scholde deye, & Merlyn þis hym seyde.

" ⁵ Costantyne's sones ⁶ fur fle, gef þou mygt.

" ⁷ For heo garkeþ here schipes toward þi lond rygt.

" Heo bileueþ þat lond of Armore," þat þo lasse Breteyn ys.

" Heore seyles heo spredeþ in þe se, & hyder comeþ y wis.

" þe Saxones heo wollep a saile, & to gronde brynge,

" ⁸ Ac heo wolle þe in þin owne tour sle" atte bigynnnyge.

" ⁹ þoru þi traison luper mon heor fader þou slowe.

" ¹⁰ And" þoru þi trayson Saxones ¹¹ into þis lond þou drowe.

" þou bede hem forto helpe þe, ac to þin wo heo beþ y come.

" Twei sorwes ¹² þe beþ vp on, & þe ne worþ nowþ bi nome.

¹ Much of this *Ar.* ² Hure,
 as of the Cornyssh boor, that
Ar. ³ *F. þro.* ⁴ And thurgh
 his grete nobleye *Ar.* ⁵ Con-
 stantyne's sones fuir *Ar.* ⁶ *Ig-*
nem filiorum Constantini dif-
fuge, si diffugere valueris
Galfr. Mon. ⁷ For hure naueye
 hii arayth hiderward nough
 ryght. They leueth the londe
 of Armoryk. *Ar.* ⁸ And the

sle in thyn owen tour *Ar.*

⁹ Hure fader and hure bro-

ther eke þurgh thi treson

men slowe *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.*

¹¹ Ferst in to this lond
 drowe *Ar.* ¹² The cometh

an honde, & neither the ne
 worth by nome. The Sax-

ones nough destroyeth thy
 lond in the on ende. The

two *Ar.*

" For

" For ¹ þe Saxones destruyed þi lond in to þo on ende.
 " þo twei" breþren in þe oþer half ² vp þi lond wol wende,
 " To awreke on þe here heor fader deþ, þe ne tyd no pays.
 " For heo wolleþ to morwe aryue atte haue of Tottenays.
 " And wen Hengist ys yslawe, Aurely worþ kyng.
 " Pays he wole brynge ageyn, & ³ chirchon þoru alle þing.
 " Apoysned he worþ atte ende, and aftur hym an haste
 " Hys broþer schal haue þe kyndam, þat apoysned worþ atte
 laste.
 " So gret treson worþ among hem, þat aftur þe schul come,
 " Ac þe Cornewaile's bor hem schal chaste some.

AURELI & Uter, þe twei breþren corteys,
 With gret power a morwe ariuede at Totteneis.
 þo þe tyþing sprong, þat heo comen attelaste,
 þe Brutones, þat were helples, come aboute hem faste,
 þat were to sprad here & þere, heo were þo glad ynow³,
⁵ þat folk al so of holy chirche aboute hem faste drow³.
 þer heo made Aureli kyng, & homage hym dude echon,
 And ⁶ bede, þat heo moste vp þe Saxones wende anon.
 Ac þe kyng Aurely þer ageyn gan ⁷ speke.
 For he þogte on Vortiger ys fader first awreke.

¹ *Hinc enim regnum tuum*
devastant Saxones, &c. Galfr.
Mon. ² Up the wolleþ wende,
 To a wreke hure fader deth,
 the ne tideth no pays *Ar.*
³ Chirches *Ar.* ⁴ But thurgh
 the boor of Cornewaille shal

wrech of hym be nome *Ar.*
⁵ The folk eke of holy *Ar.*
⁶ Consailed hym on the Sax-
 ones, forto weynde anon *Ar.*
⁷ To speke, And wylned vpon
 Vortager his fader *Ar.*

¹ For ys herte was so gret for ys fader deþ þere,
 þat he ne mygt glad be, ar he awreke were.
 Vortiger ² ys y flowe, for drede of hym ywis,
³ To an castel in Yrchenfeld, in þe Est ende of Walis,
 A boue þe water of Wye, vp an hul on heyg.
 þe kyng Aureli þider com, & þat castel y seyð.
 To Eldolf, erl of Gloucestre, he spek in þis manere :
 “ ⁴ Sire noble erl nym god geme of þis castel here,
 “ Were he mowe þe luper Vortiger wytye fro þe deþe,
 “ þat ich in ys inneward my swerd ne make a scheþe,
 “ þat ys aller mon worst, þat me euer sey with ye.
 “ þe deþ ne mygte be to luper, that he schulde in dye.
 “ For my fader Costantyn first he bi trayde amys,
 “ þat sauede hym & al þat lond from þe ⁵ Picars y wys.
 “ Seþþe my broþer ⁶ Constance he brogte hym to kynge :
 “ For he wolde hym bi traie, and to deþe brynge.

¹ *Adeo enim propter proditi-
 tionem patri illatam doluerat,
 quod nil agere videretur, nisi
 ipsum prius vindicaret* Galfr.
 Mon. ² Was *Ar.* ³ To Ge-
 nor castel in Yrchne, in the
 on ende of Walis, Vp an
 hille, that Dirty hight, þis
 castel stode ful hie, In the
 shire of Hergyn [Heryng-
 fordshire, i. Herfordshire, in
margin] vp the water of
 Wye. The kyng tho he thu-
 der com, spake in this ma-
 ner to Eldoph, Erl of Glou-
 cetre, sure se this castel here,

Wher may hit this Vortiger
 wity fram his deth, And hit
 ich myghte in his body make
 my body a sheth. He is to me
 man worst to loken on with
 eye, His deth ne myghte to
 luther be þan he sholde deye
Ar. ⁴ *Respice, dux nobilis,
 hujus urbis mœnia, utrum po-
 terint Vortegirnum protegere,
 quin gladii mei mucronem ipse
 infra viscera ipsius recondam.*
 &c. Galfr. Mon. ⁵ *Pictes Ar.*
⁶ Constans he made to be kyng :
Ar.

“ And

" And seþþe, þoru ys tricherie þo he hadde þis lond on honde,
 " He mengede þe luper payns among ¹ zou in þis londe,
 " ² Forte holde me & myn broþer out of oure eritage.
 " ³ Ac oure Lord haþ vp ys heued ybrogt ys owne outrage.
 " For þe luper Saxones vnder gete ys luper dede,
 " Heo by nome hym ys kyndom, ⁴ & þat was a rygtful dede.
 " Ac of o þing ich habbe deol, þat þis payns, þat luper beþ,
 " þat he brogte first to londe, as ge alle y seþ,
 " þe noble men of þis lond þus to schame brogte,
 " And þis lond, þat was riche, wastede al to nogte,
 " And al holy chirche & Cristendom habbeþ y brogt to gronde
 " Fram þat ⁵ o se to þat oþer, ⁶ a las! þilke stonde!
 " Now ge kynde men of þis lond ⁷ cuþeþ zoure monhede.
 " And awrekeþ zou of þis luper men, þoru wam com þis
 wrechedhede;
 " ⁸ And seþþe turne we oure hond vp oure oþer fon,
 " And ⁹ delyuere þis lond of þe luper men echon.
 " þis folk myd god herte þis castel a sailede.
 Ac for þe castel wes strong, here wille þo hem faylede.

¹ The Cristenmen *pro* zou
in Ar. ² To *pro* forte *in Ar.*
³ But God on his owene
 hede hath tournd his outrage.
 The Saxones whan hii vn-
 derstode of his luther dede,
Ar. ⁴ Thurgh gile & fals-
 hede. Ac of one thyng *Ar. Sed*
Galfr. Mon. plane ut Codex
Harleyanus. Sic enim ille:
 " *Nam ut nequitiam ipsius com-*
 " *pererunt Saxones, ejecerunt*

" *illum ex regno, quod nemi-*
 " *nem pigere debeat.* ⁵ On see
Ar. ⁶ Alas! the harde stounde!
Ar. ⁷ Kyeth your manhede *Ar.*
⁸ *Deinde vertamus arma in ho-*
stes imminentes, &c. Galfr.
Mon. ⁹ Delyuere we this lond
 of luther *Ar.* ¹⁰ The folk with
 good herte tho this castel
 gonne asaile. And for the ca-
 stel was so strong, whan will
 dude hem faile, With queyn-
 tise

Myd quoyntise heo casten fuyr, & barnde þat castel withinne,
 Aud þe kyng Vortiger was to doust y barnd þer inne.
 And þo mygte he fynde soþ, þat Merlyn hym er seide,
 þat ¹ heo Costantyne's sonas fuyr schulde fle & drede.
 þo was Hengist sore adrad of kyng Aurely þer,
 And nomeliche for þe noble los, ² þat he herde of hym er.
 For þer nas in non ende of France, ny in no lond þer a boutē,
 þat in ioustes & ³ tornemens echo mon gan hym doute.
 For þer nas so god knygt non nower a boutē France,
 þat in ioustes scholde at sitte þe dynt of ys lance,
 þat he ⁴ ne schulde a doun oþer ys hors oþer boþe anon,
 Oþer þe lance schulde breke in peses mony on.
 þer fore Hengist was a drad to mete with ys launce,
 Ouer Homber he fley a non, to wyte hym from meschance;
 And casteles and cytees a storede faste þere,
⁵ And in Scotlond al so; for þilke londes were
 A luper recet euer a geyn Engelande.
 For eche þat wolde hider harm, þer mygte at stonde.
⁶ þo Aureli wiste, þat heo were y flowe to hurne,
 He was glad, þat heo were a ferd, & þogte be hom sturne."

tise hii caste fure, and brende
 hit with gynne, And Vorti-
 ger alto douste brende ther
 with ynne *Ar.*

¹ Constantyne's sonas fuyr
 he sholde fle *Ar.* ² That
 men of hym bere *Ar.* ³ Tour-
 nementz me ne hadde of hym
 gret doute *Ar.* ⁴ *Nam si con-*
gressum fecisset, vel hostem
ab equo prosterneret, vel has-

tam in frustra confringeret
Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Al toward
 Scotlond, ther his recettes were.
 For ther a luthere recett hath
 be euer to Engelande. All
 that hiderward wolde harme,
 ther hii mowe astonde *Ar.* ⁶
Cumque id Aurelio nuntiatum
fuisse, audacior effectus, spem
victoriæ recepit Galfr. Mon.
At in Cod. Ar. Tho kyng Aure-
 lie

He garked ys ost, & siwede aftur hem faste Norþ,
 And þo he sey þe contreis, as he passede forþ,
 Destruyde & bare in eche half, gret deol he made þere,
 And nameliche for chirches, þat y cast to gronde were.
¹ He bi het God almygty, gef he sende hym þo ouer hond,
 To rere vp agen þe chirches a boutte into al þat lond.
 þo Hengist wiste, þat ² heo come toward Scotlond,
³ He garked ys ost faste, ageyn hem for to stonde.

ELDOL, erl of Gloucestre, as he wende in þis ferhede
 Toward þe batail, to þe kyng þese wordes he seyde :

“ Sire kyng, for al þe dayes, þat ich haue on erþe y go,

“ O day me wolde þinke ynow to ⁴ libbe with oute mo,

“ þat ich þe luper Hengist in Batail mygte mete,

“ For on of vs schulde deye er we ⁵ þat batail lete.

“ So ⁶ mucche for ich habbe in myn herte, wan y þer on
 þenche,

“ ⁷ þon come to make pays, of ys luper wrenche,

lie hadde word, the Saxones
 were yflowe, Wel the more
 was his joye, the lasse was
 his howe.

¹ He made to God his a-
 vow, to haue the heigher
 honde, *Ar.* ² He *Ar.* ³ He
 gan faste to greithi his oste,
 ayen hym forto stonde. El-
 dolf, erl of Gloucetre, that
 wende in companye Wiþ the
 kyng thuderward, gan to hym
 speke an hie: “ Sire kyng,
 he seide, alle deies þat y haue
 go *Ar.* ⁴ Lyue *Ar.* ⁵ To

pro þat in Ar. ⁶ *Reminiscor*
namque diei, qua convenimus
quasi pacem habituri. Cum-
que & de concordia ageretur,
prodidit omnes qui aderant,
& cum cultris interfecit, præ-
ter me solum, qui reperto palo
evasi. Succubuerunt eadem die
cccc. lxxx. barones ac consu-
les, qui omnes inermes advene-
rant Galfr. Mon. ⁷ Whan we
 come to make pees, of his lither
 wrenche, That of Erles and
 Barons, that *Ar.*

“ þat

" þat of oure erles and barnes, þat so noblemen were,
 " Four hundred & four score ¹ mid treson he slow þere,
 " Of hem þat ² were al on war, & with oute armour were also.
 " Now God leue, þat þe wreche þer of by twene vs mow be do.
 þe kyng Aurely ys felawes comforted wel to fygte,
 And al ys hope in ³ Godesone dude & al ys mygte.
 As þe ost in eiþer syde to ⁴ þis batail drow,
 Heo come & metten baldeliche mid god earnest y now.
 Heo smyten harde & made mony a strong wonde.
 Heo schedde blod and slowe in eyþer syde to gronde.
 Aureli comfortede þe Cristenemen a boutte,
 And Hengist in his ⁵ half þe heþene menne's route.
 Ac þe Cristene, þoru Gode's grace, hadde þe beter ende,
 So þat toward ⁶ Corneborw þe heþene gonne wende,
⁷ And þo Cristene aftur, & to gronde brogte y nowe.
 For al þat heo mygte of take, heo nome oþer slowe.
 þo Hengist y sey þe Cristene men hym siwe so faste,
 And þat he moste nede turne ageyn, oþer deye atte laste,
 He bi gan to ordeyne ys folk, & to batail agen drow,
⁸ And in eyþer syde, as heo dude er, to gronde me slow,
 þat þe cry of þe folk, þat me slow, þe oþere⁹ brogte in drede.
 Atte laste þe heþene men bi gonne hem to sprede.

¹ With *Ar.* ² Were an
 vnywar, and vnarmed also.
 God leue that hit mote be
 wreke by twixte vs two. The
 kyng Aurelie *Ar.* ³ Gode's
 sone *Ar.* ⁴ The *pro* this in
Ar. ⁵ Half also the hethene
 of his route *Ar.* ⁶ Cones-

burgh *Ar.* ⁷ The Cristene
 siwede after faste, broughte
 to gronde y now *Ar.* ⁸ Yn
 aither syde, as hii dude er,
 muche folk me slough. The
 cry of folk þat was a slawe,
 the other *Ar.*

þe Cristene were þe boldere, ¹ þe kyng faste sette
 Forto comforte ys men, and slow al þat he mette.
 Eldol, erl of Gloucester, al so in hys syde
² Arnde, and kepte her and þer, and slow a boutte wyde.
 And mucche hys entente was ³ Hengist forto mete.
⁴ Heo mette hem atte laste, er heo þe batail lete.
 Ow! Lord! þe dyntes stronge, þat were bi twene hem þere,
⁵ þat fuyr smot out of þat yre, lygtyng as yt were.
 So strong knyghtes boþe þei were, ⁶ & here herte gret was.
 Gorlois, erl of Cornewail, ⁷ þer forþ com bicas.
 As sone as Eldol hym seye, ys herte vpward drow:
 Hengist by þe helme by neþe he hente faste ynowg,
 And myd strengþe hym drow a doun, & lowde bi gan to grede,
 "Cristenemen figteþ now, of noþing ge ne drede.
 "God me haþ my wille y geue; for ich hym habbe nowþe,
 "Hym þat made al þis wo bi Norþ & eke by Souþe.
 "Cuþeþ now, þat ge ben men; for þe maistry al oure ys.
⁸ þo Cristene men to grounde slow, þo ⁹ heo herde þis.
¹⁰ Heo ne fynede neuer mo, ar þo oþer ware at gronde.
 Some flowe to hulles and to wodes, þat heo fonde.
 Ac Octa, Hengiste's sone, and ys power atte laste
¹¹ Of scapede to Euerwik, & strengþede þe toun faste.

¹ And the heþene faste of sette, And faste comfortide his men to sle alle that hii mette
Ar. ² Rood, & kept her and ther all a boutte wide *Ar.*
³ With Hengis *Ar.* ⁴ So at last to gedere hii mette, and other batailles lete. Wonder stronge were the strokes, that

Ar. ⁵ The fuir smot out of the ire, *Ar.* ⁶ And the herte so gret was *Ar.* ⁷ By side hem com by cas *Ar.* ⁸ The Cristene to grounde *Ar.* ⁹ Hii *Ar.* ¹⁰ And neuer wolde fyne, er the other were to grounde *Ar.* ¹¹ Askapide in to Ebracwike, *Ar.*

Hengist

Hengist was o liue y nome, and y holde faste.
 þo þis batail was y do, ¹ þis Britones attelaste
 Nome þe town of ² Cornboru, and þer inne hadde reste
 þre dayes and þre ³ nyzt, forto bi þenche hore beste.
 þe kyng lette ⁴ þe wyle burye þe dede men þere,
 And do vnder lechecraft hem, þat y wounded were.
 þe kyng ⁵ lette bryng þer aftur Hengist bi fore hym sone,
 And aschede at erles & barnes, wat were mid hym to done?
⁶ Eldal, þat bischop of Gloucestre ⁷ was,
 And þe erl ys broþer Eldol, was þer bi cas.
 þo he sey Hengist stonde bi fore þe kyng þere,
 He stod vp & seide þe verdyt by fore alle opere þat þer were.
 “gef oper,” he seide, “þat þer beþ hym wol deliuere echone,
 “To smale peces ich hym wolde to hakke al one.
 “⁸ For ich wolde þo prophete wyle Samuel vnderstonde,
 “þat þo he hadde þe luper kyng Agag vnderhonde,”

¹ These *Ar.* ² Cones-
 burgh *Ar.* ³ Nyght, as hem
 thought beste *Ar.* ⁴ Thulke
 while the deed bury there,
 And dude tho to lechecraft,
 that y wounded were *Ar.*
⁵ The kyng let Hengist af-
 terward be brought to fore
 hym sone, And axede of his
 Barones, best what was of
 hym to done? *Ar.* ⁶ Eldad,
Ar. ⁷ Tho was, And the
 ferthe brother Eldolf, ther
 was eke by cas. Eldad seide
 the verdit for alle that ther
 were, When he seygh Hengis
 stonde byfore the kyng there.

“Theigh alle,” he seide, “that
 here beth him wolde dely-
 uere echon, To smale pecis
 alto hacky ich hym wolde a-
 lone. For of prophete Samu-
 el ich wolde vnderstonde,
 That Agag the luthur kyng
 hadde vnder hond, *Ar.* ⁸ *In-*
sequeretur namque prophetam
Samuelem, qui cum Agag re-
gem Amalech in potestatem
retinuisset, concidit illum in
frusta dicens, “Sicut fecisti
“matres sine liberis, sic fa-
“ciam hodie matrem tuam
“sine liberis inter mulieres.
 Galfr. Mon.

" He lette hym hewe to peses, and also he seide,
 " As þou hast y mad mony ¹ wyf deolful lyf to lede,
 " And mony child with oute fader, & mony wif lordles,
 " ² Al so ich wole make to day þine sones faderles.
 " Al so ³ doþ bi þis mon, þat so muche wo haþ y do,
 " So mony child mad faderles, dygteþ hym al so.
 þis word was for dom yholde, þe erl Eldol hym drow,
 And ladde hym with oute þe town ⁴ mid god herte y now;
 And smot of hys hed, þat so muche wo hadde y do.
 þo was mony mon a wreke, and mony mon glad al so.
 þis was euene fourty ger, þat he hadde þis dom,
 Aftur þat ⁵ he mid his folc to þis lond com.
 þo wende þe kyng myd god ost to Euerwik anon,
 For to sle ⁶ Hengistesone, and ys men echon.
 þo Octa hit onderstod, þat heo comyng were,
 He sei wel, þat ⁷ power nas nogt ageyn hem þere.
 An ⁸ raketyne of yre in hys hond he nom,
 And myd þe hexte of ys men ⁹ to þe kyng he com.
 " Sire," he seide, " myne Godes al ouer come beþ,
 " And þi ¹⁰ Lord ys God al one, as we to soþe seþ,

¹ A wif *Ar.* ² So wole
 y make to day thi sone fader-
 les *Ar.* ³ Do *Ar.* ⁴ With
 gret filte y now, *Ar.* ⁵ He
 ferst with his *Ar.* ⁶ Hen-
 giste's sone, *Ar.* ⁷ His pow-
 er was nought a yen so many
 there. A gret cheyne of iren
Ar. ⁸ *Communicato itaque*

*consilio, egressus est cum no-
 bilioribus qui secum aderant,
 gestans catenam in manu, &
 sabulonem in capite, & sese
 regi in hæc verba præsentavit*
Galfr. Mon. ⁹ A ye the kyng
 com *Ar.* ¹⁰ God is Lord al
 one, as we alle y seth, *Ar.*

" þat þus noble men to þyn wille bryngeþ in þis manere.

" ¹ þer fore vs with ² veteres vnderfong now here.

" ³ þat to eche torment, þat ge wole vs, gare we beþ in þis place,

" Bute þou wole of vs here pyte habbe and grace.

þe kyng hadde rewþe ⁴ of hem, & ys conseil hym gef þo,

Nom of hem sikernesse to ys þral euer mo"

And of eche þat with hym was, and in gret destresse,

Bi syde Scotlond hem gef a place, al in wilderness,

To wone inne in þraldam vnder þe kyng euer mo.

þese, and mony oþere, þat y flowe were þo,

Y sei, þat þe kyng hadde such mercy hem do,

To hym heo wende as priones, and ⁵ bedom mercy also.

þe kyng al inon maner hem gef ⁶ mercy and grace,

To wone al in ⁷ þralhede in þike wylde place,

⁸ To wroþe hele al þis lond was he so mylde þo.

For þe schrewes dude to þis lond seþþe wel muche wo.

þo al þis was y do, þe kyng, ar he wende,

Let ordeyne in Euerwik þis lond for to amende,

And lette rere vp chirches in al þe lond a bowte,

And bischopes dude in heore power, þat ⁹ er were al withoute.

¹ *Accipe ergo nos & catenam istam, & nisi misericordiam habueris, habe nos ligatos, & ad quodlibet supplicium uoluntarie paratos* Galfr. Mon.

² *Thes feteres* Ar. ³ *To (omisso þat)* which torment though wlt vs do, we beth redy in this place, But though wlt vs pyte do, or eny other grace

Ar. ⁴ Of hym, as his conseil yaf hym tho, And sikernysse nam of hym, to serue hym euere mo Ar. ⁵ Mercy bede also Ar. ⁶ Mylce Ar. ⁷ Thraldom Ar. ⁸ To wroþtherhele to al this lond, that he mylde was tho. For they dude to al this lond suthe muche wo Ar. ⁹ Erst Ar.

Aftur fyftene dawes, þat ¹ he hadde y ordeyned ² þis,
 To London ³ he wende, for to amende ⁴ þat þer was amys.
 He let amende al þo town of howses þat were a downe,
⁵ And in þe contrey chirches let rere, and in þe towne.
 Gode lawes," þat were aleyd, newe he lette make.
⁶ Londes, þat were ⁷ arst by nome, ⁸ þe rygt eyr he lette take.
 Bute ys wille al clene was ys lond forto amende.
 And aftur al þis to Wynchestre from Londone he wende,
 For to amende þilke ⁹ syde, & so & so to Salusbury.
 And so, for to amende more, to þe ¹⁰ downe of Ambresbury.
 þo he com to þat place, þat þe heye men inne laye,
 þat Hengist myd ys sexes let sle and by traye,
 Of þe morþre he hadde deol, & bi gan to wepe sore,
 He þoghte in hys herte, how he mygte þe place ¹¹ worþi.
 For þer lay so gode men, ¹² yt was wel ydo,
 þat, for to defende þat lond, y morþred were so.
 Hys conßeil he tok þo, how he mygt make þere
 Some werk, ¹³ in honowr of hem, þat euer in mynde were.
 þe erchbischop of Walis seide ys auys,
 "Sire," he seide, "gef þer ys any mon so wys,

¹ Hii *Ar.* ² Al this *Ar.*

³ Hii *Ar.* ⁴ Thyngs that

were amys. And let amendy

al the toun *Ar.* ⁵ Churchen

he rerde in contreye fram

toun to toun. Olde lawes,

Ar. ⁶ And londes, *Ar.* ⁷ Er

Ar. ⁸ To the ryght heires.

take. His wille was al clen-

ly this lond for to amende

Ar. ⁹ Cite, and so to Sales-

bury *Ar.* ¹⁰ Toune *Ar.*

¹¹ Worshipe more. For ther

Ar. ¹² Hym thought hit wel

to do, By cause, in sense of the

lond, they were amorthered

so *Ar.* ¹³ That hii euere

more after in mynde were *Ar.*

"¹ þat

“¹ þat beste red þe can rede, Merlyn þat ys.
 For ² þer nys in þi kyndam so wys mon y wys,
 To segge soþ of þinges, þat to comene beþ.
³ Ne of quoyntes for to rede, as we al day y seþ.
 Merlyn was þo in Walis. he was sone of soȝt
 Myd messingeres, & y fonde, & to þe kyng y broȝte.
 The kyng made hym joye ynow, & ⁴ amon hem alle
 Bed hym telle of som ⁵ þing, þat hym schulde bi falle.
 “Sire kyng,” quop Merlyn þo, “suche þinges y wys
 “Ne beþ for to schewe noȝt, but wen gret nede ys.
 “For ⁶ ȝef ich seide in bismare, oþer bute yt ned were,
 “Sone from me ⁷ he” wolde wende þe Gost, þat doþ me lere.
⁸ þe kyng, þo non oþer nas, bod hym som quoyntyse
 Bi þenke aboute ⁹ þilke cors, þat so noble were and wyse.
 “Sire kyng,” quop Merlyn þo, “ȝef þou wolt here caste,
 “In ¹⁰ þe” honour of hem, a werk that euer schal y laste,
 “To þe ¹¹ hul of Kylar send in to Yrlond
 “¹² Aftur þe noble stones, þat þer habbet lenge y stonde,
 “þat was þe treche of geandes, for a quoynte werk þer ys
 “Of stones al wyþ art y mad, in þe world such non ys.

Kylar.

¹ That best red can ther
of rede, Merlyn hit is *Ar.*

² *Quippe non existimo, alterum
in regno tuo esse, cui sit clarius
ingenium, sive in futuris dicen-
dis, sive in operationibus ma-
chinandis* Galfr. Mon. ³ Ne of
queynte thynges for to rede,
Ar. ⁴ Among *Ar.* ⁵ Thinges,
Ar. ⁶ *Nam si ea in derisionem
sive vanitatem proferrem, ta-
ceret spiritus, qui me docet, &*

*cum opus superveniret, recede-
ret* Galfr. Mon. ⁷ *Deest Ar.*

⁸ The kyng, tho other [*f.*
tho non other] myghte be, bad
hym *Ar.* ⁹ Thulke bodies,
Ar. ¹⁰ *Deest Ar.* ¹¹ Hille
of Kildar *Ar.* ¹² After stones
noble and goode, that longe
han ther stonde, That was
carole of Geantz, for queynte
werk hit is *Ar.*

"¹ Ne þer nys noþing, þat me scholde ² myd strengþe a doun caste.

" Stode heo here, as heo doþ þere, ³ euer a wolde laste.

þe kyng ⁴ somdel to lyghe, þo he herde þis tale.

"⁵ How mygte," he seyde, "suche stones, so grete & so fale,

"⁶ Be y brogt of so fer lond? & get mest of were,

" Me wolde wene, þat in þis lond no ston to worche nere.

"⁷ Sire kyng," quoth Merlyn, "ne make nogt an ydel such lyghyng.

" For yt nys an ydel nogt, þat ich telle þis tyþing.

" For in þe farreste stude of Affric geandles while fette

" þike stones for medycine, & in Yrlond hem sette,

"⁸ While heo woneden in Yrlond, to make here bapes þere,

" þer vnder fort o bapi, wen þei syk were.

" For ⁹ heo wolde þe stones wasch, & þer inne baþe y wis.

"¹⁰ For ys no ston þer among, þat of gret vertu nys.

¹ Ne ther is nothing, that hem sholde with strength a doun caste *Ar.* ² *Grandes sunt lapides, nec est aliquis*

cujus virtuti cedant. Qui si

eo modo, quo ibi positi sunt, circa plateam locabuntur, stabunt in æternum Galfr. Mon.

³ Euere hii wolde y laste *Ar.*

⁴ By gan somdel to laugh *Ar.*

⁵ Who *Ar.* ⁶ Bryng fro so ferre lond? And the meste were, that men wolde wene in þis *Ar.*

"⁷ Sire," quath Merlyn, "ne

" taketh nought an ydel such

" lyghyng. For hitt is an

ydel nought, that y telle of this thyng *Ar. Ad hæc Mer-*

linus: " Ne moveas rex va-

num risum, quia hæc absque

vanitate profero Galfr. Mon.

⁸ The while hii wonede in Ir-
londe, to make hem bathes

there, *Ar.* ⁹ *Lavabant nam-*
que lapides, & infra balnea

diffundebant, unde egroti

curabantur. Miscebant etiam

cum herbarum confectionibus,
unde vulnerati sanabantur.

Non est ibi lapis, qui medi-
camento careat Galfr. Mon.

¹⁰ For ther is *Ar.*

þe kyng and ys conseil¹ radde þo stones forte fette,
² And with gret power of batail, gef any mon hem lette.
 Uter, (þe kyng's broþer,) þat Ambrose hette al so,
 In anoþer maner name, y chose was þer to,
 And fiftene þousant men, þis dede forto do,
 And Merlyn, for his³ quoyntise," þider wente al so.
⁴ Gynemon was þilke kyng of Irlonde.
 þo me tolde hym, þat þis Britones y come were to ys londe,
 Agen hem he wente anon myd⁵ god power ynowg.
 þo me told him here ernde, he astynte and lowg.
 "No wonder," he seyde, "þaw Breteyne al dāy go to gronde,
 "⁊ Wan heo, þat þer inne beþ, suche foles beþ yfonde.
 "Wo haþ y herd such folye, wer þer be in non ende
 "Stones, þer þat agtes be heo hyder sende?
 "Armeþ gow⁸ faste now, and wyteþ gowre lond.
 "For⁹ heo schul not habbe here no ston, wyle ich may
 wolde myn hond.
 Uter and ys companye redi ageyn hem were,
¹⁰ And a strong batail smyte, & þe Yrische to driue þere,
 And wende forþ myd strengþe, þo nomon hem no lette,
 And come to Kylar, þo stones forto fette.

¹ Radde tho the stones *Ar.*

² And that with gret power of men, yf eny wolde lette *Ar.*

³ Queynte witt, *Ar.*

⁴ Gwyneman, that was thulke tyme kyng *Ar.*

⁵ Gret *pro* god in *Ar.*

⁶ Theigh Brutons *Ar.*

⁷ The moste fales of the worlde ofte hii beth y founde.

Who saw such a folye in to the worlde's eynde, Stones

out of Irlond to Brutayn seynde? *Ar.*

⁸ Sone y now *Ar.*

⁹ Hii ne shul haue the leste ston, the while ic welde myn hond *Ar.*

¹⁰ So that the Irissh men hii ouercome there, And wente forth with strengthe, that noman hem ne lette, To the hulle of Kildar the stones forto fette *Ar.*

þo heo sey ¹ þo stones, heo wondred y now
 Of þe werk, þat was so gret, & ² ho yt þider drow.
 "ge gonge men," quoth Merlyn, "cuþeþ now goure mygte,
 "How ge mow ³ þis stones best to þe ⁴ schip dygte.
 Heo stode, & bi þogte hem best, & cables fette ynowe,
 And laddres, and leueres, & faste schoue & drowe.
 Ac heo ne mygte come for noþyng to ende ⁵ myd here wille.
 Merlyn ⁶ say þis, and low, and bad hem stonde stille.
 He sette hys gynnes, as he wolde, & ⁷ ys quoyntise dude stille,
 And þe folk myd þo stones þo dude al here wille,
 And lette hem to schippes brynge, & so in to þis londe,
 Ac þer was som enchantery þer to, ich vnderstonde.
 To þe ⁸ downe of Ambres bury ⁹ þe stones y brogt were,
 A geyn þe fest of ¹⁰ Wytson tyde, as Merlyn gan lere.
 Four hondred ger & four score & aboute þe tenþe ger,
 Aftur ¹¹ þat gon on erþe com, y set þei were þere.
 Alle þe hey men of ¹² þo lond þe kyng lette of sende,
 Erles and barones and knyghtes ¹³ in eche ende,
 Bischopes and abbotes and ¹⁴ opere þat þere were,
 þat þe fest of Wytson tyde myd hem were þere."

¹ þis <i>pro þo in Ar.</i>	² Who	y vnderstonde <i>Ar.</i>	⁸ Dounes
<i>Ar.</i>	³ Thes. <i>Ar.</i>	⁹ Thes stones <i>Ar.</i>	
⁴ Shippys	⁵ Of hure wille <i>Ar.</i>	¹⁰ Wittsonday, as Merlyn gan	
⁶ Sey al thís, <i>Ar.</i>	⁷ His	hem lere <i>Ar.</i>	¹¹ <i>Lege, cum</i>
queyntise caste. The folke of		<i>Ar.</i> that God on erthe come	
the stones tho hadde hure		&c. ¹² The <i>Ar.</i>	¹³ By
wille an haste, And hem to		euery ende <i>Ar.</i>	¹⁴ Othur
shippe gonne bryng, and so		soth y say, That sholde come	
in to this londe, Ac nought		to the kyngus fest a Witt-	
with out enchauntemente, as		soneday <i>Ar.</i>	

þe

þe kyng at Wytsonday, þo heo come alle to ys heste,
 Sette þe crowne on ys heued, and huld ¹ noble feste.
² And alle þe foure dayes þe fest ³ he huld there.
⁴ Bischopes also, þat delyuered were,
 In honour of þilke stude, þere he ⁵ gef ys þo,
 As of ⁶ Euerwyk, & of Walis, & also of oþere mo.
 Merlyn with ys chauntement, & myd ys quoyntyse, þer
 Sette vp þe stones rygt so, as heo stode in Yrlond er.
 þus was Stonehenge þus ⁷ y mad, þat men al day seþ,
 In honour of þe noble men, þat þer y buried beþ.

⁸ **P**ASCENCE, Vortigere's sone, ys fader for barnd was,
 Fley into Germanye ⁹ myd wel hasty pas.
 þere he gaderede folc of Saxones y nowē,
 For to a wreke hym of hem, þat ys fader slowe.
 In þe Norþ ende of þis lond heo by gonne ariue,
 And faste slowe and ¹⁰ barnde, and robbode bi lyue.
 þat word ¹¹ to owre kyng com, so þat he wende
 Myd ys power among hem, & heore prude schende.
 Pascence and ys men, ¹² þo ascapede o lyue,
 To schippes flowe faste ¹³ agen, ech whyle hem þogte fyue."

¹ A noble *Ar.* ² And
 fully alle *Ar.* ³ Held he
 there. Bysshopryches, that he
 held, delyuered there were *Ar.*
⁴ *Interea honores, qui posses-*
soribus carebant, domesticis
suis largitur, ut eis obsequii
sui laborem remuneraret
Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Yaf hem tho,
⁶ Walis, & Ebracwick, and

othur many mo *Ar.* ⁷ Furst y
 made, that we al day seith,
Ar. ⁸ Passent, Vortigeris
 sone, tho his fader forbrend
 was, *Ar.* ⁹ With full hasty
Ar. ¹⁰ Brende, and robbode
 swythe blyue *Ar.* ¹¹ To kyng
 Aurelye come, *Ar.* ¹² That
Ar. ¹³ A ye, hying swyth
 blyue *Ar.*

A boutē

A boute heo wende by þe se, so þat to Yrlond heo come.
 Gyneman kyng of Yrlond and heo gret conseil nome.
 And þis lond forte schende alle heo swere an op.
 For Gyneman was for þe Stonhenge hiderward get wroþ.
 So þat þe Yrische and heo myd gret power y wys
 Come toward þis lond, and aryuede in Walis.
 In þe town of Sent Daud heo by leuede and aboute,
 And forto asaile þis lond greyþed here route.
 Kyng Aureli at Wynchestre to gret siknesse drow,
 Gyneman and Pascente wer glad þer of y now.
 A quoynte maistre of þe Saxones (¹ Eope was ys name)
 To Pascence wende ² anon, þat God geue hym schame.
 “³ Wat woldest,” he seyde, “þilke mon to ys mede geue fawe,
 “ þat þe kyng Aurely broȝte of lyf dawē?
 “ gef ich myȝte,” quop Pascence, “ such mon fynde on,
 “ A þousant pownd of seluer ich wolde hym geue anon,
 “ And make hym euer vnder me mayster of al my londe,
 “ And þat ich hym wolde myd trewþe siker faste on honde.
 þis forward was faste y mad, now couþe þis luper man
⁴ Langage of þis lond, as” he were Cristeneman,
⁵ And þe maner of Bruytones, as he hadde among ⁶ hem y go,
 And þe art of lechecraft, al to muche po.
 His berd he lette schere first, ⁷ and a brod crowne al so,
 And seþþe a monke’s abytt on hym he lette do.

¹ Coppa *Ar.* ² A non,

God yif hym moch shame *Ar.*

³ “What wolt thou,” he sayne,

“yive the to his mede fawe,

“that wolde kyng Aurelie

“brynge of lyff dawē? *Ar.*

⁴ The langage of Brutones,

as *Ar.* ⁵ And all the ma-

nere of hem, *Ar.* ⁶ Hem

go, *Ar.* ⁷ And made hym a

croune also, *Ar.*

And

And nom with hym spicery, ¹ þat to fysik drow,
 And wende hym to Wynchestre quoyntoliche y now,
 And seyde ² þe kynges, þat he wolde hym to hele brynge.
³ þat folk was sone glad y now for þe ⁴ tyþinge.
 So wysliche he made yt & so wel, þat me leuede hym faste.
 þe kyng in hys ⁵ syde ys herte al vp hym caste.
 He gef hym a luper drench, & þo he hadde dronke yt so,
 He bed hym lygge & slepe wel, þat yt mygte do bet hym do.
 þe kyng hopede wel ⁶ to hym, and lette hym helie faste,
 And stille was with oute noyse, & lay & slepte ys laste.
 For þe poyson in ys slep þe veynes so ⁷ þorp sougte,
⁸ þat it of eode al þat body, & to deþe sone hym brogte.
 þe ⁹ wyle he slep, ¹⁰ þe traytour þo wey awayward nom
 Stilleliche bi halues, þat me nuste wher he bi com.
 Rigth aboute þe kynges deþ, in þe firmament an hey
 A sterre, gret and fayr ynow, and swyþe cler, me sey.
¹¹ O cler leom, with oute mo, þer stod fram hym wel pur,
 Y formed as a dragon, as red as þe fuyr.
 Out of þe dragone's moup twei leomes þer stode þere;
¹² Grettor tylde euene Est ouer Fraunce, as yt were,

¹ And *pro* that in *Ar.*
² The kyng (that longe
 hadde be sike) he wolde to
 hele brynge *Ar.* *Urbem po-*
stremo ingressus, obtulit obse-
quium suum clientibus regis,
& gratiam in oculis eorum in-
venit. Nihil enim desiderabi-
lius expectabant, quam medi-
cum Galfr. Mon. ³ The folk
Ar. ⁴ Tydyng *Ar.* ⁵ Side al-
 so, his herte *Ar.* ⁶ On hym,
Ar. ⁷ Thurgh *Ar.* ⁸ That

all the body hit oueryede, &
 sone to deth hym broughte *Ar.*
⁹ *Interea nefandus proditor*
ille, inter unum & alium ela-
psus, in curia nusquam compa-
ruit Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ This tray-
 tour his wey a weyward
 nome Al by halues stillelych,
 me nuste *Ar.* ¹¹ A cler leome
 fro hure com, bryght so gold
 pure, *Ar.* ¹² The gryttere
Ar.

þe oþer hadde sene branches, alle cler ynowe,
 And toward þe Yrische see Westward euene ¹ þei' drowe.
 þo þis sterre was y sey, men ² wondrede y now.
 Uter, þe kyng's broþer, myd ys ost þo drow
 To Walis to þis strange men, to a sayle hem & fygte.
 A drad he was ³ sore y now of þis wonder sygte.
⁴ Merlyn he clepude & aschede anon, how he mygte þer of be?
 Merlyn wep a non so faste, þat deol yt was to se.
 "Alas!" he seyde, "þe deolful harm, þat ys endeles!
 "Alas! ⁵ þat folk of Breyteyne, þat now ys helples!
 "Ded ⁶ he' ys þe noble kyng Aureli þi broþer.
 "Ac þe sterre, þat me yseyþ, bi toþoneþ a noþer.
 "Hye now þou noble duc, þat þe batail were y smyte.
 "For kyng þou worst of Breteyne, & þe ⁷ maistry þou schalt
 gete.
 "For þe sterre bi tokoneþ þe, and þe fur dragon al so.
 "þe leom, ⁸ þat out of ys mouþ ouer France ys y do,
 "þat by tokeneþ a chyld, þat þou schalt bi gete ywys,
 "þat schal wynne France & oþer londes, in þe world such
 mon nys.
 "þe leome, þat tylde Westward, a dogter þat ys,
 "⁹ þat þou schalt bi gete, and schal habbe sones ywys.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Wondrede
 ther on y nowe *Ar.* ³ Swythe
 sore of *Ar.* ⁴ Of Merlyn he
 axede anon, hough hitt myght
 be *Ar.* ⁵ The folk *Ar.* ⁶ *Deest*
Ar. ⁷ Maistry biyite. The
 bryght sterre bytokneth the,
 and the fury *Ar.* ⁸ That

cometh out of his mouth, *Ar.*
⁹ Thugh shalt biyite of thy
 body, that shal haue sones y
 wis, That kynges of Bru-
 tayne shul here aftur be, Of
 sorwe and of contak thenne
 me shal y se *Ar.*

"þat

“ þat scal, eche aftur oþer, kyng of Breteyne be,

“ Of some oþer al in contek, and þis me schal y se.

þe noble mon, of wam he spek, þat he ¹ wolde be gete,

þat was þe kyng Arthure, as ge schul ywyte.

² Uter let al þis be (for he ne leuede yt not anon)

And wende toward Sent Daud, to mete with ys fon.

þe oþer were of hem y war, & ³ garkedede hem in here syde,

And ⁴ lette arme here ost wel, batail forto abyde. Bellum.

Heo come & smyte þis bataile, & faste slowe to gronde,

In eyþer syde muche folk in a lute stonde,

Knygtes and oþer folk, atte laste oure Lord þogte

On ys Cristene folk, and þe ⁵ maystry hem brogte.

For þer was Gynemon y slawe, (þe kyng of Yrlonde)

And Pascence (Vortigere's sone) þat so gret power hade in

honde,

And muche of here folk with hem, so þat fowe ⁶ atte nende

Alyue þer of scapede, þat to schip mygte wende.

And so ⁷ heo schulde lerne, with Cristenemen to fygte.

For our lord wole among hys men euer cuþe ys mygte.

To Uter of ys broþer deþ þer com werd atte laste.

Aftur þis batayl he wende to Wynchestre faste.

¹ Sholde biyite, *Ar.* ² U-
ther, when he hadde hurd al
this, forth he wende anon
Toward Seynt Daudis, to
mete with his fon *Ar.* *At U-*
ther (in dubio tumen existens,
an verum protulisset Merli-
nus). in hostes, ut cæperat,

progredditur. Advenerat nam-
que prope Meneviam, &c.
Galfr. Mon. ³ Greithede hem
Ar. ⁴ Lete hem army swithe
well, the bataille to a byde
Ar. ⁵ Victory *Ar.* Atten-
ende *Ar.* ⁷ Hy myghte lerny,
Ar.

¹ Arst

¹ Arst was þe kyng y buried, er he ² mygte" come þere,
 Withinne þe place of þe Stonheng, þat he ³ lette rere.
 For he lette þe stude halwe, for þe gode cors þat þer were,
 And bischopes and worthi men ys body þider bere."

UTER, aftur ys ⁴ broþer deþ, þe crowne to hym nom,
 And þoru þe heye men ⁵ of þis lond fong þis kyndom.
 Of þe dragon ⁶ he vnderstod, þat y seye was on heye.
 And of þat Merlyn hadde ⁷ y seid, of þe sigte þat me seye.
 To riche dragones of gold he lette ⁸ make anon,
⁹ And at þe mynstre of Wynchestre he offerede þat on.
¹⁰ þat oþer he lette bi fore hym bere in batail wan he was.
 Me clepede hym Uterpendragon þer aftur for þis cas,
 þat ¹¹ was, Uter dragone's heued, ¹² & ¹³ þat was to signifie,
 þat Merlyn hym clepude dragon in hys prophecie.
¹⁴ Otte, (Hengiste sone) þat luper Saxone,
 And Eose ys cosyn, heo þogte of treson.
 þe oþ, þat to kyng Auryli heo swere by fore,
 Hem þogte, þo he was ded, þat yt was al for lore.

¹ Ac er was the kyng *Ar.*
² *Deest Ar.* ³ Let furst rere.
 He hadde lete halwy the
 place, for coorses that ther
 were, By therchebisshopp
 Seynt Dobrice, and other
 that were there *Ar.* ⁴ Bro-
 ther is deth, *Ar.* ⁵ Of the
 lond a veng the kyngdom *Ar.*
⁶ He gan by thenche, that

was y seye an hegh *Ar.* ⁸ Y
 seid, thurgh sight that he segh.
 Two ryche *Ar.* ⁸ Makie *Ar.*
⁹ Atte hegh mynstre *Ar.* ¹⁰
 The othur *Ar.* ¹¹ Is, *Ar.*
¹² *Deest Ar.* ¹³ Octa (Hen-
 giste's sone) the luthere *Ar.*
¹⁴ Osa his brother also by-
 thoughte hem on treson *Ar.*

Heo,

Heo þogte, to do þis lond schame, to Germanye heo sende
¹ y lome,

(þat ys lond in Alymaine, ² from wam heo alle come)

Aftur more folk of here kynde, so þat þer come ynowe.

At Scotlond heo by gonne, and faste barnde and slowe,

And so ³ forþ toward Euerwyk þe contre ⁴ a doun þei caste,

And bi segede Euerwik, þo heo þider come, faste.

þe kyng Uter herde here of, þiderward faste he drowþ.

To gedere heo come, and smyte a batail strong y now. Bellum.

Heo ⁵ smyten & slowe in eyther syde, þat rewþe yt was to se.

Atte laste ⁶ þis Saxones by gonne forto fle,

And ⁷ þis Britones aftur, and slowe to gronde faste;

So þat some of scapode vp monteynes atte laste,

And some in to townes, and yt drow to nygt,

So þat ⁸ heo ne mygt noþer longor y se to fygt.

And þe Britones hem wyþ drow, & þe Saxones hem reste.

Kyng Uter nom ys conseil, ⁹ wat red were beste.

Gorloys, erl of Cornewayl, (þat wysest was y holde,

And old, and mest hadde y seye) ys red first he tolde.

“We mote,” he seyde, “be hardy, & stalworþe, & wyse,

“gef we wol habbe oure lyf, and holde oure franchise.

“Wexing euer beþ oure fon bi water and by londe,

“þat, gef we abydeþ longe, we schal hem not at stonde.

¹ Sone, Ar.

² Of wham hii furst come) Ar.

³ Euer to ward Ar.

⁴ Doun caste,

And whan hii come to Ebrac-

wyk by segede the toun faste.

Whan kyng Uther hurde Ar.

⁵ Foughte and Ar.

⁶ The Saxones Ar.

⁷ The Bru-

tones Ar.

⁸ Hii ne myght

y se no lengor forto fight Ar.

⁹ What hym were do beste

Ar.

"Now¹ he beþ al on ywar, heo wollep y swike by daye,
 "þer fore² y ne rede in no maner þis nede lengor delaye.
 "We schul hem habbe now for nogt, y ne rede no lengor
 abyde,

"For he beþ naked & on ywar,³ & to sprad wyde.
 þis consel was wel yherd, heo hulde þer to echon:⁴
 Al by nygte he wende forþ, and sogte out here fon.
 Some heo fonde ligge⁵ slepe, heo demayde hem anon.

Capitulum
Octave.

⁶ Some hem wolde arme, ac wyle nadde he non.
 So þat heo slow þere a þousant and mo,
 And nome⁷ Octe and Eose, þat wrohte al 1 þe wo,⁸
 And dude hem at London in pryson, & þat was rewþe sore
 þat heo nadde hem y slawe, for sorw þei dude get more.

⁹ AT þe fest of Estre þo kyng sende ys sonde,
 þat heo comen alle to London þe hey men of þis londe,
 And þe¹⁰ leuedys al so¹¹ god," to ys noble fest wyde,
 For he¹² schulde crowne bere, for þe hye tyde.
 Alle þe noble men of þis lond to þe noble fest come,
 And heore wyues & heore dogtren with hem mony nome.
 þis fest was noble ynow, and¹³ nobliche y do;
 For mony was þe faire ledy, þat y come was þerto.

¹ Hii beth an vnywar, hii
 wole y swyke Ar. ² Y rede
 in no wise this thyng lengour
 Ar. ³ And y sprad a wyde
 Ar. ⁴ A slepe, Ar. ⁵ And
 some wolde haue armede hem,
 but tyme hadde the non Ar.
⁶ Octa and Osa, Ar. ⁷ This

wo, Ar. ⁸ At Ester the kyng
 made a feste, & sende a boute
 his sonde, That to London
 sholde come alle the hegh men
 of the londe, Ar. ⁹ Ladyes
 Ar. ¹⁰ Deest Ar. ¹¹ Wolde
 Ar. ¹² Nobelly Ar.

Ygerne,

Ygerne, Gorloys wyf, was fairest of echon,
 þat was contasse of Cornewail, ¹ for" so fair nas þer non.
 þe kyng by huld hire faste y now, & ys herte on hire caste,
 And þogte, þay heo were ² wyf, to do folye atte laste.
 He made ³ hire semblant fair y now, to non oþer so gret.
 þe erl ⁴ nas not þer with y payed, þo he yt vnder get.
 Aftur mete he nom ys wyf myd ⁵ stordy med y now,
 And, with oute leue of þe kyng, to ys contrei drow.
 þe kyng sende to hym þo, to by leue al nygt,
 For he moste of gret consel habbe som insygt,
⁶ þat was for nogt. Nolde he nogt þe kyng sende get ys sonde.
 þat he by leuede at ⁷ ys" parlemente, for nede of þe londe.
⁸ þo kyng was, þo he nolde nogt, anguyssous & wroþ.
 For ⁹ despyte he wolde ¹⁰ a wreke be he swor ys oþ,
 Bute he come to amendement. Ys power atte laste
 He garked, and wende forþ to Cornewail faste.
 Gorloys ys casteles a store al a boutte.
 In a strong castel he dude ys wyf, for of hire was al ys
 doute.

¹ Deest Ar. ² A wif, Ar.

³ To hure semblant fair, to non Ar. ⁴ Was nought a

paid ther with, tho he Ar.

⁵ Stourdy mod Ar. ⁶ But

al was nought. The kyng

eftsone sende a yen his sonde

Ar. ⁷ Deest Ar. ⁸ The kyng

was, tho he wolde nought,

Ar. ⁹ That despit Ar.

¹⁰ Be a wreke, & that he swor

his oth. And but he wolde

do his wille, he wolde hym a
 gaste. So that in to Corne-
 waille he greithed his ost
 faste. In a castel of that cost,
 me cluped Tyntagel, The erl
 let putte his wif that stored
 was ful wel. And in anothur
 hym self he was, for he wolde
 nought, Yf cas come hit were
 wonne, bothe to dethe be
 brought Ar.

In anoþer hym self he was, for he nolde nogt,
 gef cas come, þat heo were boþe to deþe y broȝt."
 þe castel, þat þe erl inne was, þe kyng by segede faste,
 For ² he myȝte ys gynnes for schame to þe oþer caste.
² þe he was þer sene nyȝt, and ³ he¹¹ spedde nogt,
 Igerne þe contesse so muche was in ys þoȝt,
⁴ þat he nuste non oþer wyt, ne he ne myȝte for schame
 Telle yt bute a pryue knyȝt, Ulfyn was ys name,
 þat he truste mest to. And þo þe knyȝt herde þis,
 "Syre," he seide, "⁵ y ne can wyte, wat red here of ys.
 "For þe castel ys so strong, þat þe lady ys inne,
 "⁶ For ich wene al þe lond ne schulde yt myd strengþe wynne.
 "For þe se geþ al aboute, ⁷ bute entre on þer nys,
 "And þat ys vp ⁸ on harde roches, & so narw wei it ys,
 "þat þer may go bote on & on, þat þre men with inne
 "Myȝte sle al þe lond, er heo come þer inne.
 "And nogt for þan, gef Merlyn at þi conseil were,
 "gef ⁹ any myȝte, he couþe þe best red þe lere.
 Merlyn was ¹⁰ sone of send, yseid yt was hym ¹¹ sone,
 þat he schulde þe beste red segge, wat were to done.
 Merlyn was sory ynow for þe kyng's folye,
 And napeles, "Sire kyng," he seide, "¹² here mot to maistrie.

¹ F. he ne myȝhte. *Et tamen particula negativa deest etiam in Ar.* ² Tho Ar. ³ Deest Ar. ⁴ That almost he loste his witt, ac yut he ne dorste for shame Telle hyt but to a pryue Ar. ⁵ Y can no red, what vs to don is Ar. ⁶ That y wene al this lond hym ne

sholde a wynne Ar. ⁷ But on entre ther is, Ar. ⁸ An harde roche, & so narw ywis, Ar. ⁹ Eny man couth or myȝhte, he wolde the best lere Ar. ¹⁰ Fulsone Ar. ¹¹ Fulsone, Ar. ¹² Her to by houeth maistrie Ar.

" þe

" þe erl haþ twey men hym next, ¹ Brygthoel & Jordan.
 " Ich wol ² make þi self, gef þou wolt, þoru art þat y can,
 " ³ Habbe al þo fourme of þe erl, as þou were rygt he,
 " And Olfyn as Jordan, and as Brithoel me.
 þis art was al ⁴ clene y do, þat al ⁵ changet he were.
 Heo þre in þe oþeres forme, ⁶ þe selue at yt were.
 Ageyn euen ⁷ he wende forþ, ⁸ nuste nomon þat cas.
 To þe castel heo come rygt as yt euene was.
 þe porter y se ys lord come, & ⁹ ys meste priuey twei,
 With god herte he lette ys lord in, & ys men beye."
 þe contas was glad y now, þo hire lord to hire com,
 And eyþer oþer in here armes myd gret joye nom.
 þo heo to bedde com, þat so longe a two were,
 With hem was so gret delyt, þat bitwene hem þere
 Bi gete was þe beste body, þat euer was in þis londe,
 Kyng Arthure þe noble mon, þat euer worþ vnderstonde.
 þo þe kynges men nuste amorwe, wer he was bi come,
 Heo ferde as wodemen, and wende he were ynome.
¹⁰ Heo a saileden þe castel, as yt schulde adoun a non.
 Heo, þat with inne were, ¹¹ garkede hem echon,
 And smyte out ¹² in a fole wille, & fogte myd here fon:
 So þat þe erl was y slawe, & of ys men mony on,

Occisio
Gorlois.

¹ Bryghtol *Ar.* *Britahel*
Galfr. Mon.

² The make, if
thu wolt, *Ar.*

³ Haue the
fourme *Ar.*

⁴ Sone *Ar.*

⁵ Changed hii *Ar.*

⁶ Hem self
as hit were *Ar.*

⁷ Hii *Ar.*

⁸ Ne wiste no man this cas

Ar. ⁹ His moste priuees

beye, Als hym thought, and

let hem yn, & his seriauntz

tweye *Ar.*

¹⁰ They assail-

ede the castel egrely, as he

shold doun anon *Ar.*

¹¹ Grei-

thed *Ar.*

¹² With a full *Ar.*

And þe castel was y nome, & þe folk to sprad pere,
 get, þo þei hadde al ydo, heo ne fonde not þe kyng þere.
 þe ¹ tyþing to þe ² compas sone was ³ y nome,
 þat hire lord was y slawe, and þe castel y nome.
 Ac ⁴ þo þe messinger ⁵ hym sey þe erl, as hym þogte,
 þat he hadde so foule ⁶ ylow, ful sore hym of þogte.
 þe contasse made some del deol, ⁷ for no soþnesse heo nuste.
 þe kyng, ⁸ for to glade here, bi clupte hire and custe.
 “ Dame,” he seide, “ ⁹ no sixt þou wel, þat les yt ys al þis ?
 “ Ne wost þou wel ich am olyue? Ich wole þe segge how it ys.
 “ Out of þe castel ¹⁰ stilleliche ych wende al in priuete,
 “ þat none of myne men yt ¹¹ nuste, for to speke with þe.
 “ And þo heo myste me to day, and nuste wer ich was,
 “ ¹² Heo ferden rigt as gydie men, myd wam no red nas,
 “ And fogte with þe folk ¹³ with oute, & habbeþ in þis manere
 “ ¹⁴ Y lore þe castel & hem selue, ac wel þou wost y am here.

¹ Tydyng *Ar.* ² *L. contas.*
Nam countesse in Ar. ³ *Re-*
ctius, y come, cum Ar. ⁴ *Sed*
cum regem in specie consulis
juxta eam residere inspexis-
sent [nunciū,] erubescences
admirabantur ipsum, quem in
obsidione interfectum deseru-
erant, ita incolumem præve-
nisse Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Y seigh the
 Erl right, as hym thought, *Ar.*
⁶ Y lowe, sore hit hym of
 thought, *Ar.* ⁷ But yut forsothe
 heo nuste *Ar.* ⁸ Thenne, to
 glady hure, clupte hure ofte &
 kuste *Ar.* ⁹ Ne seist though
 well, that fals hit is al this? Ne

seist though well y am a lyue?
 Y woll telle hough hit is *Ar.*
Potest tamen ne idem quod now
hinc significare, quo sensu plena
distinctione, non interrogandi
nota, est utendum, id quod di-
cendum etiam est de no in tex-
tu, quod idem atque now va-
lere queat. ¹⁰ Priuely *Ar.*
¹¹ Wiste, to speke a word with
 the. And whanne hii faillede
 of me to day. *Ar.* ¹² Hii ferde
 y wot as gidy men, with wham
 no red nas, *Ar.* ¹³ Ther oute,
 and haueth *Ar.* ¹⁴ I lost the
 castel & hem self, but y am
 with the here *Ar.*

“ Ac

" Ac for my castel, þat ys ylore, sory ich am y now,
 " And for myn men, þat þe kyng and ys power slog.
 " Ac ¹ my power is now to lute, þer fore y drede sore,
 " Leste þe kyng ² vs nyme here, & sorwe þat we were more.
 " þer fore ich wole, how so yt be, wende agen þe kyng,
 " And make ³ my pays with hym, ar he vs to schame ⁴ vs^{ll}
 brynge.

Forþ he wende, & het ys men, ⁵ þat gef þe kyng come,
 þat þei schulde hym þe castel gelde, ar he with strengþe it
 nome.

þo he come toward ys men, ys owne forme he nom,
 And leuede þe erle's fourme, ⁶ & þe kyng Uter by com.
 Sore hym of þogte þe erle's deþ, ac in oþer half he fonde
 Joye in hys herte, for þe contasse of spoushed was vnbonde.
 þo he hadde þat he wolde, and payسد with ys fon,
 To þe contasse he wende agen, me let hym in a non.
 Wat halt it to telle longe? bute heo were seþþe at on,
 In gret loue longe y now, wan yt nolde oþer gon;
 And hadde to gedere þis noble sone, þat in þo world ys pere
 nas,
 þe kyng Arture, and a dogter, Anne hire name was.

¹ Oure power ys now lyte,

Ar. ² Her ynne vs nyme,
 that were sorwe more *Ar.*

³ Ferst my pees with hym,

Ar. ⁴ Recte omittit *Ar.* ⁵ Yf
 that the *Ar.* ⁶ And kyng
 a ye by cam *Ar.*

¹ OCTE and Eose, þis luper Saxones twey,
 In prison were at London, as ich gou tolde, beye.
 Myd here wardeynes þei spekon, so þat þei boþ y wys
 Flowe into ² Germaine, þat in Alimayne ys,
 And grete power gaderede of Saxones þer.
 get it hadde beter ³ y bo, þat me hadde y slawe hem er.
 In Scotlond heo ariuede, and ⁴ werreden faste,
 And barnde & slow to gronde, & townes a doun caste.
 þe kyng lay þo sore syk, heo were glad for þat cas.
 An erl þer was of Leycetre, Lot ys name was,
 þat ⁵ strong knygt was & god, þe kyng hym by tok ys mygt,
 And þe power of þis lond, ⁶ with þe heþe men to fygte.
 Also ys doȝter Anne he gif hym to ⁷ hys" wyue.
 þis noble ⁸ erl with þe Britones ageyn ys fōn wente bilue,
 And fagt, and slow ⁹ faste, and þe heþene ¹⁰ al so god.
 Ac napeles þe heþene folk fastor a gen stod.
 For þe Brutones nolde for prude aftur þe erl do.
 For he nas not kyng, & þer fore þe worse hem ¹¹ com to.
 þo þe tīping com to þe kyng, þat ¹² heo so febliche spedde,
 He was so sori and so wroþ, þat he ney awedde.

¹ Octa and Osa, the luthere
 Saxones tweye, *Ar.* ² Ger-
 manie *Ar.* ³ Y be, they hadde
 be queld ere. *Ar.* ⁴ Werrede
 swithe faste, *Ar.* ⁵ Stale-
 worth man was & good, the
 kyng toke hym his myght,
Ar. ⁶ With hethene men *Ar.*
⁷ Deest *Ar.* ⁸ Erl a yenst the

Saxones wende forth as blyue,
Ar. ⁹ Staleworthly, and
Ar. ¹⁰ Also good. For the
 hethene men strengore euer
 with stood. The Brutones
 eke for pruyte nought for the
 Erl do *Ar.* ¹¹ Cam to *Ar.*
¹² Hū *Ar.*

Bi fore hym he lette brynge ys men, & bi gan hem faste blame,
þat heo for heore prude broȝte þis lond to schame.

þider he seide he wolde hym self, þaȝ he ne myȝte on fote, go,
ȝef any horsbere wolde hym bere, to wreke hym of ys fo.

Myd god wille he wende forþ in an horse bere,

¹ And ys folc forþ with hym, þat þe balder for hym were.

þe Saxones were so prowde, þat þe kyng com so,

þat ² vnneþe heo wolde" armes on hem do.

For heo seide, it were schame, þat we y armed were.

³ Nys he more þan half ded y lad in a bere?

þe kyng ⁴ sette vp ys herte hye, & ordeyned ys men faste.

þe Saxones ⁵ he asailede, and to gronde caste.

So þat sone dayes hem of ⁶ þoȝte here prute,

þat heo of þe noble mon þe kyng tolde so ⁷ lute.

For þer was ⁸ Otte y slawe, and ys cosyn Oese al so,

And so yt hadde be beter, þat me hadde er y do.

þe Saxones, þat myȝte fle, bi gonne to fle faste.

þus ⁹ þe same dede kyng couþe hem agaste.

"¹⁰ Lo," he seide, "þei clepude me sam ded kyng some,

" And ȝet ich habbe leuer sam ded hem ouercome,

" þan hol and sond be ouercome; and leuer al so me ys

" For to dye myd honour, þan ¹¹ libbe in schame y wys.

Occisio
Octæ.

¹ The folk, that wende
forth with hym, the bolder for
hym were *Ar.* ² Unnethe for
hure prute hii wolde *Ar.*

³ He is more than *Ar.* ⁴ His
herte sett an hygh, & ordenyd
his folk faste *Ar.* ⁵ Hii asail-
lede, and slough to gronde
faste *Ar.* ⁶ Thought al hure

gret pruyte, That hii of the
noble man *Ar.* ⁷ Luyte *Ar.*

⁸ Octa y slawe, and Osa also,
Ar. ⁹ The half dede *Ar.* *Se-*

mimortuus Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ "Lo
" half dede kyng," he sede,
" ye clupeth me somme, Yut
" haue y leuer half dede hem
" ouercome, *Ar.* ¹¹ Lyue, *Ar.*

¹ þe

¹ þe Saxones ² were þo ouercome, ac heo ne leuede zet nogt
Heore schrewede dede, ac to wroþe hele wer heo to deþe y
brogt.

For heore ost euer wax hem com euer mo and mo.

Boþe bi Est and bi Norþ þei dude ³ muchel wo.

þe kyng wolde agen hem wende, ac he no moste for ys conseil.

For þe ⁴ feblor wel he was for þe oþer tranail.

þe Saxones hem hadde ymad in þis lond ywys

Kynges in þre ⁵ studes, þat al to on y comen ys.

Hengist ⁶ was first kyng of ⁷ Keng, & Elle in Souþsex,

And seþþe last was Certyk kyng of Westsex.

For he and Kenryk ys sone come vp at garnemouþe,

And seþþe a duk, þat hatte Port, com vp at Portesimowþe.

Yt was as ⁸ in gere of grace þat God was bore, ich wene,

þat Certik com first, four hundred zer & four score & tene.

Kyng he was of West sex, and ys ofspryng al so,

And atte laste þilke kynde al þe oþer wan þer to.

For Port, þike grete duk, com vp here by Souþe,

Me clepuþ ⁹ yt," þer he first com vp, aftur hym Portes-
mowþe.

Primi re-
ges Saxo-
num.

¹ The Saxones tho were
ouercome, that hii by left hit
nought. Hure sherewed herte
hem wrother hele to deth for-
soth brought. Afterwar eft
the Saxones ost wax euer mo
and mo *Ar.* ² *Devicti autem*
Saxones, non idcirco à mali-
tia sua destiterunt, sed aqui-

lonares provincias ingressi,
populos incessanter infesta-
bant Galfr. Mon. ³ Gret *Ar.*
⁴ Feblor he was tho for his
erst travayll *Ar.* ⁵ Stedes,
that come to on now is *Ar.*
⁶ Furst was kyng in Kent,
and Elle *Ar.* ⁷ Sic. ⁸ In
the yer *Ar.* ⁹ Deest *Ar.*

þus

þus were ¹ heo" in werre and ² wo ymenged þe Saxones,
Som tyme aboue ³ &" some tyme by neþe, ⁴ here myd þe
Britones.

Ac al aboue ⁵ neuere hii nere ar aftur þe kyng Arture.

⁶ Ac suppe hii wonne al clene out, as ge solle here aftur hure.

Uter, þe gode kynge, (of ⁷ wan we speke by vore,)

⁸ Was feble after þat he was in þe hors bere y bore,

þat he moste vor feblesse nede" holde hym stýlle,

⁹ þer vore þe luper Saxons ¹⁰ so muche adde her wýlle.

¹¹ And gute þo hyy ne mygte hym se, ¹² hyy þogte wyt trayson

In some manere hym brynge of lýue, oþer wyþ poyson.

Hii sende her feble messagers in pouere monne wede,

þat at doles in þe court her mete myd oþere bede.

Hii aspyed in þe court ouer al of þynges alle,

So þat hyi vnder gete ¹³ an welle, ney þe halle,

Of wat þe kyng ofte dronc. vor he ne dronc in such cas

Lutyl oþer þyng bote þere of, vor þe wadyr so cold was.

Wanne he dronc ekyn wyn, þeramong yt was ydo.

And me made metes in þe court myd þulke water al so.

Deest Ar. ²In wo men-
ged *Ar.* ³*Deest Ar.* ⁴A-

mong the *Ar.* ⁵Where hii

neuere er after *Ar.* ⁶But

after hym hii wonne al clene,

as ye shul after hure *Ar.*

⁷Wham *Ar.* ⁸Gan faste for

to feble an horse beere y bore,

So that he moste for feblesse

nedes *Ar.* ⁹Ther fore *Ar.*

¹⁰To muche *Ar.* ¹¹yut

(*omisso* and) tho they ne *Ar.*

¹²Hii thoughte in treson For

to brynge hym to deth with
som maner poyson. Hii sende

fele messageres in poure men-

nes wede, *Ar.* ¹³A well,

negh the kynge's halle, Of

which the kyng ofte dronc.

For in this ilke cas Litel

othur thyng he dronc, but

water that cold was. Whanne

he dronc also any wyne, ther

on hit was y do, And mete

me made in the court of thulk

welle also *Ar.*

þo þe traytors yt vnder gete, hii ¹ en venymede wý, ynne
 þe welle aboute in eche syde ² myd her luþer gynne.
 þat þe water, þat þerof com, poýson was ³ wel strong.
 þe kyng was sone apoýsond, ⁴ þo he þerof dronc,
 An mo þan an hondred of hys men, ar me wyste were of yt com.
 Muche ssame were hii wurþe, þat doþ such ⁵ suyke dom.
 Sop hym sede Merlyn er, þat he solde þoru puýson deye.
 þe chere men of lond, þo hii ded hym yseye,
 Deol & sorwe hii made ynou, ac þo þer nas oþer red,
 Hii let hym beburye by ys broþer, as he hym sulf bede,
⁶ Atte mynýstre of Ambýsbure, at Stonheng ywys.
 Wel agte ⁷ þat he be wurþe stude, þat such sepulture ys.

ARTURE, ⁸ Uter sone, (of wan we tolde bý uore,)
 Ye abbyth y hurd hou he was bygete & ybore.
 þo þýs kyng was þus ded, þe lieye men alle come
 Of þe lond to ⁹ Cýlýcestre, and conseyl þerof nome
 Vor to make hem a kyng. ¹⁰ Vor nede hom drof þerto.
 Vor the Saxons wuste, þat þe kýng was ded so,

¹ *Fontem namque aggressi sunt nephandi proditores, ipsumque affecerunt veneno, ita ut manans aqua tota corrumpetur* Galfr. Mon. ² With hure enuonymouse gynne *Ar.*
³ Full *Ar.* ⁴ Whan he *Ar.* ⁵ Swikeldom. So hym seyde Merlyn er he sholde thurgh poýson deye. The hegh men of the lond, tho hii his deth yseye, *Ar.* ⁶ By side the toun

of Ambresbury, at Stonhenge y wis *Ar.* ⁷ That be a worthi stede, ther such sepulture is *Ar.* ⁸ Uthere's sone, (of wham) *Ar.* ⁹ Cilchestre *Ar.* ¹⁰ *Urgebat enim eos necessitas. quia, audito prædicti regis obitu, Saxones concives suos ex Germania invitaverunt, & duce Colgrino ipsos exterminare nitebantur* Galfr. Mon.

Hii sende uorthe to Aylmayne after more poer blyue,
 And þogte þys Brutons al clene of londe dryue.
 So þat hii adde ywonne al clene þat Norþ londe,
 Fram Humber to Cataneys, & adde al in her honde.
 Artur was þo zong mon of vyftene gere vnnepē,
 And gut al þat londe made¹ hym, after ys fader's depe,
 And² began suon eke er such man vorto be,
 þat menessolde in none londe ys per nour yse.
 So large he was & so hende, &³ al^{ll} so de bonere;
 So hardy and so gentyl, and of so vayr manere.
⁴ þo so muche folc to hym come, ⁵ of kynztys zong & olde,
 þat he⁶ nadde nogt wel ware wyth such meyne up to holde.
 Ac⁷ ys herte was euere god, zong þey he were,
⁸ Vor he þogte of þe Saxons ys spence vp arere.
 He bygan þo wel sone to arere ys baner.
 Vor ys prowesse he adde sone gret folc and poer.
 He wende toward Euerwyk⁹ myd vayr¹⁰ copanye y nou.
 þo þe Saxons hyt vnder gete, þat he þuderward drou,
 Of Scottes, and of Pycars, and of hym sulue hii nome,
 Gret poer y nou and strong, and agen hym come.

¹ Subintellige, kyng. ²

Thenne bygan such a man
 to be, That me myghte in
 non londe no whar his per se

Ar. ³ Deest Ar. ⁴ And so

Ar. ⁵ Of yonge and of olde,

Ar. ⁶ Hadde vnnethe whar-
 with such a meyne holde Ar.

⁷ Arthurus ergo, quia in illo

*probitas largitatem comitaba-
 tur, statuit Saxones inquietare,
 ut eorum opibus, quæ ei fa-
 mulabatur, ditaret familiam*
 Galfr. Mon. ⁸ And euere he
 thoghte of the Saxones his dis-
 penses rere Ar. ⁹ With gret
 power y nogh Ar. ¹⁰ Sic.

¹ per

¹ þer was slagt in eyþer half, none mercy þer nas.
 Ac kyng Arture atte laste (as God wolde) aboue was,
 And sywede into Euerwýk ² Colgrym her cheunteýn,
 And hym, þo he was wyþýnne, byseged ³ myd al ýs many.
 Baldulf, Colgryme's broþer, syx þousend men myd him nom,
 And, ýs broþer vorto help, toward Euerwýk com.
⁴ So he was fram Euerwyk aboute ⁵ an ten myle,
 He ⁶ at stunte, & þogte, þat he wolde myd gyle
 Up þe kyng Arture come anonýwar by nýgte,
 And so him and al ýs folc ssende, gyf he mytte.
 þe kyng was ⁷ þerof ýwar, he þogte to do bote.
 Myd syx hondred kyngtes, & ⁸ þre þousend men ⁹ auote,
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, agen hym he sende,
¹⁰ þat agen hym come anonýware, by aweý þat he wende,
 And slou and vere woundedede, and monye brogte to deþe,
 So þat þýs ¹¹ Baldulf of scapede alyue vnnede.
 þe wýle ¹² þat' þe kyng Arture biseged Euerwyk,
 Me tolde hym of a gret duc, ¹³ þat het Theldryk,
 þat out of Alemaýne com ¹⁴ in to Scotlonde so
¹⁵ Myd syx hondred syppuol kyngtys, & al þe atyl þer to.

¹ Ther was slaughter gret
 y nogh, and mercy lite ther
 was *Ar.* ² Colgrýn *Ar.*
³ With his myght and mayn.
 Bathulf Colgryne's brother,
Ar. ⁴ And tho he was *Ar.*
⁵ A *Ar.* ⁶ Astynte, *Ar.* ⁷ Her
 of y war, and thoghte her of
 do bote. With six *Ar.* ⁸ Foure
Ar. *Sed ut Codex noster Har-*
leyanus in Galfr. Mon. A fote,

Ar. ¹⁰ An vn ywar to falle
 on hym, by weye as hii wende.
 The Erl brak vp his bussh-
 ment, & broghte manyon to
 dethe *Ar.* ¹¹ Ilke Bathulf
 ascapede a lyue vnnethe *Ar.*
¹² *Deest Ar.* ¹³ Me clupede
 Cheldyrk, *Ar.* ¹⁴ To Scot-
 londe tho *Ar.* ¹⁵ With VI.
 hundred shupfull of men, and
 hure atyr ther to. That was
 power

þere was so gret poyr in to an londe y lad.
 þo þe kyngy's conseyl wuste þys, hyt was som dele adrad.
 þe kyng Arture hii radde anon, to London vorte wende,
 To nyme þer ys conseyl, wuch were best gende,
 Leste such poer come vp hym, and him ssende.
 þe kyng dude aftur her rede, and to Londone wende.
 þere he hulde ys Parlement, wat were best to done.
¹ þo ² þat he and ys conseyl at one red were sone.
³ þo þat to þe lasse Brutayne þe kyng sone sende
 To Howwel, kyng of þe lond, þat he to hym wende
 To helpe hym in such nede, and that hym vnderstode
 þat kunde yt wolde þat he dude, vor hii were of one blode.
 þe kyng Arture's syster's sone þys kyng Howwel was,
⁴ And þe kyngys sone of lasse Brytaine, & none nerer kunde
 þer nas.
 þo þe messenger wyþ þe tydyng to kyng Howwel com,
 Hys conseyl wel hastelyche in such nede he nome,
 Vor to helpe ys neuu, and ys kynedom.
⁶ Myd vyftene þousend kynztes into þys londe he com.

power . wonder gret to on
 londe y ladde. Tho the kyng
 hurde this, he was somdel a
 dradde. The kyng's counsail
 radde hym a non, to London
 forto wende, To counsaile
 hogh he myght best his ene-
 myes a shende *Ar.*

¹ So that *Ar.* ² *Communi tan-*
dem assensu illato, mittuntur
Armoricam nuncii ad regem

Hoëlum, qui ei calamitatem
Britanniæ notificarent. Erat
autem Hoëlus filius sororis
Arthuri, ex Budicio, rege Ar-
moriorum Britonum, gene-
ratus Galfr. Mon. ³ To the
 lasse Brutayne forto sende sone
Ar. ⁴ The kynredene of hem
 no ferther nas *Ar.* ⁵ Kynnes-
 man, *Ar.* ⁶ With XV. thou-
 send of men to this *Ar.*

At Souþhamtone ¹ he com vp, & þo hyi to gadere come
 þys tueye kyngys hii custe hem, & hii clupte hem ylome.
 þo hii adde her folc y set, ² as rygt was in such cas,
 Vorþward toward Lyncolne hii wende ³ myd god pas.
 þere hii come & mette hym, & strong batayle smyte þere,
 So þat moo þan sýx þousend of þe Saxon aslawe were,
 Wat aslawe wat adrent, so þat atte laste,
 þo ⁴ hii ne seye oþer won, hii gonne to fle vaste
 In to a wode þer by syde: and ⁵ þo hii þer in come,
 Hem þogte hii were sýkere ynou, & toke þe lasse gome.
 þe kyng sýwede ⁶ after, and býseged hem aboute.
⁷ Ac" among þe ⁸ tren hii wuste hem, þat hii nadde nodoute."
 þo þe kyng Arture ysey, þat hii nolde out come,
 A boutte þe wode he let fulle þe grete tren sone,
 And leyde ech vpe oþer aboute in ech ende,
 þat yt was, as yt were, awal þat hii ne solde oute wende.
 þre ⁹ dawes & þre nygt mete les hii wuste hem so,
 þat hii nuste hou on take, ne wat vor hunger do.
 þe kyng" Arture hii býsozte mercy ¹⁰ atte ende,
 þat he granted hem in pes out of ys londe wende,

¹ This kynges tweýne furst
 to gedre come. Aither othur
 clippe gan, and kuste to
 gedre y lome *Ar.* ² As hit
 fel in such *Ar.* ³ A ful good
 pas. The Brutones and the
 Saxones smýte a gret ba-
 taille there, So that sixty
 thousand [*sed, sex milia in*
Galfr. Mon.] Saxones ther y
 slawe were, And fele ther of

were a dreýnt, so *Ar.* ⁴ Hii
 seygh non othur won, *Ar.* ⁵
 Whenne *Ar.* ⁶ After faste, and
Ar. ⁷ Deest *Ar.* ⁸ Trees hii
 kepte hem longe, for al Ar-
 thure's route *Ar.* ⁹ Dayes
 & thre nyght hii were y kepte
 so, That hii nuste for hungre
 What hii myghte do. Of
 kyng *Ar.* ¹⁰ Atten ende, *Ar.*

An hii granted hym al her god, þat hii hyder ladde,
 Gold and seluer and tresour, al clene þat hii adde.
 Hii ¹ byhete hym eke ech ger, to bere hym truage
 Out of her londe, and þerto ² take hym god ostage.
 þe kyng þoru ys conseyll ³ encented wel her to,
 An god ostage of nom, þe truage vor to do;
 And atel al her god, and let him al bar wende.
 And gut hym of þogte sone, þat he was hem so hende.
 Myd her gold & seluer & myd her tresour he mygte
 Susteyny gode wyle hys ost vorto fygte.
 Ac gut þys lufere false men, in þe see þo hii come,
 Turnede agen to suykedome, and anoþer red nome.
 Atte hauene of Tottenas hii gonne ⁴ eft aryue,
 And dude hym alond, & rewede in Deuenysseyre blyue.
 And so uorþ in Somersete, ⁵ and ⁶ mucþe wo gonne do
 Al anone to Seuerne, and to Baþe ⁶ so,
 And bysegede þe ⁷ thoun, ac wyt þoute hii were.
 Vor þe kyng byuore was hii bygonne her werre þere.
 Vor þe kyng was toward Scotlond, & awreke hym þogte
 Of Scottes and of Pigars, þat euer vnele hym wroghte.

¹ *Promiserunt quoque, se daturus ei tributum ex Germania, obsidesque inde mansuros* Galfr. Mon. ² Make hym good *Ar.* ³ Assentede ther to, And ostage of hem nam truage to do. At helde hem & al hure good, & let hem bar wende *Ar.* ⁴ Up aryue, And come a londe, & robbede in Deuenesshire as blyue *Ar.*

Vol. I.

⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ Also, *Ar.*
⁷ Toun, but out hii holde were. The kyng fer by Northe was forto werry there. Of Scottes & of Picardz a wreke hym he thoghte, That euermore to his lond mucþe shame wroghte. The tydyng to hym com of thes Saxones tho, He wiste neuere hoder turne so wo was hym tho. Of Scottes *Ar.*

R

fo

þo þe tydýng to hým come of þe Saxons ¹ we,
 He nuste in weper ende turne, so vol he was of wo.
 Of þe Scottes" he wolde awreke be, gýf tyme hym þerto geue,
 Ac he ² nolde vor non þyng þe Saxons byleue.
³ Howwel, ys scýster sone, kýng of þe oþer Brutayne,
 Mest in ys herte was, vor angúysse to playne,
 (Vor he lay byuore sýk) þat he soldæ by leue hym þere,
 Laste þe Scottes hym dude ssame, oþer þat he ded were.
 He byleuyð hým poer ynou, and toward Somersete
 Wende toward þe Saxons, vor þat nolde he nogt lete."
 þo he come to Somersete, and þe Saxons sey,
 He houede, & spec to ys men þes wordes al an heý:
 " Vor ⁴ þys luper Saxons ⁵ abbyt gret dedeýn
 " Vorto holde me treuþe, gýf ých abbe ený mayn,
 " Ich chýlle treuþe holde to Jhesu Crist treuly (gýf ých may)
 " And þat blod of ýs kunde floc awreke gut to day."
 " Armeþ zou nou hastelyche, armeþ zou anon,
 " Vor we ssolle to day ⁶ myð God help ouercome vr fon.

¹ We *idem est quod Anglo-Sax. þa sive pæ, i. e. wo vel sorrow. Sed þo (ut reor) est reponendum è Cod. Ar. ut prius þo, when, posterius then signet.* ² Wolde for no thyng *Ar.* ³ But for Howel, his suster sone, kýng of lasse Brutayne, At Alclud sore sik lay, he was in gret payne, And that he moste nedely byleue hym tho there, Leste the Scottes dude hym shame, or elles that he dede were. He bileft a power

with hým, and toward Somersete He wende a yen the Saxones, he wolde hit noght for lete *Ar.* ⁴ These *Ar.* ⁵ Haueth of vs dedeýne, And haueth thus y broke hure oth, yf y haue myght and mayne, I make a vogh to Jhesu Christ, (to holde, yf y may,) The blood, that they haueth shad, to venge yut to day *Ar.* ⁶ Thurgh Gode's help ouercome oure fon. The kýng at the gynnyng let an hange anon

Ac þe kȳnng atte bygȳnnyg let hang echon
 Her ostages vor þe treson, he ne byleuede noȝt on.
 þo þȳs ¹ gode² folc ȝare was ² in to bataȳle ryde,
 Seyn Dubryc, þe archebyssop of Carleon, gan abyde,
 And wende ³ vp a lute hul amȳdde þȳs companye :
 “ ȝe Crystȳne men,” he seyde, “ of ⁴ so” noble seȳnore,
 “ þat beþ Gode’s owe lȳmȳs, þoru ȝoure Crystendom,
 “ ⁵ þenc he on God, þat vor vs deȳde, & on ⁶ þȳs kȳnedom.
 “ Fyȝteþ vor ȝure ⁷ kunde, and defendeþ ȝoure ryȝte.
 “ þencheþ þe nede of þe londe, & of ⁸ vr louerd” myȝte.
 “ And ȝyf enȳ of ȝou ys aslawe here in þȳs fyȝte
 “ To sauȳ ⁹ þe lond folc vor þe londe’s ryȝte,
 “ He syweþ purlyche God, þat ȝef ȳs owe lyf here,
 “ To sauȳ vs synneuol men fram þe deuele’s poer.
 “ And wo so here ys aslawe, ȳs deþ hym sal be
 “ In ¹⁰ lesnesse of al ȳs synnys, & ȳs soule ssalle fle
 “ And be ybroȝt byuore God, ar ¹¹ þat body be cold.
 He ¹² asouled al þȳs folc, þo he adde al þȳs ȳ told.
¹³ þat folc þoru ys prechyng so god wylle nom þere,
¹⁴ þat hem þoȝte echewȳle fyue, in bataȳle ar hii were.

anon Alle hure ostages, he
 lefte a lyue non *Ar.*

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² In bataille
 for to ryde, Therchebisshop
 Dobryght bade hem alle a-
 byde, *Ar.* ³ Upon a litel
 hulle among this *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest*
Ar. ⁵ Thenketh on God,
Ar. ⁶ His *Ar. sed rectius* þȳs.
⁷ Kynde blod, and also for
 your ryght *Ar.* ⁸ Our Lorde’s
Ar. ⁹ The Christene fey,

and his Lorde’s ryght, he
 syweth purly God, that yaf
Ar. ¹⁰ Forȳieuenge *Ar.*
¹¹ The body *Ar.* ¹² Asoil-
 ede *Ar.* ¹³ The people *Ar.*
¹⁴ That euery while hem
 thoghte ten, er hii were there.
 The kyng thanne let arme
 hym self in hauberk noble &
 riche. An helm of gold vpon
 his hed, nowher non hitt
 liche *Ar.*

þe ¹ kynng was aboue yarmed wyþ haubert noble & rýche,
 Wyþ helm of gold on ys heued, (nas nour hým ýlýche)
 þe fourme of a dragon þeron ² was ycast.
 Hys sseld, þat het Prydwen, was þanne ý honge wast
 Aboute ys ssoldren, and þeron ý peynt was and ýwort
 þe ýmage of our Lady, inwan was al ys þogt.
 Mýd ýs suerd he was ýgurd, þat ³ so'' strong was & kene,
 Calýbourne yt was ýcluped, ⁴ nas nour no such yc wene.
 In ys rýgt hond ýs lance he nom, þat ycluped was Ron,
 Long & gret ⁵ & strong ynou, hym ne mýgte atsytte non.
 He þogte al ⁶ on Jhesu Criste, and ýs men echon,
 Upe þe doune aboue Baþe hii ⁷ mytte mýd her fon.
 Hii smýte bataýle strong ý nou, þat al long day ýlaste.
 þe Saxons in her syde stode euere agen vaste.
 Mýche folk þer was ynou aslawe in eyþer syde.
 þo þe nygt vp hem come, þat hii ne mygte no leng abyde,
⁸ Up an toret of an ⁹ herre hulle þe Saxons wende þere,
 þat þe heye hulle to hým was a castel, as yt were.
 Amorage, þo yt day was, adoun eft hii alygte,
 And in bataýle strong ynou býgonne ef sone to fygte,

¹ *Ipse vero Arthurus, lorica,*
tanto rege digna, indutus, au-
ream galeam, simulachro dra-
conis insculptam, capiti adap-
tat Galfr. Mon. ² Was his crest.
 His shild, that het Pridewen,
 aboute his nekke he kest. A
 cros ther on was peynt, and
 on a corner An ymage of oure
 Lady on that sheld he ber.
 With his sweord *Ar.* ³ *Deest*

Ar. ⁴ Perlees as y wene *Ar.*
⁵ And poynted wel, myght
 hit of sitte non *Ar.* ⁶ In *Ar.*
⁷ Mette with *Ar.* ⁸ Up the
 cop of an hull the Saxones
 wende there, For to be re-
 fuyt to hem, and castel, as hit
 were. A morwe as sone as hit
 was day, doun hii a light, *Ar.*
⁹ *L.* heye.

And

And slowe vaste in eyþer half, þat reuþe yt was ynou.
 þo þe kyng Arture y sey, þat me so vaste ys men slou,
 Hys herte he gan vp arere, þat he nadde þe maystrye,
 And dude ys wylle ¹ al to God, & on ys moder Marie,
 And Calybourne, ys gode suerd, ² myd gode earnest adrou,
 And smot aboute ³ in euþer syde to grounde & hard ynou,
 And four hondred men, ar he reste, ys owe honde he slou,
 An syxtý and ten al so, þe asaut was somdel tou.
 And þer to nadde he oþer help, bote God & Seynte Marie,
 An Calybourne ys gode suerd, to do suche maystrye.
 þo ys men yseye þys, after vaste hii drowe,
 And to grounde aboute smýte, & þe Saxons vaste slowe.
 Colgrym, þat her mayster was, and ⁴ Baldulf, ys broþer,
 Aslawe were at þulke asaut, & also moný ⁵ a noþer.
 Vor moný þousend þere were aslawe, & Teldryc atte laste,
 Hys felawes þo he sey aslawe, býgan to fle vaste."
 þo þys batayle was ydo, to þe kyng com message,
 þat þe Scottes & ⁶ Pýgars dude hym gret out rage,
⁷ And syre Howwel ys neuue, kyng of þe oþer Brutannýe,
⁸ þat syk ⁹ day, as ych seyde er, byseged myd al her mayne

¹ Al on God, and his moder *Ar.* ² With ernyst vp he drogh, *Ar.* ³ In aither half to grounde and faste slogh. Foure hundred vnder his hond with his sweord gon deye, Thurgh the help of our Lord and his moder Marie. The kynge's men seigh this, & after hym faste drogh, *Ar.*

⁴ Bathulf *Ar.* ⁵ Anothur. Than thes men thus were slawe, Cheldrik atte laste, Tho he segh non other won, gan to fle faste *Ar.* ⁶ Picardes *Ar.* ⁷ And that Howel *Ar.* ⁸ That sik was, as I seyde er, by seged with hure mayne *Ar.* ⁹ Lege, lay,

þo þe kyng hurde þys, hym longede þuder sore,
¹ He ne myȝte þer leng abyde, þe Saxons to sywe more.
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, he ² býleuede þere
³ Myd ten þousend men ⁴ vorto sywe hem, þat of scaped were.
 The erl sywyde ⁵ myd ys men þe Saxons vaste ynou,
 And strong batayle smot, and ⁶ Teldryc þe prince slou,
 And ys compaynye þe mestedel, bote auewe atte nende
 Mercy hym cryde, þat hii moste in to her owe lond wende,
 And suore ⁷ & toke hym ostage, þat hii ne ssolde neuere ywys
 Thys lond ⁸ eft asayly, ne ssame don amys.
 þo þat þe folc of Saxons ⁹ namore hydyr ¹⁰ ne' come,
 þe wyle þe kyng Arture ¹¹ wuste þys kynedome.
 Cadour, erl of Cornwayle, þo he adde ydo al þys,
 To þe kyng ys louerd wende, to Scotlond ywys.
 þe kyng adde ¹² er' among þe Scottes ysturyd hym vol wel,
¹³ And delyuered of hym, or he come, ys neuere syre Howwel,
 And yslawe of hem monyon, so þat ¹⁴ in an yle
 Hii ¹⁵ of scapede atte laste ¹⁶ by uore mony amyle,
¹⁷ þet water geþ al aboute, and þer ynne eke beþ
¹⁸ Syxtý heye roches, as men þere yseþ.

¹ Ne myghte he ther no
 lengor byde, the Saxones to
 werry more *Ar.* ² By lefte
Ar. ³ With *Ar.* ⁴ To fol-
 we hem, that a scaped were
Ar. ⁵ With *Ar.* ⁶ Cheldrik
Ar. ⁷ And ostages yeue, hii
 sholde neuere y wis *Ar.* ⁸ A
 saily more, ne shame, ne do a
 mys. So that *Ar.* ⁹ No more

Ar. ¹⁰ Deest *Ar.* ¹¹ War-
 dede *Ar.* ¹² Deest *Ar.*
¹³ And remewed the sege, er he
 come, fro his cosyn Howel, *Ar.*
¹⁴ In to an *Ar.* ¹⁵ A sca-
 pede *Ar.* ¹⁶ Byfore hym ma-
 ny *Ar.* ¹⁷ The water by
 goth hit al *Ar.* ¹⁸ LX. roches
 in that ile, ho that cometh
 ther seth *Ar.*

þer

þer ynne noman ne wonyep, ac in eche roche þer ys
 In tyme of gere an ¹erne's nest, þat hii bredeþ in ywys.
 Ech ys in a roche hym sulf, vor hii ne mowe nogt ne be.
 Vor hem byhouep muche mete, & hii ne mowe nogt wel fle
 Vor feblesse of her brode, ac wan her bryddys ripe beþ,
 þere hii fyndeþ more mete, in londes aboute hii fleþ.
 þe kyng ²bylaþ þys Scottes ³þere myd al wo,
 þat þer deyde of hem vor hunger a þousend and mo.
 And gut nolde þe ssrewen to none pes go.
 Gyllam, kyng of ⁴her londe, to hem wende þo
 Wyth gret per in þe water, to helpe hym in þys cas."
 þo kyng Arture yt wuste, prest agen hem he was
 And slou of hem to grounde, so þat hii gonne with drawe,
 And hii, þat mygte come agen, alȳue were wel vawe.
 þo þe kyng hem adde afayted so, þat hyi ne kepte nanmore
 hym mete,
 gut he þogte asayty þe Scottes, ar he hem lete.
 He bysette hem vaste ynou, so þat atte laste þere
 þe byssopes and oper prelats, þat of londe were,
⁵ Some with grete processyon in gret anguysse and fere
 Wepynde byuore þe kyng, & her relykes myd hem bere,

¹ Egle's *Ar.* *At in marg.*
¹ Iles of Ernes *ab ead. manu, licet adjecerit manus admodum recens*, or Iles of Eagles.
Et quidem voci Eagles adstipulatur Galfr. Mon. ² Bisegede
Ar. ³ Ther and dude hem
 muche wo, So that of hem
 for hunger deide a thousand

& wel mo. And yit wolde
 noght the sherewes the
 kynge's wille do. The kyng
 of Irlond Gwillamour to
 Scotlond com that while
 With gret power by water,
 to helpe hem in this Ile *Ar.*
⁴ *L.* Irlonde. ⁵ *L.* come
cum Ar.

And oþer holȝ chȝrche þȝnges ¹ bare vorþe echon.
 Hȝȝ ² welle alle adoun eke býuore þe kyng anon,
 And bed hȝm, vor ȝs suete loue, þat deȝde on þe rode,
 þat he hadde reuþe of hem, & of ³ ȝs' soule vnderstode.
⁴ Wanne he adde þer býuore of hem ȝslawe ȝ nowe,
⁵ þat he soffrede þulke lybbe, þat he follȝche alle ne slowe;
 And þat he som hurne of þe londe grauntede hem þere,
 War ynne hii leuede, & euermo seruage hȝm bere.
 þe kyng, vor pȝte ⁶ herof, býgan to wepe sore,
 And nom of hem sȝkernesse, þat hii ne solde mȝs do nanmore,
 And graunted hem ⁷ annende lond, to wonȝe ynne in seruage,
 To bere ⁸ þerof hȝm and ȝs eueremor truage.
 Nou ⁹ were þer myd hȝm þre men, (þat of ryȝte kunde come
 Of kȝnges of þulke lond, ¹⁰ vorte Saxons hem bynome)
 Auncel, and Vryan, and Lot þe þrȝdde was,
 þat spousede þe kȝnge's ¹¹ suster, (ȝe abbȝþ ȝhurd þat cas,)
 And adde bý hȝre tueȝe sones, syre Wawen þe hende,
 þe oþer het Modred, þat þe kyng bytrayde ¹² atte nende.

¹ *Lege*, bare votte, *sive*, *ut*
in Ar. barfot. *Nam nudis pe-*
dibus in Galfr. Mon. ² Felle
Ar. ³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ And suthe
 he *Ar.* ⁵ A fewe, that leste, hii
 prayde hym saue, and holde
 hem al his owe. And that
 som heorne of the lond he
 wolde hem graunte there,
 Wher inne hii myghte lyue,
 and euere aftur truage hym
 bere *Ar.* ⁶ Hadde reuthe, he
 segh hem wepe so sore *Ar.*
aliter atque Galfr. Mon. ⁷ An

ende of lond, to lyue inne in
 seruage, *Ar.* ⁸ Ther fore
 hym *Ar.* ⁹ *Aderant ibi tres*
fratres, regali prosapia orti,
Loth videlicet, atque Urianus,
nec non Auguselus, qui ante-
quam Saxones prævaluissent
principatum illarum partium
habuerant Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ Fort
 Saxones it hem by nome) Aguis-
 sel, & Urien, and Loth *Ar.*
¹¹ Anne *addit Ar.* ¹² After at-
 ten ende *Ar.*

þe kyng Arture þys þre men kynges made þere

¹ Ech of ȝs rȳgte ertage, as her elderne were.

² Auncel kyng of pur Scotlond, and ³ Vryan ȝs broþer

⁴ Kyng of lond of Murȳfycens, vor he was ner þen anoþer,

Of þe contreye of ⁵ Ledeneseye Lot he made kȳng,

⁶ And of al contreye þat þerto vel, & þat was mucche þyng.

þo he adde al þys lond ȳbrogt and Scotlond al so

Al clene in rȳgte to ȝs wȳlle, anoþer he moste do.

He spousede a noble wȳf ⁷ Guerwar her name was

Of þe heȳe kunne of Rome, no vayror womman nas.

AS sone as Somer come, to Yrlond he gan wende,

Vor to afaytȳ þat lond, ⁸ & to wȳnne ech ende.

Gyllam, kyng of lond, ar he þuder com,

Volc, as ȳt were wyþoute noumbre, agen hym he nom.

Hii com ⁹ & ȳmette hem sone, & gret batayle hii smȳte,

Ac þe kyng Arture was aboue, as me maȳ wel ȳwȳte.

And þe kyng Gȳllam was ȳnome, and so al þat lond

¹⁰ By certȳ conuenant was in kyng Arture's hond.

¹¹ Fram ¹² þan he wende sone to þe lond of Ys lond,

And wan hȳt al clene to hym, and al þat he wond."

¹ Euery in his heritage

Ar. ² Anguissel *Ar.* ³ V-

rien *Ar.* ⁴ Kyng he made of

Moreff, for he was ner than

othur, *Ar.* ⁵ Liones Loth he

Ar. ⁶ With al the porte-

naunce ther to, and that was

gret a [*l.* a gret] thing *Ar.*

⁷ Gunnore *Ar.* ⁸ And wȳnne

in euery ende. Gwillamour,

kyng of that lond, *Ar.* ⁹ And

mette with hem sone, & gret

bataille smȳte, *Ar.* ¹⁰ By a-

cordement *Ar.* ¹¹ *Hæc duo*

carmina omittit Ar. ¹² *Subju-*

gatis itaque totius Hybernix

partibus, classem suam direxit

in Yslandiam, eamque debel-

lato sibi populo subjugavit

Galfr. Mon.

¹ So

¹ So ² such tythynge aboute com, as ech sende oþer sonde,
þat so noble man he was, þat ne myȝte no lond at stonde,
Doldam wende anon to hym, þat was kyng of Godlonde,
And ³ Gumyas, kyng of Orcadas, ys grace vorto fonde,
And bycome ys men, & byhete hym, to bere hym truage
Eche ȝer, and holde of hym and of hys in seruage.
⁴ Of þys Brytanye he was þo kyng, & adde also Scotlonde,
And ys londe and Orcadas vnder hym, and yr londe.
þo wynter was al ydo, in to þys londe he wende,
To brynge þys londe in god pes, and þe lawes amende.
Tuelf ȝer he byleuede þo here wyth nobleye y nou,
And ⁵ hexte men of mony londes aboute hym vaste drou.
⁶ And bygan to astrenghþy ys court, & to eche ys maynye;
And myd so gret plente holde ys hous, & myd so gret cortesy, e,
þat me ne myȝte ⁷ of so noble los man neuere vnderstonde.
And þat þer ⁸ nas þere aboute ⁹ kynȝt in none lond,
þat ¹ me tolde of eny þyng, bote he of sywte were
Of þe kyng Arture's hous, oþer som sygne ¹¹ þer of¹¹ bere,
Of robes oþer of armes, & þe god man was so hende,
þat he ¹² aueng vawe echon, þat to hym wolde wende.

¹ Kynges a boutte ech to o-
ther sende thanne hure sonde,
Of the dedes that he dude,
non myght hym a stonde.
Doldyn *Ar.* ² *Exinde divul-*
gato per ceteras insulas ru-
more, quod ei nulla provincia
resistere poterat, Doldanius,
rex Gotlandiæ, & Gunvasius,
rex Orcadum, ultro venerc,
promissoque vectigali subjec-
tionem fecerunt Galfr. Mon.

³ Gwynas *Ar.* ⁴ Thanne was he
of Brutayne kyng, & hadde al
Scotlonde, Godlonde and Or-
chadas vnder hym, and Irlonde
Ar. ⁵ Beste *Ar.* ⁶ He gan to
strengthi his lond, & encreste
his mayny; *Ar.* ⁷ Of such a
los no man vnderstonde *Ar.*
⁸ Was *Ar.* ⁹ Knyght *Ar.*
¹⁰ Men *Ar.* ¹¹ *Desunt Ar.*
¹² Faire vnderfenge alle, that
to hym *Ar.*

Bote

Bote to segge ssortlyche, þer ¹ nas ver ne ner,
 Of prowessse ² ne of cortesyē, in þe worl ys per.
 Hys los sprong so wyde sone of ys largesse,
 Of strengþe and of corteysye, and of ys prowessse,
 To þe verrost ende of þe world, þat such man nas nour non.
 So þat oþer grete kыnges doutēd hym echon
 Bygēde see in eche stude, and dradde ver and ner,
 þat he come and by nome her londes, oþer her poer.
³ Hii bygonne her heye tounes strengþy vaste aboute,
 Her castles & storys, þat hii mygte be ynne in doute.
 þo þys gode tydыng com to þys noble kыng Arture,
 Myd god herte he wolde such tydыng yhure.
 He þogte come by hem, & brynge hem somme to lure,
 And to ywnne gut al Europe, 3yf he mygte dure.
 þe þrydde del of al þe world Europe yclyped ys,
⁴ þat tylþ fram ver bygonde Rome to þe West worle's ende
 ywys.

Hym þogte he adde yrest ynou, ⁵ no leng he nolde abyde.
 Hys poer he let sumny, þat ysprad was wel wyde,

¹ Was non fer ne nere, *Ar.*

² And of courtaisye, *Ar.* ³ Hii

lete hure tounes strengthe

faste, for hii hadde gret doute,

By cause he myghte with

hym lede of knyghtes such a

route *Ar.* ⁴ That is bi hi-

dere the Grekissh see al Cri-

stendom y wis *Ar.* ⁵ He

wolde no lengor abide. He let

of sende his power, that spar-

puled was ful wide. And

whan that they al redy were,

thei went forth in hure weye,

And dude hem so in to the

see, and sutthe to Noreweye.

So fell, er thei thuder come,

the kyng of Noreweie dede

was, And Loth, Arthure's

othom, his heir was by cas,

And hadde ordeyned hym

ther to by fore his deth longe.

But the men *Ar.*

And greȳpede ȳs noble ost, and dude hȳm in þe weȳe,
 And dude hȳm so in to see, and vorst to Norþweȳe.
 Nou was þe kȳng of Norþweȳe ded þer bȳ uore bȳ cas,
 And Lot, þat was ȳs oþom, þe kȳnge's neuue was,
 And þe kȳng hȳm adde mad ȳs eȳr þer bȳuore longe;
 Ac þe men¹ of Norþeweȳe nolde vor prute hȳm¹ vnder uonge,
 Ac adde ȳmad anoþer man kȳng of þe londe,
 þat aȳen þe kȳng Arture hopede wel at stonde.
 Chȳld² Waweȳn, Lotȳs sone, þulke tȳme was
 Bote of tuelf ȳer, & þe pope of Rome bȳtake was
 To norȳs þoru þe kȳng Arture, & þulke tȳme ryȳt
 þe pope hȳm tok armes, & ȳs owe honde made hȳm³ kyngt.
⁴ As þe kyng Arture, as ȳch seyde, to Norweȳe com,
 þe kyng of londe aȳen hȳm þen weȳ sone nom
 Mȳd ȳs poer, and smȳte an batayle strong ynou,
 And ssedde blod in eȳþer half, and mucche folc me slou.
 Ac her poer of Norweȳe ydo was anon,
 þe kyng hȳm sulf was sone aslawe, & ⁵ ȳs men monȳon.
 þe Brutons hȳm sturedede þo, and slowe and barnde vaste,
 So þat hii wonne al clene Norþweȳe atte laste.
 þer after hii wonne Denemarch, vorto do seruage
 To þe kȳng Arture euermo, and to bere hȳm truage.
 He ⁶ made Lot ȳs oþom kyng of Norþweȳe,
 þer ⁷ after toward France hii dude h m in þe weȳe.

¹ A vonge *Ar.* ² *Erat tunc Walwanus, filius prædicti Loth, XII. annorum juvenis, obsequio Sulpicii papæ ab avunculo traditus, à quo arma recepit Galfr. Mon.* ³ *Knȳght Ar.* ⁴ *Whan the Ar.* ⁵ *His men negh*

echon Ar. ⁶ *Quibus subactis, cum Loth in regem Norguegiæ promovisset, navigavit Arthurus ad Gallias, factisque turmis patriam undique vastare incepit Galfr. Mon.* ⁷ *Afterward toward France he dude Ar.*

¹ Nou adde France þulke tyme þe emperour Leon ;
 And he býtoc yt in warde an duc, þat het Follon,
 þat hardy body was and god, and poer adde y nou.
 þo he wuste, þat þe þyng Arture þuder drou,
² Alle þe k yngtes and þe folc, þat in ys poer were,
 He nom, & mette þe Brutons, & smyte batayle þere.
 Ac al þat hem was lute wurþ, vor azen þe kyng Arture
 And ys poer hii mygte lute wule dure.
 Vor ³ euere, wanne he ⁴ nom alond, al þe bachelerye,
 þat agt was in þe lond, he ⁵ nom in ys companye
⁶ And of ys maynage vp ys coust, & vor he was so hende,
 Ech noble man vawe was myd hym vorto wende.
⁷ And beste partye of Fraunce to hym al so drou.
⁸ Vor he was so large & hende, þat to hym com poer ynou.
 Vor me ne tolde welney of no mon, noþer here ne þere,
 Bote he myd þe kyng Arture in som manere were.

¹ Nogh hadde Fraunce thulke
 tyme a lord, het Frollon,
 (That vndertok the gouer-
 naunce thurgh emperour Leon)
 That hardy man was & strong,
 and hadde power y nogh *Ar.*
² Alle maner of men, of his
 power that were, He toke,
 and with the Brutones mette,
 & smyten a bataille there *Ar.*
³ *Nam Arthorum iuventus in-*
sularum omnium, quas sub-
jugaverat, comitabatur. unde
tantum perhibebatur habere
exercitum, quantus erat diffi-

cile ab ullo posse superari
Galfr. Mon. ⁴ Wan a lond
Ar. ⁵ Toke *Ar.* ⁶ And of
 mayne at his cost. and for he
 was so hende, Euery noble
 man was glad with hym forto
 wende. And the best part of
 Fraunce *Ar.* ⁷ *Famulabatur*
quoque ei melior pars Gal-
licanæ provinciæ, quam sua
largitate sibi obnoxiam fece-
rat Galfr. Mon. ¹ For his
 largeste & hendeneste, that
 hym com folk y nogh *Ar.*

1 þo þe duc Follon ysey, þat ys poer nobyng nas,
 He fien in to Parys myd wel quyc pas,
 And astorede 2 þen toun, and strengþe hym aboute.
 Kyng Arture and ys poer aseged hym wyþoute.
 So þat wyþynne 3 a monþe þe duc Follon ysey,
 þat ys men, vor defaute and vor hunger, deyde ny,
 And þat ys poer nas nobyng, agen kyng Arture
 4 He þogte do ys owe body, wyle he mygte dure.
 Vor he was strong man & hardy, þe strengoste of ys londe.
 To þe kyng Arture he sende, þat he ssolde 5 hym vnder stonde
 6 To do an batayle hem sulue tuo myd her owe honde,
 And weþer so mygte aboute be were louerd of oþere's londe.
 þo kyng Arture hurde 7 þys, no gladdere man nas.
 He sende word, þat al prest to such batayle he was.
 Sykernesse 8 & troupe 9 yplygt, of þys vorewarde hii nome.
 So þat, at certeyn day yset, to þys batayle hii come
 A lute wyþoute Parys, 10 atyled wel y nou.
 Muche was 11 þat folc aboute, þat to þys batayle drou.

1 Whan that Frolle vnder-
 stod, that he sconfited was,
 He flegh in to Parys with a
 quyke paas, Ar. 2 The toun,
 and strengthened hym a boute
 Ar. 3 A monthe day duk
 Flolle y seigh, That his men
 in defaute for hunger deide
 negh, Ar. 4 He thoghte with
 his owene body, while he
 myght endure Ar. 5 Deest
 Ar. 6 And do the bataille,
 yf he wolde, with his owen
 honde, And whether myghte

a boue be were maister of
 othere's londe Ar. 7 This,
 gladder neuere he nas Ar.
 8 *Dato igitur in amba parte*
fædere, conveniunt uterque in
insulam, quæ erat extra civi-
tatem, populo expectante quid
de eis erat futurum Galfr.
 Mon. 9 Hii plight, and hure
 forward nome. So that at a
 day sett to bataille hii come
 Ar. 10 Arayed wel y nogh
 Ar. 11 The folk Ar.

¹ Hii fondede her steden vorst, & her lancen suppe hii nome,
 And wýþ hard dunt & gret ýre to gadere suppe hii come.
² þe kyng Arture agen þe brest ýs felawe uorst anhytte
 Agen þe breste, þat he vel, & ne mygte noleng sýtte.
 As sone as he mygte turne ýs hors, ýs suerd he drou þer,
 Vor to asayly hym þerwýþ, ac þe oper was vppe er,
 And ³ gef þe sted myd ýs sper agen brest depe's wounde,
 So þat boþe stede and kyng leye sone at grounde.
⁴ þo þe ⁵ Brutons seye þys, hii vor bere vnneppe,
 þat hii ne breke þe couenant, & brogte þen oper to depe.
 Ac kyng Arture keuerede vp, & asaylede Follon vaste,
 And smyte eyþer oper her & þer, & harde dunt es caste,
 So þat Follon myd a stroc þe Brutons sore agaste,
 Vor þe kyng Arture agen þe frount he smot atte laste,
 þat, gýf he nadde wýþ þe selde somdel þe dunt ýhent,
 Sýker he hym adde aslawe, oper al out ýssent.
 þo kyng ⁶ Arture ýt ýuelde, and ýsey al so ýs blod
 Vp ýs haubert & ýs sselde, he was neý vor wrappe wod.

¹ Hii a saide hure stedes furst,
 hure lances *Ar.* ² And kyng Ar-
 thur on the brest Frolle so hitte,
 That he fel doun to grounde, he
 myghte no lengor sitte *Ar.* ³ Smot
 his stede in the breste, & yaf hym
 dethe's wonde *Ar.* ⁴ *Desunt ali-*
quam multa in Ar. utpote in
quo folium unum integrum
(fol. sc. LXIX. quatuor duntaxat
versibus exceptis) híc loci exci-
sum esse, particulamque unius
paginae (sive faciei secundæ folii
LXVIII.) plane vacuam, video, in

cujus tamen particulæ vacuæ
marginē The rounde table of Ar-
thur scriptum legitur. 5 Brit.
tones ut regem prostratum vide-
runt, timentes eum peremptum
esse, vix potuerunt retineri,
quin rupto fœdere in Gallos
unanimiter irruerent Galfr.
Mon. 6 Manante igitur san-
guine, cum Arthurus lori-
cam & clipeum rubere vi-
disset, ardentiori ira accensus
est, atque erecto totis vi-
ribus caliburno, impressit
eum

He drou syre Calybourne ys suerd, þat was so gode,
 And anowarde þe helm wyþ wel stourdý mod
 þen oþer he smot, and to clef þat heued myd þe wounde.
 He vel and ssoc þe helm, and deyde in astounde.
 þo þys dede was ýdo, and þere oþer was ded,
 þut conseyl of France sone nom ys red,
 And to þe kýng Arture hým golde ech man þat was wýs,
 And golde hým vp al þat lond, & þe keyen of Parýs.
 þys was lo þe Cornwellyssebor, of wan Merlýn spec ynou,
 And clere leme of þe sterre, þat ouer France drou.
 Som was ýcome, as he sede, of þe noble kyng Arture,
 Wel me ssal her after of hým gut ýhure.
 þo he adde ýwonne France þus, & al þys was ýdo,
 þys noble kýng Arture delde ýs men atuo.
 ' þe kýng Howwel he býtoc, and þe oþer princes al so,
 þat odel of ýs ost to wende to Peyto
 Vor to wýnne þat lond, and hým sulf he wólde wende
 Vor to wýnne seýnorye aboute in oþer ende.
 Kyng Howwel wyþ ýs poer wan sone Peyto
 Al to kýng Arture's wýlle, and Gascoýne al so.
 þe kýng won Normandýe, and also god Aungeo,
 And wýþýnne anye ger al þys was ýdo.

eum per galeam in caput Follo-
nis, quod in duas partes disse-
cuit. Quo vulnere cecidit Follo,
tellurem calcaneis pulsans, &
spiritum in auras emisit Galfr.
 Mon.

commisit, præcepitque illi, ut,
ad expugnandum Guitardum,
Pictaviensium ducem, iret; ipse
vero cum reliqua parte ceteras
provincias sibi subjugare vaca-
 vit Galfr. Mon.

Et unam partem Hoelo duci

þe kyng wende þo to Parys, þo he adde ydo al þys,
 And al heȝ men of lond þuder come ywys.
 Her homages of hem, and her seruyse, he nom,
 And þe lawes, as he wolde hym sulf, sette on þe kȳnedom.
 He gef þat lond of Normandye Bedwer ys boteler,
 And þat lond of Aungeo¹ Kaxe ys panter,
 And oþer þyng oþer heȝe men, & syker yt made ynou,
 And suppe aboute Leynte toward þys lond drou.

þO þe kȳng Arture com here in þys londe,
 And so muche lond adde ywonne, & adde al so an honde,
 In yoe & blȳsse he was ynou, & alle þat wyþ hym were,
 And agen Wȳttesonetyd yt was in þe gere.
 He þogte þe heȝe feste of Wytesontyd do
 Wyþ honour among ys men, and þat alle come þer to,
 Boþe kȳnges and dukes, and erles echon,
 Barons and kȳngtes, squeers monȳon,
 Laydȳes and maydens, and ech mon þat agt were
 In enȳ lond, þat ys was, þat hii were alle þere.
 Of ys rounde table ys ban aboute he sende,
 þat eche a Wȳtesonetyd to Carleon wende,
 A toun þat ys in Glammorgan vp þe water of Osc ydo,
 A lute bysyde Seuerne, in murye stede al so.

Vor me may þere in þe Souþhalf al by the see lede
 Fram oþer londes god ynou, to endy such a dede.

² In oþer alf beþ grete wodes, lese and mede al so,
 So þat þer vas no defaute such noble þyng to do.

¹ F. Kaye. *Nam Gaiouque Dapifero in Galfr. Mon.* ² *Hic*
denuo pergit Cod. Ar.

þer come to þys rounde table, as he sende ys ban,
¹ Aunsel kyng of Scotlond, and al so Vryan,
 þat was kyng of Murýfýcens, & also of Norþ Walýs
 Cadwal, and also ² Scater kyng of Soup Walys,
 Cador kyng of Cornwayle, and erchebyssopes al so
 Of Londone, and of Euerwýk, and of ³ Carlen þer to.
 Erles þer come ek monýon, as þe erl of Gloucestrye
⁴ Morond, and Ingomer erl of Leycestre,
⁵ Maron erl of Warewýk, and Cursal of Cýcestre,
 Galluc erl of Salesburý, Jonatal of Dorcestre,
 Kýmmar erl of ⁶ Canterburý, of Baþe syre ⁷ Vrgen,
 Bose" erl of Oxenford, þat were alle noble men.
 þe barons & the kýngtýs, þat of hýs londe aday
 At hýs rounde table were, noman telle ne may.
 Kýnges þer were eke of ýlýs, ⁸ ar þe kyng of ýrlonde
⁹ Gýllam, and also Malueýs kyng of ýslonde,
 Lot kyng of Norþeweýe, and ¹⁰ Doldam of Godlond,
 And þe kyng of Orcadas, & of Denemarch ých vnderstonde;
 Kýnges eke of býgende see, as Kay of Aungeo,
 Bedwer of Normandye, Guyder of Peyto,
 Lygger of Colonye, and al so the ¹¹ dosse pers
 Of France were þere echon, þat so noble were and fers.

¹ Anguissel *Ar.* ² Estan-
 ter *Ar.* ³ Carlyon *Ar.* ⁴
 Morwid *Ar. in quo & Dude*
 ywan *pro* Ingomer. ⁵ Mau-
 ran of Wircetre, [*Maren Gwi-*
gornensis, quæ nunc Warguic
dicitur, Galfr. Mon.] Cursal
 erl of Chestre, Aleth of Sa-

lesbury, Jonathas of Dorche-
 stre, Kynmar *Ar.* ⁶ Kent,
Ar. ⁷ Vrbygen, Boso *Ar.*
⁸ As *Ar.* ⁹ Gwillamour, &
 Maunsel kyng of Islonde, *Ar.*
¹⁰ Doldan *Ar.* ¹¹ Dusze
Ar.

Hýs

Hys neuwen kyng Howwel of þe lasse Brutenye al so
¹ Myd so vayr folc þuder com, & myd so gret charge þerto
 Of mules, of cartes and of hors mydde alle gode,
 þat þer nas non so wyttȳ man, þat yt al vnderstode.
² þer nas ³ bytuene þys & Spanye no prince wipoute al þys,
 þat nas at þys rounde table, & at þys feste ywys.
 And no wonder. Vor þe kynge's los so wyde sprong ynou
 Of godenesse & of cortesy, ⁴ þat her herte to hym drou.
 þo þys heye men were alycome, & þe heye tyme also
 Of Wytson tyd, þe feste vor to do,
⁵ þe herchebyssopys were ybrogt, to sette þe kynge's croune
 On ys heued. Ac ⁶ Seyn Dubryc of sulue tyme
 Was erchebyssop. hym byuel þe croune on hym do,
 And þe seruyse of holy chyrche ek, þat byuel þer to.
 þo croune was on ys heued, and ydo was ech oþer þyng,
 Tueye erchbyssopys ladde þys noble kyng

¹ With muche poeple thuder
 com, and gret nobleie ther to
 Ar. ² Ther was no prynce by
 twixte Spayne & Alemayne
 of pris, Ar. ³ *Præter hos non*
remansit princeps alicujus
pretii citra Hispaniam, quin ad
istud edictum veniret. Nec mi-
rum. Largitas namque Arthu-
ri, per totum mundum divul-
gata, cunctos in amorem il-
lius illexerat Galfr. Mon. ⁴
 That euery man to hym drogh

Ar. ⁵ Thre Erchebisshopes
 were come, to sette on the
 kynge's croune. But Seynt
 Dubrice, that Erchebisshop was
 of the selue toune, (As hit was
 his costume that offys te do)
 Dude the seruise of holi churche,
 that byfel ther to. Tho the
 croune ⁶ *Dubricius ergo,*
quoniam in sua diocesi curia
tenebatur, paratus ad cele-
brandum obsequium, hujus rei
curam suscepit Galf. Mon.

To þe chyrche of heye munstre. And þer geode byuore hym
þere

Four kyngs, and four suerdes of golde byuore hym bere;

Vorst þe kyng of Scotlond, and þe kyng of Norþwalys,

And þe kyng of Cornwale, and þe kyng of Souþwalys.

¹ Oþer byssopys and prelats by uore þys kyng Arture

And clerkes songe as rygt was, þat joye yt was to hure.

In ² oþer alf þe quene was ³ of erchebyssopys al so

ylad, and ycrouned eke, as rygt was vor to ⁴ do,

And to noþer munstre ylad, & four quenes by uore hyr wende,

þe four kynges wyues, þat we by uore nemde,

⁵ And foure wyte colfren byuore hyr also bere.

þe companye of laydyes wel grete also were.

þo ⁶ hii were to chyrche ybrogt eyþer in ys syde,

⁷ So gret & murye was þat song, þat me song þer inne wyde,

þat þe folc stod, þat þer were, as hii were y nome,

Ne hii nuste to weþer chyrche murgorþe yt was to come.

þe kyng was to ys paleys, þo þe seruyse was y do,

Ylad wyþ ⁸ þys menye, and þe quene to hyre al so.

¹ And bysshopes, and other
prelates, to fore the kyng Ar-
thure Songe with hure cler-
gie, that joye it was to hure
Ar. ² The othur Ar. ³ Of

therchbisshop also Ar. ⁴ Do,

To a nother munstre there, &

iiii. quenes by fore wende

Ar. ⁵ And euery of hem in

hure hond a whit coluere

bere. Ladies fele and faire y

nogh also ther were Ar. ⁶

Postremo peracta proessione,

*tot organa, tot cantus in utris-
que fiunt templis, ut præ nimia
dulcedine milites, qui aderant,
nescirent quod templorum
prius adirent Galfr. Mon. ⁷*

So noble and mery was the
song and melody that tyde,
That men thoghte also murye
as thegh hii hadde be nome, Ne
hii ne wiste to whather church
meryer it was to come Ar.

⁸ His meyne, Ar.

Vor ¹ hii hulde þe olde vsages, þat men wyþ men were
 By hem sulue, and wymmen by hem sulue al so þere.
 þo hii were echone y set, as yt to her stat bycom,
 Kay, kyng of Aungeo, a þousend k yngtes nome
 Of noble men, y cloþed in ermýne echone
² Of on sywete, and seruede ³ as þys noble feste a non.
 Bedwer þe botýler, kyng of Normandye,
 Nom al so in ys half a uayr companye
⁴ Of on sywyte, vorto seruy of þe botelerýe.
 By uore ⁵ þe ⁶ quene yt was also of al suche corteýsýe,
 Vorto telle al þe noblýe þat þer was y do,
 þey my tonge were of ⁷ stel, me ssolde nozt dure þerto.
 Wymmen ne kepte of no k yngt as in druery,
 Bote he were in armýs wel yprowed, & atte leste þrye.
 þat made, ⁸ lo! þe wymmen þe ⁹ chastore lyf lede,
 And þe k yngtes þe stalwordore, & þe betere in her dede.
 Sone after þys noble ¹⁰ mete, as rygt was of such tyde,
 þe k yngtes atyled hem aboute in eche syde,

¹ *Antiquam namque consuetudinem curiæ servantes Brittones, consueverant mares cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus festivos dies celebrare separatim* Galfr. Mon. ² Alle in on sewte, to serue the feste a non *Ar.* ³ *Malim, at.* ⁴ Of a nother siwte, to serue the butelrie *Ar.* ⁵ *In palatio quoque reginæ innumerabiles ministri, diversis ornamentis induti, obsequium suum præstabant, morem suum exercentes. Quem si omnino describere pergerem,*

nimiam prolixitatem historiæ generarem Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Quene eke also ther was such courtaisye, *Ar.* ⁷ Stel, hit nolde suffice ther to. Wommen tolde of no knyght tho as in loue and druerye, But he were in armes preued atte leste thrye *Ar.* ⁸ Tho the *Ar.* ⁹ Chaster lyf to lede, *Ar.* ¹⁰ Mete, ech wende in his syde, Knyghtes and squyers eke, and buskede hem to ryde, In the feldes and in the medes *Ar.*

In feldes and in medys to preue her bachelerye.
 Somme wyþ lance, some wyþ suerd, wyþ oute vyleny, ¹
 Wyþ pley ynge at tables, oþer atte chekere,
 Wyþ castyngge oþer wyþ ssetyngge, ² oþer in som ogyrt manere.
 And ³ wuch so of eny game adde þe maystrye,
⁴ þ kyng hem of ys gyfteþ dude large corteysye.
 Vpe þe alurs of þe castles þe laydes þanne stode,
 And byhulde þys noble game, & wyche kynzts were god.
 Alle þe þre hexte dawes ylaste þys nobleye
 In halles and in veldes, of mete and eke of pleye.
 þys men come þe verþe day byuore þe kyng þere,
 And he gef hem large gyftys, euere as hii wurþe were.
 Byssopryches and cherches ⁵ clerkes he gef somme,
 And castles and tounes kynztes þat were ycome.
 Seyn Daud was þe kyng's vnle, hym he ⁶ gef aday
 þe herchebyssopryche of Carleon, as he wel bysay.
 Vor he was suyþe holy mon, ⁷ and munstre let rere,
 þat me clepuþ in Walys Seyn Daud, & gut he lyþ þere.

¹ The tables, & the esche-
 kere, *Ar.* ² Othur som othur
 manere. What man of any
 game hadde *Ar.* ³ *Quicumque*
ergo ludi sui victoriam adeptus
erat, ab Arturo largis muneribus
ditabatur Galfr. Mon. ⁴ *Sic*
Codex Harleyanus; at in Ar.
plane, The kyng hem yaf
 yiftes grete, & dude hem cour-
 taisye: An hegh vpon alures
 ladies gonne by holde, To
 waite ho so dude best, & most

was of tolde. Alle fulle fower
 daies last thus hure pleye
 In valeis aboute, and faire
 feldes, & mete eke of nobleye.
 The v. day come thes men
 bifore the kyng there, *Ar.*
⁵ To clerkes he yaf sone,
 Castelles to knyghtes eke, as
 best hym thocht to done. *Ar.*
⁶ Yaf that day *Ar.* ⁷ And
 let a munstre rere In the cite
 of Meneve, and lith nogh bu-
 ried there *Ar.*

þe byssopryche of Wýnchestre a god mon he gef þo,
 Of Chychestre anoper, and gut oper mo.
 þe wule þe kýng and ys men aboute þys nobleye were,
 þer come in tuelf olde men myd ¹ euene pas þere,
 Men of wel vayr semblant, and branchys hii bere
 Of olyue, as in sygne þat hii of pes were.
 A letter ² he toc þe kyng, þat þo he yt let rede.
 Fram þe cenatour of Rome hii come, and þys seyde:
 “ Lucie, þe cenatour of Rome, to Arture þe kyng,
 “ ³ Send, þat he ⁴ ofte serued aþ, wyþ oute gretýnge.
 “ Muche ⁵ me wondreþ and ouer muche of þy reuerýe,
 “ Of þyn cruel luper hede, and of þyn robbery;
 “ And namelyche of þyn vn rygt ychabbe gret dedeýn,
 “ þat þou to þe noble stede of Rome dest myd al þy mayn.
 “ And þat þou nelt ⁶ hym ýknowe, ne do þyn seruage,
 “ Ne vnder stonde hou luper yt ys, to ⁷ do ený outrage
 “ ⁸ Oper werný out þe noble stude, þat al þe world ⁹ abueþ to.
 “ Vor þyn auncetres dude al, þat we þe hoteþ do.
 “ And þou, as in gret despyt of so noble seýnorýe,
 “ ¹⁰ Ne at halst nogt one þy truage, ac myd þy reuerýe

¹ *Moderatis passibus* Galfr. Mon. ² Hii toke to the kyng, and he than let hit rede. Fro Lucýe the senatour hit come, and thus hit sede; “ Lucie senatour *Ar.* ³ Sendeth, as he hath deseruyd, with oute gretýng. Muche wonder we haueth of thi reuerýe, *Ar.* ⁴ *F.* of deserued aþ. ⁵ *Admirans vehementer admiror su-*

per tuæ tirannidis protervia. Admiror, inquam, & injuriam, quam Romæ intulisti, recolligens indignor Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Hure *Ar.* ⁷ Do hure eny *Ar.* ⁸ Or greuy oght that noble stede, *Ar.* ⁹ Boweth *Ar.* ¹⁰ Noght only at halst hure truage, but dost also roberie, By reuynst Fraunce and othur londes, *Ar.*

" Rauýsest France & oper londes, þat by Weste beþ echon,
 " þat bere ¹ truage to Rome, & þoru þe ne doþ nozt non.
 " Vor þanne of þe gret despyt þe noble court of Rome
 " Rygt wole habbe of þe ýwys, þat þou hym dest ýlome.
 " Amydde haruest we þe setteþ day of þys nexte gere,
 " At Rome vorto ansuerýe, and þat þou be þe sulf þere
 " We þe hoteþ, vorto auonge þat þe court þe wole deme.
 " And bote þou do ² of one þyng nym wel gode geme,
 " þat ýchylle my sulf þe seche out, & þoru suerd restore
 " Al þat þý reuerýe vs aþ by nome, and more.
 þys was a prout mandement, ³ and an heýnol dede.
 þe kyng adde þerof gret despyt, þo he hurde ýt rede.
 Vor þe vorste truage, þat he sende to Rome, of seluer oper
 of golde,
 þat was Lucy'e's bod aslawe, burye gyf hii ýt wolde.
 The kyng cluped ac nozt vor þan ys conseyl wel sone,
 To ansuerýe to þys ⁴ mandement, wat were best to done.
 Cadour, erle of Cornwayle, stod somdel and lou,
 And verste seyde ys auýs myde gode wylle ýnou.

¹ Som tyme truage to Rome, & nogh bereth hii non.
 And for this ilke grete despit the noble Court of Rome
 Ryght wole haue of, that thugh hast mysdo ofte y lome
Ar. ² Of that y seighe take ryght nogh good yeme, Elles
 my self y wole the seche, and thurgh my sweord restore

Al that thugh vs hast bynome, and yut ther to wel more *Ar.*

³ And gret manassyng. The kyng hadde foul scorn of this ilke bostyng. For in stede of truage of siluer and of goolde
 He sende hem Lucie's body, burie hit ho so wolde *Ar.*

⁴ Ilke lettre, what *Ar.*

" Syre,

“ Syre,” he sede, “ her ¹ byuore ychabbe ybe sore drad,
 “ Laste ² þat ydel lyf, þat þyne men ³ abbȳþ y lad,
 “ Nou monȳ day out of los and in sleuþe hem broȝte.
 “ Vor wanne men beþ al ydel, þat er bataȳles soȝte,
 “ Her ydelnesse hem ssal brȳnge to synne lecherye,
 “ To tauerne, and ⁴ to sleuþe, and to hasarderye.
 “ Hyt ys neȳ vȳf ȝer, þat we abbȳþ ylyued in such vyce,
 “ Vor we ⁵ nadde noght to done, and in suche delyce.
 “ And þer wȳþ ⁶ nȳs noght God ypayd, þer vorc he aþ ybroȝt
 “ þe Romeȳns ⁷ in suche wȳlle, þat we nere to ydel noght,
 “ Ac þat we come to vr stat agen of vre verste prowesse,
 “ Lest we felle in dedlych sunne vor vr ydelnȳsse.
 þo he adde ysed ys auȳs, & oþere hȳm bere wȳtnysse,
⁸ þe kyng Arture sede ys al in gladnesse.
 “ ȝe louerdȳnges,” he sede, “ þat ychabbe in conseȳl & in batayle
 “ y fonded as vor aȝte men, þat me nolde neuere faȳle,
 “ Doþ nou ⁹ al ȝoure wyt þerto, me wel to consayle,
 “ ¹⁰ And ych hopȳe we ssolle þe lasse recche of þe Romeȳns
 taylor.

¹ *Huc usque in timore fueram, ne Britones, longa pace quietos, otium, quod ducunt, ignavos faceret, famamque militiæ, qua ceteris gentibus clariore censentur, in eis omnino deleret* Galfr. Mon. ² The ydel *Ar.* ³ Longe haueth y lad, Noght out of hure good loos in to slouth hem broghte *Ar.* ⁴ To drunkenesse, & othur hasardrie *Ar.* ⁵ Hadde noght to done, and haue had oure delice *Ar.*

⁶ Is noght God a payd, *Ar.*

⁷ In to such a will, that we be ydel noght *Ar.* ⁸ Than

seide kyng Arthur in murthe & in gladnesse. “ Ye lor-

dynges, that y prened haue in consail and bataille, And as

noble men founde, & wolde me nenere faille, *Ar.* ⁹ *Facilius*

ergo inquietationem Lucii tolerare poterimus, si communi studio præmeditati fuerimus, quibus modis eam debili-

tare

tare

“ Vor me þencheþ myd vn rygt hii ¹ esseþ vs truage.

“ Vor ² July Cesar yt nom vorst myd strengþe & myd outrage,

“ þoru descord & contek, þat hytuene vr elderne vas þo.

“ He nom verst myd vnrygt, & brogte þat lond in wo.

“ And þyng þat ys myd strengþe ynom, hou mygte yt be myd rygt?

“ Vor he ³ naþ reson non, bote robberye and mygt.

“ ⁴ And ⁵ myd as reson we mowe of hem esse ywys.

“ Bere he þanne þe oþer truage, þat byneþe ys.

“ Vor July and oþer emperours, hii seggeþ, com þer to,

“ þat emperors were of Rome. ych may segge al so,

tare institerimus. Quam non multum timendam nobis existimo, cum irrationabili causa exigat tributum, quod ex Britannia habere desiderat Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ And casteth, hogh to make a knotte in the Romaynes taille *Ar.*

¹ Axeth *Ar.* ² Julius Cesar alther furst tok hit with outrage, For a contek that bytwýne oure eldrene was tho. He nom hit furst with vnright, & broght the lond in wo. That thyng, that with wrong is nome, hogh myght hit be with right? *Ar.* ³ Hath no reson to, but *Ar.* ⁴ And with also good reson we mowe of hem y wis Abere thilke truage, that as thyng robbed is. For by Julie and other emperours hii thenk-

eth come ther to, And we in the same manere may seye also, That oure auncetres of this lond som tyme wonne Rome, As Belyn & Brenne, noble men that ye haue hurd of y lome *Ar.* ⁵ *Quoniam ergo id, quod injustum est, à nobis præsumpsit exigere, consimili ratione petamus ab illo tributum Romæ, & qui fortior supervenerit ferat quod habere exoptavit. Nam si, quia Julius Cæsar, ceterique Romani reges Britanniam olim subjugarunt, vectigal nunc debere sibi ex illa reddi decernit, similiter nunc ego censeo, quod Roma mihi tributum reddere debet, quia antecessores mei eam antiquitus obtinuerunt. Belinus etenim &c.* Galfr. Mon.

“ þat

" þat myn auncetres of þys lond wyle wonne Rome,
 " As Bely þe noble kyng, þat ge abbeþ yhurð y lome,
 " And Constantyn, Eleyne sone, ¹ hii wuteþ wel Rome nom,
 " And suppe Maxymyan, and of ² beyre blod ych com,
 " Myn auncetres ³ were alle þre, & kynges of þys londe,
 " ⁴ And wonne þe emperye of Rome, & boþe adde an honde.
 " Of ⁵ France & ⁶ oþer londes, þat we wonne myd vr mygte,
 " We mowe segge, þat we ⁷ nabbeþ to ansuerye nogt myd rygte.
 " Wanne hii for soke ys, & for slewþed, & to non defence ne
 come,
 " þo we þoru chyualerye out of her poer ys nome.
 " Vor hii ne mowe nogt segge, þat with treson, oþer stalþe, yt
 were do.
 " Vor wyþinne nye gere non of hem ne com enes þer to.
 Howwel, kyng of þe oþer Brytayne, þo he hurde þys he sede:
 " þey ech of vs sete alday, þe beste red to rede,
 " Betere ansuere ne ssolde we fynde, ⁸ þan ge abbeþ nou ysed.
 " þere vore we agte honoury wel of so noble wyt þy red.

¹ Ye witeth *Ar.* ² *F* heyre.
Nam hure in Ar. ³ Hii were
 alle *Ar.* ⁴ Hii wonne them-
 perie of Rome, & tho hii hitte
 hadde an honde *Ar.* ⁵ *Cen-*
setisne ergo vectigal ex Roma-
nis petendum? De Gallia au-
tem sive collateralibus insulis
non est respondendum, cum
illas diffugeretur defendere,
quando easdem potestati eorum
subtrahebamus Galfr. Mon.
⁶ Of other londes, that we
 wonne with vnryght *Ar.* ⁷ Ne

mogh answeere ther to with
 ryght. When they forsoke
 and for sleuthede, and to non
 defence come, Tho we thurgh
 chiuallrye out of hure hondes
 hit nome. For hii ne mogh
 seye with treson, ne with
 stalthe, hit was do, For thes
 ix. yer non of hem ones come
 ther to *Ar.* ⁸ Than that that
 ye han sede. Wel oughte the
 man honoured be, that is so
 noble of rede *Ar.*

" Vor

“ Vor ¹ gýfwe in þýs manere wendeþ, we ne faýleþ ² anone
wýse,

“ þat we ne ssolde abbe þe maýstre, wanne we defendeþ oure
franchise.

“ And wo so anoper monne's ³ god býnýme wole mýd vnrygt,

“ Mýd rygt he maý ys ⁴ owe lese, gýf þe defendor aþ þe mygte.

“ And ⁵ wanne þe Romeyns aboute beþ, vs to býnýme vr rygte,

“ Wýþ reson we ⁶ wolle hem býnýme, gýf we mowe to gadere
fygt.

“ Nou ýt worþ ⁷ gended, þat Sybyle þe sage sede bý uore,

“ þat þer ssold of Brutayne þre men be ýbore,

“ þat ssold wýnne þe emperýe of Rome, ⁸ & þe tueye ýdo ýt ys,

“ As of Bely and Constantýn. & þou art þe þrydde ywýs.

“ Hye ⁹ nou vaste vorto auonge þýs noble honour al,

“ To brynge hem vnder þe, ¹⁰ þat þe wolde make her þral.

“ Hye ¹¹ nou to anhansý vs alle, & ýnelle noht be byhynde,

“ Ten þousend hors ¹² ywrye, ých þe wolle fynde.

¹ *Nam si, juxta prædictam
rationem, Romam adire volu-
eris, non dubito quin triumpho
potiamur, dum libertatem no-
stram tueamur; dum juste
ab inimicis nostris exigamus,
quod à nobis injuste ipsi re-
petere inceperunt. Quicumque
enim sua alteri eripere cona-
tur, merito, quæ sua sunt, per-
eum, quem impetit, amittit*
Galfr. Mon. ² In non wise,
To haue the maistre, in defence
of oure owene franchise Ar.

³ Good taketh with vnright,
Ar. ⁴ Owene leose, & the de-
fendour haue myght Ar. ⁵ Sut-
the the Romeynes beth aboute
to reue vs of oure right, Ar.
⁶ Wolleth hem hure bynyme,
& to gederes fight Ar. ⁷ Ful-
fuld, that Ar. ⁸ Of the two
do hit is, Ar. ⁹ The faste for
to Ar. ¹⁰ That wolde the
make thral Ar. ¹¹ Blyue to a
vaunce vs alle, y wole noht
be by hynde, Ar. ¹² Heled
ther to y wole the fynde Ar.

Aunsel,

Aunsel, þat þe kyng adde ymad kyng of Scotlonde,
 Glad y nou was ¹ myd þys word, & vor joye held vp ys honde.
 "Vor þat," he sede, "ychabbe yhurð, so gret joye ychabbe
 and blys,
 " ² þat y nabbe non tonge, þat mowe al yt ssewe ywys.
 "Vor al, þat we abbyp of londes and of kynges byuore
 " y wonne myd chyualerye, yt þyncþ me al vor lore,
 " Bote we of Romeyns be awreke & of Saxons al so,
 " þat vre elderne er þys so muche ssame abbeþ ydo.
 " And nou þe tyme ys icome, þat we mowe ben awreke,
 " So glad ycham, ³ þat y not, wat vor joye speke.
 " Vor y ne wylñede neuere þyng so muche, as ych do her blod,
 " ⁴ Ou ! Jhesu ! þat þulke day worþ me suete and god.
 " Suete wolleþ þe wounded be to me, & noþyng stronge :
 " Suete wole ek my deþ be, gyf ych ym auonge
 " Vorto awreke ⁵ hor faderes, & to holde vp oure franchyse,
 " And vorto ⁶ anansy our kyng, as we ssolde in al wyse.
 " Seche ⁷ we out þulke halue men, ne abyde we nogt to longe,
 " þat ⁸ we after her wrecche deþ her londes auonge.
 " And ycholle our ost eche, and our bachelerye,
 " Wypoute archers & vot men, wyp tuo þousend hors y wrye.

¹ For that word *Ar.* ² That
 I haue no tonge, to telle
 hogh joyful my herte is *Ar.*
³ That I ne wot, what *Ar.*
⁴ Me thinketh, to haue to
 do o day with hem wold do
 me good. Softe wolde the
 woundes be to me, and no
 thyng stronge : Swete wolde
 also be my deth, yf y hym shal

a fonge *Ar.* ⁵ Oure *Ar.*
⁶ A vaunce *Ar.* ⁷ *Aggredia-*
mur igitur semiviros illos, &
aggrediendo perstemus, ut,
devictis ipsis, eorum honori-
bus cum læta potiamur vic-
toria Galfr. Mon. ⁸ We mogh,
 when they beth dede, hure
 faire londes fonge *Ar.*

Of men here of þys lond þe kyng adde þer wyþoute
 Syxty þousend hors ¹ y wrye, & þat was a uayr route.
 þe kynges of sýx ýles ek, as Norþewey & Yrlonde,
 Godlond and Orcadas, Denemarch and Yslonde.
 Sene kynges ek aboute Fraunce, as Brutayne & Normandye,
 Gascoýne and Aungeo, and al so Pýcardye,
 Of Peyto, and of oþer tuo, and ² dozze pers of France.
 Among hem alle ³ hii were syker al, wyþoute balance,
 Of an hondred þousend hors, & four score þousend þerto,
 And þre ⁴ sousend wel ywrye, & tuo hondered also,
 Wyþoute fot men, þat were so vale, þat þer nas of non ende,
 þys was a uayr compaynye, þoru al þe world to wende.
 þo þys was syker & byspeke, þe kyng hem het ⁵ echom,
 þat hii wende ech in ýs syde to her contreye anon,
 And þat hii alammasse day myð her poer come
 Echone to Barbesflet, and þes veage nome.
 þe kyng bed þe messagers, þat hii þe senatour sede,
 þat he wolde to Rome come, ac no truage hym to lede,
 Ac vorto conquerý of hym þulke sulue seruage,
 þat hii askyep of hym ⁶ vyllyche, and myð outrage,

¹ Y heled, and that *Ar.*

² Dusze *Ar.* ³ Syker hii
 were, with oute variaunce.
 An hundred thusend hors he
 led, of fotmen was non ende.
 Ther was a faire companye
 thurgh al the wordle to wen-
 de. Tho that al this was
 byspoke, and syker were
 alle at on, Euery man to his
 contre highede sone anon, I

charged a Lammasse day with
 hure power hii come Euery
 man to Barbefleet, and this
 viage nome. Thanne to the
 messagers answerd Arthur the
 kyng, That to Rome he wolde
 come and no truage bryng,
 But forto wyne ther of hem
 thulke self seruage, *Ar.* ⁴ *Sic.*
⁵ *L. echon.* ⁶ Spitously, *Ar.*

And þat he wolde to Rome come þe day þat hii hym sette
¹þe rygte abbe weþer so mygte, wanne hii hem to gadere
 mette.

þus ²departede ³þo" þe court, and ⁴eche in ys syde
 garked hem agen þe day, vor hii ⁵mygte leng abyde."

LUCYE þe senatour, þo he wuste þys maundement,
 Sone he adde wyde aboute ys messagers ⁶yseend,
 Vorto gadery to ys help al ⁷þat poer of Rome,
 So þat agen Lammasse alle þes kynges to hym come,
 Of Affryc and of Grece, of Spayne and of Syrre,
 Of Medes and of Perces, ⁸of ⁹Ytours, of Lybye,
 Of Egypt and of Babylonye, and of Frugye,
 And al so of ¹⁰Mesopot, of Bytynie, of Boecye.
 Alle þes kynges, and al oþer þat were by Este Rome,
 And al þat to Rome ssolde seruýse, to hym come,
 So þat fourty þousend hors & syxty hondred also
 þer were, ¹¹þo hii gare were, þys chyualerye to do.

Kýng ¹²Arture bytok Modred, ys sýster sone, ych wene
¹³þys lond to loke, þo he wende, & Gouvernewaur þe quene.

¹ And ryght haue ho so myght,
 when hii to gederes mette *Ar.*

² *Digrediuntur ergo legati,
 digrediuntur reges, digredi-
 untur proceres, &, quod eis
 præceptum fuerat, perficere
 non differunt* Galfr. Mon.

³ *Deest Ar.* ⁴ Euery man wende
 on his syde, And euery man
 to holde his day a rayde hym
 thanne to ryde *Ar.* ⁵ *F. ne*

mygte leng. ⁶ Sent *Ar.* ⁷ The
 power *Ar.* ⁸ Of Tharce and

of Libie *Ar.* ⁹ *Ituræorum*
 Galfr. Mon. ¹⁰ Mesopotanie

Ar. ¹¹ Tho hii were alle
 redy, this *Ar.* ¹² *Compo-*

*sito igitur adventu ipsorum,
 Arturus, Modredo nepoti
 suo conservandam Britanniam
 atque Gannumaræ* [Sic Co-
 dex MS. quem mihi perquam be-

Vor he truste to ¹ hym mest, as me þyngþ he wel agte,
² And, as ge ssolde her after yhure, hii brogte hym suppe to
 nagte.

Myd al ys ost of þys londe to Souþhamptone he wende,
 And dude hym ³ in see, myd wynd þat God hym sende.
 þo he come ver in þe see, and he aslepe was,

⁴ At tyme of mydnygt of þe nygt, hym mette a greuou cas.
 Hym þogte he sey a grýslych beore ⁵ fle in þe eyr anheý,

⁶ þat alle þe þauenes quakede of þe flygt hym þogte he sey.
 And an dreduol dragon fram þe West come myd hym to fygte,
 þat ⁷ þe leom of ys eyen al þe contreye ⁸ lýgte.

An þe dragon ⁹ velde þulke bere, & to grounde hym caste.

¹⁰ An noþer dragon com fram Est, & myd þulke dragon fagt
 vaste."

þo þe kýnge awok, he told ys meýne of þys cas.
 And some býþogte, and tolde wat þe ¹¹ býtokne was,

nigne donavit amicissimus Gra-
 vesius, licet alii Guennoveram
 & Guenheram, vel Gonnoram
 sive Gouvernauram appellent]
regine committens, cum exer-
citu suo portum Haymonis a-
divit, ubi tempestivo ventorum
flatu mare ingressus est Galfr.
 Mon. ¹³ Hys lond to kepe,
 tho he wende, & also Gonnore
 the quene Ar.

¹ F. hem. ² Ac, as ye schulle
 her after hure, to most sorwe
 he hym broght Ar. ³ Forth
 in the see, Ar. ⁴ Euene a

boute mydnyght, hym mette a
 wonder cas Ar. ⁵ Fle out of
 the Est an hegh, That alle
 men, that negh hym were,
 quaked, whan they hym segh.
 A grisly dragon fro by Weste
 Ar. ⁶ Cujus murmure tota lit-
 tora intremebant Galfr. Mon.
⁷ Thurgh the lightnesse of
 his eyen Ar. ⁸ A light Ar.
⁹ Ouercome this bere, Ar.
¹⁰ Loco hujus versus hæc habet
 Ar. And ded left hym in the
 feld, this Arthur sore a gaste
 Ar. ¹¹ Bitoknyng Ar.

pat

þat þe dragon of by Weste bytokned þe kyng Arture,
 And þe beore som foul geant, þat me ssolde of yhure.
¹ þat he ssolde ouercome þe geant; & þe dragon of byheste
 Bytokned þe emperour of Rome, & þe batayle of the beste
 Ouercome bytokned þat þe Romeyns ssolde al so.
 Ac þe kyng ne jugede nogt, þat yt ssolde be so y do,
 þer after hii come" to Barbesflet, & pygte þer by syde
 Her tentes and paýlons, her compaynye to abyde.
 Under þat þer com word to þe kyng Arture,
 þat þe meste geant, þat mon ssolde of yhure,
 Out of þe lond of Spayne com, & adde ² ynomé" Eleýne,
 þat was so vayr, þe kýnge's nece Howwel of Brutayne,
 And vpe þe mount of Seyn Mýchel yre lede atte laste,
 And þe kýngtes of þe lond sywed after vaste,
 Ac hii ne mygte nout agen hym do. Vor³ weper so hii wende
 By water, oþer by londe, anon rygt he hem ssende,
⁴ Mýd gleyue oþer mýd roches, and newe alýue he let.
 And some he mýd strengþe nom, & al quyc hem fret.
⁵ Al stýllelyche wýþinne nýgt þe kýng nom ys boteler
 Bedwer, þat nomon yt wste, and Gay ys panyter,

¹ Some seide also, that the
 kyng sholde with honour
 Fighte er longe were with the
 Cenatour, And seide, the Cena-
 tour bi tokned the best of by
 Est, And Arthur to the dragon
 that com fro by West. Ther
 after hii come *Ar.* ² Rauesshed
Ar. ³ *Nam sive mari, sive*
terra illum invadebant, aut
naves eorum ingentibus saxis

Vol. I.

obruerat, aut diversorum ge-
nerum telis interimebat. Sed
& plures capiebat, quos se-
mivivos devorabat Galfr. Mon.
⁴ With speres & stones also,
 fewe a lyue he let *Ar.* ⁵ Al
 stillely, whan hit was nyght,
 Arthur clepede a part Bed-
 uer his boteler, and Kay his
 stiward, And two squyers
 with hem also, that he muche

triste,

(Vor he truste to hem meste) and wende vorþ as alone,
 Vor ¹ he volde to such geant verdes lede vone
 Vor o body, as we seyþ, and so muche ek he truste
 To hym sulue & to hardýssý. Ys men wanne hii yt wuste,
 þo he come toward þys hul, a gret fur þeruppe he sey,
 And anoþer vppe a lasse hul, þat þer býsyde was neý.
 Nou ² nuste hii" to soþe, vppe weþer þe geant were;
 Bedwer he sende vorto aspýe stýlelyche verst þere.
 Verst to þe lasse hul ³ mýd ⁴ assýp, þat he vond,
 He wende al bý water, vor he ne ⁵ mýgt nozt alonde.
 þo ⁶ he com ⁷ vp þe hul an heý, he hurde atte bygynnýg
 Of a womman a deoluol cry, and a pýtos wepyng."
 Verst he was sore adrad, þat þe geant were þere neý,
 And napeles he ⁸ hente herte, & drou more an heý.
 þo vond he ¹⁰ gere þet fur, and a lute þer býsyde
¹¹ An ¹² buryels al nywe ýmad, & a womman, þat so cryde,

triste, And wende forth al pri-
 uely, that his ost hit nyste.
 Whan thei negh the hulles
 come, a fure uppon they segh,
 And vppon the lasse hulle a
 nother that were somdel negh.
 Than nuste hii *Ar.*

¹ *Tanta namque virtute præ-
 valendo negligebat contra talia
 monstra exercitum ducere, cum
 & suos hoc modo inanimaret,
 & solus ad illa destruenda suffi-
 ceret Galfr. Mon. ² Dubitantes
 illico super quem eorum habi-
 tasset gigas, Beduerum diri-
 gunt, ut certitudinem rei explo-
 raret Galfr. Mon. ³ In a bot, that*

he fond, *Ar.* ⁴ *Navicula Galfr.*
Mon. ⁵ Myght by lond Ar.
⁶ *Cujus [montis] dum cacumen
 incepisset ascendere, audito
 desuper femineo ululato [Sic
 Codex ille, quem mihi dono de-
 dit amicissimus Gravesius, non
 ululatu] primo inhorruit, quia
 dubitavit monstrum adesse*
*Galfr. Mon. ⁷ Up to the hulle
 an hegh, at the bygynnyng, Of a
 womman he hurde a cry pitously
 playnyng Ar. ⁸ Tok good herte,
 Ar. ⁹ Tho he fond ther a fuyr,
 and a lytel Ar. ¹⁰ Sic qui-
 dem Codex (quem sequimur)
 Harleyanus, pro quo alii (ut*

Alner holded sytte þere, and anon, so heo y seý
 þe kýng Bedwer, heo sýgte, and býgan to grede an heý,
 “ Alas ! alas ! þou wrecche mon, wuch mýs auenture
 “ Hap þe ýbrogt in to þýs stede, alas ! hou ssalt on dure ?
 “ Alas ! þe pýnes, þat þou ssalt sone þolye, deþ !
 “ þe pýte, þat ýchabbe of þe, þoru out mýn herte geþ.
 “ Vor þys verbroyde geant, abbe he of the an sýgt,
 “ þy fayre body so gentýl vor suolwe he wole to nýgt.
 “ Vor he wole sone come þulke verbroyde pece,
 “ þat nom Helene, noble mayde, kýng Howwel nece,
 “ þat ýchabbe nou rýgt her ýbured, was norýse ých was,
 “ þat was al mý soule, & al mý lyf, ých wene non such nas.

in Ar.) þer (sive þere) forsitan malint. Sed zere (quod paratum notat) retineo. ¹¹ A bu-
 riele newe made, & the wom-
 man, that cride, Al for olded
 & for woþe, and tho heo segh
 Bedewer, “ Lord haue mer-
 cy,” sheo sayde, “ on the man,
 “ what dost though nouth her ?
 “ Alas !” sheo seide, “ though
 “ wrecche man, what mýs a
 “ venture Hath broght the to
 “ this stede, hogh shalt though
 “ longe endure ? The pite,
 “ that y haue of the, thurgh
 “ my herte it geth. Sory I
 “ am, that though shalt suffre
 “ sone deth. For this foule
 “ Geant, haue he of the a-
 “ syght, Thi body, that so

“ gentil is, wole sone be to
 “ twyght. For hider he wole
 “ come right sone that ilke
 “ foule pece, That rauesshede
 “ faire Eleyne, kyng Howe’s
 “ nece *Ar.* ¹² *Inspexit quo-*
que tumultum recenter factum,
& juxta eum quandam anum
flentem & ejulantem. Quæ
ut eum aspexit, conspectum
fletu impediante in hunc mo-
dum profata est : “ O infelix
 “ homo, quod infortunium te
 “ in hunc locum subvectat ?
 “ O ! inenarrabiles mortis
 “ pœnas passure ! miseret me
 “ tui, miseret, quia tam detes-
 “ tabile monstrum florem ju-
 “ ventutis tuæ in hac nocte
 “ consumet Galfr. Mon.

"¹ And ² þe wule he wolde þys tendre þyng wemmy foule
y nou,

" And heo ne mygte yt soffry noȝt, myd lecherye he yr slou.

" þo eode he to me olde ³ werche, to endy ys ⁴ floule cas,

(" To wytnesse God ych take, þat agen my wylle yt was)

" And dude by me ys lecherye, alas! þulke stounde!

" þer uor fle þou hendy mon, vor syker be þou y founde,

" Wanne he comþ by me to lȝgge, he wole þe lȝme mele

" To drawe and vorsuolwe, perauntre at one mele.

Bedwer" bygan to comforty þe womman in þe place,

And by het yre bote of hyre wo bytȝme, þoru Gode's grace,

And wende agen to þe kyng, and tolde al þys cas.

þe kyng was sory, þo he wuste, þat ⁵ þet mayde aslawe was,

⁶ Ac anauntre he þoȝte hym do, & dude hym ⁷ in weye,

þys clene mayde vorto ⁸ awreke, and ys felawes beye.

¹ And as this foule Geant
wold haue leye hure by, This
ilk faire mayde he sloȝh
thurgh his lechery. Tho yede
he to me, olde wrecche, his
lechorye to fulfille, I take
God to witnesse hit was a ye
my wille, So that euere wole,
whan hym lust with me haue
a do. And thus I lyue in this
penance, and dury moch wo.
Wel sone he wole come her
to me, and if though her be
founde, Though shalt sey
waillaway, & curse the harde
stounde. Bedewer *Ar.* ² *Nam-*
que, recepto infra tenerri-

mum pectus timore, dum eam
nefandus ille amplecteretur,
vitam, diuturniore luce dig-
nam, finivit. Ut igitur illam,
quæ erat mihi altera spes, al-
tera vita, altera dulcedo jo-
cunditatis, fædo coitu suo de-
turpare nequivit, detestanda
venere succensus, mihi invitæ
(Deum & senectutem meam
testor) violentiam ingessit.
Fuge, dilecte mi, fuge, &c.
Galfr. Mon. ³ *L. wrecche.* ⁴ *L.*
foule. ⁵ *The Ar.* ⁶ *In a*
venture Ar. ⁷ *In his weye,*
Ar. ⁸ *A wreke, with his*
felawes tweye Ar.

Ar hii come vpe ¹ þys hul, arst he was ycome
 þys gryslyche geant, & hadde an vatte baru ynome,
 And yspýted hym þoru out myð an yrene spýte,
 And rostede in þys grete fure, to abbe þe folle býte.
 Artur bed ys ² felawes, talate hym yworþe alone,
 Ac gýf hii seye hym in nede, þat hii ne made targynge none.
 Kýng Artur hym blessede, and baldelyche ynou
 Toward þys gryslyche ³ fourme myð gode herte hym drou.
 þe ⁴ geant, þo he sey hym come, býgan ys mace adrawe,
 þat tueye stalwarde men ne ssolde nozt ⁵ enes wawe.
 Toward ⁶ þe heued þe kýng he smot, ac he hente myð ys
 sselde.
 Ac gut he brýde aladoun, and wel harde yt velde.
 Vor yt ⁷ þorte al þe hul myð þe stroc was astoned.
 Artur was lygt ynou, as he was ywoned.
 He hupe vp, þo he wroþþe was, and ys suerd adrou,
 And smot ⁸ þen ssrewe in the frount, myð gode earnest ynouȝ.

¹ To the hul, the Geant was
 come, And hadde broght a gret
 swyn, that he hadde nome, *Ar.*

Felawes tho to lete hym al
 one, *Ar.* ³ Gest with good
 hert he drogh *Ar.* ⁴ *Mox il-*
los ut, nihil tale præmeditatus,
aspexit, festinavit clavam su-
am sumere, quam duo juvenes
vix à terra erigerent. Evagi-
navit ergo rex gladium suum,
& prætenso clipeo, quantum
velocitas sinebat, properabat
eum præcedere, antequam cla-
vam cepisset. At ille, non ig-
narus meditationis, jam cepe-

rat eam, regemque interposito
clipeo tanto conamine percus-
sit, quod sonitus ictus & tota
littora replevit, & aures ejus-
dem ultra modum hebetavit
Galfr. Mon. ⁵ Ones *Ar.*

⁶ The kynge's hed he smot,
 he hept hym with his shelde.
 But yut he bowede hit al
 doun, and wel harde hit felde.
 For hit ferde of the stroc al
 the hulle was stoned. Arthur
 was light a fote, as he was wo-
 ned. And lept vp, tho he wra-
 thed was, *Ar.* ⁷ *F. þozte,*
⁸ The *Ar.*

Ac þe vel & fless was so ¹ bard, & þe scolle hard & þycke,
 þat, vor þey yt ne come nogt þoru, þe dunt nas nogt wycke.
 And ys mace he dude ek bytuene, ² ac þet blod adoun wende
 So vaste in eye, and in face, þat hym ney ablende.
 þe kyng ³ hupte her & þer, & leyde on euere vaste,
 So strong vas þe ssrewe, þat no dunt ne mygte hym adoun
 caste.

He vemde, & grunte, & stod agen, as yt were a strong bor,
 þat euere wole agen þe stroc, vorte he ne may namor.
 þe kyng smot euere her and þer, so þat atte laste
 Ernest of herte he nome to hym, and adrou so vaste
 Calyburne, ys god suerd, þat he scolle clef a tuo,
 þat þe suerd was al þer inne yhud, ⁴ þat brayn ornout also.
 þo ⁵ grýslych gal þe ssrewe þo, þat grislych was ys bere.
 He vel dounz as a gret ok, þat byneþe ycorue were,
 þat yt þogte þat al hul myd þe vallýnge ssok.
 þo stod þe kyng and lou, þey ech lýme hym ok,
 Vor he was wery yfagt. Bedwer he het þere,
 þat he ⁶ croune of þe grislych heued, & to castel bere.
 So þat hii come to her felawes ⁷ in dawýnge.
 So noble ⁸ los nas neuere yhurd, as me bar þo þe kýnge.

¹ Togh, and the scolle so
 thicke, That hit greuede hym
 nogt ful muche, thegh he harde
 hitte *Ar.* ² And yut the blod
 out wende, And ran in his eyen
 so, that hit hym muche a blen-
 de *Ar.* ³ Lepte *Ar.* ⁴ The
 brayn orn out also. So grisly
 yul the sherrewe, and grisly

was his bere, And fel doun
 as an oke, that for torne
 were *Ar.* ⁵ *Exclamavit ve-*
ro invisus ille, & velut quer-
cus, ventorum viribus era-
dicata, cum maximo sonitu
corruit Galfr. Mon. ⁶ Smyte
 of *Ar.* ⁷ In the dawenyng
Ar. ⁸ A los was neuere *Ar.*

Hys

Hys men truste þe bet to hym, and mony blessynge
 He adde, vor he delyuerede men of an so voule þynge.
 þo kyng Arture's men y come were echon,
 Sone hii drowe hem toward France, vorto seche her fon.
 Hem com tytynge, þat ¹ emperour to France ycome was
 Myd so gret folc hym to seche, þat such neuere yseye was.
 þer of nas nogt þe kyng adrad, ² ac vorþore he wende bysyde,
 And bygan to ³ puthe ys pauylons, hym vorto abyde.
 þe erl of Oxenford he nom, and anoþer erl al so,
 And syre Waweyn, ys systersone, þo al þys was ydo,
 And to Lucyþe þe senatour in þys manere hem sende,
 To hote hym, þat hastelyche out of France he wende,
 Oþer þat he come ⁴ amorwe, batayle vorto do,
 Vorto cuþe, weþer adde bettere rygt þer to.
⁵ þys noble kyngtes wende vorþ, and hete Lucyþe so *knygtes*
 Vorto wende out of France, ⁶ oþer batayle do.
 Quynthylyan, ys neuue, ansuerede atten ende,
 þat he nas nogt þuder ycome, out þanne vorto wende,
 Ac to gouerny France, ⁷ þat of rygte of Rome ys,
 And þat bote guldrynge and bost nobynge myd Brutons nys.
⁸ Syre ⁹ Waweyn, þe gode kyngt, was þo wroþ ynou, *knygt*
 And among al þat folc hupte ner, and ys suerd adrou,

¹ Themperour *Ar.* ² Ac
 wende ther by side *Ar.* ³
 Picche his paelones, them-
 perour to a bide *Ar.* ⁴ On
 the morwe, *Ar.* ⁵ Thes *Ar.*
⁶ Or elles the bataille do.
 The senatour's cosyn Quin-
 cian answerede gayne atten-

ende, *Ar.* ⁷ That holden of
 Rome is, *Ar.* ⁸ Sire Wa-
 wayn the good knyght was
 tho wroth y nogh, God wot,
 And sodeynly drough his
 sweord, & of his hed he smot,
 And with that hed to hors he
 lepte, ther folwede hym y

And smot of þat heued, & anon þat heued myd hym nom,
 And wyþ ys felawes to ys hors vor hem all gut he com.
 Ac wat an horse, wat a vote, þe Romeyns hym sywyde ynoug,
 Vorto awreke her gret mayster, þat syre Waweyn slou.
 Geryn, erl of Carcoys, þat myd kyng Arture was,
 He byturnede hym þo he sey þe Romeyns luþer pas,
 And on þoru out þat body he smot myd ys lance,
 þe erl of Oxenford ek þozte of ys cheance,
 And byturnde hym, & myd ys lance þoru þe þrote smot on.
 And þus þys þre gode kыngtys stured hem among her fon.
 þo was þer on, þat het Marcel, þat fonde^{1e} myd al ys mayn,
 Forto awreke Quintilyan, to sle syre Waweyn.
 Syre Waweyn hym byturnde, & an stroc hym gef,
 þat al² þat heued & þe brest³ clanlyche hym to clef.
 "Go," he seyde, "to⁴ Quintilyan in helle þer he ys,
 "And seye hym, þat syre Waweyn hym sende word þys,
 "þat suche strokes þe Brutons conne gyue ywys,
 "þat he seyde, þat myd hym bote gylpyng & bost nys.
 "Vor⁶ ychot wel þuder þou ssalt, þyn del þou mygt hym ssewe.
 Hys felawes he bed turne agen, ⁷ al þey hii were vewe.

nowe Of Romeyns, to haue
 wreke hure maistre, & made
 gret a vowe. Geryn Erl of
 Chartres, that messenger alsowas,
 Byturnde hym, whan he sey the
 Romaynes folwe such a paas,
 And thurgh the body on he smot
 with his good launce *Ar.* ⁹*Ira-*
tus illico Gwalguanus, ense,
quo accinctus erat, irruit in
eum, &, ejusdem capite ampu-
tato, ad equos cum sociis re-

greditur. Insequuntur ita-
que Romani, partim pede,
partim equis, ut concivem
suum in legatos omni nisu dif-
fugientes vindicent Galfr. Mon.

¹ A venge Quincian, and
 quelle sire *Ar.* ² The *Ar.*

³ Al clene he to claf *Ar.*

⁴ Quincian *Ar.* ⁵ For he

seide, but yilpyng and bost
 with Brutons is *Ar.* ⁶ Ywot

Ar. ⁷ Al thogh they *Ar.*

Hii

Hii turnde agen, & ech of hem atte leste one slou.
 Ac euere þe Romeyns after sywede vaste ynouȝ.
 So þat þer com out of an wode, as yt was byspeke,
 An sýx þousend of Brutons, her felawes vorto awreke.
 Hii come out myȝd god eyr, and asaylede vaste
 The Romeyns, & monye slowe, & somme adoun caste.
 þo to Petreye, a gret Romeyn, þys tydyngge come,
 Ten þousend of hors y wrye myȝd hym sone he nome,
 Vorto helpe ys felawes, and þo oper ne myȝte be,
 Toward þe wode, fram ¹ wanne he come, þe Brutons gonne
 to fle.

Ac þo hii come among narwe heggys, hii stode agen anon,
 And turnde ² þe breste agen, & vaste slowe her fon.
 And þe Romeyns stod agen þo, þat þer was gret slaght.
³ þe erl of Oxenford ysey, þat þys fare nas noght,
 þulke, þat he mest truste to, as a gret companye,
 He bed hym sywy, trwelyche to do chyualerye.
 þo þys vorewarde was ymad, þoru out ⁴ ost he drou,
 And percede þe ost þoru out, and vaste aboute slou.
 So þat to her maýster Petreye he come,
 And vaste, as he adde yþoght, by þe necke hym nome,
 And ⁵ þraste hym adoun of ys hors, & hym sulue al so
⁶ Anowarde hym vel adoun, as he adde yþoght to do."

¹ Whennes that hii come,
Ar. ² Toward hure enemyes,
 & faste leyde hem on *Ar.* ³ So
 that the Erl of Oxenford seygh
 hure fare was noght, *Ar.* *Adeo*
ut in Codice etiam Harleyano
was pro nas forsitan sit repo-

nendum. ⁴ This ost *Ar.*
⁵ Wrast *Ar.* *quo modo etiam*
in Codice Harleyano potest
legi, si litteram primam
non pro þ sed pro p (nam
in hoc codice eodem modo
hæ litteræ effinguntur) ha-
beas.

þe Romeyns sturte ¹ to'' anon, her prince vp to rere,
 þe Brutons to helpe ² her alf, vaste aboute were.
 þer was pulþyng and ssouyng, and stroc mony one.
 So þat þe Brutons atte laste, among alle her fon,
 Myd strengþe ladde vorþ Petreye ³ her prince þere.
 þo þe Romeyns were wyþ out chef, dýscomfortd hii were
⁴ And to spradde hem her & þer, & þe opere after vaste,
 And slowe & despoylede, and to grounde hem caste,
 And astored hem myd her armes, & þe hexte alýue nome,
 So þat myd gret prowesse to ⁵ þe'' kyng Arture hii come.
⁶ Welle þat þe kyng was þo glad, vor he nuste her of nogt,
 Vayre gýftys he hym gef, and wel mo he adde yþogt.
 þe prysons amorwe to Parýs he sende,
 To holde in prison, & wyþ ⁷ hym god condut þer wende.
 þe Romeyns ⁸ þogte þys wel, and, as þe maystres hete,
 Vyftene þousend þer wende, þys prisons vorto mete.
 þo þe Brytons come myd þe prisons þar,
 þe Romeyns come agen hem al anonywar,
 And wende hem to ssende anon, ac þe Brutons agen stode,
 And defended hem wyle hii mygte myd wel stourdy mode.
 So þat, vor defaute of help, hii were al ney ýssend.
 Ac þo com þe duc of Peyto, as God adde þe grace ýsend,

beas. Fel doun euene vp
 hym, and ley ther bothe two
Ar.

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² Hure lord,
 faste *Ar.* ³ The Romeynes
 prince there *Ar.* ⁴ And dis-
 parpled her & ther, the Bru-

tones after hem faste, *Ar.*
⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ The kyng
 was tho glad y nogh, for he
 wiste ther of noght, *Ar.*
⁷ Hem *Ar.* ⁸ Thoght her
 on wel *Ar.*

Myd

Mȳd þre þousend hors ywrye, & þer of was ¹ y war.
 þo were þe Brutons glad ynou, & þen feld made bar,
 And þe kyng of ² Syrge, and mony oþer hii slowe,
 And louerdýnges, þat hii nome, to prison vaste hii drowe.
 þo hii to þe kýng come, and ssewed her stalwardhede,
 þe kýng wes þo glad ynou, vor hym þogte he nadde no drede.

LUCYÈ þe senatour in þogt was he sone,
 In such ard cas as hym vel, wat were best to done.
 So þat he þogte ³ stýllelyche, to a strong cyte wende,
 Vorte þe emperour hym mȳgte more poer sende.
 Kýng Arture was her of ýwar, and þogte, ar he slepe,
 Mȳd al ýs poer bý þe weý somwar hym ⁴ kepe.
 Vorþ he wende mȳd ýs ost, and þo he was ý come
 To þe stede, þer he wolde bee, cheueteýns he made somme;
 As þe kyng of Cornwayle, and of Scotlond al so,
 Of Norþweýe, of Denemarch, of Bruteýne, of Peyto,
 Of Gascoýne, of Normandýe, and erles gut þerto
 Of Cartoýs, of Oxenford, of Leycestre al so,
 And sýre Wawein ýs neuue, flour of corteýsýe.
 Hýs ost he delde a senene, and in ech companýe
 Vȳf þousend and vȳf hondred he dude of bachelerye
 And vȳfty and vȳue, and þat was vayr seyngnerýe.
 þe eýgteþe ost to hym sulue he adde þer wypoute,
 Sýx þousend and sýx hondred þere were in þulke route

¹ *Id est*, he was aware of
 the trap of the Romans.
Nam, "Guithardus etenim,
dux Pictavensium, comperto

"dolo cum tribus milibus
"advenerat," in Galfr. Mon.

² Sirie, *Ar.* ³ Priuely, *Ar.*

⁴ To kepe *Ar.*

And syxtý and syxe, and ýs dragon yrerð of golde,
 As in stede of ýs baner, and þanne, ȝýf eny wolde
 Come as to defense, þat ner wounded were,
 Oþer wery, as in a castel recetted were þere.
 þo he adde þýs ost ýset, he býgan hem rede,
 And in þýs bataýle to conseýly, and þes wordes seyde :
 “ Myn ¹ leue ² priue kýngtes, þat gode abbýþ euere y be,
 (“ Vor non, as wýde as ýs þe worl, me ne ssal ȝoure per ysey)
 “ ³ ȝe abbeþ y mad leuedý, Brutayne ȝoure owe lond,
 “ Of þrettene kýnedoms, þat we abbeþ in vr hond.
 “ Vor þey ȝe abbýþ nou výt ȝer ⁴ of bataýle vn vsed be,
 “ ȝut in ȝoure noble prowesse wel ⁵ durýnde ých ȝou se,
 “ þat so gret folc of Romeýns ȝe vewe mad fle
 “ In to þýs toun her býuore, þat sone wolleþ out te.
 “ And ȝe ssolle hem mete & quelle, as so monye ssepe, vor noȝt.
 “ Hii ⁶ wende wel her owe sleuþe on ȝou abbe y cagt,
 “ Wanne hii wolde of ȝoure lond so výtlyche abbe truage
 “ And noble men, as ȝe beþ, brýnge in so vyle seruage.
 “ Nuteþ hii noȝt þe chýualerye, þat ȝe abbeþ in France ýdo,
 “ In Norþweýe, & in Denemarch, & in oþer londes al so,
 “ Of her stýnkýnge seruýse þat ȝe abbýþ out ýbroȝt?
 “ þýs alue men ȝe ssolle wýnne wel lyȝtloker & vor noȝt.

¹ *Domestici mei, qui Brit-*
tanniam terdenorum regnorum
fecistis dominam, vestræ con-
gratulor probitati, quam nul-
latenus deficere, immo magis
vigere, considero &c. Galfr.
Mon. ² Preuede *Ar.* ³ Ye
 haueth wonne to Brutayne, that
 is our kynde lond, Thritty

grete kýngdomes, and beth
 nogh in oure hond *Ar.* ⁴ Out
 of bataille be, *Ar.* ⁵ Duryng
Ar. ⁶ *Sane orientalium gen-*
tium segnitiam in vobis esse
existimabant, dum patriam
vestram facere tributariam,
& vosmetipsos subjugare af-
fectarent Galfr. Mon.

“ ¹ Wuch

“¹ Wuch onouers wolde gou come, ȝyf ȝe hem ouercome?
 “ Vor we wolde anon þer after vorþ and wynne Rome.
 “ Of þe tresour, þat gou þanne² worþ,” ne of tounes, ne of
 tours,
 “ Ne of londes, non ende ne worþ, ne of opere honours.
 þet folc bi hete hym þo echon, prest vor to be
 To deye raþer in³ feld, þan þe batayle fle.
 Lucye þe cenatour al so in ys dede
 Ordeyned and radde ys ost, and þes wordes seyde:
 “ Myne noble kynȝtys, to was poer and heste
 “ Alle londys ssolle abouye⁴ to” by Weste and bi Este,
 “ þencheþ on ȝoure elderne, þat were of so noble myȝte,
 “⁵ Ne dradde noȝt to ssede her blod, vorto wynne her ryȝt,
 “ Ac euere fogte,⁶ as hem nere deþ yssape none,
 “ An so hii wonne her seȝnerye, & ouercome her fon,
 “ And adde seruage of al þe world, were yt nou wel bygonne,
 “ þat we lore þe nobleye, þat hii so noblyche wonne?
 An ern, in stede of ys baner, he sette vp of golde,
 And wende toward þys batayle, abyde woso wolde.
 Hii made her cry in eyþer half, & to gader esmyte,
 Wo nuste neuere of slaght, þere he myȝte ywyte.
⁷ þat folc vel doun to grounde aslawe, as leues doþ of tre,
 þe Brutons adde þe worse⁸ vorste, vor hem was loþ to fle.

¹ Gret honour yogh wole
 byfalle, the Romeynes and ye
 ouercome, For we wole a non
 ther after wende to wynne
 Rome *Ar.* ² Shul haue, *Ar.*

³ The feld, *Ar.* ⁴ Deest *Ar.*

⁵ That dradde *Ar.* ⁶ As
 thogh hem nere deth shape
 non, *Ar.* ⁷ The folk *Ar.*

⁸ Fight *pro* vorste in *Ar.*

þe kyng Bedwer was þere aslawe, vor þe kýng of Medes
him slou

Wyd an lance þoru þe þrote, as he toward him drou.

Kay ys felawe hym wolde awreke, kyng of Aungeo,

And to deþe was in þulke ¹ verde ywounded al so.

And gut, as a noble kýngt, hys felawe's body he nome,

And þer wyþ, ded as yt was, to þe kýnge's dragon come.

Ou! louerd! þe deol þat þer was of hem of Normandye,

þo hii seye her kýng aslawe, flour of chyualerye!

þe deol ek of hem of Aungeo, þo hii her kýng yseye

² Wyþ wounden to raunced so, þat he moste nede deye!

Hýrel, Bedwer's neuen, þo ys vncle aslawe he sey,

³ He verde as a wytles mon, yt was deol to be hym ney.

Mýd þre hondred hors ywrye in ys wod rage he wende

Vorto awreke ys ⁴ vncle deþ, as ver ys herte tende.

He perced ost and oþer, vorto he ysey ynou

þe kýngys baner of Medes, þat ys vncle slou.

So gret was ys herte, þat of deþ he ne rogte noþýng.

⁵ To grounde he smot he & ys, & aslowe þen kýng,

And þer, as ys vncle ded lay, ys foule caroýne he brogte,

And rýgt þer bý pece mele hakked yt al to nogte.

þo gradde he to ys felawes, mýd gode herte þere,

To legge on vaste þe luper men, þe wule hii ⁶ versse were.

¹ Route wounded Ar.

² With his woundes alto

raced, that Ar. ³ He ferd, as

he were wod, myght noman

come hym negh Ar. ⁴ Un-

cle's deth, so his herte tende

Ar. ⁵ But atte laste the

kyng Mede to his eynde he

broghte, And thuder, that

his vncle lay, his caroigne

broghte Ar. ⁶ Fresh Ar.

Vor þe prowessse þat he adde ydo, hii stured hem alle vaste,

¹ And fogte in eyþer alf, and þet folc adoun caste.

In þe Romeyns alf to deþe þer were ydo

þe kyng of Babyloýne, & þe kyng of Spayne al so,

And þe kyng of Medes, & tueye gret scenatours, & folc wyþ-
oute ende.

² In þys half þere were aslawe þe noble men and hende,

Syre Lyger duc of Babyloýne, & anoþer duc al so,

And þe erl of Salesbury, and of ³ Cýcestre þerto;

And also þe erl of Baþe, so þat þoru þys cas

þe compaynye ⁴ aþes half muche aneþered was.

þo com þe kyng of Brutayne, & syre Waweýn þe hende,

Mýd her nywe ost al ⁵ verss, & stured hem in ech ende;

So þat þer were among hem þere to deþe y do

A gret duc, and tuo þousend, and oþer mýd al so.

⁶ þe" kyng Howwel, & syre Waweýn, ⁷ þat" so gode bodyes
were,

⁸ Euere hii were ylych verss, & slowe here & þere.

Bote hii som mon brogte adoun, newe dundes hii smýte.

Weþer of hem betere were, ⁹ strong yt was to wýte.

Syre Waweýn wýlnede euere mýd al ys mygte

Mýd Lucýe þe scenatour in bataýle to fygte.

¹⁰ Lucýe ne wýlnede naþemo, noþyng so muche alonde,

As to fygte mýd a such kyngt, hym sulue vorto fonde.

¹ So that ther was in ai-
ther side much folc doun caste

Ar. ² In Brutones side *Ar.*

³ Cheþtre *Ar.* ⁴ Of Bru-

tones half much a peired was

Ar. ⁵ Fressh *Ar.* ⁶ Deest *Ar.*

⁷ Omittit *Ar.* ⁸ That place

hii made whar hii come, and
stured her and there *Ar.*

⁹ Wonder it *Ar.* ¹⁰ Lucie

welnde also no thyng more in

londe, Than forto fight with

sire Wawayn hym self forto

fonde *Ar.*

So þat hii mette hem þer, boþe hii were wel vawe.

¹ þer were duntēs arygt, and suerdes wel ydrawe.

þe Romeyns come to her mayster sone, to helpe hem in such
cas,

So þycke, þat syre Waweyn ney ybrogt to grounde was.

þe kyng Arture yt vnder zet, and come sone in astotunde.

“Wat do ² ge,” he seyde, “syre kyngtys? Quelleþ on to
grounde.

“Wy lete ge ³ þys alue men þus longe alýue go?

“þencheþ on þe bataýles, þat ge abbyþ ar þys y do,

“On vr elderne, þat þys wrecches ⁴ worrede myd vnrygte,

“On vre franchýse, þat hii wolde býnyme vs, gyf hii mygte.

“Ne lateþ none alýue go, to grounde smýteþ goure fon.

Syre Calýbourne ys suerd he býgan to ssake anon,

And slou to grounde her & þer, ac he ne smot nogt one,

þat he ne slou hym oþer ys hors, &, among hem echon,

þe kyng of Lýbye & of Bytýnie hym sulf he gan quelle

Myd Calýbourne, & sende her heþene soulýs to helle.

þe Brutons, as hii versse were, to grounde þo slowe,

And þe Romeyns in her alf vaste ek agen drowe.

Lucye, to hardý ys men, prýkede her and þer,

And býgonne as anywe bataýle rygt as hii versse were.

Morond, erl of Gloucestre, myd ys ost bý syde

In an valeýe houede, þe endýnge vorto abyde.

Atte laste myd ys versse volc to hem he come þar,

And býclosede ⁵ þys Romeyns bý býnde anonýwar.

¹ Duntēs þer were grete y | knyghtes alle? quelleth *Ar.*
smyte of sweordes that were | ² Thes halue men *Ar.* ⁴ Wer-
drawe *Ar.* ² Ye nogh my | red *Ar.* ⁵ The *Ar.*

þo were þe Brutons al aboue, hii slowe þo to grounde
 3e mony þousend of þe Romeyns in a lutel stounde.
 þe ¹scenatour was wylþ a sper Lucye þoru ysmýte.
 þo adde þe Brutons þe maystrye al býgyte,
 þe Romeyns, þat mygte of scapye, flowe vaste sone,
 And þe Brutons after, vorte hii were alle ouercome.
²Armes hii adde þere & hors, & alle rychesse y nou.
 þe kyng, þo hal þys was ydo, toward reste drou,
 And let þe bodyes of ys men, þat aslawe were,
 Gadery out and burye noblyche ynou þere.
 Kyngys in to her owe londe he let lede al so,
 As Bedwer in to Normandie, and Kay to Aungoe,
 And anoþer in to Flandres, and oþere of þe route
 Kyngtys he let burye in abbeyes þer aboute.
 Men bysyde of þe lond he het to burye ys fon.
 Vor he ne kepte vor reuþe, þat þer wer vnbured non.
 Ac Lucye's body he sende ³hym to Rome,
 And bed hem, þat her maystre's body vor ys truage nome,
 And þat he nolde neuere more oþer truage hem sende,
 Ac he wolde hym sulf gut þuder come, & seche hem in ech
 ende.

Grettoire batayle þan þys was, ych wene, nas neuere non,
 Bote yt were þulke of Troye, vor þer nas vneþe non
 Prince in al þe world, þat ne moste be þer, oþer sende
 Fram þe West side of þe world to þe Estmost ende.

¹ Cheuenteyn *Ar.* ² Ar- | hors and rychesse y nogh *Ar.*
 mure the Brutones hadde & ³ Hit *Ar.*

þo adde þe kȳng Arture ȳ wonne fram þe Westmost see
¹ Anon to þe mouns al þat lond, ar he come age,
 He þogte ² wynne al clene Rome, & al þe lond þer aboute.
 And vorto ³ passȳ vorþ þe mouns, he garkedede vaste is route.
 And as he was prest to do þulke noble dede,
 A messenger com fram þȳs lond, & nȳwe tȳdȳnge hym seyde,
 þat Modred, ȳs neuue, ⁴ wan he bȳtoc þȳs lond,
 Adde ȳnome ȳs kȳnedom clanlyche in ȳs hond,
 And ȳcrouned hym sulue kȳng, þoru þe quene rede,
 And huld hȳre in ⁵ spousbruche in vȳl flesse's dede.
 Alas! þe luper tricherye! hou myȳgte ⁶ be more?
 þo was þe kȳng Arture vol of sorwe and sore,
⁷ In wuch alf turne he nuste þo, weþer Est þe West,
 Ac to wreke hȳm ⁸ of ȳs luper neuue, ȳs herte ber euere best.
 þe veage toward Rome he ⁹ bȳleuede vor þȳs cheance,
 And þe kȳng Howel of Brutaine mȳd þe poer of France
 He ¹⁰ bȳleuede þer, towardȳ ȳs londes byȳgonde see,
 And hopede to wȳnne Rome, wanne he come eft age.
 Mȳd þe poer of þȳs londe hȳderward he drou,
 And mȳd ¹¹ þe kynges here bȳsyde hȳm þogte ¹² er longe ȳnou.

¹ A non to the mountes to
 ward Rome non was hym a

yee, *Ar.* ² To wynne *Ar.*

³ Passe ouer the mountes, he
 grethed faste his route *Ar.*

⁴ Wham he bytoke *Ar.* ⁵ Spous-
 breche in vil lechores ded *Ar.*

⁶ Hit be *Ar.* ⁷ In whather

half tourne he myȳhte he
 nuste Est or West, *Ar.*

⁸ Of Mordred, his herte *Ar.*

⁹ Lefte *Ar.* ¹⁰ Bilefte, to
 kepe his londes ther by yonde
 the see *Ar.* ¹¹ — *dimisso*

Hoëlo, duce Armoricorum,
cum exercitu Galliarum, ut
partes illas pacificaret, con-
festim cum insulanis tantum-

modo regibus, eorumque ex-
ercitibus, Britanniam remea-
vit Galfr. Mon. ¹² Erst *Ar.*

Ac Modred, þe luþer suyke, þer býuore býsozte
 Chelryk kyng of Saxons, þat ¹ he hem help brozte,
 And he byhet hym and ys al Kent ver and ner,
 Al þat Hengýst adde wule ² wyþe kýnge's daye Vortýger:
 He býhet hym and ys also al Norþomberlond,
³ Al þat lond fram Humber anon into Scotlond.
⁴ þo þat eygte hondred ssýpes into þys lond he brozte
⁵ Vol of Saracens yarmed, as he hym býsozte.
 Gret poer of Yrlond Modred hym ⁶ wan al so
 Of Pýcars, and of ech maner men þer to,
 þat he wuste þat no loue to þe kyng Arture bere.
 So þat eygte score þousend of hors ýwrye þer were
 In ⁷ ys ost, þo hii were gadered in þys cas,
 Wat of Cristýne, wat of payns, & al to mucche þat was.
 þo Arture myd ys poer ariuede in þys londe,
 Modred býgan myd ys ost agen vaste stonde.
 Atte hauene an batayle hii smýte myd gret mayn,
 þer was aslawe ⁸ þen hende kýngt þe noble syre Waweýn,
 And Aunsel þe kyng of Scotlond, and moný þousend also.
 Ac luþer Modred atte laste, þo al þys was ý do,
 Flen myd al ys poer to Wýnchestre vaste,
 So þat þe kyng Arture þe veld adde atte laste.
 þo ⁹ Guanwaur, þe luþer quene, hurde of þys cas,
 Fram Euerwyk to Carleon heo flen myd quyc pas,

¹ He som help hym broght,
Ar. ² By kýnge's *Ar.* ³ And
 the lond toward Humber *Ar.*
⁴ So that vi. hundred shipes
Ar. at Galfridus Mon. plane
ut Codex Harleyanus. ⁵ Ful

of mysbileued men, as he *Ar.*

⁶ Gat also *Ar.* ⁷ This ost,
 whan hii *Ar.* ⁸ The curteys
 knyght Walwayn *Ar.* ⁹ Go-
 noure, *Ar.*

And bi com nonne þer, to lȳbbe in chaste lȳue.
¹ Som wat heo was er adrad, ar heo hȳede so blyue.
 Heo ne hȳede nogt agen ȳre louerd, to wolcome hym to londe.
² Gut ȳre was betere nonne be, þan come vnder ȳs honde.
 þo kȳng Arture adde ȳbured ȳs folc þat ded was,
 He sywed after þe traȳtor myd wel quyc pas.
 þe ssrewe ³ garked ȳs ost, and agen hȳm com,
 And wȳpout Wȳnchestre anoper bataȳle he nom.
 þer hii dude sorwe ȳnou, and slowe to grounde vaste,
 Ac þe traȳtor was ⁴ bȳneþe, and fleu atte laste
 To Cornwaȳle myd god eȳr, he ne dorste no ner abyde.
 þer he gadered hȳm nȳwe ost, aboute in eche sȳde,
 So þat he adde ⁵ vnder al, myd þat hȳm bȳleued er,
 Sȳxtȳ þousend hors ⁶ ȳ wrȳe, al to muche was þer.
 Hys ost he ⁷ dȳgte suyþe wel, al hou ȳt ssolde be,
 And suor he wolde raþer deȳe, þan euer eft to fle.
 Kȳng Arture was angȳsous ⁸ in ȳs companȳe,
 þat þe luþer traȳtor adde of scaped hȳm so tuȳe.
 He sywed hym myd ȳs folc to Cornwaȳle vaste,
 Bȳsyde þe water of Camble hii mete ⁹ hem" atte laste.
 þer hii smȳte an bataȳle deol uol ȳ nou,
 þat deol ȳt was so muche folc in eyþer sȳde me slou.
 Vor þer ne bȳleued in noþer sȳde none heȳ mon vnneþe,
 Kȳng, ne duc, ne oþer, þat nas ȳbrogt to deþe.

¹ A gast heo was to religion, er heo highed so blyue.
 Heo ne yede a yenst hure lord,
Ar. ² Beter hure thoghte
 nonne to be, than to come, *Ar.*
³ Yut ordeȳned his ost, *Ar.*

⁴ Ouercome, and flegh, *Ar.*
⁵ Under hym, with that hym
 leuede er, *Ar.* ⁶ Heled, alto
Ar. ⁷ Gan a raye faste, hugh
 hit sholde be, *Ar.* ⁸ And his
Ar. ⁹ Deest *Ar.*

Ac Modred þe traytor adde more folc ¹ of" y nou.
 þo þe kyng Arture ysey, þat me ys folc so slou,
 And þe kyng of Denemarch was aslawe, & þe kyng also
 Of Norþweye, & of ys oper men mony þousend þerto,
 And he sey, þat ys fon stode euere agen vaste,
 To þe lutel folc þat he adde he spec atte laste.
 " ² Sulle, he seyde, " vr lyf dere ar we be ded,
 " ³ And ychelle sulle myn dere ynou, wanne þer nys oper red,
 " Abbe ych slawe þe false suyke, þe luper traytor,
 " Hyt worþ me þanne vorto deye gret joye & honour.
 He drou Calyborne ys suerd; and in eyther syde slou,
 And vorte he to þe traytor com, made hym wey gode ynou.
 He hente of verst ys helm, and suppe myd wylle god
 Anne stroc he gef hym, myd wel stourdy mod,
 And þoru haubert and ys coler, þat nere noþyng souple,
 He smot of ys heued as lygtlyche as yt were a lute stouple.
 þat was ys laste chyualerye, þa vayre ended ynou.
 Vor þe folc so þycke com, þe wule he her louerd slou,
 Aboute hym in ech alf, þat among so mony fon
 He aueng deþe's wounde, and wonder nas yt none.
 Ac ouercome vas he nozt, þey ys wunden dedlych were,
 þo ⁴ he adde ys laste chyualerye þus noblyche ydo þere,
 He ⁵ gef þe croune of þys lond þe noble Constantyn,
 (þe erl Cadore's sone of ⁶ of" Cornwayle,) þat was ys cosyn

¹ *Deest Ar.* ² "Selle we,"
 he seyde *Ar.* ³ Myn shal be
 dere bought, ther is non othur
 red *Ar.* ⁴ *Sed & inclitus ille*
Arturus rex lethaliter vulne-
ratus est, qui illinc ad sanan-
da vulnera sua in insula Aval-

lonis advectus, cognato suo
Constantino, & filio Cadoris
ducis Cornubiæ, diadema Bri-
tanniæ concessit anno ab incar-
natione Domini D. XLII. Galfr.
Mon. s Desunt hîc bina folia
in Ar. in quibus, præter alia,

And let hym lede in to an yle, vorto hele ys wounde,
 And deyde as þe beste kȳngt, þat me wuste euere yfounde.
 Ac naþeles þe Brutons and þe Cornewalysse of ys kundē
 Wenȳþ he be alyue gut, & abbeþ hym gut in mynde,
 þat he be to comene gut, to wȳnne aȳen þys lond.
 And nogt, vor þan at Glastȳnbury ys bones supþe me wond,
 And þer touore þe heye wened, amȳdde þe quer ywȳs,
 As ys bones lyggeþ, ys tumber wel vayr ys.
 In vȳf hondred ȳer of grace, and fourty and tuo,
 In þys manere in Cornwale to deþe he was y do.

CONSTANTȳN was þo kȳng, after þe kȳng Arture.
 ' As þe Saxons sette aȳen hym, þe wule hii mȳgte dure;
 And Modrede's tueye sonēs, þe wule hii dorste abyde,
 Ac Constantȳn ² hem to drof, eyþer in ys syde,
 þen anne in to Wȳnchestre, and þer wȳþ sorwe y nou,
 In chyrche to vore þe heye wened Constantȳn hym slou.
 þe oþer flen to Londone, and þoru Constantȳn al so
 þer by uore þe heye wened to deþe he was y do.
 Conan ³ slou supþe Constantȳn in þe þȳrdde ȳere.
 At Stonhenghe he was yburȳd, as ys elderne were.

*oratione solutā quædam con-
 cepta fuisse è fragmento quo-
 dam plane colligo. ⁶ Dele.*

¹ The Saxones werred faste
 on hym, *Ar. omisso as, pro quo
 ac malim.* ² Aboute hem drof
 ech on his side, And wente to
 Wynchestre, *Ar.* ³ *Exinde tertio*

*anno interfectus est [Constan-
 tinus] à Conano, & juxta
 Utherpendragon infra lapi-
 dum structuram sepultus fuit,
 quæ haud longe à Salesbiria
 mira arte composita Anglo-
 rum lingua Stanheng nuncu-
 patur Galfr. Mon.*

Seȳn

Seyn Dauyd deyde þer byuore, byssop of Walys,
 And þer he was vayre yburyd, in ys owe chyrche ywys.
 Constantyne's neuen Aurely was kyng þo,
 And leuede in ys kenedom tuo ger and nanmo.

VORTYPOR was þo kyng vour gere vnneþe.
 þe Saxons he brogte al byneþe, & mony on to deþe.

MALGO com þo after hym, þat þe vayroste kyng was,
 þat me wuste euere in þys lond, & al so þer nas
 Strengore mon non by ys day. vor he wan ek to þys londe
 þe syx yles þat beþ aboute, and heldys adde an honde,
 As Godlonde, and Orcadas, and al so Yrlonde,
 Norþweye, and Denemarch, and al so Yslonde.

CARYC was kyng after hym, þat stalworde mon was,
 Ac to prout he was & to fals, þat ssende þys londe alas!
 Vor þe Saxons & þe Englysse men were euere in þys londe,
 And adde agen þe Brutons euere worre an honde.
 þo hii seye þe falshede of þe kyng Carryc,
 Hii wende after ¹ Godmond, þat was kyng of Affryc,
 To helpe hem wyne þys londe, & by hete hym vayre ynou.
 þe kyng Godmond myd vayr ost hederward sone drou,
 And myd hondred þousend men, & sixty þousend þer to,
 He come here myd þe Saxons þe worre vor to do.

¹ Katerik Ar. ² Qui tunc in Hibernia erat, ut è Galfrido
 Monumetensi liquet.

þe Saxons, and ¹ þet grete folc, þat come so of Affryc,
 Asayled vaste þe Brutons, and her kyng Carryc.
 Monȳ bataȳle hii smȳte, & sȳwȳde vpe hȳm vaste,
 And fram toune to toune hȳm drȳue, so þat atte laste
 Hii drȳue hȳm to ² Cȳrencestre, & bȳsyged hȳm þer inne.
 þen toune hii barnde vpen hȳm, ar hii mȳgte ³ hȳm wynne.
 þer hii smȳte an bataȳle. suppe hii drȳue ywȳs
 Caryc ouer Seuerne Weste in to Walȳs.
 Vor þe ⁴ kunde men of þȳs londe recetted were þer
 Euere, wanne of strangemen ȳworred hii were.
 þet luþer heþene folc ⁵ varnde þo vaste,
 And ⁶ desturde al þȳs londe, and tounes adoun caste.
 Wat mȳd fure, wat mȳd suerd, hii destrude al þat hii founde.
 Hii ne sparede prest, ne chyrche, that hii ne broȳte to grounde.
 Hii, þat mȳgte of scapȳe, vaste flowe þere
 To Walȳs, and to Cornwaȳle, and hȳdde hem vor fere.
 þe erche bȳssop of Londone, and of Euerwȳk al so,
 þo hȳi seye, þat Cristendom to grounde was al ȳdo,
 And chȳrchen alle ȳcast ȳdoun, þe relȳkes hii nome ȳwȳs,
 þat hii adde of holȳ men, and flowe in to Walȳs.
 þe relȳkes nolde hii noȳt bȳleue, ac bere wȳþ hem vor fere.
 Vor raþer hii wolde ȳmartred be, þan hii ⁷ ȳperȳsed were.
 And into þe lasse Brutayne men flowe al so þȳcke,
 So þat here nas noȳt bȳleued, bote heþene folc and wȳcke.

¹ This much folc, *Ar.*

² Circetre *Ar.* *cum i. civitas*

passerum supra lin. ab ead. | ma-

nu. ³ Hit *Ar.* ⁴ Kynde *Ar.*

⁵ *Pro barnde. Nam brende in*

Ar. sed u pro b sæpissime in

vett. libris. ⁶ Destruyde *Ar.*

⁷ A peyred *Ar.*

So þat fram Norþ into þe Souþ no Cristendom nas,
 Ne fram Seuerne to þe Souþ see, ac pure heþenesse was.
 Alas! alas! þe god Arture, to ¹ ver he was þo.
 Hys deþ broȝte to þys lond muche sorwe and wo.

² **SAXONS** & þe Englysse, & her compaynye,
 Adde þo of þys londe al clene þe maystrye,
 And made hem kynges of þys lond, as hii adde byuore,
 Ac þe Brutons nadde so clene er neuere her poer uerlore.
 þe Saxons and þe Englysse in pes hulde þo
 Ech kyng ys kyndedom, þat hii dude er in wo.
 Syx kynges hii were some tyme, as of Kent, of Westsex,
 Of Estangle, of Norþomber, of þe Marche, of Estsex.
 In bygynnynge of þys boc me may rede, and nogt lye,
 Hou muche lond ech of hem adde to ys partye.
 þe verste kyng þat of Saxons was, was verst kyng of Kent
 Hengyst, þoru wan þys lond verst was yssend.
 Hyt was ³ eyȝte & fyfty ȝer after" Hengyste's kyndedom,
 Ar eny kyng of Saxons in Westsex com.
 Vor Hengyst was kyng fourty ȝer, & in þe eyȝte ȝere
 After ys deþ at ȝernemouþe aryued þer were
 Vyf ssypuol of Saxons, y armed wel y nou,
 Certyk het her cheuenteyn, þat to þys lond hem drou.
 Wel sene ȝer þer after, a duc, (þat wyde was couþ,)
 Y cluped Port, myd ys ost ⁴ atte hauene of Portesmouþ,

¹ Fer *Ar.* ² The Saxones *Ar.* ³ xlvi. yer after *Ar.*

⁴ Aryued at the hauene *Ar.*

And after Port, þat was ȝs name, þe hauene me clupeþ so.
 So þat her poer euere wax, þe Brutons ssame to do,
 And monȝ a bataȝle hii smyte. So þat atten ende
 þe Saxons wonne of þȝs lond al þe Souþ ende
 Euere by Souþe Temese fram Est into West.
 Certyk hii made þer kȝng, vor he was þerto best.
 Westsex hii clupede ȝs kȝnedom, as ge abbyþ yhurd ȝlome.
 þȝs was a lute byuore ar kyng Artur come.
 þe verste kȝng of Norþhomber in þe ȝer of grace byȝan
 Vyf hondred & seuene and fourty, ¹ as me telle can.
 After kȝng Arture yt was, and þo was Kynryc
 Noble kȝng of Westsex, after ȝs fadyr Certyc.
 Vor þo þe Englysse men adde in þȝs londe poer,
 Hii worrede Norþward, and wonne ver and ner.
 So þat hii wonne Homberlond, & a noble bachȝler,
 þat het Yde, hii made kȝng, þer nas naur þo ȝs per.
 He come of Woden þe olde louerd, as ² in teþe kne,
 þat þe ³ Saracens wenep, þat he a gret God be.
 Vor þulke Woden," þe grete louerd, sones adde þre,
 Weldeg, and Wȝgtleg, and Beldeg þat was so fre.
 Of Weldeg come þe kȝng of Kent, & þe kȝng of þe March of
 þe oþer.
 þe kȝng of Westsex & of Homber of þe þrydde, þat was her
 broþer.
 þulke Woden adde a wȝf, þat ycluped was dame Frye,
⁴ A Latyn dame Venus, as ȝchabbe ȝseyd nou tueȝe.

¹ As y wel telle can *Ar.*

he hadde be. This Woden

² In the tethe gre, *Ar.* ³ Mys-
bileued poeple wende, a God

Ar. ⁴ In Latyn *Ar.*

¹ þer uore þe Englysse clupede, after Woden, Wodnesday,
 þat ys day in þe wouke, and, after Frye, Fryday.
 Vor þe heþene Englysse men, þat mys byleued were þo,
 Byleuede, þat in heuene Godes hii were bo,
 And þat to tueye sterren, þat me such ylome
 Venus and Mercurys, hii wenep þat hii bycome.
 þe Saxons and þe Englysse come in to þys londe,
 As we seyþ, at otyme, as ych vnder stonde.
² Her londes supþe, þo hii mygte, hii delde as hii couþe,
 þe Englysse þe Norþalf, þe Saxons by Souþe,
 As Estsex and Myddelsex, and Souþ ward al Souþsex,
 And al West by ³ Norþe Temese, al clene Westsex.
 þe Englysse Norþuolc & Souþuolc adde al in her hond,
 And al West by Norþe Temese, & al Norþ Humberlond.
 And þe kynges of Westsex lengost gonne dure,
 And alle þe opere wonne to hem, as ge ssolle her after yhure.
 þe Brutons, as ychabbe ytold," in West Walys were,
 And worrede euere, as hii dorste, fram gere to gere.
 Vor by þe kynges daye Chenlyng, þat was Kenryke's sone,
 Hii dude hem verrore in þys londe, ⁴ þat hii were in wone,
 And wonne þe myddel of þys lond to Bedeford anon,
 And strengþede casteles and astoryde monyon.

¹ The olde Saxones, after
 Woden, cleped Wodnesday,
 And, after dame Frye, his
 wiff, me clepede the Friday
Ar. ² Hure lond suthe by
 twixt hem hii delde as hii
 couthe, The Englyssh in the
 Northhalf, & the Saxones by

Southe. And nempned the
 contreys after hem, & lefte the
 names olde. As of Estsaxo-
 nes Estsex, of Estenglyssh
 Estangle, that is yit holde.
 The Brutons, as y haue told,
Ar. ³ F. Souþe. ⁴ Than hit
 was hure wone, *Ar.*

So þat at Bedeforde come þe Saxons,
 And smyte an batayle, and to dryue þe Brutons,
 And nome þre of her gode castles, þat stronge were al so,
 Eynesham, and Bunsyntone, and Aylesbur þerto.
 So þat Cristyndom was al clene ver lore,
 And heþenesse ¹ in to al þys lond, as ych seyde byuore,"
 And yt laste aboute an fourty ger, forte Seynt Austyn com,
 And þoru Seyn Gregory þe pope brogte Cristendom.

SEYNT Austyn myd ys felawes to Engeland com
 þoru þe pope Seyn Gregory to prechy Cristendom.
 Mauryce was þo emperour, & þer adde ybe byuore
 Vyfty emperours at Rome, ² suppe God was ybore.
 In þe vyf hondred ger of Grace Seynt Austyn hyder com
 And four score ger and tuo, to prechy Cristendom.
 And aboute an hondred ger yt was, and fyfty al so,
 After þat Saxons & Englysse verst come þys lond to.
 And after kyng Arture's deþe aboute an fourty ger
 þat so noble kyng was of þys lond, as we abbeþ ytold er.
 þo Seynt Austyn & ys felawes þus come to þys lond,
³ Wyppe was kyng of þe Marche, & ⁴ Adelfred" of Homber-
 lond;

Celryc was kyng of Westsex, & of Kent kyng ⁵ Aylbrygt.
 And of Estsex ys syster sone, þat me clupede kyng ⁶ Sebrygt.
 Wel an fourty holy men, and monekes ⁷ echone,
 Seynt Austyn adde wyþ hym, & þo nas he nogt ⁸ one.

¹ In to al this lond by-
 gan to catche more, *Ar.*
² *Ar* God *Ar.* ³ With *Ar.*
⁴ *Deest in Ar.* ⁵ Etherbert

[*l.* Ethelbert] *Ar.* ⁶ Se-
 bert *Ar.* ⁷ Negh echone, *Ar.*
⁸ Al one *Ar.*

þo hii come in to þys lond, to kyng ¹ Aylbrýgt of Kent,
 In was lond hii aryuede, hii sende her maundement,
 þat hii were fram Rome ycome, in heý message ywýs,
 þat so gret joye ssolde turne, to hym and alle hýs,
 And to joye wyþouten ende, gýf he hem vnder stode.
 “ Suche býhestes,” quaf þe kyng, “ me þencheþ beþ gode,
 “ Lateþ hem vynde mete ýnou, & þat hii abbeþ nede to,
 “ Forte ychabbe wyþ hem yspoke, ² & wyte wat hii wollep do.
 For þe kyng wel vnderstod of þe Cristýndom,
 þat by uore hem was in þys lond, & þoru hem to grounde com.
 So þat atte laste, (wat halt yt to telle longe?)
 þe kyng býgan and ys folc Cristendom auonge.
 And of Seynte Peter & Seyn Poul an chýrche he lete rere
³ In Est ende of Kanterbury, þat þe ⁴ chef chýrche were.
 Erchebýssop of Kanterbury Seynt Austýn was þer
 þe verst þat euer was, vor at London þe se was er.
 þo com Merlyne's word to soþe atte ende,
⁵ þat þe dýgne se to Kanterbury of London ssolde wende.
 At Roucestre, þat ys ⁶ toun in Kent of grete fame,
 Seynt Austyn made a býssop, Seyn Juste was ys name,
 þat was a monek ys felawe. So þat atte fyn
⁷ Sýn Juste was þe vorste býssop, after Seynt Austýn.

¹ Ethelbert *Ar.* ² To wite
Ar. ³ In the Est *Ar.* ⁴

Hed churches were *Ar. sed*
alibi in eod. Codice (in quo
sane multæ, minus necessariae,
repetitiones) hed churche were.

⁵ That the se of London to

Canterbury sholde wende *Ar.*

sed alibi the dignyte *pro* the
 se. ⁶ A toun *Ar.* ⁷ Seynt

Just was Erchebisshop made
 after Seynt Austyne. Seynt
 Mellyt *Ar.*

SEYN Mellyt þe holy mon in to Estsex wende
 To prechý þer Cristýndom, as Seynt Austyn hym sende.
 Nou departeþ ¹ euere² Temese Estsex fram Kent.
² Sebrýgt he vond þer kyng, þo he was þuder ywent.
 He turnde hym to Cristýndom, and þe contreye al so.
 Sebrýgt and þe kyng of Kent, þo al þýs was ý do,
 At Londone of Seyn Poul an heued chýrche gonne rere,
 þat gut ys, and Seyn Mellyt ³ byssop made þere.
 þus come, lo! Cristendom agen in to þýs londe
 Among þe heþene Saxons, as ych vnder stonde.
 Ac among þe Brutons in Walýs was euere Cristendom
 Supþe yt verst þoru þe kyng Lucie hyder come.
 And þat was býuore þulke týme four hondred ȝer,
 An aboute an four & tuenty, as we abbeþ ýwryte er.
 þe pope Eleuþery, þat sende verst hyder Cristendom,
 Was þe ⁴ þretteþe pope, þat after Seynte Peter com.
 þe decýples, þat he hyder sende, Cristendom to brýnge,
⁵ Býleuede in a wýldernesse, after her prechýnge,
 þat me clepuþ nou Glastýnbury, þat desert was þo.
 And þer hii býcome monekes, and nome to hem mo,
 And þer myd her owe honde hii rerde hem verst ⁶ anchyrche
 Of herdles, and of ⁷ ȝerden, as hii couþe wurche.

¹ Deest *Ar.* ² Sebert *Ar.*

³ Hii made bishop there *Ar.*

⁴ xiii. *Ar.* ⁵ By leste *Ar.*

⁶ *Cujus figuram cum alibi,*

tum etiam in libro præclaro

(ab Antiquario pererudito

*contexto, &) non ita pridem
 à nobis edito, cui tit. The
 History and Antiquities of
 Glastonbury, videsis. 7 Yer-
 des, Ar.*

And þat was þe verste church, þat in Engeland come,
 And þe aldest hous al so, as in lawe of Cristendom.
 þeruore me yt aþ euere ycluped, þe olde chýrche, ýwýs.
 Moný ys þe ¹ holy halwe, þat her ý bured ys,
² Nour so moný in Engelande, to soþe ých segge þys.
³ And, as me aþ wule ýsed, grettore oþ non nýs,
 þan by þe olde chýrche of Glastynburý, wo so dep oþ nome."
 For þer was chýrche four hondred ȝer, ar Seynt Austyn hý-
 der come,

And Seyn Patryc was þer monek, & abbeþ supþe þer,
 ȝe ar Seynt Austyn come mo þan an hondred ȝer.
 And in ryȝt alf of þe wened ýbured he was þer al so.
 Sýx score ȝer and on he was old, ar dep hym come to.
⁴ þus was at Glastýnburý verst ýholde vp Cristendom,
 And supþe nou, after þat þet folc of Englyss hýder come,
 And þe Brutons were ýdryue al in to West Walýs,
 Hii helde vorþ þer Cristendom, and býssopes ýwys.
 So þat, þo Seynt' Austyn com among hem, he vond
 Byssopes and monekes moný on in þe lond.
 In þe cýtý of Bangor a gret hous þer was,
 þat were vnder ⁵ sene cellen, and þer of non nas

¹ Good seynt, *Ar.* ² No-
 whar *Ar.* ³ And, as me by
 olde daye seide, gretter oth
 was [*f. nas*] holde, Than by
 the olde church of Glastyn-
 bury ho so swery wolde *Ar.*
⁴ Thus alther furst at Gla-
 stynbury sprong vp Cristen-
 dom, That sutthe that En-
 glissh men to this londe com,
 That hethene were, the Bru-

tons dryue in to West Walis,
 And ther hii hulde hure Chri-
 stendom, that furst they toke
 ywis. So that whan Seynt
Ar. ⁵ vii. celles, & ther of
 non ther nas, That ccc.
 monekes nere inne oþur mo-
 And alle lyuede by hure
 swynch, loke where they do
 now so. Dinoc het *Ar.*

þat

þat þre hondred monekes ¹ were inne, oþer mo.
 And alle leuede by her suenche, loke gýf hem nas wo.
 Dynok het her abbod, þat gret clerc was and god.
 Seynt Austyn was wel y payd, þat her býlyue was so god.
 And napeles he hem en yoynede ² bocsomnesse do
 To þe herchebýssop of Kanterbury, & to Englysse men also,
³ And among Englysse men vorþ myd hym Cristendom to
 amende,
 And wende aboute and prechý, as þe pope hem sende.
 þe býssop hym ansuerede, and þe abbod Dýnok,
 Al myd grete resons and wyt of her boc,
 þat wan hii adde hem sulue erchebýssop and kýng,
 Hii ne ssolde to Englysse men abue rýgt noþýng.
 For þe folc of Englyss & Saxons ⁴ her lond hem býnome,
 And her kunde erytage, myd trayson & suyke dome.
 War vor hii nolde for non man nanmore to hem wende,
 þan to so mony houndes, bote yt were hem to ssende.
 “ gýf ge nolle,” quap Seyn Austyn, “ wyt goure breþeren in
 peys be,
 “ þat beþ, as ge wýteþ wel, Crýstyne as wel as ge;
 “ And gýf ge nolle Englysse men Gode’s lawe teche,
 “ And vorþ myd me among hem Cristendom preche,
 “ goure fon ssolle her poer ⁵ amoryg zou wýde reche,
 “ And brýng zou to deþe monyon, & þat ssal be goure wreche.

¹ *Malim, nere, ut in Ar.*

² Obedience to do *Ar.* ³ And go with hym to Englyssh men, Cristendom to mende, And helpe hym preche amonges hem, as the pope hem sende. The bisshopes hym

answerede, *Ar.* ⁴ Hure lond hem hadde bynome With gile, and hure heritage with falsnesse and tresone. Wherfor hii wolde *Ar.* ⁵ Among *Ar.*

After Seynt Austýne's daye to soþe com al þys,
Ac þe wule he was alýue nogt, as ȝe now e yhure ýwýs.

KYNG ¹ Aylbrygt gret despýt adde in ýs þogt,
þat þe Brutons nolde Seynt Austýn abue nogt.
² Edelfred, þat was kýng of Norþhumberlond,
He entýced and oþer kýnges here of þys lond,
þat hii wende to Walys, and þe Brutons ssende.
þe kýnges, þo hii preste were, myd poer þuder wende.
At þe cýtý of Cayrleon þe Brutons ost þer was.
þe Englýsse anon þuderward drowe myd god pas.
A gret bataýle hii smýte þer in a lute stounde.
Ac Brocmayl, duc of Brutons, was þer ýbrogt to grounde.
Vor he flen and býleuede ys folc, þo he nuste oþer won,
Somme aslawe and somme ýwounded, and bý neþe echon.
Nou were þer ý come fram Bangor monekes monýon,
In vastyng and in orýsons, to ³ bydde agen her fon.
And ermytes and monekes of oþer ⁴ studes býsyde
Bede God, þat þe Brutons þe maystrye moste býtýde.
þo such folc of þys holymen kýng Elfred ýsey,
Sýtte and ⁵ bydde vor her folc, and crye ⁶ on God an heý,
And me sede hým, þat hii ⁷ dede vor þe Brutons echon :
“ ȝyf yt so ýs,” quap þe kýng “ þat hii ⁸ byddýþ vor vr fon,
“ þanne vȝgteþ hii agen vs, as muche as ýs her mȝgte,
“ Myd her armes to God, þey hii myd ⁹ arme ne fȝgte.

¹ Ethelbert *Ar.* ² Elfrid,
Ar. ³ Praye *Ar.* ⁴ Houses
bisyde. And prayed to God
the Brutones *Ar.* ⁵ Praye
Ar. ⁶ To *Ar.* ⁷ Prayed

for hure Brutones *Ar.* ⁸ Pray-
eth for oure fon *Ar.* ⁹ Armes
Ar. sed alibi wepne in eod.
Codice.

" Sleþ hem ¹ hastelyche anon, as oure pure fon.
 þat folc was ² prest þer to, & to grounde slowe anon.
 So þat tuelf hondred holymen hii martrede þere,
 And aboute an vyfty of scapede alýue vor fere.
 þo was yt to hem ýcome, þat Seynt Austyn hem seyde,
 And nozt vor þan God dude wreche ³ of þe luper dede.
 Vor þe kyng Edelfred wende toward Bangor þo,
 Vorto destrue þe Brutons ⁴ wat he founde mo.
 þe ⁵ louerdýnges, þat þer were, zarked hem anon,
 And ordeynede her ost, to fygte agen her fon.
 Ac Bledder duc of Cornwayle, and Cadwan of Walýs,
 And Margad anoþer duc, and her poer al ý wýs,
 And oþer Brutons þat þer were, smýte hem out anon,
 And a batayle strong ýnou smýte myd her fon.
 So þat mo þan ten þousend were of Englyss ybrozt to deþe,
 And þe kyng ⁶ Adelfred was wounded, þat of scapede alýue
 vneþe.

Ac Bledder, duc of Cornwayle, aslawe was þo,
 And moný of þe Brutons, ⁷ & of þe Englysse wel mo.
 And þe Englysse flowe ouer Homber vaste.
 A parlement þe Brutons made ⁸ þo atte laste,
 To chese hem anywe kyng, & chose þe duc Cadwan,
 þat was among hem alle þe stalwordoste man.

¹ Boldely a non, *Ar.*

² Redy *Ar.* ³ Of thulke luther dede. Forth went kyng Elfrid of Northumberlande tho To Bangor, to destruye *Ar.* ⁴ That *Ar.* ⁵ Lordes

of the Brutones raide hem anon, *Ar.* *Sed alibi* zarkedede *pro* raide in *cod.* *Cod.* ⁶ Elfrid *Ar.* ⁷ Ac of *Ar.* ⁸ Att Chestre atte laste, *Ar.*

þo þys kyng ycrouned was, hii ¹ garked hem anon,
 And into Humberlond sywede ² vp her fon.
 þe kyng ³ Edelfred & ys alf myd þe poer of ys londe
 And of oþer londes ⁴ gare was agen hem vorto stonde.
 þo hii were to þys batayle prest in eyþer syde,
 Some ⁵ frend hym byþogte bet, & bytuene hem gonne ryde,
 And made acord bytuene hem, þat þe kyng ⁶ adde al þat lond
⁷ Eldelfred bygonde Humber, alclene in ys hond,
 And kyng Cadwan by Souþe Humber, & ys owe lond Walys.
 þoru hard op & god ostage yconfermed was al þys.
 Bytuene þys tueye kynges anon so gret loue þer was,
 þat her noþer nadde no þyng, þat to oþere's wylle nas.
 Bytuene þe kyng ⁸ Edelfred, and þe quene ys wyf,
 þer after, þoru ⁹ luþer wylle, wax a gret stryf,
 þat þe kyng hyre drof away, myd chylde as heo was,
 And nom hym anoþer wyf, and þat was a deluol cas.
 To þe kyng Cadwan þe quene wende þo,
 And cryde on hym, þat he ¹⁰ ssolde helpe hyre in yr wo.
 þe kyng Cadwan was þo aboute, bytuene hyre & ¹¹ kyng
 To make acord by ys poer, and ne mygte vor noþyng.
 So þat he hulde vorþ þe quene in ys owe house,
 Myd chylde helples as heo was, myd þe quene ys owe spouse,
 þat myd chylde was as wel as heo, and of one tyme ney.
 And þo þe chyldren were ybore, þat of ¹² kunne were so hey,

¹ Raide hem *Ar.*³ Up-pon *Ar.* ³ Elfrid in his sidewith power of *Ar.* ⁴ Redy*Ar.* ⁵ Men *Ar.* ⁶ Sholdhaue *Ar.* ⁷ Elfrid *Ar.* ⁸ El-frid, *Ar.* ⁹ Yuel will, *Ar.*¹⁰ Wolde *Ar.* ¹¹ The kyng*Ar.* ¹² Kynne *Ar.*

Hii clupede Edwyne þe þynge's sone of Norþomberlond,
 And Cadwal þe kynges sone here of þys Souþlond.
 þys chyldren were wel zonge ysend to Salomon, þe kyng
 Of þe lasse Brutayne, to gode norýsýnge.
 þe kyng hem norýsede wel, & wyþ hym priue ynou,
 And þo hii to elde come, to armes hem drou.
 So þat stalward¹ kyntes boþe hii býcome,
² And wel yfounded in armes, & in bataýles y lome.

EYLBRYT kyng of Kent, þat þoru Seynt Austyn nom,
 As we abbýþ ýtol býuore, verst Cristendom,
 Deyde as in þe ger of grace sýx hondred & sýxtýne,
 And he was syxe and výtý ger kyng, as ých wene.
 ýs sone was kyng after hym, Edbald was ys name,
 þat spoused³ supþe ýs fader wýf, hym to grete ssame,
 And ne tolde nogt of ys Cristendom. And þe kyng Sebrygt
 also,

Crýstýne kyng of Estsex, þo he was of lyue ýdo,
 Hys þre sones he býleuede eýrs of ýs kýnedom,
 þat were panýs alle þre, and agen Cristýndom.
 So þat hii come at one týme, in her luper rede,
 To seýnt Mellýt, býssop of þe lond, & at ýs masse hym seyde,
 “ Syre býssop, ⁴ wy ne gýfst us of þýne wyte brede,
 “ þat þou est þe sulf at þý masse, in þýne vayre wede,

¹ Knightes *Ar.* ² And a
 saied in armes ofte were and
 lome, Ethelbert kyng of Kent,
Ar. ³ His owene fader wif,

Ar. ⁴ Whi nelt þou yiue vs
 of thulke white brede, That
 thou etyst ech day in thyne
 white wede, *Ar.*

" þat þou geue our ¹ fader wyle, & gut gýfst þat folc al so?
 " gýf ge ² wolde," quap þe byssop, "as ³ goure fader dude, do,
 " And be yuolled in holy water, & myd Cristendom monge,
 " ge mowe sauflyche þet holý þýng, as he dude, auonge.
 " We nolleþ nogt," quap þys oþer, " þey þou vs bede,
 " Wyþýnne þulke water come, for we nabbep non nede,
 " Ac in alle manere we wolleþ ete of þulke brede.
 þe byssop yt nolde grante, ac ⁴ outlych yt wýþ seýde
 To gýue hym þulke holý þýng, bote hii y uolled.
 Hii suore anon in wrappe, gýf he ensentan nere,
 To gýue hym so lute þýng, & bote he yt hem geue,
 þat he ne ssolde in her lond in non manere býleue,
 Hii dryue hym out of her lond, & ys men echon.
 þys holy man, seyn Mellýt, to Kent wende anon,
 To speke wýþ þe erchebyssop Laurence, and al so
 Wýþ yuste, byssop of Rouchestre, wat were best to do.
⁵ Seynt Austýn nou al bý ys daye to erchybyssop nom
 Laurence, & made after hym to susteyne Cristendom."
 þys þre byssopes bytueýne hem nom hem þus to rede,
 þat hii mygte in her owe lond holýor lyf lede,
 And wýþoute ⁶ perýl sykerore, þan to býleue þere
 Among mys býlyuede men, bote þer ený bote were.
 So þat seýnt Juste & seýnt Mellýt to France þo wende,
 And lete þe luther men ⁷ yworþþe vorte God yt wolde amende.

¹ Faderes, & yit yiuest þe
 And peple also? *Ar.* ² Wol-
 leth, *Ar.* ³ Other haueth, do,
 Be fulled with colde water,
 and the fey a vonge, Then
 mowe ye party of that bred
 take oþer amonge, *Ar.* ⁴ Ot.

terly *Ar.* *Vide supra, pag. 66.*

⁵ *Bina hæc metra omittit Ar.*

⁶ Perile sikeror to be there
 Than a mong hethene men,
 fort hit a mended were *Ar.*

⁷ Worthe *Ar.*

¹ Ac nas noȝt long þer after, aþ God wreche of hem nome,
 þat, after her fader deþe, worrede Cristendom.
 For aȝen þat folc of Westsex hii nome an bataȝle,
 And þere hii were ybroȝt to grounde, & ² yssend wȝpoute fayle.
 Vor her folc was muche aslawe, and ybroȝt to deþe,
 And hii, vor ³ her luperbede, of scapede alȝue vneþe.
 Laurence, þe erchebȝssop, al prest hȝm made also,
 Vorto wende out of þȝs lond, as ȝs felawes adde ydo.
 þe nȝt, þet he ⁴ adde in mud vort abbe ywend amorwe,
 He laȝ muchedel of þe nȝt in wo and in sorwe,
 To ⁵ bȝdde God vor holy chȝrche and vor Cristendom.
 So þat aslep atte laste vor werȝnȝsse hȝm nome.
 Seynt Peter to hȝm come, as þe slep hȝm toke,
 And tormented hȝm sore ȝnou, þat ⁶ hech lȝme hȝm oke.
 And ⁷ eþste of hȝm, wȝ he adde so vȝllȝche ȝs ssep vorsake,
 Wȝpoute warde, among þe wolues, þat in warde hȝm were
 bȝtake?

And wȝ of God, ne of hȝm, ensample he ne nom,
 þat deȝde boþe ⁸ in rode, to susteȝnȝ Cristendom?
 þȝs erchebȝssop was adrad welsore, þo he awok:
⁹ He hȝede to þe kȝng, vor ech lȝme hȝm ok,
 And ssewed hȝm al þat cas, and ȝs wounden some,
 And bed hȝm ȝs lȝf amende, oþer vp hȝm sulf ȝt ssolde come.

¹ But sone fel hit after-
 ward, that God wreche nom.
 For they after hure faderes
 dethes werrede Christendom
Ar. ² Shent *Ar.* ³ Hure
 luthernesse, skapede *Ar.*

⁴ Hadde mette to wende his
 wey a morwe, *Ar.* ⁵ Praye
Ar. ⁶ Every lȝme *Ar.*
⁷ Axede *Ar.* ⁸ On rode, to
 saue *Ar.* ⁹ And blyue he
 hyed *Ar.*

¹ þe kyng anon for drede ys false wýf vor soke,
 þat he huld in such hordom, and Cristendom toke.
 And after Seyn Just & Seynt ² Mellýt þe tueye býssopes
 sende,
 So þat agen to þys lond þys gode men boþe wende,
 And hii of Rouchestre Seyn Just to her býssop ³ vayre toke,
 Ac þe Londres Seyn Mellýt ⁴ ac clanlyche versoke,
⁵ Ac huld hem to her heþenesse, & in þys manere com
 Kyng Edbald, after ys fader, vorst to Cristendom.
 After Laurence's deþe, as God gef þat cas,
 Erchebýssop Seyn Mellýt of Kanterburý was.
 Erchebýssop he was výf ger, and after hym me nom
 Seyn Just to erchebýssop, to sauý Crýstendom.

CADWAL, ⁶ þe kyng's sone, þat was of þys lond,
 As ych seyde er, & Edwýne of Norþhumberlond,
 þat in Brutayne were, ⁷ hem hii gonne wende,
 After her ⁸ fader deþe, ⁹ eyþer in ys ende,
 And auonge her erytage, and ¹⁰ louede hem wel boþe
 Atte bygýnnýnge wel ýnou, & supþe somdel wroþe."
 For þo hii adde antuo ger ýbe lourdes in her ¹¹ londes,
 Edwýne sende to Cadwal, þat hym ssolde vnderstonde,

¹ The kyng of Kent Edbald his false wif tho forsoke, *Ar.* ² Mellýt in to Fraunce he sende, *Ar.* ³ A yen toke, *Ar.* ⁴ Al *Ar. Vide Bedæ Hist. Eccl. lib. II. cap. VI.* ⁵ And *Ar.* ⁶ The kyng's sone Cadewan of this londe, And Edwýne kyng's sone

of Northumberlande, *Ar.* ⁷ Homward gonne *Ar.* ⁸ Fadres *Ar.* ⁹ Aither to his ende *Ar.* & *è regione, ab ead. manu, i. contre.* ¹⁰ Louede to gedere y nogh, And afterward, as ye shul hure, hure loue clene a drogh *Ar.* ¹¹ Londe *Ar.*

And soffry hym in ys owe lond, þat he ycrowned were
 As ueruorþ as he in ys, & as rygt was croune bere.
¹ Kyng Cadwal nom ys conseyl, & sende hym word so,
 þat ys conseyl ne gef hym nozt, ne ensentede þerto,
 þat in one kyngedom, þat of one croune were,
 þat yt were departed, & þat me tueye crounen bere.
 Edwyne was wroþ vor þys, and suor ys more oþ,
 To be ycrowned wyþoute hym, ² nere hym no so loþ.
 Cadwal suor ys oþ agen, gyf he croune bere,
 Vorto smyte of ys heued vnder ys croune þere.
 þus wax stryf bytuene hem, hii greyþed her host vaste,
 And by Norþe Homber ³ mette hem atte laste.
 Mony þousend þer were ybrogt of Cadwale's men to deþe,
 And he hym sulf wyþ vewe men of scapede alýue vnneþe,
 And flen hym vorþ in to þe see, al þoru Scotlond,
 And so vorþ euere in to þe see, vorte he com to ýrlond.
 Edwyne wende þo anon out of ys owe lond,
 And destrude wyde aboute þat Cadwal adde an honde,
 Alle ys stedes, ver and ner, and to grounde caste.
 Cadwal in ýrlonde ys ost garkede vaste,
 And vorþ toward þys lond þe veage nome.
 Ac euere wanne he myd ys ost to eny hauene com,

¹ And when þat Cadewall
 hurde þis, he send word þo
 To Edewyne, þat he nolde as-
 sente þer to, And þat in on
 londe, o kyngdom þat were,
 Any partyng so were mad,
 þat me two crounes bere.
 And seide, hit was a yenst the

wone of his faderes olde. For
 thi assente ther to, he seide
 that he nolde. Edwyne was
 tho wroth y nogh, and swor
 his more oth, *Ar.* ² Were
 hym neuere so loth *Ar.*
³ They mette atte laste *Ar.*

Edwyne was agen hym, and drof hym age.
 So þat he ne myȝte aryue, ac huld hym in þe see.
 Ac anchanteor Edwyne adde of Spayne wyþ hym þo,
 þat couþe hym segge of ys dedes al hou yt ssolde go
 þoru ys chantement, so þat Cadwal
 Ne dude noþyng, þat Edwyne þoru hym yt nuste al.
 Cadwal nuste þo oþer rede, bote myd al ys mayne
 Wende to porchacy hym help to þe lasse Brutayne.
¹ Tempest hym drof in þe see here and þer vaste,
 So þat in þe yle of Gerneseȝe hii aryued atte laste.
 þo Cadwal com to reste, þer so gret deol he nome,
 þat he adde so ys folc vorlore, and ys kynedom,
 þat he lay syke in ys bed vor deol and vor sore,
 þat he ne ete non mete ² þre dawes þer vore.
 þe ³ verþe day to veneson hym þoȝte ys herte drou,
 Bryan, ⁴ ys owe priue man, was þerof glad ynou.
 Hys bowe he nom, & soȝte a best aboute mony a myle,
⁵ And he ne myȝte, ssolde he deȝe, vynde non in al þe yle.
 Sory was þys Bryan þo, ⁶ þat he non grace nadde,
 For he hopede yt were ys louerde's hele, vor þe wylle þat he
 adde.
 He ne vnderstod of non oþer fless, þat þe kyng yknowe ne couþ
 þat yt nere non veneson, wanne yt were in ys mouþe.

¹ A tempest *Ar.* ² iii.

Ar. ³ v. *Ar.* ⁴ That priue

with hym was, therof was

glad ynogh *Ar.* ⁵ But *Ar.*

⁶ For he no grace hadde.

For he hopede his lorde's

hele, yf he eny hadde, He vn-
 derstod of non other flessch,
 that he knowe couthe, That
 hit nere veneson, whan hit
 were in his mouthe *Ar.*

He

He byþogte hym of harde ynou, to abbe ys louerde's lyf.
 A gret pece of ys owe þy he ¹ kerf out wyþ a knyf,
 And helde þe ² wounde, he myȝte loke ȝyf he nas trewe.
 þe kyng he broȝte yt wel yrosted vor veneson newe.
 Newe and verss yt was ynou, þe kyng ete þerof anon.
 Hym þogte, þat so suete mete he ne ete neuere non,
 Ne so sauerȳ in ys mouþ, so þat he turnde to hele,
 And hol was þe þrydde day, vor þulke suete mele.
 Hym longede after veneson þer after longe sore,
 Ac ner gode of þulke beste ne com in ys mouþ nanmore.
 To þe lasse Brutayne wyþ ys folc þo he drou,
 And of þe kyng Salomon was ³ vnderuonge vayre ynou,
 And byleuede wyþ hym alle wynter, vorte after þe ȝere's
 ende,
⁴ And greȳpede her poer hyder vorto wende.

KYNG Edwyne adde ywonne er alout the Brutons lond,
 More þan enȳ Englyss kyng euere er adde an hond,
 Al byȝonde Seyn Daud, & al Walys al out.
 By uore hym nas non Englyss kyng so ryche ne so prout.
 Heþen man he was ywȳs, and to Cristendom
 þoru erchebyssop of Euerwyk Seyn ⁵ Paulym he com.

¹ Kutt of *Ar.* ² Wounde, *Ar.* ³ Undernom *Ar.* ⁴ And
 whan he myȝhte loke wher than homward a yen he cast
 he nere trewe. To the kyng hym to wende *Ar.* ⁵ *Sic.*

CADWAL kyng þat azte be of Brutons londe,
 Myd poer, þat kyng Salomon hym adde ytake an honde,
 (þat was ten þousend kyngtes,) & myd ys owe poer,
 Aryuede bysyde Toteneys, and come somdel ner.
 In þe toun of Exestre mony Brutons were,
 And a luper kyng of þe Marche byseged hem þer,
 Penda, þat heþene was, vnder Edwyne þe kyng.
 Cadwal, þo he wuste þys, ne made no targyng,
 Ac smot to hym myd ys ost, & þer wyþoute fayle
 At Eccestre strong ynou hii smyte an batayle.
 Penda þys heþene kyng was sone ouercome,
 And ys folc mucche aslawe, & he hym sulf ynome.
 þo he in prison was ydo, ¹ and oþer couþe ne yse,
 He byhet Cadwal myd hym myd al ys poer be,
 And þat he ssolde vor hym þe bet kyng Edwyne ouercome.
 Of þys was sykernesse ² ydo, and ostages y nome.
 Penta garked ys poer, and Cadwal ek ys route
 Of Brutons, þat vor defaute of help to sprad were wyde
 aboute.
 þo þys ost al gare was, vorþward vaste hii drowe,
 And in Norþhumberlond þat folc vaste hii slowe.
 Kyng Edwyne adde al so in ys half gret poer
 Igadered of Englysse kynges, & of ys owe ver & ner.

¹ And other ne couthe by
 se, He by het Cadewalle with
 hym for to be, And helpe that

Edwyne kyng sholde be ouer-
 come *Ar.* ² Made, *Ar.*

In

In to þe veld of ¹ Haduele ech of hem drow
 Myd her ost, & smyte þer an batayle strong y nou.
 Kyng Edwyne was þer aslawe, and ² Osfryd ys sone also,
 And Godbold kyng of Orcadas, & her folc ney þerto.
 And Cadwal was al aboue, þe wule yt wolde ylaste.
 þe Englysse and þe Saxons he slou þo wel vaste.
 He ne sparede olde ne gong, ne ³ womman, ne chyld,
 þat he ne slou, ⁴ wanne he vond. he nas noþyng myld.
 Anoper batayle suppe he smot ⁵ agen Osryc strong ynou,
 þat kyng was after Edwyne, & þer ⁶ he hym slou,
 And ys tueye neueus, þat after hym kynges ssolde be,
 And Cadan kyng of Scotlond, yslawe hii were alle þre.
⁷ Eufryd, Edwyne's broþer, þo he sey ⁸ þys wo aboute,
 To Cadwal he wende, & mercy cryde vor doute.
 Cadwal hym, & tuelf þousend þat myd hym com, slou.
 þys ger was among hem of feble grace y nou.
 And þat was of hem lute harm. vor after her Cristendom
 And to heþenesse hii turnde agen. & þus such wreche hem
 nome.
 Kyng Cadwal and þe Brutons her wylle adde also,
 And stured hem among her fon, þat hem adde er ssame ydo.

¹ Hedefeld Ar. ² Ostryd
 Ar. ³ Wommen with childe,
 Ar. ⁴ Whan he hem fonde,
 & was no thyng mylde Ar.
⁵ With Ar. ⁶ He tho hym
 Ar. ⁷ Confrid Ar. & in ora
Codicis, è regione hujus car-
minis, Confrid kyng of Bere-
wýciens, idque eundem ab ea-
dem manu. Infra autem in

hoc Codice Emfryde scribi-
tur. ⁸ This wogh, Forto haue
 mercy to Cadwal he drogh.
 And he of hym no mercy haue
 wolde tho, But hym xii. þou-
 send men he let to dethe so.
 Lýtel force hit was of hem.
 for after hure Cristendom To
 hethenese hii tournde a ye.
 for thy God wrech nom Ar.

Seyn

SEYN Oswald, Eufrydys broþer, kȳng was ȳmad þo
 Of al Norþhumberlond, among al þȳs wo,
 þat holyman was & god, þe betere ȳs grace was.
 And kȳng Cadwal to hȳm to sturne vorst was.
 þȳs was in þe ȳer of grace sȳx hondred ȳer ȳwȳs,
 And aboute an foure & þrȳttȳ, þat ȳdo was al þȳs.

SEYN Bȳryn þe byssop an holy man was,
 þat in to þȳs lond þoru þe pope Honorȳ ȳsend was.
 To turne kȳng of Westsex Kȳngȳls to Cristendom,
 And þat lond of Westsex, in to þȳs lond he com.
 Seȳn Bȳryn hȳm to Cristendom turnde þoru Gode's grace,
 And, as God wolde, Seȳn Oswald was in þulke place,
 And of holȳ vantston þȳs grete kȳng nome,
 And ȳs godfader was in ȳs Cristendom.
 Seȳn Oswald and þȳs oþer kȳng, þoru vr Louerde's grace,
 Porueȳde Seȳn Bȳryn to ȳs wȳlle an place,
¹ þat Dorchester ȳs ȳcluped, þat bȳsyde Oxenford ȳs,
 As in þe Est Souþ, an sene mȳle ȳ wȳs.
 þer Seȳn Bȳryn bȳssop was, þe vorste þat was ȳwȳs.
 Vor þe sce was þer of bȳssop þo, þat at Lyncolne nou ȳs.
 þer he deȳde, & þer he laȳ vorte supþe þerafter long
 þat he was to Wynchester ȳlad, as ² ȳs ȳut vayre auong.

¹ That Dorchestre me cle-
 peth by side Oxenford, That
 is Southward by the water
 of Themese vi. myle thenne
 y wis. Seȳnt Beryn bisshop
 ther was the furste that there
 come, And after othur bis-

shopes hure se at Lyncoln
 nome. Berin deide at Dor-
 chestre, & lay ther ful longe.
 To Wynchestre were his
 bones lad sutthe, & faire a
 vonge *Ar.* ² *Id est*, being
 honourably received in that
 place

place where he is yet. *At de Birino, pariter atque de Dorcestria, lectu dignissima sunt hæc quæ sequuntur, è Ranulphi Higdeni Polychronico (à Joanne Trevisa Anglice verso) Londini edito A. D. M.D.XXVII. à nobis exscripta. Sic nimirum illic, l. v. c. XIII. Saynte Biry-nus the confessour was sent of Honorius the pope for too preche too Englysshemen. And whyle Biry-nus sayled in the see of Brytaine | he bethoughte on his restellis [pallulam intelligit (sibi à papa Honorio donatam), super quam corpus Christi consecrabat, corpusque Domini-cum in eadem involutum, quod collo suspensum semper secum portabat, inter sacrandum super sanctum altare ponere consueverat, ut ait Joannes Brom-ton, chron. col. 755.] that he had foryete in the hauen | and yede vpon the see & fette hs restellis. ¶ Beda libro tertio : capitulo sexto. This Biry-nus conuerted Kyngilsus kyng of Westsaxons | and crystned hym at cyte Dortyk | that is Dorchesster. There was kyng Os-walde present and was Kyngil-sus godfader | and wedded his doughter afterwarde. And bothe the kynges gaue that cyte for too ordeyne there a bysshops see. And there Biry-nus deyed*

after the. xiiii. yere of his bys-shoprych and was beried there. But at last by Hedda bysshop of Whynchester Biry-nus was translated too Wynchester in to the chyrche of saynt Peter and Poul. ¶ R. But the chanons of Dor-cheter saye naye | and saye that it was another body than saynt Biry-nus body that was so translated. Therefore a byer of a wonder werke is yet seen [*scripsit A. D. M.CCC.XLII. Ed-wardi tertii xvi.*] at Dorches-ter aboue the place of his fyrste graue. That Cyte Dortyk or Dortinga that now is called Dorchester is vii. myle bi south Oxenforde sette bytwene two ryuers of Tame and of Temse. Also it is founde in cronycles that kyng Kyngilsus assygned all the lond seuen myle for too make a bysshops see in Winches-ter | and for the sustenance of the mynysters. And for the kyng was lette by his dethe euyl that he myghte not fulfyll it. He swore that his sone Ken-walcus sholde fulfyll it after-warde. ¶ Willelmus de pon. li-bro secundo. The Cytee Dor-chester longed to the bisshops of Mercia fro that tyme vnto the comynge of the Normans. But in Willyam conquerours tyme the bysshops see was chaunged vnto Lyncolne.

Cadwal

Anno gra-
ciæ 636.
Heraclii
imp. 26.

Cadwal kyng of Brutons worrede euere vaste
 And Penda vp Seyn Oswald, vorte suppe atte laste
 þat at þe toun of Mersueld by Norþe baþe hii come
 Seyn Oswald and þe duc Penda, and batayle nome.
 Penda þer þe luper duc in batayle slou
 And martrede Seyn Oswald, & al ys body to drou;
 And mony þousend of ys men aslawe ek þer were.
 þys was of þe ger of grace in sýx hondred gere
 And four hondred. vor Seyn Oswald ¹ in the ger kyng was,
 And of eygte & þryttý ger old, þo hym vel þys cas.

OSWY, Seynt ² Oswald broþer, kyng y mad was þo.
 He byþogte hym of pes, to lýbbe wýpout wo.
 He acordede wýþ kyng Cadwal, & tresour hym gef ynou,
 Vorto be ys prýue frend, wýpout worre and wou.
 þe fourme of pes was vaste ymad by tuene hem there,
 þat ne mygte noht wel ybroke be, bote trenþe ylore were.
 Ac Penda ³ heþen duc adde euere god wýlle
 To worre hym, & do hym ssame, ⁴ & þogte in ys herte stýlle.
 Ac he ne dorste vor Cadwal, ⁵ ac napeles atten ende
 To þe kyng at ys parlement to London he gan wende,
 And alle dukes of Bruteýne, & þe Englyss kynges echone,
⁶ Icome were to þys parlement, bote kyng Oswy one.

¹ *Lege ex Ar.* ix. ger pro
 in þe ger. ² Osewalde's *Ar.*
³ The hethene *Ar.* ⁴ Yf he
 hit myghte fulfille *Ar.* ⁵ But
 so fel atten ende, That Cade-

wal to his Parlement to Lon-
 don gan wende, And all the
 dukes *Ar.* ⁶ Saue the kyng
 Osewy of Northhumberlond
 al one *Ar.*

Penda askede þe kȳng anon, wȳ kyng Oswȳ nere þer?
 þe kȳng seyde, he vnderstod, þat he syk were.
 “ Syre,” quap þe oþer, “ to soþe, yt nȳs noþȳng so,
 “ Ac he gadereþ vaste ys poer, vs ssame to do,
 “ And he aþ ȳsend bȳgonde see after Saxons mo,
 “ And wole awreke ȳs broþer deþ, he suerþ, on vs tuo.
 “ ¹ þeruore gȳf me mȳd poer leue þuder wende,
 “ And bȳng hȳm to ssame & bȳneþe, er þan he vs ssende.
 To breke ȳs trewe couenant, þe kȳng was loþ þerto,
 And naþeles ȳs conseȳl hȳm gef, þat he moste yt nede do.
 þo Penda þȳs leue adde, he nome poer ȳ nou,
 And toward þis kȳng Oswȳ ouer Homber drou,
 Ann barnde vaste and robbede, and to grounde slou.
 þe kȳng Oswȳ hȳm let esse, wȳ he dude hȳm so wou,
 And bed hȳm, vor Gode's loue, habbe of hym reuþe,
 And of ȳs lond, & þenche bet on vorewarde & on treuþe.
 þo Penda nolde oþer, þe oþer agen hȳm sette,
 And dude hȳm al in Gode's grace, & mȳd ȳs ost hym mette,
 And an bataȳle smȳte strong ȳnou, & þoru Gode's grace
² Kȳng Oswȳ ³ þe Cristȳn men bȳleuede þe place.
 Vor Penda, þe heþene duc, aslawe was þere
 And þȳttȳ oþer dukus, þat mȳd hȳm also were.

¹ For thy let me haue leue
 thuder forto wende, And lette
 him of his purpos er he vs
 alle a shende *Ar.* ² Kȳng
 Osewy and his Cristene men
 that day hadde the place *Ar.*
³ *F.* þe hethen men, *ut sensus*
sit, the heathen men left the

place to king Oswy, *nisi for-*
sitan and the Cristyn men
malis ex Ar. ut byleuede *pas-*
sive sumatur, *sc.* to king Oswy
 and the Christian men the
 place was left. *Possem & alia*
notare, sed non est tanti.

Syx hondred ȝer of grace yt was, & in þe ¹ vyftýþe ȝere,
þer ² býȝet Penda lute Cristynmen vorto afere.

þo Cadwal, kýng of Brutons, noblýche adde ynou
ýbe kýng eýȝte and fourty ȝer, and to elde drou,

He deyde after Martýnmasse ³ rýȝt þen sýxte day.

þe Brutons made deol y nou, þo he ded laý,

⁴ And made kýnge's fourme of bras al holu wýþinne,

Vpe an hors rýde of bras, & þat body dude þerýnne,

And vpe^{ll} þe West ȝate of Londone sette hýt ⁵ wel heýe

In sýgne of ýs nobleye, þat men wel wýde ýseye.

An þe syȝte þer of þe Saxons aferde.

An chýrche of Seyn Martýn þer bý neþe hii rerde,"

War ýnne me ssolde Gode's seruýse do,

And sýnge vor ýs soule, and vor alle Cristýne al so.

⁶ **CADWALLAD** ýs sone was ⁷ þerafter ýmad kýng,

ȝong ⁸ bacheler and stalward atte ⁹ bý gynnýȝ,

And þoru out wel wuste ýs lond, & sauede þe Brutons

Stýflýche ¹⁰ al an tuelf ȝer agen ¹¹ Saxons.

Ac þo yel he in sýkness and sorwe vpen oþer,

þe Brutons fogte her and þer ech agen oþer,

¹ xv. yere, *Ar.* ² By gate

Ar. ³ Euene the sixte day

Ar. ⁴ Hii made a kynge's

fourme, and hym al hol with

ynne Upon a hors rydyng of

bras putte al with gynne,

And vpon *Ar.* ⁵ Ful hegh

In tokne of his noblesse, that

me hitt fer segh. And that the

sight ther of the Saxones

sholde a fere, A church of

Seynt Martyn by nethe hii

lete rere, *Ar.* ⁶ Cadwalla-

dre *Ar.* & sic *infra.* ⁷ After

hym mad *Ar.* ⁸ Staleworth

bacheler & noble in alle thyng,

And &c. *Ar.* ⁹ L. býgynnýȝ.

¹⁰ Fully xii. *Ar.* ¹¹ The

Saxones *Ar.*

And lore, as wo seyþ, grace of God, & þat he gan hem ssewe.
 Vor he sende hem so muche hunger & luper zeres arewe,
¹ þat þys folc was ney meteles, bote wo so coupe myð gynne,
 Oþer myð bow and arwen, eny wylde best wynne.
 So gret qualm com ek among men, þat hii, þat were alyue,
 Ne mygte nogt al burye þat folc, þat deyde so ryue.
 Vol of syknesse, and of qualm, and sorwe þys lond was þo,
 Of hunger, and of vnele zeres, hou mygte be more wo?
² þet folc gret compayne & oþer myð wop & sorwe y nou,
 Wanne hii mygte ssyppes abbe, in to oþer londes drou.
 þe kyng ³ hym" let ek in sorwe and in sykenesse lede
 Toward þe lasse Brutayne, & þys deoluol playnte seyde:
 " ⁴ Awey! away! we synuol men, alas! oure wrecchede,
 " þat we abbýþ þus God agult myð mony synuol dede
 " We and oure elderne ek, þe wreche ych vnderstonde
 " þat þus wrecchedlyche nou vus dryfþ out of oure kunde
 londe,
 " þat Romeyns" ne mygte myð batayle neuere do,
 " Ne Scottes, ne ⁵ Pycars, ne þe Saxons þerto.
 " Nou we beþ, þoru wreche of God, vor oure synuol dede,
 " Idryue out al clene, wyþ out hope, wyþ sorwe & ⁶ wreche.

¹ That the peple hadde no mete, but they with any gynne Wilde bestes, or fowell, or fissh myght wynne. Such pestilence cam also, that hii, that were a lyue, The dede myghte vnnethe burye, they deide so blyue *Ar.* ² The folc with grete compayne in care and sorwe y nogh, *Ar.* ³ Hym self *Ar.* ⁴ A las! he seyde, and

welaway! whi couthe we noght blynne, While that we tyme hadde, oure lyff to lede in synne, Thurgh which we shal nogh al clene be dryue out of londe, And al hit is þorgh wreche of Gode's owene honde? That the Romeynes *Ar.* ⁵ Pictes, *Ar.* ⁶ *L.* wrechede.

“¹ Vor vāgt we abbeþ so ofte vp hem ywonne þat lond,
 “ Wanne God nel noȝt, þat yt be lengore in oure hond.
 “ Vor þe soþuast God, þo he yse, þat we nolde, vor noþyng,
 “ Fram oure sýnne vs wýþ drawe, ne þat non prince,² ne,
 “ Ne myȝte brýnge vs out of þe lond, he, þat myȝtuol ys,
 “³ Deþe after oure deserte, and⁴ pulte vus out ywýs.
 “ Comeþ nou agen ȝe Romeýns, and ȝe Scottes al so,
 “⁵ Pýcars, and Saxons, and Englýsse þer to,
 “ þat so muche abbeþ desyred⁶ þat lond, ȝe mowe yt fynde
 nouþe
 “ Al bar wýþ out defense, býnorþe and eke býsouþe,
 “⁷ And al þat þoru wreche of God, & noȝt ȝoure poer noȝt ydo,
 “ (Vor al þe poer, þat ȝe alle adde, ne myȝte yt bringe þerto,)
 “ Ac þoru þe myȝte of Jhesu Crist we beþ ybroȝt to grounde,
 “ þat we wrapped euere mo, and nou we abbeþ yfounde.
 “ Alas! þat by myne daye such wreche ssolde come,
 “ þat y nadde ybe ded bore, bote God aȝelde þe soule y nome.
 þe deol ne maý non tonge telle, þat þe kýng to hym nome,
 So þat to þe lasse Brutayne myd þýs sorwe he com,
 To, þe kynge's neuue Salomon, Aleyn, þat kyng was þo,
 And vayre of hým was vnderfonge in ys muchele wo.”

¹ An ydel we haue so ofte
 recouered of hem oure lond,
 When God nele, that we len-
 gor haue hit in our hond *Ar.*

² *Adde kyng cum Ar.* ³ Doth
Ar. ⁴ Putteth *Ar.* ⁵ Pictes,
 and Englissh, and Danes al-
 so, *Ar.* ⁶ This *Ar.* ⁷ And
 when ye haueth hit, seye ye
 ne may, ye haueth vs out pylt

Thurgh your strengthe, but
 hit is thurgh oure owene gylt.
 Deol he made gret y nogh,
 so that his wey he nom To-
 ward the lasse Brutayne, and
 thuder sone he com To kyng
 Salomone's sone Aleyn, that
 tho was, And faire of hym
 was vnderfonge, as fel in
 this cas *Ar.*

þo þe Brutons þerafter were al as out of munde,
 After folc þe Saxons sende of her kunde,
 To come & wonye in þys lond, þat noman agen hem nas,
 And þat þet lond to her wylle al bar agen hem was.
 þo þys strangemen hurde þys, ynou of folc hii nome,
 Of men and of wymmen ek, and to þys lond come.
 Anon from Cornwaýle to Norþhumberlond,
¹ Hote yt were of poueral, al bar hii founde þat lond.
 þe poueral ouer Seuerne flen þat þer was þo,
 And byleuede vorþ in Walys in sorwe and in wo.
² We longe her afterward þo yt com to amendement,
 And bote of hunger & of qualm vr Louerd adde ysend,
 Som help of þe kyng Aleyn kyng Cadwallad bysogte,
 And þat he in to ys kunde londe þoru ys help hym brogte.
 þe kyng hym grantede anon, and as hii were aboute,
 Eyþer in ys half, to gadery gret ost and gret route,
 To kyng Cadwallad an angel ³ auysyon brogte
 Fram heuene, and bad hym wyþdrawe of þat he þogte.
 Vor yt nas Gode's wylle, þat of þe Brutons ⁴ kunne
 Regnede more in Engeland, and al uor her sunne.
 And namelyche ar þulke tyme þat ys in prophecye
 Merlyn seyde to Arture, þat nolde noþyng lye.

¹ L. bote. *Nam* bute in *Ar.*

² Afterwardes whan hit fel,
 as God yaf the grace, That
 alle these meschenes gonne
 ouerpace, And the peple in
 Walys strengthed sumwhat
 were, Cadewaldre hym by
 thocht in this ilke manere,
 That the synne of his peple

wassh was clene. To Aleyn
 kyng of Brutayne he gan his
 mone mene, And in alle ma-
 nere wise his help hym by
 soght, That thurgh hym in
 to his Reaume he myght be
 broght *Ar.* ³ Tydyng *Ar.*
⁴ Kynne *Ar.*

Vor he seyde, þat þe Brutons me ssolde gūt ysey
 Wýnne her rýgte kýnedom, ac yt ssolde arst long be.
 Wanne ye relykes of halewen yfounde were & ykud,
 þat vor drede of Saxons wýde were yhud.
 To Sergy þe pope, þat þo was, to Rome he bed hym wende,
 And do þer ys penance, þat God hym wolde sende,
 And býleue al erþlych þogt, þen deuēl vorto ssende,
 And he ssolde among holymen ¹ to heuene" atten ende.
 þe kýng þys auýson, þat þe angel hym seyde,
 þe oþer tolde priuēlyche, hym þerof to rede.
 þe kýng Aleyn let þo anon in ys bokes aspýe,
 Boþe of Sýbyle þe sage, and of Merlyne's prophecýe;
 Were hii to ys auýsyon acorded in ech þýnge?
 And þo he vond, þat býtuene hem nas non dýscordýng,
 He radde þe kýng Cadwallad, to þenche nanmore
 Of ² Engeland, ac do al out þe angele's lore,
 And wende to Rome, ³ holý lýf to lede.
 þe kýng Cadwallad dude al out, þat þe angel he hym bede,
 And at Rome was of þe pope vayre ⁴ vnder vonge,
 And in penance and holy lýf lyuede þere longe,
⁵ And in etteþe day of Aueryl out of þys worl he wende
 To þe joye of Heuene, as God after hym sende.
⁶ Hyt was sene hondred ger bote on ger lasse vnneþe,
 After þat God anerþe com, þat þys kýng com þus to deþe.

¹ Be nombred *Ar.* ² Bru-
tayne, but do after the *Ar.*

³ Ther holy *Ar.* ⁴ A fonge,
Ar. ⁵ The xix. day of A-
pril *Ar.* ⁶ Six hundred yer

and foure skor, and ther to
eyghtetene, Hit was þat our
Lord bore was y wene. The
Englissh *Ar.*

þe Englysse" and þe Saxons, þat alone þo were,
 Grete tounes and castles bygonne bulde and rere,
 þat hii adde er ycast adoun, & louerdess were al þo,
 And þe Brutons clene al out myd sorwe & myd wo,
 And lore þo boþe al clene, name and eke lond.
 Vor þat was Brutayne ycluped er, me cluped nou Engeland.
 þo vewe were of hem byleued, as in Cornwayle & Walys.
 Brutons nere nanmore ycluped, ac Waleys ywys.
 After ¹ Walon, þat was her ² duc, hii adde vorst þe name,
 And ne mygte neuer efter þys lond keuere, at lybep myd alle
 ssame,
³ Bote hii þus myd scolkyng vp þe Englysse wende,
 And doþ eny skec feble ynou, and abbeþ þe worse ende.
 Ac, (as þe angel seyde er, and Merlyn ek by uore,)

Hii ssolleþ keuery muche lond, þat hii abbeþ ylore;
 Al Walys and al þe March, and al myddel lond ywys,
 þat ys, al þat bytuene Temese and Humber ys,
 Al Est toward Londone, & þat me ssal gut ysey.
 At vpe Gode's wylle yt ys, wanne yt ssal be.
 Here we Englysse men mowe yse sone,
 Myd wuche rygte we beþ to þys londe ycome.
 Ac þe wrecche Englysse men beþ of þe olde ⁴ more;
 In wuche manere, ge abbeþ y hurd, hou hii yt abbeþ y lore.
 Ac þe feble ys euere byneþe. vor hii, þat abbeþ mygte,
 Myd strengþe bryngþe ofte þat wowe to þe rygte.

¹ Gwalo, *Ar.* ² Prince,
Ar. ³ And ofte tyme in
 skolkyng on Engeland gon
 they wende, And made con-

tek and strif, and hadde the
 worse ende *Ar.* ⁴ *Subintelligi*, Britain.

þo Brutayne was þus ylore, and þe londe's name
 To þe name of Engeland yturnd, to gret ssame,
 Sene kynges hii adde longe, as þe kyng of Estsex,
 Of Kent, of Humberlond, of Est Angle, of Souþsex,
 Of þe March, of Westsex, ¹ of alle þes echon
 Wufe þes were kynges, þat nouþ ys bote one.
 Vor ech bygan to worry vp oþer, and oþeres londes bynome,
 And hii of Denemarch among hem, vorte alle to one come.
 þe kynges of Westsex adde þe ouer hond,
 So þat attelaste hii wonne alle þe oþeres lond.
 Ac Souþsex ne last nogt longe, ne Estsex ² naþe mo.
 þe kyng of Westsex sone hem wan, bote vyue þer nere þo.
 þe kyndom of þe March ylaste long and wel ynou,
 Vorte þe kunde kyng seyn Kenelm in marterdom me slog.
 Kyng Kenulf ys fader godman was, þat þe hous of Wyche.
 cumbe
 Rerde vorst, and þer lyp hym sulf in a tombe.
 þo Seyn Kenelm ymartred was, ys vncl ³ Seowulf
 Kyng was after hym ymaked, þe kynge's broþer Kenulf.
 He nas kyng bote on ger, ar on Bernulf com,
 And þoru strengþ hym caste out of ys kenedom.

EGBRYGT ⁴ was kyng y mad, as oþer byuore hym were,
 Of Westsex in þe ger of grace eygte hondred ger.

¹ Alle thes echon While were
 of kynges, *Ar.* ² Ne the mo
Ar. ³ Sive, Ceolulph. ⁴
Perplura hinc occurrunt in Cod.
Ar. oratione soluta concepta,

*In quo tamen Codice desunt
 cuncta metra usque ad Ed-
 wardi, Ælfredi Magni filii,
 regnum.*

By ys daye Seyn Kenelm to deþe ybrogt was,
 þe kyndedom was þerafter lute, vor wreche of þat cas.
 Vor Bernulf, of wan we tolde, nogt þre ger kyng nas
 Ar Egbrýgt, kyng of Westsex, made hym seke pas.
 Vor an bataýle at Elendone hii smýte myd her ost,
 þe kyng Bernulf was þere býneþe, & býnome al ys bost,
 And ys folc muche aslawe, & he flen wýþ muche wo.
 In kyng Egbrýgte's poer ys kyndedom was þo.
 Eygte hondred ger & tuenty, & sýxte þer to,
 As in þe ger of grace þys bataýle was ydo.
 þe kyng of Westsex her after adde al þe kyndedom
 Of þe March, oþer eche ger truage of hem nom.
 In Egbrýgte's kyndedom four and tuenty þe ger
 Hýt was, ar þys bataýle at Elendone were.
 Bernulf supþe in Est Angle þoru men of lond,
 And þoru Egbrýgte's poer, was aslawe, ých vnderstonde.
 And þat folc of Est Angle vnderuonge þere
 Kyng Egbrýgt to her souerýn, & seruage hym bere.
 Kyng Egbrýgt was þo prout vor ys segnorýe.
 Adelwolf, ys sone, he sende myd vayre bachelerye
 To wýnne Kent, & Estsex, & Soþereýe, myd maystrye.
 To þe lond of Kent hii wende vorst myd her chyualerye.
 Kent hii wonde týmelyche, and Balred þe kyng
 Flen ouer Temese, and býleuede ys owe þýng.
 Estsex and Souþsex, and Soþereýe al so
 Hii wonne, ar hii come agen; & þo al þys was ydo,
 Egbrýgt, kyng of Westsex, al þys to hym nom,
 Al to be vnder hym, and vnder ys kyndedom.

Al þat lond bysouþe clene he adde al so
 Under hym, oþer in ys hond. wýnne he þogte mo.
 Aȝen hem of Norþhumberlond mýd ost he com at ¹ Doýre,
 Hii dude hym a non her manhede, & ne conteked namore.
 þe kýng Egbrygt adde ýbe kýng þre and þrýtty ȝer,
 þet folc of Denemarch hyder com, as yt adde ý do er.
 Ssepeýe hii robbede vorst, and supþe oþer mo.
 Ac þe kýng Egbrygt hem drof aȝen, ar hii dude to muche wo.
 þo kýng Egbrygt adde kýdȝ ýbe seuene & þrýtty ȝer,
 He deýde as a noble man, ac ys londes he delde er.
 Adelwolf, ys eldeste sone, he ȝef þo al Westsex,
 þat was as ys erytage. and supþe al Souþsex
 Hys ȝongore sone Aþelston he ȝef, and þe kýnedom
 Of Kent and of Estsex, þat of ys porchas com.
 Hyt was eýȝte hondred ȝer, and nyne þrýttý þerto,
 As in þe ȝer of grace, þat he deýde so.

¹ *Meminerunt etiam Annales Saxonici, sub anno DCCCXXVII. And se Ecgbryht lædde fýrðe to Dore wíð Norðanhýmbre. 7 hý hym þær eaþmedo buðon. 7 ȝeþpærnerre. Ejusdem quoque mentionem habemus apud Florentium Wigorniensem. Id quod item monuit doctissimus Gibsonus, qui porro innuit, locum hunc in agro fuisse Eboracensi, licet plane incertum sit quonam hodierno vocetur nomine. Quidni autem quis censeat, ipsum fuisse Durham? Quo minus ita putemus, nihil quidem obstat in Annali-*

bus Saxoniciis, è quibus discimus, Ecgbryhtum primùm subjugasse Merciorum regnum, & totum quod fuit ab Australi parte Humbri, deinde movisse ultra Humbri flumen, in ipsum, ut videtur, Deirorum agrum. Et tamen fateor, hanc sententiam minime convenire cum Florentio, locum longe minoris notæ quam Dunelmum fuisse aperte indicante, suoque itidem tempore Dore nomine venisse significante. Quomodocunque sit, in partibus ultra Humbrum fuisse sane existimarim.

OF þe bataýles of Denemarch, þat hii dude in þys londe
 þat worst were of alle opere, we mote abbe an honde.
 Worst hii were. vor opere adde somwanne ýdo,
 As Romeýns & Saxons, & wel wuste þat lond þerto.
 Ac hii ne kepte ýt holde nozt, bote robbý, and ssende,
 And destrue, & berne, & sle, & ne couþe abbe non ende.
 And bote lute ýt nas worþ, þey hii were ouercome ýlome.
 Vor myd ssýpes and gret poer as prest efsone hii come.
 Kýng Adelwolf of þys lond kýng was tventý ger.
 þe Deneýs come bý hym rýuor þan hii dude er.
 Vor in þe al our vorst ger of ýs kýnedom
 Myd þre & þrýttý ssýpuol men her prince lýder come,
 And at Souþhamtone aryuede, an hauene bý Souþe.
 Anoþer gret ost þulke tyme aryuede at Portesmouþe.
 þe kýng nuste weþer kepe, at delde ýs ost atuo.
 þe Denes adde þe maýstre. þo al was ýdo,
 And bý Estangle & Lýndeseye hii wende vorþ atte laste,
 And so hamward al bý Kent, & slowe & barnde vaste.
 Agen wýnter hii wende hem. anoþer ger eft hii come,
 And destrude Kent al out, and Londone nome.
 þus al an ten ger þat lond hii brozte þer doune,
 So þat in þe teþe ger of þe kýnge's croune,
 Al býsouþe hii come alond, and þet folc of Somersete
 þoru þe býssop Alcston and þet folc of Dorsete
 Hii come & smýte an bataýle, & þere, þoru Gode's grace,
 þe Deneýs were al býneþe, & þe lond folc adde þe place,
 And more prowesse dude þo, þan þe kýng myzte býuore,
 þeruore gode lond men ne beþ nozt al verlore.

þe kȳng was þe boldore þo, & agen hem þe more drou,
 And ȳs foure godes sones woxe vaste ȳ nou,
 Edelbold and Adelbrygt, Edelred and Alfred.
 þȳs was a stalwarde tem, & of gret wȳsdom & red,
 And kȳnges were al foure, & defendede wel þȳs lond,
 An Deneȳs dude ssame ȳnou, þat me volwel vond.
 In syxteþe gere of þe kȳnge's kȳnedom
 Is eldeste sone Adelbold gret ost to hȳm nome,
 And ȳs fader also god, and oþere heye men al so,
 And wende agen þȳs Deneȳs, þat muche wo adde ȳ do.
 Vor myd tuo hondred ssȳpes & an alf at Temse mouþ hii
 come,
 And Londone, and Kanterburȳ, and oþer tounes nome,
 And so vorþ in to Soþereȳe, & slowe & barnde vaste,
 þere þe kyng and ȳs sone hem mette atte laste.
 þere was bataȳle strong ȳnou ȳsmȳte in an þrowe.
 þe godes kȳngtes leȳe adoun as gras, wan medep mowe.
 Heueden, (þat were of ȳsmȳte,) & oþer lȳmes also,
 Flete in blode al fram þe grounde, ar þe bataȳle were ȳdo.
 Wanne þat blod stod al abrod, vas þer gret wo ȳ nou.
 Nys yt reuþe vorto hure, þat me so volc slou?
 Ac our suete Louerd atte laste ssewde ȳs suete grace,
 And sende þe Cristȳne Englysse men þe maȳstrye in þe place,
 And þe heþene men of Denemarch bȳneþe were echon.
 Nou nas þer gut in Denemarch Cristendom non;
 þe kȳng her after to holȳ chȳrche ȳs herte þe more drou,
 And teþezede wel & al ȳs lond, as hii azte, wel ȳ non.
 Seȳn Swȳthȳn at Wȳnchestre bȳssop þo was,
 And Alcston at Sȳrebourne, þat amendede muche þȳs cas.

þe kȳng was wel þe betere man þoru her beȳre red,
 Tuentȳ wȳnter he was kȳng, ar he were ded.
 At Wȳnchestre he was ȳbured, as he ȳut lȳþ þere.
 Hȳs tueȳe sonēs he gef ȳs lond, as he bȳȳet ham ere.
 Adelbold, þe eldore, þe kȳnedom of Estsex,
 And supþe Adelbrȳȳt, Kent and Westsex.
 Eyȳte hondred ȳer ȳt was and seuene and fȳftȳ al so,
 After þat God anerþe com, þat þȳs dede was ȳdo.
 Boþe hii wuste bȳ her tȳme wel her kȳnedom,
 At þe vyfte ȳer Adelbold out of þȳs lȳue nome.
 At Ssȳrebourne he was ȳbured, & ȳs broþer Adelbrȳȳt
 His kȳnedom adde after hym, as lawe was and rȳȳt.
 Bȳ ȳs daye þe verde com of þe heþene men wel prout,
 * And Hamtessȳre and destrude Wȳnchestre al out.
 And þat lond folc of Hamtessȳre her red þo nome
 And of Barcssȳre, and fogte and þe ssrewen ouercome.
 Adelbrȳȳt was kȳng of Kent ȳeres folle tene,
 And of Westsex bote vȳue, þo he deȳde ȳch wene.

ADELRED was after hȳm kȳng ȳ mad in þe place,
 Eyȳte hondred & seuene & sȳxtȳ as in þe ȳer of grace.
 þe vorste ȳer of ȳs kȳnedom þe Deneȳs þȳcke com,
 And robbede and destrude, and cȳtes vaste nome.
 Maȳstres hii adde of her ost, as ȳt were dukes, tueȳe,
 Hȳnguar and Hubba, þat ssrewen were beȳe.
 In Est Angle hii bȳleuede, to reste hem as ȳt were,
 Mȳd her ost al þe wȳnter, of þe vorst ȳere.

† *F. an sive on; nisi mox malis, and Wynchestre destrude &c.*

þe oþer ȝer hii dude hem vorþ, & ouer Humber come,
 And slowe to grounde & barnde, & Euerwýk nome.
 þer was bataýle strong y nou, vor yslawe was þere
 Osryc kýng of Humberlond, & monye þat with hym were.
 þo Humberlond was þus yssend, hii wende & tounes nome.
 So þat atte laste to Estangle agen hym come.
 þer hii barnde & robbede, & þat folc to grounde slowe,
 And, as wolues among ssep, reulých hem to drowe.
 Seynt Edmond was þo her kýng, & þo he seý þat deluol cas
 þat me morþrede so þat folc, & non amendement nas,
 He ches leuere to deye hymself, þat such sorwe to ysey.
 He dude hym vorþ among ys fon, nolde he ¹ noþýg fle.
 Hii nome hym & scourged hym, & supþe naked hym bounde
 To a tre, & to hym ssote, & made hym mony a wounde,
 þat þe arewe were on hym þo þýcce, þat no stede nas býleuede.
 Atte laste hii martred hym, & smýte of ys heued.
 þe sýxte ȝer of þe crounement of Aldered þe kýng
 A nýwe ost com into þýs lond, gret þoru alle þýng,
 And anon to Redýnge robbede and slowe.
 þe kýng and Alfred ys broþer nome men ynowe,
 Mette hem, and a bataýle smýte vp Assesdoune.
 þer was mony moder chýld, þat sone lay þer doune.
 þe bataýle ylaste vorto nýgt, and þer were aslawe
 Vyf dukes of Denemarch, ar hii wolde wyþ drawe,
 And mony þousend of oþer men, & þo gonne hii to fle;
 Ac hii adde alle ybe assend, ² ȝýs þe nýgt nadde y be.
 Tueye bataýles her after in þe sulf ȝere
 Hii smyte, and at boþe þe heþene maystres were.

¹ *L.* noþýng. ² *Sic.*

þe kȳng Aldered sone þo þen wey of deþ nome,
 As yt vel, þe vȳftȳ ger of ȳs kȳnedom.
 At Wȳmbourne he was ȳbured, as God gef þat cas,
 þe gode Alfred, ȳs broþer, after hȳm kȳng was.

ALFRED, þȳs noble man, as in þe ger of grace he nom
 Eȳgte hondred & sȳxtȳ & tuelue þe kȳnedom.
 Arst he adde at Rome ȳbe, &, vor ȳs grete wȳsdom,
 þe pope Leon hȳm blessedede, þo he þuder com,
 And þe kȳnge's croune of þȳs lond, þat in þȳs lond gut ȳs :
 And ¹ he led hȳm to be kȳng, ar he kȳng were ȳwȳs.
 An he was kȳng of Engeland, of alle þat þer come,
 þat vorst þus ² ȳlad was of þe pope of Rome,
 And supþe oþer after hȳm of þe erchebȳssopes echon.
 So þat bȳuor hȳm pore kȳng nas þer non.
 In þe Souþ sȳde of Temese nȳne bataȳles he nome
 Agen þe Deneȳs þe vorst ger of ȳs kȳnedom.
 Nȳe ger he was þus in þȳs lond in bataȳle & in wo,
 An ofte sȳþe aboue was, and bȳneþe oftor mo ;
 So longe, þat hȳm nere bȳ leuede bote þre ssȳren in ȳs hond,
 Hamtessyre, and Wȳltessyre, and Somersete, of al ȳs lond.
 A daȳ as he wery was, and asuoddrȳnge hȳm nome
 And ȳs men were ȳwend auȳsseþ, Scȳn Cutbert to hȳm com.
 "Ich ³ am," he seyde, "Cutbert, to þe ȳcham ȳwend
 "To brȳnge þe gode tȳtȳnges. Fram God ȳcham ȳsend.

¹ *Id est, heled sive conse-
 crated, vel anointed. Vide no-
 tas nostras ad Vitam Ælfredi
 Magni Spelmannianam, p. 17.*

² *Pro oyled, sive anointed. Nisi*

*forsitan tam h̄ic, quam & jam
 supra, idem quod Anglo-Saxo-
 nicum gehalgod esse existimes.*

³ *Vide Willielmi Malmesbur. de
 gestis regum Angl. lib. II. c. IV.*

“ Vor þat folc of þys lond to sýnne her wýlle al geue,
 “ And gut nolle herto her sýnnes býleue
 “ þoru me & other halewen, þat in þys lond were ýbore;
 “ þan vor gou býddeþ God, wanne we beþ hým býuore,
 “ Hour Louerd myd ys eyen of milce on þe lokeþ þeruore,
 “ And þý poer þe wole gýue agen, þat þou ast neý verlore.
 “ And þat þou þer of soþ ýse, þou ssalt abbe tokýnynge.
 “ Vor ¹ þým men, þat beþ ago to day auýssynges,
 “ In lepes & in coufles so muche vyss hii ssolde hým brynge,
 “ þat ech man wondry ssal of so gret cacchýnge.
 “ And þe mor vor þe harde vorste, þat þe water ýfrore hys,
 “ þat þe more agen þe kunde of vyssýnge ýt ys.
 “ Of serue ýt wel agen God, and ýlef me ys messenger,
 “ And þou ssal þý wýlle abyde, as ýcham ýtold her.
 As þys kýng hereof awoc, and of þys sýgte þogte,
 Hys výssares come to hým, & so gret won of fyss hým brogte,
 þat wonder ýt was, & namelyche vor þe weder was so colde.
 þo lýuede þe god man wel, þat Seyn Cutbert adde ýtold.
 In Deuenýssyre þer after þer arýuede of Deneýs
 þre and tuenty ssýpuol men, al agen þe peýs,
 þe kýnge's broþer of Denemarch duc of ost was.
 Oure kýnge's men of Engeland mette hem bý cas,
 And smýte þer an bataýle, and her gret duc slowe,
 And eygte hondred & fourty men, & her caronyes to drowe.
 þo kyng Alfred hurde þys, ys herte gladede þo,
 þat lond folc to hým come so þýcke so ýt mýgte go,
 Of Somersete, of Wýltessýre, of Hamtessýre þerto,
 Euere as he wende, and of ys owe folc al so.

¹ *Pro*, þýn.

So þat he adde poer ynou, and atte laste hii come,
 And a batayle at Edendone agen þe Deneys nome,
 And slowe to grounde, & wonne þe maystre of þe velde.
 þe kȳng & ȳs grete duke bygonne hem to zelde
 To þe kȳng Alfred to ȳs wylle, and ostages toke,
 Vorto wende out of ȳs lond, gȳf he ȳt wolde loke;
 And gut þerto, vor ȳs loue, to auonge Cristendom.
 Kȳng Gurmund, þe hexte kȳng, vorst þer to come.
 Kȳng Alfred ȳs godfader was. & ȳbaptȳsed ek þer were
 þretty of her hexte dukes. and muche of þat folc þere
 Kȳng Alfred hem huld wȳþ hȳm tuelf dawes as he hende,
 And subþe he gef hem large gȳftes, and let hȳm wende.
 Hii, þat nolde Cristyn be, of lond flowe þo,
 And bygonde see in France dude wel muche wo.
 gut þe ssrewen come agen, and muche wo here wroȳte.
 Ac þe kȳng Alfred atte laste to ssame hem euere broȳte.
 Kȳng Alfred was þe wȳsost kȳng, þat long was byuore.
 Vor þeȳ me segge þe lawes beȳ in worre tȳme vorlore,
 Nas ȳt noȳt so hȳis daye. vor þeȳ he in worre were,
 Lawes he made rȳgtuollore, and strengore þan er were.
 Clerc he was god ynou, and gut, as me telleþ me,
 He was more þan ten ȳer old, ar he couþe ȳs abece.
 Ac ȳs gode moder ofte smale gȳftes hȳm tok,
 Vor to byleue oþer ple, and lokȳ on ȳs boke.
 So þat by þor clergȳe ȳs rȳgt lawes he wonde,
 þat neuere er nere ȳ mad, to gouernȳ ȳs lond.
 And vor þe worre was so muche of þe luþer Deneys,
 þe men of þȳs sulue lond were of þe worse peȳs.

And

And robbede and slowe opere, þerfor he byuonde,
 þat þer were hondredes in eche contreye of ys lond,
 And in ech toun of þe hondred a tēpynge were also,
 And þat ech man wypoute gret lond in tēpynge were ydo,
 And þat ech man knewe oper þat in tēpynge were,
 And wuste somdel of her stat, gýf me ¹ þu vp hem bere.
 So streyt he was, þat þey me ledde amýdde weyes heye
 Seluer, þat non man ne dorste yt nýme, þey he yt seye.
 Abbeys he rerde mony on, and mony studes ywýs.
 Ac Wynchestrye he rerde on, þat nýwe munstre ycluped ys.
 Hys lýf eygte and tuenty ger in ys kýnedom ylaste.
 After ys deþ he was ybured at Wynchestre atte laste.

EDWARD, ys gode sone, kýng was ymad þo
 In þe ger of grace nýne hondred ger & on & nanmo.
² Foure & tuenty ger he was kýng, & to more poer come
 þan euere ys fader dude, ac bogt to so gret wýsdom.
 He wan³ þe kýnedom of þe March mýd ys dedes bolde,
 So þat of hym yt was afterward yholde.
 And þat lond of Estangle, and Norþhumberlond,
 And Walys he wan þoru bataýle, al vnder ys hond.
 And he nas neuere in bataýle býneþe in þys lond.
 He byuond vorst an queintýse agen þe Deneys to anstond.

¹ *Sic, cum spatio, in Codice nostro Harleyano. At þesþe (i. e. ðeorþe sive theft) in Codice Cottoniano, sicut me docuit amicus. Adeo ut þusþe in Codice nostro Harleyano sit legen-*

dum. ² Edward the veil, his sone, *Ar.* ³ Logher was he þenne his fader of clergie and wisdom, But more glorious thenne he in power that hym come, He wanne *Ar.*

Vor þe heye tounes in þe lond and þe castles þerto
 Myd gode kȳngtes he let astorȳ, & myd sustȳnance þerto.
 So þat ware þe kȳng were, and þer come her fon,
 In eche contreȳe prest hii were myd þe lond volc anon,
 And smȳte monȳ bataȳle, þat þe kȳng ȳt nuste,
 So þat myd strengþe of heye tounes ech contreȳe hȳm sulf
 wuste.

Hȳs soster he let spousȳ, þat ȳhote was Elfled,
 To þe kȳng, þat huld þe March of hȳm, þat ȳhote was E-
 þelred.

¹ So þat heo myd chȳlde was, and þogte hȳre so sor,
 Ar þat chȳld were ȳbore, þat heo ne wȳllede ȳt nanmor.
 Com more to þulke stoupe vor me ne mȳgte ȳre bringe,
 þat heo wolde euer eft in manne's bedde come vor non þȳng,
 Ac euere seȳde, wanne heo was of suche þȳnge bȳsoȳt,
 " þat kȳnge's doȳter, as he was, ȳt bȳcom noȳt,
 " Such fol delyt vorto do, ne such dede naþemo,
 " þat were encheson afterward of such pȳne and wo.
 " Ac ȳf þe ² bȳgȳnnȳge were ȳut as strong, as ȳs þe ende,
 " Ich wene ȳut monȳ womman þulke weȳ wolde wende.
 þe luþer Edwolf was þe kȳnge's broþer Edward,
 And, vor pur hate aȳen ȳs broþer, held as assreward.

¹ Tho that heo with childe
 was, and hadde hit i bore,
 And hadde i felte the woo ther
 of, she saide therfore, That
 come woulde sheo neuere in
 manne's bedde more, For sheo
 hadde had so mȳche sorow &
 sore; And seide, sheo nulde
 neuer efte suche dede do,

That shuld be encheson of
 suche sorow and wo. On A-
 thelwolde, Eme's son of this
 kyng Edward, For hate
 ganne to werrȳ hȳm as a shere-
 warde. The Danes *Ar. E-*
thelwoldum etiam filium pa-
trui regis appellat Will. Mal-
mesb. f. 25. b. ² Sic.

þe Deneys" were in Humberlond, to hem he gan drawe.
 Hii auonge hym vayre ynou, & were wyþ him wel vawe,
 And made hym her kyng anon, ys broþer vorto ssende.
 Sone hii greyþed her ost þo, Souþward vorto wende,
 And asayle Estsex, and nome þat lond anon.
 Vor þe maystres of þe lond golde to hem echon.
 þo wende hii in to þe March, & muche sorwe made,
 And robbede and destrude vaste anon to ¹ Creskelade:
 So hii passede Temese, and dude wo y nou.
 Kyng Edward sone myd ys ost after hem drou,
 And drof hem in to Humberlond myd wel quyc pas.
 Ac kyng Edwolf þer after sone aslawe was.
 Vor þo kyng Edward & ys men hamward ywend were,
² þat folc of Kent, agen ys wylle, ³ byleuede by hynde þere.
 þo Edwolf and þe Deneys wuste hem so byleue,
⁴ To hem hii smyte anon, and batayle hem geue.
 þe Kent ers stode vaste agen, & þe kyng Edwolf slowe.
 Heye & lowe þer were aslawe, in eyþer alf ynowe.
 Kyng Edward þe nyþe ger of ys kyndedom
 þe castel made of Hereforde, and to gode ende com.
 þe ger þerafter þe Deneys ⁵ wende fram Leycestre to Norþ-
 hamtone

Toward Oxenford faste, and at ⁶ Hogenorte

¹ *Vulgo*, Crekelade. *Male*
autem Brekkelade in *Ar.* ²

The folke *Ar.* ³ Be hynde
 lafte there *Ar.* ⁴ Towarde
 hem they turned a ge, and ba-
 taille them geve. The men

of Kente stode a ye, and this
 Edwolf slowe *Ar.* ⁵ Wente
 fro Northampton Toward
Ar. ⁶ *Lege*, Hogenortone,
 (*sive*, ut in *Ar.*) Hoggenor-
 tonne.

Slowe muche folc ¹ y nou, and" in þe contreye aboute.
 Atte laste þe contreye folc com myd gret route,
 And to dryue hem al to nogte, & her preye hem bynom.
² Suppe, in þe endleste ger of þe kynge's kynedom,
 þe Deneys come and robbede Norþ Walys vaste.
 So þat to yrchenefeld hii come atte laste.
³ Out of castel of Hereforde þat folc vaste þo com,
 And of þe contreye al aboute, & batayle wyþ hem nom,
 And slou of hem her hexte duc, & oþere men mony on.
 Hii, þat mygte of scapye alyue, of londe flowe echon.
⁴ Alfled, quene of þe March, strong ⁵ womwan was and
⁶ quenyte
⁷ In batayle, and yholde as quene in eche ponyte.

¹ *Desunt Ar.* ² Sithen in
 the. xi. yere *Ar.* ³ Oute of
 Herford the folke a yent
 heme sone com, *Ar.* ⁴ El-
 fiede, *Ar.* ⁵ *Pro*, womman
 sive woman. ⁶ *L.* queynte,
cum Ar. uti etiam mox infra
poynthe. ⁷ Ind in bataile as a
 kyng i holde in eche poynthe.
 Al Wales sheo ouercome, and
 Yorke was hure also. Atte
 Camelworthe sheo deyde sethe,
 and buried atte Gloucestre thoo
Ar. Deinde desiderantur reli-
qua metra, ad Eadwardum
hunc spectantia, multaque eo-
rundem loco oratione soluta in-
seruntur, in quibus & indicatur,
eum Wigornie, non Ferenduni
(nunc Faringdon, in agro Ber-
cheriensi) obiisse. Nam sic au-
ctor : This Edward veil

deyde atte Worcetre, and bu-
 ried was at Wynchestre, by
 side his fader. (*minus recte.*
Nam & alii Ferenduni hoc con-
tigisse asserunt.) *qui & hæc re-*
tulit de morte atque sepultura
Ælfledæ, Elfredæ, sive Ethel-
fledæ : Ethelfiede, lady of Mer-
 cheneriche, a boue saide deide
 to fore hure brother Edward
 veil. v. yere, and was buryed
 in Seynt Petre's church atte
 Gloucestre, whiche heo, with
 hure husbonde [Ethelred]
 with grete diligence had i
 maked, be cause they hadde
 translated Seynt Oswalde's
 bonus fram Bardenay thu-
 der, but þat by Danes de-
 stroyed, a nother abbey now
 in
 by Eldre erchbischof of York.

Al Walys heo ouercom, and þe March þerto.

Stafford heo wan, and Leycestre, and Warewȳk þerto,

And Bruges & Euerwȳk, & þe contreye ¹ & al so

Of Euerwȳk to hȳre com, hȳre wȳlle vorto do.

At Tamewur þe heo deȳde suppe, & ȳbured he was ȳ wȳs

In Seynt Petre's porche at Gloucestre, as þe abbey ȳut ȳs.

þe kȳnedom þo of þe March kȳng Edward to hȳm nome,

As in þe sȳxe and tuentye ȳer of ȳs kȳnedom.

Kȳng Edward adde þre sones: þe eldoste Aþelston,

And Edmond and Eldred, þat kȳnges were echon.

And suppe he deȳde at Farndone, as God ȳef þat cas,

And in mustre at Wȳnchestre bȳ ȳs fader ȳbured was.

AþELSTON was þo kȳng, þat was Edward's sone,

And þoru þe heȳe men of þe lond ȳcrouned at Kȳngestone.

Nȳne hondred ȳer of grace & foure & tuenty ȳ crouned he was,

² And aboute an fourtȳne ȳer kȳng þer after he was.

Holȳ chȳrche he louede wel, and rerde monȳ on.

þe vorste ȳer of ȳs kȳnedom ȳbore was Seyn Dunstone.

Nȳwe abbeyes he made ³ vaste þȳs gode Aþelston,

And þer nas of olde house in þe lond non,

þat he ne amendede mȳd som lond, oþer mȳd bȳldȳnge,

Oþer mȳd boc, oþer rȳche cloþ, oþer oþer rȳche þȳnge.

¹ *Abesse malim.* ² And but
an xvi. yere after kyng he
nas *Ar.* ³ Many ich vnder.
stande, Ne olde Abbey was
ther none thorough oute al his

londe, That he ne amended
with summe lond, other with
summe buildȳng, Other with
bokes other clothe, or summe
riche thȳng *Ar.*

Norþhumberlond he wan, and Walys and Scotlond,
 And þe kыnges & her lond held al in ys hond.
 Hým þogte yt was more nobleye, þo he adde an hond al þys,
 Vorto make kыnges, þan to be kыng y wys.
 Agen he made kыnges, þat kыnges er were,
 Bote þat hii were vnder hým, and truage hým bere.
 þo hii adde her lond agen, þe kыng of Scotlond
 Constantyn, and Analaf kын of Humberlond,
 Up þys kыng Aþelston gaderede men y nowe,
 And here bysouþe Humber myd her ost drowe.
 Analaf was gode ¹ kыngt, & stalward & queynte.
 Menestral he was gode ynou, & harpare in eche poynthe.
 To Aþelston paуlon myd ys harpe he wende,
 And so wel wyþoute harpede, þat me after hým sende.
 þer he harpede so wel, þat he payde al þe route,
 Ac euere were ys eyen in eche hurne aboute.
 After mete, þo hii nolde nanmore of ys pley,
² Hii geue hým seluer vor ys gle, & let hým go ys wey.
³ Of þe seluer he adde hoker, vor he ne com þuder vor non,
 Ac ys wylle he adde þo he sey þe stat of ys fon.
 On, þat adde y be wyþ hým, þe kыng tolde þere.
 þe kыng hým blamede þo, þat he nadde ytold hým er.
 “ Syre, he seyde, “ ych was ysuore to hým ar to þe,
 “ And gýf ych adde hým ⁴ bysuyke, þe wors þou wost ⁵ leue me.

¹ Knýght *Ar.* ² Me yaf
 hým yiftes for *Ar.* ³ Of his
 yftes he tolde scorne, *Ar.*
⁴ Be trayed, *Ar.* ⁵ Truste to

me. Ac remewe to a nother
 stede thýne tentes Ich the
 rede, *Ar.*

“ Ac remewe in to anoþer stude þy paýlon bý myn rede,
 “ Oþer þou mygt gut to nýgt of som treson drede.
¹ þe paýlon was remeued þo, and þe kýng and alle ys,
 Ac a býssop and ys men þer uorþ com ýwýs,
 And pýgte þer her paýlon, & býleuede al nýgt þere.
 And þýs luper men com anýgt, & wende þe kýng ýt were,
 And slou þe býssop and alle ys men, þat gult nadde non.
 And supþe hii wende vorþore mo, and sogte Aþelston.
 Of hem nas he nozt ² ýwar ³ ar þo atte laste.
 Ac sone he and ys men armede hem wel vaste,
 And Edmond ys broþer myd hým, ⁴ & þo hii preste werecchon,
 And wende to þýs batayle, and mette myd her fon,
 þe kýng to ys suerde drou, and þo ne vond he non.
 Hyt was myd treson hým býnome, hard cas was þat on.
 On God” almygtý & Seyn Aldelm þe kýng cride vaste þo,
 And hii sende hým bý vayr myracle bote in ys wo.
 To hýs scaubert he pulte ys hond, al preste asuerd he vond
 þer inne, þoru God ý sond, no betere in lond.

¹ Thenne to a nother stede
 the kyng remew gan. To
 that place the same nyght [a
 bischop] cam than, And wende
 to haue founde the kýng ther,
 so that he logged ther, But
 the Enmys cam a nýght, and
 wende the kýng hit were,
Ar. ² *Tum ultra progre-*
diens [Analaus] regem ipsum
imparatum offendit, quippe
qui nihil tale hostem ausu-
rum timens, largæ quieti in-

dulserat Will. Malmesb. fol.
 26. b. ³ Fort atte *Ar.* ⁴ And
 dighte hem echechon Faste to
 the bataille, to mete with hure
 fone. The kyng trawe wolde
 his swerde, when he tyme I
 seye, And thenne founde he
 there non. for hit was a way
 Per aunter bý fallýng a way,
 or bý summe other cas. The
 kýng was ther of sore abassh-
 ed, as no wonder was. On
 God *Ar.*

In þe kyng tresorye þat suerd ¹ ywust ys,
 As vor ² noble relyke, gut to þys daye ywys.
³ I egged yt ys in on alf, and in þe oper nogt.
 þere ne mygte neuere gold ne seluer þeron be ybrogt.
 þys noble kyng Apelston, þo þys gode suerd hym com,
 Nobylýche & wel he fagt, & so god earnest to hym nom,
 þat fram þat þe sonne aros, vorte hýt derc nygt was,
 þe batayle ylaste, and neuere wery he nas.
 Wat þoru ys stalwarhede, wat þoru Gode's grace,
 Mony was ⁴ gode body, þat he slou in þe place.
 þe batayle was at ⁵ Brymesbury, & þere were of Deneys
 An of Scottes aslawe, and also of yreys,
 Vyf gonge ⁶ kynges, prout þoru al þyng,
 And prout Constantyn, þat of Scotland was kyng.
 And of opere, þat were aslawe, me ne mygte non ende yse.
 Hii, þat of scapede alyue, bygonne vaste to fle.
 þus ⁷ þe kyng Apelston agaste þo ys fon.
⁸ Vor hii ne ssolde in þys lond abbe ⁹ recet non,
¹⁰ þe castel of Euerwyk to grounde he let caste.
 (Vor ys fon were ofte þer inne, þe wule ¹¹ he ylaste)

¹ yut i kepte is, *Ar.* ² A noble *Ar.* ³ Egged in the on half, *Ar.* ⁴ The strong body, *Ar.* ⁵ Brunnesbury *Ar.* *Vide cl. Gibsoni nominum locorum Explicationem in Chronico Sax. uti etiam Additiones ad ejusd. Gibsoni Camdeni Britanniae Versionem Anglicam, p.873. in comitatu Northumbr.* ⁶ Knyghtes *Ar.* *non adeo recte.*

⁷ This *Ar.* ⁸ And for *Ar.* ⁹ Resceyte *Ar.* ¹⁰ A castell *Ar.* *Inde certe & in additionibus oratione soluta in eodem codice scriptum legimus,* In the mene while Athelston lette throw downe, *York* an olde Castell at Ebraywik, that the Danes by olde tyme hadde i maked, and that hit shulde

þat hiï nadde non recet, vorto greuȳ ȳs lond.
 1 Al so of ech maner porchas, þat com in ȳs hond,
 Oþer þat gȳf enȳ of ȳs as in porchas nome,
 He verbed, þat neuere non among ȳs spence ne come,
 Ac to hous of relȳgyon þat me ȳt al clene bere,
 And to poueremen aboute, 2 þat meseȳse were.
 Alle þe kȳnges of Walȳs he broȳte wel to lawe
 To Hereford al vnder hȳm, to ȳs 3 wille vawe,
 þat tuentȳ pound of golde ech of hem hym bere,
 An 4 þretty pound of seluer fram zere to zere,
 And 5 tuentȳ þousend 6 oxen ek to þȳs golde,
 An hauekes and hondes, as monȳ as he wolde.
 To certeyn wonȳnge he hem broȳte boþe lowe & heȳe,
 So þat 7 her wonȳnge were al bȳ weste Weye,
 And noþȳng in þe Est alf. So þat Weye ȳ wȳs
 ȳt to þȳs 8 daȳe to delþ Engeland and Walȳs,
 And þoru kȳng Apelston þat was vorst ȳdo.
 Men 9 of Cornwayle he broȳte to certeyn stude also.

shulde be no more refute to
 Enmys, and myche good,
 ther inne I founde, he parted
 a monge his men *Ar.* *Sed vi-*
desis Will. Malmesb. fol. 27. b.
 11. Hit dude i laste) *Ar.*

1 Also of eche purchas, that
 he gat to his honde, Othur that
 anȳ of his men that any pur-
 chas nome, He for bede that
 neuere mo a mong his purchas
 come, *Ar.* 2 That seke and
 mȳsaised were *Ar.* 3 Wille wel
 fawe, *Ar.* 4 *Trecentas Will.*

Malmesbur. 5 25. millia Will.
 M. 6 Oxen a ȳere to this
 golde, *Ar.* 7 The Walessshmen
 he putte beyonde Weigh, *Ar.*
 8 Day deleth *Ar.* 9 *Inde di-*
gressus in Occidentales Brit-
tones se convertit, qui Corne-
wallenses vocantur, quod in
Occidente Brittanniæ s'ti, cor-
nu Galliæ ex obliquo respi-
ciunt. Illos quoque impigrè
adorsus, ab Excestra, quam
ad id temporis æquo cum An-
glis jure inhabitarent, cedere
 com-

Vor bygonde þe water of Tamer he adde hem alle ybrogt.
 To wonye þer, as in her owe, and a þys alf nogt.
 Vor hii wonede þer by uore anon to Excestre rygt,
 And Welsse were in Engeland vorte ¹ he yt adde dygt.
 Kyng Aþelston louede muche Malmesbury y wys.
 He gef hem of þe holy croys som, þat þere gut ys.
 And he was at ys ende ² day vayre ybured þere.
 Kyng he adde arst ybe aboute an vyftene ger.

EDMOND, Aþelstone's broþer, after hym was kyng,
 Gode man & doutede God þoru alle þyng.
 In þe ger of grace nyne hondred yt was & ³ forty ger,
 þat he was kyng y mad, and old he was er
 Eygtene ger, and he was kyng sýx ger ⁴ and day.
 Foure & tuenty ger he was old, þo he aslawe lay.
 Saracens þer were, þe gut byleuede in Engeland,
 In Lyncolne & in Leycestre, & in Derby ych vnderstonde,
 In Stafford & in Nothyngham. he drof hem al to nogt,
 And Cristynemen aboute in her stude brogt.
 þet hous of Glastynbury he louede wel ynou,
 And made Seyn Dunston abbed þere, & to ys conseyl hym drou,
 And þoru ys conseyl chyrchyn wyde he let rere,
 And abbeys and prioryes aboute here and þere.
 In to hous of Glastynbury gret þyng he gef þo,
 And grete franchyses hem grantede, þat lasteþ euermo.

*compulit, terminum provincie
 sue citra Tambram fluvium
 statuens, sicut Aquilonaribus
 Brittannis amnem Waiam li-
 mitem posuerat Will. Mal-*

mesb. f. 27. b.

¹ Athelstone hit right *Ar.*

² At Gloucestre he deyde *Ar.*

in marg. ³ Sic. ⁴ And vii.

monethes in *Ar.*

¹ þat

¹ þat hȳ adde her franchȳses as veruop as þe kȳng,
 And mȳd gode chartre, þat ȝut ȳs þer, made confermȳng.
 Edwȳne ȳs sone was þat luþer was ȳnou,
 And Edgar þe ȝongore þat to alle godnesse drou.
 Kȳng Edmond atte laste mȳd luþer deþe's wonde
 Pȳtoslyche was aslawe, alas! þulke stounde!
 Vor a traȳtor of ² ȳs lond, Lof was ȳs name,
³ ȳflou was out of Engeland mȳd wretchede & ssame."
 Supþe aday as þe kȳng sat at ȳs mete
 At Pokelchȳrche bȳsyde Brȳstowe, & somdel adde ȳgete,
 Lof, þȳs luþer traȳtor, mȳd ȳs cloþes ȳchanged þere,
 Com in, & bȳuore hȳm et, anoþer man as ȳt were.
 A Seȳn Austȳne's day ȳt was, as ȳt valþ in Maȳ,
 þe kȳng bȳhuld aboute, and þȳs traȳtor ȳ saȳ,
 And auȳsed hȳm suȳþe wel, wat man ȳt were.
 And þo he sey þat þȳs Lof, þȳs traȳtor sat þere,
 He huppte hȳm vp fram þe bord, in gret wrapþe ȳnou,
 And hente þȳs Lof bȳ þe top, ⁴ fram þe borde hȳm drou,
 An defouled hȳm vnder hȳm mȳd honde & mȳd fote.
 þe þef, þat laȳ bȳneþe hȳm, þoȝte on luþer bote,
 And smot þe kȳng wȳþ a knȳf in þe breste depe ȳnou,
 And, to gret harm to al þȳs lond, þe gode kȳng he slou.

¹ So that hii habbeth
 Fraunchise as hit were a
 kyng, As afterward me may
 I see, thourgh his conferm-
 ȳng. Edwȳne his furste sone
 lithere was i nowē, But Ed-
 gar the ȳonger to all gode-

nesse drowe *Ar.* ² This londe,
 Leof *Ar. in quo & Leof etiam*
infra. ³ I flemed was oute
 of Engeland, where of cam
 ther grame *Ar.* ⁴ And a
 doune hym drowe, *Ar.*

þet

þet folc to drou þen traytor ech lyme pecemele.
 þe kyng bygan ¹ by al ys lyf ys gode wel wyde dele,
 And þe toun of Pokelchyrche, and oþer þat ys were
 He gef in to Glastynbury, & let hym burye þere.
 And þere he lȳp gut to þus day, ac y not þoru ² wuch dom
 þe toun suppe of Pokelchyrche fram Glastynbury com.
 Seyn Dunston was at Glastynbury þo þe kyng ywounded was,
 And ³ gut þoru joye of Deuel he wuste of þat cas.
 Vor þe Deuel com by uore hym, ⁴ & hoppede & lou,
 And saylede and pleyde, & made joye y nou.
 þys holȳ man wuste anon, wu ys joye was,
 And þat vor som mescheance of þe kyng he made⁵ so glad pas.
 Toward Pokelchyrche he wende hastelyche and blyue,
 An me tolde hym by þe wey, þat he was out of lyue.

EDRED was þo kyng anon after Edmond ys broþer,
 Vor ys tueye sones so gonge were, þat me ne myȳte abbe
 non oþer.

God man Edred was y nou, & to godnesse drou anon,
 And mucche louede holȳ chyrche, & þe godman Seyn Dunston.
 Men of Norþhumberlond were agen hym vaste,
 And of Scotlond also, ac her poer lute ylaste.

¹ All by his lyf his gode a
 boutte dele. At Pukelechurche
 was do this dede. for thȳ to
 Glastenbury He hit yaf, and
 bade me shulde at Glastenbu-
 ry him bury Ar. ² What Ar.
³ yut in the same stounde
 he wiste of this cas Ar.

⁴ Dauncyng and lowgh, And
 as hit were pleyng made
 game i nogh Ar. ⁵ Suche
 solas. Dunston toward Pu-
 kelchurche dight him self
 bliue, So that me tolde him
 by the way, the kyng was
 out of lyue Ar.

Vor wat wyþ loue, wat wyþ eye, he broȝte hem al to ȝs wylle,
And her olde seruage made hem holde al stýlle.

¹ Vourtene ȝer he was kȳng, and at ȝs ende day,
Me tolde Seȳn Dunston ² vore," þat he sȳk laȳ.

To hȳm he wende hastelyche, and bȳ þe weȳ ȳwȳs
He hurde angles sȳnge an heȳ bȳ the ³ lýste þȳs :

" þe kȳng Edred nou aslepe in oure Louerd ȳs.

þo wuste Seȳn Dunston, þat he was ȳwend to Heuene blȳs.

⁴ Suche gode kȳnges me ssolde ⁵ nou vȳnde among,
þat angeles of her endȳnge mȳȝte made song.

EDWȳNE, Edmonde's sone, after Edred kȳng was
Fals & luþer, vor non worse in ȳs kunde nas.

As a nȳwe Herodes in such poer he com,

⁶ And vp ȳs poer destrude and apeȳrede Cristendom.

A fol womman in spousbreche he huld vnder ȳs wȳf.

Seȳn Dunston hȳm seȳde wel, þat ȳt was a luþer lýf.

And, as Seȳn Jon Baptȳst, kalangede her mȳs dede.

Wroþ was þe kȳng and ȳs hore, þat he her folȳe ⁷ wyþ,

¹ The Latyn seiþ ix. yere
and a half *Ar. in margine.*

² *Deest Ar.* ³ *Idem quod An-
gl. Sax. lȳt sive desiderium
vel fervor. Sed hȳc loci hila-
ritatem signabit. perinde ac si
dicas, he heard angels sing on
high with mirth this sive thus.
Inde in Cod. Ar.* And as he
wende to him warde, he hurde
bȳ the waȳ A mery song of

angeles thus seggȳng heȳe
&c. ⁴ Suche dede kynges

now fewe bene vs amonge,
That angelus atte hure end-
ȳng maketh of eny songe *Ar.*

⁵ *Potius, uou, i. e. few, ut ex
Ar. constat, nisi cum eod. Cod.
few adjicias, retento nou.*

⁶ And with his vnell lýuȳng
apeȳred Cristendom *Ar.* ⁷ *F.*
wyþ sede.

And þe womman fondede, hym to deþe brýnge.
 So þat Seýn Dunston was, þoru hyre and þe kýng,
 I flou out of Engeland, and to Flaundres wende.
¹ þe gode man ne toc neuere gome, þat me hym so foule ssende.
 Abbeys þys luþer man broghte ek in alle wo.
 And þat hous of Malmesburý, þat an old hous was þo,
² Of" tuo hondred ȝer and seuentý ýrerd þer byuore,
 He made ýt stable to ýs hors, as ýt were alle vorlore.
 So luþer man was þe kýng, þat þe heýmen of þe londe
 Bygonne, as hii nede moste, agen hym vaste at stonde,
 And býnome hym mucche of ýs lond, ³ & býtoke Edgar ýs
 broþer.
 Vor he drou to alle godenesse, and ⁴ betere was þan oþer.
 þys Edwýne was þus kýng þre ȝer, and somdel more,
 And þat lond vor ýs deþe ne wep nogt ouersore.
 And ȝut vor al ýs ssrewede, as ýt ýwryte ýs,
 þoru býddýnge of Seýn Dunston, ýs soule com to blýs.

EDGAR Edwýne's broþer, & Edmonde's sone þe kýng,
 Kýng was after Edwýne, gode man þoru alle þýng.
 Non lýckore ýs broþer hym nas, þan an wolf ýs a lombe,
 Of manere ne of dede, þey hii were in one wombe.
 Vor þulke týme þat Edgar of ýs moder was ýbore,
 Seýn Dunston was at Glastýnburý, & þerafter & býuore,
 þo hurde he þulke týme angles sýnge ýwýs
 Up in þe lufte a murýe song, & þat song was þys :

¹ The gode man was wel | toke hit Edgar his brother
 a paide of þat God hym sende | Ar. ⁴ Heigher Ar.
 Ar. ² Deest Ar. ³ And

“ To holȳ chȳrche & to þe lond peȳs ȳs ȳbore and blȳs
 “ Bȳ þulke chȳlde's tȳme, þat nou ȳbore ȳs.
 ¹ Suppe þo Seyn Dunston wuste, þat þe chȳld was ȳbore
 ryȳt þo
 He wuste, þat al Engeland he ssolde brȳnge of wo.
 And so he dude. vor þo he was, after ȳs broþer, kȳng
 He broȳte al þat lond in pes, þat er was in strȳuȳng.
 He vndude alle luþer lawes, þat me huld bȳuore,
 And gode lawes broȳte vorþ, þat er were as uorlore.
 Scotlond and Norþhumberlond and Walȳs al so
 Wȳþ out heste to hȳm come, ȳs wȳlle vorto do.
 þe erþe ȳeld bet, & þe weder was ² mergore bȳ ȳs daȳe,
 And lasse tempest in þe see þan me er ȳsaȳe.
 Me tolde hȳm of Seyn Dunston, þat ȳs broþer drof of londe.
 After hȳm he sende anon, & he com þoru ȳs sonde,
 And ȳs abbeye auong in pes, fram wan he was so longe,
 And was þe kȳnge's conseȳler, & vaȳre was vnder vonge.
 Erchebȳssop of Kanterbury þoru þȳs gode kȳnge
 Sȳen Dunston was suppe ȳmad, þe more godnesse to bringe.
 ³ þȳs kȳng al so at Glastȳnburȳ, as he þeruorþ com,
 Seynt Apelwold, þat was þer monek, out of ȳs house he nome,
 And ȳef hȳm ⁴ an place in Barcessȳre, þat mucche ȳs in mone,
 Vȳf mȳle bȳ Souþe Oxenford, þat me clupeþ Abendone.
 þȳs holȳ man Seyn Apelwold bulde þere vaste,
 And a uayre abbey þer bȳgan, ⁵ þat euereft aþ ȳlaste.

¹ There bȳ knewe Seynt
 Dunston, that he, that bore
 was tho, Shulde kepe Enge-
 lond in his tȳme fro woo *Ar.*
 ² Merȳer *Ar.* ³ This kyng
 also fro Glastenburȳ as he

therforth come Seynt Ethel,
 wolde, that was ther monek,
 oute of the house nome, *Ar.*
 ⁴ A *Ar.* ⁵ That hider to
 doth last *Ar.*

Vorst abbod he was þere hýmsulf, & monekes to hým nome.
 In þys manere Abendone vorst to abbeye com.
¹ It byuelle, þat þe byssop of Wýnchester was ded,
 þe kýng hým made byssop þere, þoru Seyn Dunstone's red,
 Atte heye chýrche of Wýnchester, þer ys se was ydo,
 þat me clupede chýrche cathedral, & gut me deþ also.
 Canons þer were Seculers, þo he vorst þuder come,
 Ferce men and prout, þat muche were in herdom.
 þe kýng and Seyn Apelwold agen hem sette vaste,
² And out of þe hous & of her rentes ech after oþer caste,
 And made an hous of monekes, to holde her ordre bet.
 þe monekes out of Abendone vorst were þuder yuet.
 Of Seyn Swýþýn þat hous was, as yt ys gut also,
 So þat out of Abendone y was vorst ydo.
 In secunde ger þat he vorst byssop was
 þys gode kýng and he dude þys gode cas,
 And ek in þe výfte ger of þe kýnge's kýnedom
 Seyn Apelwold vorst byssop was, & þe byssopryche nome.
 þys gode kýng Edgar ³ & he" Seyn Swýþýn atte fyne,
 þat longe adde vnder erþe yleýe, vorst brogte into ssryne.
 Issryned he was nyne hondred ger, & on & seuentýþe ger,
 After þat our Louerd alýgte in ys moder an rþe here.
 Kýng ⁴ Edgar & Seynt Apelwold in Wýnchester arerde also
 An oþer hous of monekes, þat gut stondeþ boþe tuo.

¹ The kyng made him bys-
 shop after thorgh Seynt Dun-
 stoun's rede In the churche
 of Wýnchestre, & ther suthe
 he was dede. Ther were Cha-
 nons Seculers tho he thuder

come, That lýued in pruyte
 and lýther lýf, and myche in
 hordom *Ar.* ² And of hure
 houses and hure rentes eche
 after caste *Ar.* ³ *Desunt Ar.*
⁴ *Reliqua pene omnia carmina,*

And gut þe þrydde hii rerde al so þere of Seynte Marye
 Of wynmen of relygyon, and made a nonnerye.
 þe priorye of Hely, þere a byssopryche ys,
 And þe abbey of Petresboru, hii arerde also ywys,
 And þorney and Rameseye, and opere mony on.
 Vor eygte & fourty abbeyes hii rerde in þys lond echon.
 As þys kyng Edgar an hontep ywend was
 Alone he com fram ys men, as God gef þat cas,
 So þat he alygte adoun, and aslepe lay.
 þo þogte hym in ys slepe, þat an hey tre he say
 Stonde þere bysydes hym, as he byhuld an hey.
 Upe þe hexte bowe tueye applen he sey,
 And þe bowes of þe on appel smyte oper vaste
 So harde, þat he vel adoun in þe water atte laste.
 A voys seyde, as hym þogte, þes wordes þoru soun,
 “ Wel ys þe, wel ys þe,” as he vel adoun.
 þo he awok, hym þogte wonder of þys cas,
 Hys gode moder Alfye he tolde al hou yt was.
 “ ge leue sone,” quap moder, “ þe toknyng herof ys,
 “ þe heye tre, þat þou yseye, bytoknep þe ywys.
 “ þe tueye applen bytoknep, gyf þou yt wolt ywyte,
 “ Tueye heye sones of þe, þat þou ssalt bygyte,
 “ þat þe one’s bowe smyte þen oper to grounde,
 “ þat ys, þat þe opere’s frende ssolle þe oper sle myd wounde.
 “ þe voys, þat seyde, “ wel ys þe,” to tokny þat ys,
 “ þat hym worp wel ynou, vor to heuene he wende ywys.

*ad Edgarum spectantia, desi-
 derantur in Ar. in quo tamen
 plura, ad eundem pertinentia,*

Vol. I.

*oratione prosaica concepta,
 habentur.*

AA

Al

Al þys býuel afterward. vor sones he adde tueye,
 Seyn Edward and Aeldred, þat kýnges were beye,
 And one's kunrede þen oþer supþe slou,
 And he wende to heuene, and was wel y nou.
 He adde Edward by ys vorste wýf, as ých abbe y sed,
 And bý Alfrede, ys oþer wýf, he adde Aeldred.
 And Alfýfe, ys god moder, let rere ýwýs-
 Vorst þat hous of Ssafteburý, as Seyn Edward's body ys.
 Kýng Edgar adde vnder hým alle þe kýnges hereaboute.
 Vor þer nas non ýwýs, þat nadde of hým ¹ dounte.
 þeruor þe kýng of Walys, as in gret seýgnorye,
 He het, þat he hým sende eche ger bý maystrye
 þre ² þousend of wolues, in name of truage.
 þe Welysse kýng, vp ys power, dude hým þe seruage,
 And sende hým þys wolues fram gere to gere.
 þre þousend at certeyn terme vor þat lond delyuered were.
 þre ger he huld ys rente, ac þe verþe was bý býnde.
 Vor he sende þe kýng word, þat he ne mýgte nanmo ýfýnde.
 And þat was lute wonder, vor to vale þer were bý výue.
 Vor al þat lond were þe wors, adde hii býleued alýue.
 Boþe Walýs and Engeland þe betere ys þeruore gut,
 And þeruore þe gode man ýt dude more þan vor prute.
 þys gode kýng Edgar, þat so stalworde kýng was,
 And wys & hardý þoru out al, bote lute of body nas.
 þeruore þe kýng of Scotlond enuýe adde þerto,
 And ³ as he sat at mete, & moný oþer kýngt al so,

¹ L. doute. ² Hundred
alii. Et sic etiam scriptor
prosaicus in Cod. Ar. ³ And so

by fel atte a fest, where ma- ny wordes communliche ben spoke, Kynad, kyng of Scot- tes,	
---	--

He seyde a wel heȝ word among ȝs kȳngtȳs echon,
 þat he adde gret hoker, (& wonder nas ȳt non)
 Of a so lute halue man, as kȳng Edgar was,
 þat þer nas lond ne prince non, þat of hȳm adrad nas.
 þȳs word com to þe kȳng Edgar, þeruor he þogte hȳm teche,
 Wuch were þe halue man, ȝȳf he mȳgte hȳm of reche.
 He com and mette hȳm in a wode, and bed hȳm abyde,
 And he adde vor þe nones tueȳe suerdes bȳ ȳs sȳde.
 He drou out boþe tuo, and bed hȳm nȳme an honde,
 And chese weþer he wolde, and þen halue man vonde,
 And loke wer þe halue man hȳm mȳgte out at stonde.
 Vor dereȳnȳ hii wolde hem sulue tuo, & take Gode's sonde.
 þe oþer vel adoun akne anon rȳgt vor drede,
 And crȳde hȳm mercȳ vor Gode's loue of þat he mȳs seyde.
 Kȳng Edgar adde reuþe of hȳm, so reulȳch he gan crie.
 "Syre kȳng," he seyde, "ech god man ȳt ȳs vȳleȳnȳe
 "To be of bold word atte mete, & coward in þe velde.
 "Understonde þe bet efsone, and hold me þȳn helde.
 þe godenesse al of kȳng Edgar none tonge telle ne maȳ.
 Monȳ was þe god abbey þat he rerde bȳ ȳs day.
 Seynt Edward þe marter, as ȳch seyde er, was ȳs sone
 Bȳ ȳs rapere wȳf, and Seynt ¹ Edȳþe of Wȳltone.

tes, in his borde seide thus: "Me
 "wondreth," quath he, "that
 "suche an halfe man as Ed-
 "gar shulde wȳnne so manȳ
 "prouinces *Auctor prosaicus*
in Cod. Ar.

¹ *Atqui cave sis, ne pro*
filia legitima habeas. Spuria
etenim erat, è Wlfritha sive

Wlfrida ab Edgario suscepta.

Inde Will. Malmesb. (f. 33. b.)

"Nam de Egelfleda, cogno-

"mento candida filia Ordmeri

"ducis potentissimi Edwardum

"genuit, & sanctam Editham

"de Wlfritha, [al. Wlfrida]

"quam certum est non tunc

"sancti-

“sanctimoniallem fuisse, sed ti-
“more Regis puellam laicam se
“veluisse, moxque eandem ar-
“repto velo lecto imperiali sub-
“actam: Unde offensum bea-
“tum Dunstanum, quod illam
“concupisset, quæ vel umbra-
“ticè sanctimonialis fuisset,
“vigorem Pontificalem in eum
“egisse.” Quæ verba & ipsum
 etiam auctorem prosaicum in
Codice Ar. ob oculos habuisse
compertum habeo, quamvis
Sanctam Editham non nomi-
net. Sic nempe ille: To this
 Ensamble of cruwelte (jam an-
tea locutus fuerat de Ethel-
woldo, ab Edgare occiso, eo
quod minus honeste sese gessis-
set in negotio ad filiam ducis
Devoniæ, Venere quasi ipsa
formosiore, pertinente) er
 dude, his foos putteth a nother,
 that is to saye, that Wulfride
 monechyn i sacred he toke out
 of hure abbey, & delt with her
 holdyng his lemman. Which
 Poynt whenne Seynt Dunstone
 hurde, he blamed and vnder-
 name the kyng hugeliche, so that
 he sette vii. yeres penaunce vpon
 him, the which he toke on hym,
 that is to say of, and that vii.
 yere he bare no crowne. But
 summe saith, that this Wulfride
 was nat vereliche a nonne, bote
 that for drede of the kyng a
 Seculer woman i veyled, and a
 none the veile so i doo a way, &

take to the kyng's bedde. but
 nat for than Dunstone dude the
 lawe a yerst the kyng as for a
 nonne, suth that the kyng wolde
 coueyte any, whether she were
 vereliche veiled or noo. But
 how so euer thes this [*sic*]
 thynges were, certeyne hit is,
 that fro the xvi. yere of his age,
 whiche yer he was ordeyned
 kyng, a non to the xxx. yere
 him lakked his coronyng. And
 thenne was he crowned atte
 Bathe, and lyued after but iii.
 yere. *Neque hac in re magni*
æstimandam esse censeo aucto-
ritatem rotulæ cujusdam mem-
branæ, sermone Gallico, penes
Richardum Gravesium, ami-
cum illum eruditissimum, de
Mickleton in agro Gloucestri-
ensi, in qua rotula tanquam filia
legitima commemoratur Editha,
contra fidem scriptorum opti-
morum. Hæc enim verba ro-
tulæ: Iceti Edgar auoit. ii.
 femmes, le vne apres lautre. De
 la primer il engendra Edward,
 ke puis fu martyr, e Seint
 Edith. de la secunde Eamun e
 Ethelred. *Quam tamen rotu-*
lam idcirco plurimi faciendam
esse duco, quod plerisque, quas
vidi, sit antiquior, picturasque
regum ac principum exhibeat,
minus equidem elegantes, sed
quæ antiquariis multis in
rebus usui esse possint. Sed
(quod dolendum) imperfecta
est

He deyde & wende to heuene nyn hondred ȝer ȝch wene
As in ¹ þe of grace, and sýxtý and fyftene.

SEYNT Edward þe marter, ȝs eldore sone,
After hým was kýng ȝmad, as lawe was & wone.
þe godnesse of þys ȝonge kýng ne maý no tonge telle.
Vor he was mek & mýlde ȝnou, & vayr of fless & felle,
Debonere to speke wyþ, & wyþ pouere men mest.
Chast and wýs of conseýl, and prute he louede lest.
Wýlde men ne louede he noȝt, þat rechýles were of þoȝte,
Ac wýse men he drou to hým, & after hem he wroȝte.
Ech gret dede þat he dude, þe messtedel ssolde go
After þe erchebýssop Seýn Dunston, þat was þo.
Gode pes þer was in Engeland, & loue & joýe ȝnou,
And rýchesse bý ȝs daye, vor elles ȝt were wyþ wou.
To þe godnesse of þys holýmon þe deuel adde enuýe,
And þe luper quene ȝs stepmoder, þat vol was of tricherýe.
Vor heo þoȝte nýȝt & day, ȝyf heo mýȝte þoru ený þýng
þat Seynt Edward were aslawe, & yre sone ȝmad kýng.
þe ȝer þat he ȝmartred was þe hexte men of þe lond
In þe toun of Calne were, as ȝch vnderstonde.

*est rotula, quippe quæ incipit
ab Athelstano rege, desinitque
cum Edwardo post conquæ-
tum primo, priori parte, pa-
riter atque posteriori, abscis-
sa, & forsitan funditus deper-
dita. in cujus sane Athelstani
regis pictura illud plane ob-
servatu dignissimum esse vi-
deo, quod sceptrum sive insig-*

*ne regium in manu teneat si-
nistra, veterum ad amussim re-
ferens βακτηρίας. minime absur-
de, quum princeps esset belli-
cosissimus, clavaque Herculeæ
usum fuisse censerent hostes.
cujusmodi tamen βακτηρίας neu-
tiquam, quod sciam, videas in
nummis Athelstanianis.*

¹ Adde, ȝer.

As hii sete in an chambre an heȝ in conseȝl of speche
 þe flor to brac vnder hem, as ȝt were vor wreche,
 And hii velle and debrusede somme anon to deþe,
 And somme ȝmaymed, & somme ȝhurt, so þat enȝ vnneþe,
 Wȝpoute gret harm, of scapede, bote Seȝn Dunston by cas,
 þat hente hȝm bȝ a bem, and ȝsaued was.
 Wat bȝ toknede þȝs, þat þe heȝme men velle so,
 Bote þat hii and al þat lond bȝneþe ssolde be ȝdo,
 þoru folc of strange lond, and þat me ssolde ȝse,
 Vor hii soffrede her kȝng so vȝllȝche ȝ morþred be?
 Vor a daȝ as Seȝn Edward an hontey wende bȝ cas
 In an wode in Dorsete, þat bȝsyde ¹ Warham was,
 þat vaȝr wode was þulke tȝme, a gret wȝlle hȝm com to,
 Vor to ȝse ȝs gonge broþer, (vor anon he þogte ȝt do.)
 Vor he was a lute þer bȝsyde, as ȝs stepmoder was,
 In an toun, þat me cluped Corf, þat bote þre mȝle þanne nas.
 A strong castel þer ȝs nou, ac þo nas non þere.
 Longe þogte Seynt Edward at ȝs broþer ar he were.
 An vewe men mȝd hȝm he nom, & þuder ward gan ryde.
 Hȝs men pleyde bȝ þe weȝ, & spradde aboute wȝde.
 So þat þȝs holȝ kȝng alone was sone,
 And alone wende vorþ, as he þogte to done.
 þo hȝs luþer stepmoder alone ȝseȝ hȝm come,
 Heo þogte do ȝre wȝlle of hȝm, as heo adde ȝr red ȝ nome.
 þo þȝs holȝ man was neȝ ȝcome, þe quene agen hȝm eode
 Wȝþ noble maȝne ȝnou, & gret loue hȝm gan bede.
 þe feste þat heo wȝþ hȝm made non tonge telle ne maȝ.
 Heo suor, þat he ssolde alȝgte, & bȝleue mȝd ȝre al day.

¹ Wharham *Ar.*

“ Certes, madame,” quap þys oþer, “ so ne may yt nogt be.
 “ Ac lat me speke myd my broþer, vor me longeþ hym to se.
 “ Vor ar ych hym abbe yseye, y ne worþe nogt blyþe ywys,
 “ Myn herte ys so muche on hym, & non wonder hyt nys.
 “ A, syre,” quap þys luþer quene, “ wanne yt ne may oþer be,
 “ Vorst ych wolle to þe drynke, & suppe þou ssalt hym yse.
 “ As me hym drynke toc, on was prest ynou,
 “ And þoru ys wombe smot a knyf, and ys gottes to drog.
 A long knyf yt was & smal y nou, as me may gut yse
 Atte chyrche of Kauersham, as he ap gare ybe.
 þys holyman sat vp rygȝt, & ysey ys deþe's wounde.
 He ne rod bote lute wey, ar he vel to grounde,
 An let þer ys suete lyf, and to heuene wende.
 Away! lute wel þogte he, þo me ys wombe rende.
 þo þys holy man ymartred was, hii, þat hym þer brogte to,
 Byþogte hou hii mygte best myd þe holy body do.
 Hii porueyde an derne stude, & þer inne yt caste
 Vyllyche & stýllelyche, & bured yt þer vaste.
 þo þys dede was ydo, þe quene adde al hyre wýlle,
 (Vor me ¹ hal euere myd þe quyke,) þe dede was sone stýlle.
 Seynt Edward þe ² výtfe ger of ys kýnedom
 Aȝen eue aday aslawe was in such marterdom.

³ **A**ELDRED, þe quene sone, þat kyng was ymad þo,
 Nas bote of ten ger old, þo ys moder dude þys wo.
 Ne of þys dede nuste he nogt, bote as God gef þat cas.
 In þe ⁴ luft he hurde anhey, as he alone was,

¹ Holt Ar. ² Ferst Ar. *mi-*
nus recte. ³ Ethelred Ar. *tam*

h̄c, quam & in seqq. ⁴ Welkne
 he hurde Ar.

Hys broþer, þat was aslawe, pytoslyche grede.
 þet chyld cryde & sore wep, & ys moder þat cas sede
 Welle, þat þys luþer quene anguyssous was þo.
¹ þat chyld heo hente vaste anon, þat he ne moste on vot go.
 ʒerd ne vond heo prest non, þat chyld vorto bete,
 An honduol heo hente of ² candlen longe and grete.
³ þat chyld heo bete ⁴ so stronge myd þe condlen long & towe,
 Heo ne byleuede nogt ar he lay at hyre vet yswowe.
⁵ Warþoru þys chyld afterward, such heȝ man as he was,
 Was þe worse wan he sey condlen vor þys cas.
 Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys chyld me made kyng,
 Ac Seyn Dunston ⁶ wel vneþe wolde do þe sacring.
⁷ Vor god man spek ek þerof wel longe by uore,
 þo he baptysed þys Aeldred, sone so he was y bore.
 Vor þe chyld fuled in hys hond þe water & þe vanston,
 Byuore byssopes þat þer were, and heȝe men mony on,
 And dude hys kunde fulþ hede. Seyn Dunston seyde anon,
 þat he ssolde of sunne encheson be, & of wrechhede mony on.
 And þo he ssolde ⁸ kyng be, þys god man Seyn Dunston
 Hatede mucche to crouny hym, ȝyf he yt myȝte ver gon.
⁹ Ac þo he moste nede yt do, þoru pur londe's lawe,
 "Syre kyng," he seyde, "vor þou art myd vnryȝt herto
 ydrawe,

¹ The childe *Ar.* ² Wex-

chandellen *Ar.* ³ The *Ar.*

⁴ So sore bette with *Ar.*

⁵ Wherfor euer afterward,

for this ilke cas, Whenne he

suche candelen seigh, the

worse him thought he was *Ar.*

⁶ Deest *Ar.* ⁷ Of him pro-

phecied Dunston long by fore,

Tho that he christened him

whenne he was ibore *Ar.*

⁸ I crouned be, the godeman

Dunston Wel loth he was to

croune *Ar.* ⁹ But whenne

he most nedes hit doo, by the

londe's lawe, *Ar.*

“ Up þy nowe heued yt ssal come þy moder luþer plawe
 “ þoru ssedyng of þy broþer blod, þat þus ys brogt of dawe.
 “ And vor Englysse men were wel ypayd
 “ In ssedyng of þy broþer blod, þat so was bytraid,
 “ þer vor her poer ssal al clene hem be bynome,
 “ ¹ And þou al so. Vor strange folc of strange londe ssal come,
 “ And þy lond vor þyn seruage & to grounde ybrogt.
 “ And al þat ssal come by þyne day, & by myne nogt.
 “ Atte laste our Louerd wolle of hem vnderstonde.
 And al þys word to soþe com supþe to Engeland.
 gut Eldfred, þe leþer quene, þat Seynt Edward slou,
 Of yr trepas byuore yre deþ repentant was ynou,
 And rerde tuo nonneryes, Worwel þat one was,
 And Ambresbury þet oþer, to bete yre trespas,
 An adde grace, gyf God wolle, yre synne vor to bete,
 And come to gode amendement, ar heo þat lyf lete.
 þe þrydde ger, as yt wolde be, of Ayldrede's kynedom,
 þe bygynnyng of þys sorwe to Engeland vorst come.
 Vor of þe volc of Denemarch þer ariuede þo,
 Atte hauene of Souþ hamtone, sene ssyp vol & ² nanmon,
 An robbede þe toun vaste, at her poer nobyng nas.
 þys was as a tokne þat to comyng was,
 As by Seynt Dunstone's day nanmore þer ne com.
 Vor he deyde þe teþe ger of þe kyng's kynedom,

¹ On the also strange folke
 of other londe shall come.
 This londe worth in seruage,
 and be to grounde i brought
Ar. Igitur pro vor þyn repo-
nerem worþ yn, i. e. shall be to.

² Nomo, And gonne to robbe
 faste a boute, but lite here
 power nas. This was the
 furst tokene of woo to come
 that was, But by Dunstone's
Ar.

And nyne hondred ger & eygte & eygtety after þat God was ybore.

And þe byssop Seynt Athelwold was ded þer byuore,

And Seynt Oswald þe byssop after þre ger,

As in þe ¹ þretteþe ger þat þe kyng croune ber.

² þer betere peys yt was vor hem þe wule hii were alýue.

³ Ac after her daye sone, þe sorwes spronge blyue.

¹ xiii. yere *Ar.* ² The better *Ar.* ³ But after her dayes sone sorwes sprong ryue. This kyng, er he hadde a wyf, he gat ane sone Bi a symple woman, that wortheuer in mone, That, for his strenght, called was Edmundede Irenside. For so orped knyght me ne knewe wide *Ar.* *minus quidem recte, & contra fidem eximii probique nostri historici Roberti, qui plane docuit, Edmundi matrem uxorem re vera fuisse Ethelredi. id quod etiam fecerunt alii optimæ notæ scriptores, (inter quos jure optimo censendus eruditissimus Bradius) secus atque illi, qui, partibus addicti, nothum Edmundum (è concubina nimirum genitum) fuisse produnt, in quibus & ipse erat Jacobus Tyrrellus, qui tamen, paullo antequam fatis concessisset, me monente in Lelando nostro, (Coll. Vol. VI. p. 75.) sententiam mutavit, ut è nota quadam liquet in Bibliotheca Bodleiana ab ipso Jacobo pro-*

pria manu in Historia sua Angliæ generali scripta, quam simul atque commodum fuerit consulas velim. Ceterum & illud notandum est, per symple woman in Cod. Ar. non aliud quam ignobilem feminam esse intelligendum, de qua re nos etiam breviter egimus in Lelando. id quod etiam viderat auctor prosaicus in Cod. Ar. ubi de Edmundo sic scribit: This kynges [Ethelred] sone was not of Emme quene, but of a nother woman unknow to the commune peple. Natheles he was a faire, jolyf yong man, a strong man and hardy, and for thi of Englysshmen was he cleped Edmundede Irenside. He mucche a leide þe cowardyse of his fader, and þe loughnesse of his moder in him self thorgh his vertue noblelich. Atque hæc chartis mandaveram priusquam rotulam (cujus supra, p. 286. mentionem feci) Gravesianam vidissem, quæ tamen nec ipsa illis favet, qui
Ed-

þe kyng adde by hys vorste wyf one stalwarde sone,
 þat, vor hys stalwardhed, longe worþ in mone.
 Vor me ne vond non so gode kyngt ware so he wende wyde.
 Me cleped hym, vor hys strengþe, Edmond yrensyde."
 þe sorwes, as ych chabbe ytold, spronge aboute ylome.
 Vor þat folc of Denemarch sone to londe come,

Edmundum nothum fuisse velint. Contra, picturæ tanquam primogenitum heredemque Ethelredi exhibent, verbaque ipsa filium ex uxore non è concubina fuisse innuunt. hæc nempe, pro interpunctione rotulæ. Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun yreneside de vne femme aliene ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie. si engendra alured ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de kent. E Edward le confessour ke gist a Westmoster. E quibus verbis non est quod colligas, Edmundi matrem fuisse ducis Normanniæ sororem, quæ tamen (utpote Ethelredi uxor secunda) Aluredi atque Edwardi mater vera erat. Id quod satis erit manifestum, si hoc modo verba rotulæ distinguantur. Icesti Ethelred engendra Eamun Yreneside. De une femme aliene, ke fu la soer au duc de Normandie, si engendra Alured, ke fu trai par Goudwyn count de Kent, e Edward le Confes-

sour, ke gist a Westmoster. Hæc distinctio si probetur, id utique liquebit, rotulæ auctorem Edmundi matrem ignobilem itidem fuisse censuisse, nihilque proinde de eadem à seipso fuisse dicendum. Ceterum non diffiteor, alibi etiam de Irenside matre locutum fuisse scriptorem prosaicum in codice Ar. eamque pro concubina habuisse. After the deth (inquit ille) of Knut, Harolde & Hardeknut, kynges of Engelande, regned Seynt Edwarde Confessour, Edmund de Irenside's brother in his fader's half, that is to seye of Ethelred kyng, but nat in the moder. for this Edmund de Irenside was gete of vnlawfulle bedde, though he were noble and stronge in batayle. Atque hæc sub Henrico II^o. tradit, ubi de Henrici II^{di}. stemmate agit, verba dicta interim innuens è Chronicis Gallicis se produxisse.

And

And anour alf þys lond þe haenes hii adde ysozt.
 So þat Norphomberlond was al to grounde ybrozt.
 Kent hii destrude also god, & þe Est contreye wyde.
¹ Exetre hii barnde al adoun, & in þe West syde.
 Vr kyng worrede ofte agen, as he mygte do.
 Ac wreche of ys broþer deþ wel harde hym com to.
 Vor hys poer was lute worþ. vor he gef hem atten ende
 Four þousend pound of sterlynges, hem agen to wende.
 So þat hys quene deyde, and of sorwe and sore
 Hym com in eche half, euere þe leng þe more.
 Vor þe Deneys come agen, and in eueryche ende
 Hym worrede her & þer, þat he nuste wuder wende.
 He byþozte hym wel narwe, gyf þer mygte be eny red
 þoru wyuynge, oþer þoru eny þyng, ² vor hys wyf was ded,
 He vnder stod, þat Rycharde, duc of Normandy,
 Was man of gret poer, and of gret seýgnorye,
 Vor Emme, hys ³ gode dogter," he sende ofte ys sonde,
 To spouse hyre and to make hyr quene of Engelond,

¹ The West contre also they
 wonne Denenshire, And the
 Toune of Excestre sette thay a
 fuyr. Our kyng werred Ar. ²
Tam hinc quam & alibi mire
omnia permutantur in Ar. ita
scilicet, ut hæc verba plane o-
mittat, ne Edmundi Irenside
matrem Ethelredi uxorem fu-
isse agnosceret. ³ Good sus-
 ter, Ar. *Sed discrepantia inde*
orta, quia Richardus & Em-

ma filii erant Richardi primi,
ducis Normanniæ. Hinc cer-
te scriptor prosaicus in eod.
Codice Ar. Thes [Emme]
 was Richarde's doughter, duc
 of Normandie, which. L. wyn-
 ter after William his fader
 gouerned thulke Duchie, which
 the xviii. yere this kyng dey-
 de. And after him came Ri-
 charde the II. whas suster was
 thees Emme.

þat

þat he myȝte, þoru alyance, eny help vndergo,
To wyte hym fram hem of Denemarch, þat dude þys lond so
wo.

So þat þo hii were aton, þe spousynge was ydo,
As in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and tuo,
And of þe kynge's crounyng in four & tuenty þe ȝere.

¹ þo þogte þe kȳng, þat he adde of ys son þe lasse fere.

² And here sprong, lo! þe vorste more as of hem of Normandie,
Ware þoru hii come in to þys lond, & ³ abbeþ þe maystre.

Vor þe kȳng adde by ⁴ þys. M. tueye sones ywys,
Alfred, & Seynt Edward þat at Westymustre yssrȳned ys.

And of þulke blode suppe Wyllam bastard com,
As ȝe ssolle her after yhure, and wan þys kȳnedom.

þat poer muche of Denemarch in pes wytoute strȳf
Was hem ywend to Denemarch, ar þe kȳng weddede wyf.
þe kȳng, vor ys grete poer, as of ys ⁵ wȳnnȳge,

Alle þe Deneys, þat were byleued, he let to deþe bringe
In a Seynt Bryce day, and in one day echon,

þat non nere of opere ywar, ne þat þer ne of scapede non.

Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, þo he hurde of þys cas,
Made hym wroþ & wod ynou, & eche þat wyþ hym was.

Hii greyþed hem myd gret poer, and to Engeland come

As in þe uȳue & tuentyþe ȝer of þe kȳnge's kȳnedome,

⁶ Hud in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and þre.

Hii slowe & sorwe dude ynou, nomore ne myȝte be.

¹ Thenne *pro* þo *in* *Ar.*

² Ther sprong vppe tho the
ferst more of hem of Nor-
mandye, *Ar.* ³ Hadde the
seignourie *Ar.* ⁴ This que.

ii. sonnes I wȳs *Ar. rectius.*
nisi forsitan M. *pro* Mistress
vel Maistress *sive* domina *ac-*
cipias. ⁵ *L.* wȳnnȳge. ⁶ *L.*
and *cum* *Ar.*

So þycke hii come, þat þe lond ouer al hii gonne fulle,
 As þycke as ameten crepeþ in an amete hulle.
 By Norþe and by Souþe, in þe Est and in þe West,
 So þycke hii come, þat me nuste in wuch half kepe best.
 Hii ne sparede prest ne clerc, þat hii ne slowe to grounde,
 Ne men of relygyon, ware so hii eny founde.
 Ne wommane, ne soukyng chylde, ne dogter, ne sone.
 Hii verbarnde Norwych, and þe toun of Wyltone.
 þat a reulych lond was Engeland, & fol of sorwe ynou.
 Hii mygte acorsy þe ¹ fole² quene, þat Seynt Edward slou.
^a Vor Swan, þe luper duc, adde euere ys yuere
 þre felawes, þat next hym were, in echt manere
 Byreynynge and robberye, and quellyng atte laste.
 þys were hys þre felawes, þat he huld euere vaste.
 Wanne at an god manne's house ys men were at inne,
 Vorst hii wolde etc & drynke þat hii found þer inne,
 And suppe þe louerd of þe hous quelle and alle hys,
 And suppe brenne al ys hous, as vor her scot ywys.
 Suche were þo þe gyftes þat hyder come þo.
 Muche aþ Engeland ydryue sorwe and wo.
 Mest wo hii dude in Barcessyre, and vp Assesdounce,
 And so aboute Quychelmesley, and so in mony tounce.
 Atte laste kyng Ayldred, þo he was to grounde ybrogt,
 And muche of þe lond aslawe and destruyd al to noht,

¹ <i>Deest Ar.</i>	² With this	myche folke of him sore a gast.
Swan, the luper duke, iii.		Most sorow they dude in
felwes were, Euere folwyng		Berke shire aboute Asshe-
hym, of luther manere, Rob-		doune, And a boutte Quichol-
hyng and brennyng, & quel-		mes they stroyed many a
lyng the last. These made		toune <i>Ar.</i>

Suan,

Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, he gef atte nende
 Folle þryttý þousend pound, to Denemarch to wende,
 And býleue þys lond in pes, so þat þys was ydo.
 Ac lute yt was ar þer com wel more wo þerto.
 Vor þe kýng Aýldred, ysey ys lond al bare
 Of þe folc of Denemarch, he nolde nozt gut be ýwar,
 Ac let gaderý anewe host, þoru al Engeland wel wýde,
 Of heye men and of lowe eke, ygadered bý þe hyde,
 þat euere eygte hyde lond an man bym ssolde fýnde
 Wýþ helm & haubert, & þe atýl, þat non nere býhýnde;
 And greyþed hem ssyppes in þe see, ac al nas worþ afýlle.
¹ Vor þo ys coust was al ydo, he mýgte let abbe ýbe styлле.
 To Suan, duc of Denemarch, þe týtynge sone com.
 Hys ost and hys poer wýþ hým sone he nome.
 And in þe þousend zer of grace, & þe teþe zer al so,
 And of vr kýnge's crounement þryttý zer and tuo,
 In an holy þores day, to þys lond he come,
 And þen toun of Gýpeswých mýd strengþe sone nome,
 And robbede aboute in þe lond, and tounes adoun caste.
 Ac þe contreye of Grantebrugge agen hem stod vaste,
 And fogte al þe stalwarde men, þe wule her poer ýlaste,
 Ac hii were, as hii nede moste, býneþe atte laste.
 And þere was þe kýnge's suster sone ýslawe Aþelston,
 And barons and knýgtes, and heye men monýon.
 Aboute heruest ² þys Dencýs as roters arnde
 Bý Chýlterne to Oxenford, and ³ þen toun barnde.

¹ Tho all the cost was i | ther more wende *Ar.* ³ Thane
 made, hii myght as well a be | toune brende *Ar.*
 stille *Ar.* ² The Danes fur-

þo wende hii vorþ of Denemarch, & robbed al Estsex,
 And ¹ gute bruggessyre & Estangle, & also Mýddel sex.
 Bokýnghamssyre & Oxenfordssyre, & Hertfordssyre al so,
 Bedeuordssyre and haluendel Hontýndonessyre þerto.
 Norþhamtessyre, and by Souþe Temese Barcssyre,
 And Soþereye and Souþsex, and Souþhamtessyre.
 An mucheldel of Wýltessyre, and þo al þys was ydo,
 Hii drowe hem toward Canterburý, to robbý þere al so.
 In þe þousend ȝer of grace, and endleuene þerto,
 þys folc com to Kanterburý, robberye to do.
 By tuene hour leuede day þe latere, & Mýelmasse day,
 þys folc býsette Kanterburý, and vaste býlay,
 And gret raýmson of hem wýþinne esste to be out of wo.
 Ac þe erchebýssop of þe toun, Seynt ² Alfe þat was þo,
 Was vaste þer agen to ȝýue ený raýmson.
 þe Deneýs vor wrappe þo asaylede vast þe toun,
 And wonne hym, & vaste slowe, & þo hii wýþ inne com,
 Hey men, þat þer inne were, and Seynt Alfe hii nome,
 And monekes, & þe toun barnde & adoun caste.
 þe erchebýssop Seynt Alfe hii heolde & bounde vaste,
 And ladde hym býsyde London to þe toun of Greneswých,
 And helde hym þer in prison, þat he nas nan man ýlýche,
 Half ȝer and somdel more, and suppe in þe ȝer of grace
 A þousend and tuelf ȝer, hii ladde hym ³ in an place
 Wýþoute þe toun Greneswýke, & stenede hym wýþ stones
 As me stenede Seynt Steuene, ⁴ & debrusede ys bones.

¹ L. Grantebruggesyre. ² I. e. Elphege. ³ To a place *Ar.*

⁴ And all to bruyed his bones *Ar.*

Atte laste myd a denchax me smot hym to grounde
 In þe heuede, þat he lay, and deyde in astounde.
¹ þe Saterdag, in þe Ester wouke, þys holy man' hii slowe,
 Ac vewe þat were atte dede þe beue rege bylowe.
 Vor somme by come cancrefrete, & somme blynde oþer wode,
 And somme deyde verlych as hii vp rygȝt stode.
 So þat vor drede of þys wreche þe Deneys were agaste,
 And wyþdrou hem of her luper hede þe wule yt wolde y laste,
² And þer was þe betere pes ager, and vnneþe.
 Vor in þe ger of grace a þousend and þretteþe
 Suan, þe duc of Denemarch, by gan to turne ys hond.
 And after þat he adde destrud þe Souþ alf of þys lond,
 He wende and robbede al þys lond al þe Norþ syde,
 Norþomber and Lyndeseye, and destrude wyde
 Euere fram Watelyngestret, and so by Oxenford.
 Hii come and nome Wynchestre, and so Walynford.
 Fram Walyngford hii wende, & þe toun of Baþe nome.
 So þat Suan was kyng yholde, ware so he euer come.
 Ac þe kyng of Engeland, in such sor & mournynge,
 Carede of ys gonge sones mest of alle þynge,
 Laste hii were defoulde oȝt. vor hii ne couþe of fyȝtenge.
 þer vor into Normandy he let hem sone brynge,

¹ This was doo the Efter
 [l. Ester] wouke in the Sa-
 terday, As more plenner in
 his lyf se ther of me may.
 Manȝ, that was atte his
 deth, by com blynde & wode,
 And summe deide sodeynlich
 vp rygȝt as they stode *Ar.*

² *Desunt omnia metra sequen-
 tia in Cod. Ar. usque ad
 hoc signum marginale (☞)
 in historia Edmundi Yrene-
 syde, quorum tamen loco per-
 quam multa occurrunt, ora-
 tione soluta scripta.*

Boþe Alfred & Seynt Edward, & þe quene her moder also,
 Wyþ þe duc Rychard, þe quene broþer, vorte such wo were ydo.
 Ac hys eldoste sone Edmond yrenesyde,
 Vor he was hardy, & gode knygt, atome he let abyde.
 þat luþer folc of Denemarch robbede and slowe vaste,
 And chyrchyn and abbey's barnde and adoun caste.
 Men ley vn bured to drawe, þat reuþe yt was ynou.
 þat feble folc to wyldernesse and to wodes vaste drou.
 Aylfred kyng of Engeland, þo he sey al þys wo,
 Hou me destruyde ys lond, and ys folc slou,
 To mydewynter he wende anon, þo he ne sey oþer red,
 To Normandy, & huld hym þere vorte þe duc Suan was ded.
 Suan deyde in þe ȝer of grace a þousend and fourteþe.
 Hys folc made enere vaste worre ȝut after ys deþe,
 And made hys sone kyng after hym, Knout was hys name,
 þat dude, aswel as hys fader, Engeland gret ssame.
 An false knyghtes of Engeland hulde myd hym vaste,
 Ac hii, þat trewe & gode were, agen hym her herte caste,
 And sende after kyng Aylfred into Normandye stylle,
 And he come sone to Engeland, and wende abbe ys wylle.
 Ac þe kyng Knout yt vnder ȝet, he was fol of rage.
¹ He wende anon to Sandwyche, & men þere in ostage,

¹—but sodeyneliche he
 turned his sayles to ward
 Sandewyche, and wente a
 londe. And puttýng a way
 bothe Godde's drede and
 mane's, the hostages, whiche
 he hadde faire children of
 gret noblete, he let take and

kutte of hure noses and eres,
 and somme a blende. And
 whenne he had so I doo, he
 tolde hit as for a grete joye,
 and glorie, that he hadde so
 defouled the Englyssh hosta-
 ges *inquit auctor prosaicus in*
Cod. Ar.

þat

þat were bytake hys fader, vor heye men of þe londe,
 He nom and let hym smyte of boþe vet and honde.
 Nou adde heye men of þe lond ytake þere byuore
 Hys fader ostage god ynou, and dep of ysuore,
 Wyp hym to holde trewelyche, and breke þo her of,
 þeruore þe kyng Knout wyp hem was þo so wod wroþ,
 And vor wrappe let bylyme her ostages þat were.
 Subbe he wende into Westsex, and robbede þere,
 And in Dorsete dude & Wyltessyre & Somerssete gret wo,
 Kyng Ayldred lay syk in þe toun of Cosham þo,
 In Westende of Wyltessyre, vor he was feble and old,
 And wyp care and sorwe ouercome, as me aþ ytold,
 An fram Cosham to Londone he of scapede vnneþe,
 Vorto wyte hym fram ys fon, þat hii ne brogte hym to deþe.
 þere he huld hym in þe toun myd muche sorwe and sore,
 þat of al hys lond of Engelond he nadde an fot more.
 þe gates he made vaste, and wuste hym wyp inne.
 His fon asaylede þen toun wypoute myd al her gynne.
 Atte laste þys kyng Ayldred, as in al þys stryue,
 In an Seyn Gregorye's day, wende out of þys lyue,
 As in þe zer of grace a þousend & sýxteþe.
 Feblyche he lyuede al hys lyue, & deyde in feble deþe,
 In suche sorwe he was kyng seuene & þrytty zer.
 He adde mony an sorý day, & muchel angýsse er,
 An, vor wreche of hys broþer deþ, al such sorwe to hym come,
 þat lute joye he adde al ys lyf of ys kenedom.

EDMOND yrenesyde, kȳng Aȳldrede's sone,
 So gode knȳgt of body was, þat longe worþ in mone.
 Me nuste so gode in none londe, an atte bȳgȳnnynge,
 After hȳs fader deþe, me ches hȳm to kȳnge,
 þe heȳe men of þe lond, þat fals ne luper nere.
 Ac monȳe hulde mȳd kȳng Knout, þat false an trȳsthors were.
 Edmond, vor ȳs strenge, was ȳcluped Yrenesyde.
 Dreduol he was to ȳs fon, þat hym durste vewe abyde.
 Debonere and mylde he was to alle þat gode were.
 Queynte & suȳþe hardȳ mon, as man wypoute fere.
 Vorst he wende to Westsex, and þere ech contreȳe
 Aboute al to ȳs wille boþe vor loue and eye.
 As leon hardȳ ȳnou he wende aboute wȳde,
 An wan contreȳe and oþer aboute in eche sȳde.
 þat Knout nadde poer non aȳen hȳm vor to stonde,
 ȳf false traytors nadde ȳbe here of Engelande,
 þat hulde mȳd þe kȳng Knout, traytors as hii were.
 So þat noþer of þȳs kȳnges abouȳnde to oþer nere,
 Ac eyþer gaderede gret ost, and of oþere's men slowe.
 Atte laste mȳd her ost to gadere ward hii drowe,
 And mette hem after mȳdsomer, þe feste of Seȳn Jon,
 And a gret bataȳle smȳte bȳsȳde þe toun of Sserston,
 And slowe to grounde mucche folc, & þo al was ȳdo
 þe kȳnges & mucche of her folc aȳue partede atuo.
 þo wende kȳng Edmond to Londone myd ȳs route,
 And al þat folc of Denemarch destrude þer aboute,
 And drof hem out of þȳs lond, & gut nolde he nogt blȳnne,
 Ac wende in to Westsex þulke contreȳe to wȳnne.

þo he was fram by Este ywend, þe Deneys myd al here gýnne
 Bysegede Londone, ac hii ne mýgte nogt come wýþynne.
 So wel he was wýþynne ýwust, þoru men þat þer were,
 þe Deneys hem wýþ drowe, þo hem ne spedde nogt þere,
 And wende Estward in to Kent, & robbede þere vaste,
 And her preye at Medeweýe in to ssýppes caste.
 Kýng Edmond hem sýwede, þo he hurde þýs,
 And passede Temese and Breýnford ýwýs,
 And slou aboute vaste ýnou monýe þat he vond,
 And monýe flowe her and þere aboute in þe lond.
 Bataýles hii smýte moný one, as we býgonne to telle er.
 Vor eygte bataýles hii dude neý wat wýþinne half ger.
 As at Sserston and ellesware, and þe sýxte bataýle was
 Uppe þe hulle of Assesdonne, ýchýlle telle þat cas.
 þýs tueýe noble kýnges mýd her poer hem mette,
 And smýte þere a bataýle, and vaste to gadere sette.
 ýordeýned hii adde her ost wel in eyþer sýde,
 And Edmond ýdýgt hýs standard, were he ssolde hým sulf
 abyde,
 And hýs dragon vp ýset, and þýs bataýle ysmýte.
 Hii slowe to grounde in eyþer alf, þat deol it was to wýte.
 In ys standard Edmond was, as rýgt was vor to abyde.
 He sey, þat me slou ýs folc aboute in eche sýde.
 Hys herte hým nolde soffrý nogt abyde vorte týme were,
 Ac to þe bataýle smot anon, as man wýþoute fere,
 And býleuede dragon & standard, & stured vaste ys honde,
 And slou to grounde, as noþýng hym ne ssolde at stonde.
 Sone adde ýs gode body ýperced þe ost þoru out.
 He made ýs weý roume ýnou, vorte he come to kyng Knout.

þere were duntis arýgt ýsmýte býtuene hem tueýe
 Of þe helmes, þat fur sprong out, vor hii were strong beýe.
 A duc, þat was mýd kýng Edmond, Edryc was ys name,
 þat was traytor and louerd suýke, our Louerd gýue hým
 ssame.

Vor he fondede hým býtraýe, vor kýng Knoute's loue,
 þo he dradde þat Edmond was, as he seý, al aboue,
 And kýng Knout neý ouercome, vp an hul an heý
 He wende wýþ ýs suerde adrawe, þat þet folc hým al ýseý.
 He adrou ýs blodý suerd, and loude býgan to grede:
 “Englysse men, Englysse men, fleþ anon, ých rede.
 “Vor Edmond, vre kýng, to deþe he ýs ýdo.
 Hým sulf he gan vorst to fle. vor opere ssolde al so.
 Englysse men hým leuede wel, & flowe after blýue,
 And al yt was to býtraýe ýs louerd, þat was alýue.
 þo kýng Edmond þýs yseý, þat ýs folc vnder stod,
 þat he was to deþe ýbrogt, and þeruor flowe vor wod,
 He arnde vp a lute hul, and gradde in þe place
 Hys folc, and dude of ýs helm, and ssewede hys face,
 And seyde, “turneþ vaste azen, ýcham alýue ywys.
 Hys folc turnede anon azen, þo hii hurde þýs,
 And smýte vorþ þýs bataýle, gretter ne mygte non be,
 And fogte vorte yt was nýgt, þat hii mygte noleng ýse.
 Ac ye Englysse adde,ybe aboue, gýf ýt nadde ýbe vor nýgt.
 Ac hii departede, as hii nede moste, vor defaute of sýgte.
 Hii greýped hem þerafter, anoþer bataýle to do,
 And ef sone come to gadere vp Assesdoune al so,
 And bataýle smýte strong ynou, ac Knoute's poer vaste
 Wexýnge was, þat he wan þe maystrie atte laste.

Sorý

Sorȳ was Edmond þo, to Gloucestrye he wende,
 To porueȳe hȳm more help, ȝyf God hȳm grace sende.
¹ Kȳng Knout sȳwed after mȳd an long taȳle.
 So þat aboute Gloucestrye þe eȳgteþe bataȳle
² Up Seuerne hii smȳte, & astede, & so vaste me slou
 þe gode bodyes in eyþer alf, þat ȳt was deol ȳnou.
 Mȳd blod þe erþe was ȳheled, þat pyte ȳt was to wȳte.
 Ac noþer partȳe ne mȳgte þe maȳstrye.
 Ne hii ne mygte ȳse vor þe nȳgte þe bataȳle to do non ende.
 Hii departede mȳd sorw ȳnou amorwe agen to wende.
 And kȳng Edmond ouer Seuerne was in West sȳde,
 And kȳng Knout bȳgan mȳd ȳs ost in Estalf abyde.
 And Seuerne was bytuene hem, & Knoute's poer
 Of volc of bȳgonde see wax euere ver & ner.
 As Edmond sat mȳd ȳs ost anygt in ³ such solas,
 As folc mȳgte, þat ver wounded & sor & werȳ was,
 And speke of þȳs bataȳle, hou ȳt mygte be god :
 An old kȳngt þer ros vp, & bȳuore þȳs folc stode.
 "Icham," he seȳde, "mest fol. þeruore, as foles wolle,
 "Mȳ fole red, ȝyf ȝe wolle ȳhure, vorst ssewe ichȳlle.

¹ Knut snȳd euer after hym
 euer atte taille *Ar.* ² Up-
 on Seuerne in a place they
 smyte stronge i now. Manȳ
 was the goode body in eyther
 half me slow. But yutte
 neyther partie the mastrye
 haue mȳght, By cause that
 they were lette bȳ comȳng of
 the nȳght. Kyng Edmunde

was of Seuerne in the West
 syde, And Knut in the Est
 half a ȳenst him ganne bide,
 So that the water was bȳ
 twene her bothes power, And
 the folke of Denemarch wax
 euer fer and ner *Ar.* ³ This
 cas, Wher manȳ a wound-
 edman and werȳ i fougt was,
Ar.

- " Muche þyng we abbeþ yseye, & vre elderne vs ek seyde.
 " Angusse & sorwe we abbeþ ynou, of wel more we mowe drede.
 " We fyghteþ & beþ ouercome, & non maystrie we ne yseþ.
 " Hou mygte we bote be ouercome, þat þus defoulede beþ?
 " ¹ Despoyled & verwounded, & vre strengþe le seþ vaste,
 " Vre felawes & vre owe lyf we dredeþ ek atte laste.
 " Wanne ssal vre reste come, & endynge of vre wo,
 " And among vus sykerness & pays? ych drede neuere mo.
 " Edmond ne may be ouercome vor hys strengþe ywys,
 " Ne þe kyng Knout oure fo, vor he so queynte ys.
 " Wat may þanne oure ende be, bote, wanne þys knyghtes
 echoi.
 " In cyþer syde beþ aslawe, & oure maystres byleued one,
 " Oþer hii mote þanne acordy, oþer fygte hem sulue tuo?
 " ² Wat reson ys, þat hii ne mowe as wel nouþe so,
 " þe wule hii abbeþ eny alýue, þat hem mowe serue & drede?
 " Nere hem nogt boþe vayror so? wu wat ys gydy hede?
 " þere were wule in Engelond at otyme kynges fyue,
 " And alle hii were ryche ynou, & of noble lýue.
 " And nou to lute to hem tueye al Engelond ys.
 " And ofte wo so coueyteþ al, al leseþ ywys.
 " gyf eyþer kyng so muche wylneþ to be louerd her,
 " þat her noþer nele abbe felawe, ³ ne pere,

¹ Dispoiled & foiled both
 oure frendes, oure strenthes
 leseth we faste, And also of
 our awne lyf we dredeth atte
 laste *Ar.* ² What reson is
 hit, that hii ne mowe as-

well do now soo, While any
 knyghtes both leste a lýue,
 that hem mowe serue & drede?
 Nere hem nought fairer so,
 where is hure Gidehede? *Ar.*
³ Ne non pere, *Ar.*

" Fygte

" Fygte hem sulue tueye, þat ¹ louerd wolde be one.
 " Wu nere hem nogt betere nou so, þat wanne her knyghtes
 echone,
 " And her folc were al aslawe, & hii byleued al bare,
 " And ne founde who hem se ruede in anguysses ne in care,
 " Ne who myd hem in neode þat lond defend ymygte?
 " ² Her of þat soþe seggege, as by goure in sygte.
 Nadde þys knyght fulleche hys reson ysed,
 þat ys felawes nadde sone ynome her red,
 And seyde alle myd one mouþe, " we ³ ensenteh þerto,
 " þat þys tueye kynges acordy, oþer batayle hem sulue do.
 Kyng Edmond, þo he hurde þys, vol was of joye & blýs.
 þe batayle, he seyde, he wolde ⁴ nýme myd god herte ywýs.
 þat worde he sende amowre to Knout among ys fon,
 And grantede ys owe body, þe batayle to do anon.
⁵ Hii lete hem army beye, in to an yle myd gode pas
 Al mydde Seuerne hii wende, þat Oleneg y cluped was.
 þer inne hii were hem sulue tuo, & þe water al aboute.
 Her ost was eyþer in ys syde alonde byleued by þoute.
⁶ Myd god earnest & god ynou her suerdes adrowe boþe,
 þys kynges to gadere come, & made hem boþe wroþe.

¹ Woll be lordes all on. And so were hem fairer now, that whan hure knyghtes echon, And al hure folke buth a slawe, and hii by laste all bare, <i>Ar.</i> ² Her of seggeth youre avise, as by youre in- syght <i>Ar.</i> ³ Assenteth <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ Take <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ They armed hem self beithe, and dight	hem with goude pas Into an Ile in Seuerne, that Ol- neye cluped was <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ The kynges thenne in earnest grete her swerdus drough bothe, And smyte to gedre fast y now a men that were wrothe. Kyng Edmunde assailed kyng Knut so fast, that he was Negh ouer come, and sore he was
--	--

To groundē hii smȳte & harde mȳd stalwarde honde,
 þat wonder was, hou oþer mȳgte oþere's dunt at stonde.
 þo kyng Edmond ȳwrapþed was, & wȳþinne hot,
 He ssoc ȳs suerde & grunte, & mȳd such earnest smot,
 þat þe sprong out mȳd ech dunt of helme so þere,
 þat ȳt þogte mȳd ech dunt, as þat heued afure were.
 As þondre þat soun was, þe lyȳt as lȳgtȳnge,
 So þat ech dunt þogte leȳgt as ȳt were & þondrynge.
 Me spech of monȳ stalward knȳgt, ac me vond on þere.
 ȳblessed be þe moder wombe þat hym to monne bere.
 þe kȳng Knout was so debrused, þat he stod vneþe.
 He dradde wanne he lore þat lyf, & were ȳbroȳt to deþe.
 He adde leuer þan enȳ þȳng, þat hii acorded were.
 Ac he ne dorste ȳs feblesse telle Edmond, vor fere
 Laste, ȳȳf he vnder ȳete, þat he were so ouercome,
 þat he nolde fȳne ar he adde ȳs lȳf hȳm bȳ nome.
 þo he adde a wule ȳrest, ȳs armes he gan to caste,
 And wȳþ gret earnest step ver, & asayled Edmond vaste,
 Mȳd al þe strengþe þat he mȳgte, & ssewe more þerto
 Al vor he ne ssolde wene, þat he were ouercome so.
 þȳs Knout bȳgan to reste, þo ȳs assaut was ȳde,
 And bet Edmond, as in pes, aword hure oþer tuo.
 Kȳng Edmond hȳm grantede, & somdel hȳm wȳþ drou,
 And lende vp hȳs sseld, & herkned hȳm ȳnou.

was a gast. He hadde lȳuer
 thanne enȳ thȳng accorded
 haue be there. But he nolde
 his feblenesse ȳut telle in no
 maner, Lest Edmunde hit

vnderȳete that he were ouer-
 come, And that he nolde fȳny
 til his lyf were bȳ nome
Ar.

“ Ich

“ Ich abbe, quap Knout, “ ýwýlned þý kynedom ar þýs,
 “ And nou, wel more þan þý lond, þý sulf ých wýlný ýwýs.
 “ Vor þou nart nozt worþ one be of Engeland kýng her,
 “ Ac ¹ to prince of al þe world. vor in þe world nýs þý per.
 “ Ich abbe al ² þat lond of Norþweýe & of Denemareh an
 honde.
 “ I ne wende nozt þat ený man mý dunt ssolde atstonde.
 “ Ac þou ne at stonst ýt nozt one, ac art al clene aboue.
 “ War vore ých desýrý mest þyn grace & þyn loue,
 “ ³ þat þou of alle myn londes me be felawe & per,
 “ An ých mot ek of Engeland be þý partýner.
 “ Vor gýf we to gadere beþ, & al clene of one rede,
 “ France & ech oþer lond, & ech prince vs wole drede.
 “ þer vor ých byseche þe, haue half mý lond myd me,
 “ An ⁴ ých, as þý partýner, half Engeland myd þe.
 Edmond, þo he hurde þýs, ýs grete herte wýþ drou,
 And ⁵ ensentede to ýs rede, & býcom ⁶ mylde ynou,
 An ⁷ býude to ys mýlde word, þat myd suerd was aboue.
 Hii caste away sseld & suerd, & turnde al to loue,
 An býclupte hem & custe, & her folc in eyþer syde,
 þo hii seye hem acorded, vor joye loude hii cryde,
 An songe, *te Deum laudamus*, eyþer in ýs route,
 An to gadere wende, & custe hem ech oþer aboute.
 Bytuene þys tueye kynges was a certeyn fourme ýdo,
 An forewarde ⁸ among al her folc, ar hii ⁹ departed atuo,

¹ To be kýng of Ar.	Ar.	⁴ Ich wole, as Ar.
² The Ar.	³ And that thow	⁵ Assented Ar.
of all mý londes mý felawe	be and peer, And that ich of	⁶ Meok Ar.
Engeland be thý partiner		⁷ A bowede Ar.
		⁸ By twene
		Ar.
		⁹ Parted a two, That
		eyther hadde his dele of lond
		and

Wat eyþer adde to ȳs del of lond & oþer þȳnges,
 And departede wȳþ loue atuo, & býleuede boþe kȳnges.
 An ȝyf hii adde in gode loue longe ȳlyued beȳe,
 Me adde þoru al Cristendom ȳspoke of hem tueȳe,
 An eche prince & eche londe douted hem tuo.
 Ac Edmond was al to raþe, alas! to deþe ȳ do.
 Vor þe luþer duc Edryc þogte euere to býtraȳe
 Kȳng Edmond, ȳs owe louerd, Knout vor to paȳe.
 A luþer gadelyng was ȳs sone, boþe at one rede.
 Hii fondede mȳd alle gȳle to do þȳs luþer dede.
 þo hii ne mȳgte in oþer wȳse þȳs dede bringe to ende,
 In to a chambre forene þe gadelyng gan wende,
 þat kyng Edmond com ofte to, & in þe dunge þar
 Hudde hym þere longe, þat none man nas ȳ war.
 An þo þe kȳng þerto com, ȳs nede vor to do,
 þe luþer þef ȝare was mȳd ȳs arme þerto,
 And smot¹ im þoru þe foundement, & þoru þe gottes rȳgt,
 Edmond þe noble kȳng, þat was so noble knygt.
 Wȳþ a long ȳponyted knȳf, yegged in eyþer syde,
 þus² ssenduollyche he hȳm slou, aboute Seynt Andreu tyde.
³ An Oxenford he was aslawe, þoru þȳs luþer lore,
 Mȳd treson & gȳle ȳnou, ȳrot hou mȳgte be more.
 þe beste body & noblest, þat in eny lond þo was,
 ȳslawe was þoru a gadelyng, so vȳllyche, alas!

and other thȳnges, And part-
 ed with loue a two, and bý-
 laste bothe kynges *Ar.*

¹ Him into the founde-
 ment into the guttes rȳgt,

There thourgh he deyde that
 hastelich, þat was so noble
 a knyght *Ar.* ² Shenful-
 lyche *Ar.* ³ Atte Oxenford
Ar.

Ar men myȝte aboute come, þen þef to seche þare,
 Of scaped he was & yflowe, non man nuste ware.
 Me greȝpede þys gode kyng, ¹ wanne non oþer nas,
 An broȝte hym vayre anerþe, as he wel ² wurþe was,
 In þe abbeye of Glastynbury, byuore ³ þe heȝ wened anheȝ.
 Vor he wyllnede vor to lȝgge ys gransyre neȝ
 þe kyng Edgar þe gode kyng, þat þere ybured ys.
 þere hii lyggeþ vayre ynou boþe ȝut ywȝs.
 Ac þys luþer gadelyng, þat þys gode kyng so slou,
 To kyng Knout wende anon glad ynou.
 He grette hym anon," & seyde, "hayl ⁴ þou be kyng one.
 "So nȝs yt noȝt," quap þe kyng, "vor mȝ kynedom ys
 ymone.
 "Vor an felawe ych abbe þerto, þat ych loue ynou.
 "Ver, gode syre kyng," quap þys þef, "vor þy loue ych
 hym slou.
 "Here ys þat knȝf al blodȝ, þat ych broȝte hym wyþ of dawe,
 "An smot hym þoru þe foundement, & so vp to þe mawe.
 "þy loue ych abbe wel dere aboȝt, & mȝ lyue anaunter y do.
 "þer nȝs non alyue nou, þat þe abbe yserued so.
 "þeruore vnderstond þe wel, & ȝeld mȝ mede blyue.
 "Vor ych abbe ydo þe more gode, þan alle þe men alyue.
 "þou seȝst soþ," quap þe kyng, "þou ast mucche ydo vor me,
 "An ychylle wel þy mede ȝelde by þe treuþe ych on to þe.

¹ Tho other bote nas, *Ar.*
² Worthȝ *Ar.* ³ The heigh
 auter. For he wilned to lȝgge
 neigh his graunt sire there

Ar. ⁴ Be thow kyng al on.
 So is hit not, quod he a ȝe,
 hit is myne but in mone *Ar.*
⁵ For, *Ar.*

"ychylle

“ ychylle make þe heymon, ¹ by tyme ychabbe yþogte,
 “ þat þou ne ssalt vor þy lyflode neuere carye nogt.
 Edryc, þe luþer suyke, ys fader, com al so :
 “ Syre,” he seyde, “ ych abbe muche loue þe ydo,
 “ ² Versake Edmond ³ my nowe louerd, & bytrayd vor þe,
 “ An let hym sle vor þy loue, hou wolton yt gelde me ?
 “ þo seyde kyng Knout age, traytor þou art ywys,
 “ An muche age God & agen me þou ast ydo amys,
 “ Wanne þou ast ⁴ þy nowe louerd, as þou ⁵ tellest vore,
 “ To so vyle deþe ybrot, þat was my broþer y suore.
 “ Hys blod, þat þou madest ssede, ssal arde com on þe.
 “ Vor ⁶ þy nowe mouþ þe aþ ydemed by þat þou seyst ⁷ me.
 He let caste þys traytor in þe euenynge late
 At fenestre in Temese, nouse vor to abate.
 An let hym stylllelyche adrenche, vor manne speche þere.
 An þat was, lo ! ys noble mede, to lute þey yt were.
 þe luþer traytor hys sone auanced was gut bet,
⁸ Vor hys robe & hys dygnyte was al wel byset.
 He gef hym such auancement, as he wolde, he suor ys oþ,
 þat he ne dorste neueref carye ⁹ of mete ne ¹⁰ of cloþ.

¹ Right sone ich haue I
 thought *Ar.* ² For sake ich
 haue myne awne lorde, and
 him by trayed for the. For
 thi, sir kyng, a benefeat ich
 aske in help to me *Ar.* ³ Pro,
 myn owe. ⁴ L. þyn owe.
Nam thyne awne in *Ar.* ⁵
 Me tellest fore *Ar.* ⁶ L. þyn
 owe. *Sed* thy nawne in *Ar.*
⁷ To me. So that thesne tray.

tour he let take an hast, And
 pryuyliche with oute noyse in
 to Themese him cast, And let
 him stilliche a drenche, that no
 noyse were. And this was,
 loo ! his good rewarde, thogh
 hit i nogh nere *Ar.* ⁸ In
 robe of roiall dignite, that
 was well by sette *Ar.* ⁹ For
Ar. ¹⁰ Deest *Ar.*

An robe he let hym ssape verst of blod rede scarlet þere.
 þe ssarpe stones ¹ by þe strete hys taylors were.
 Vor he let hym myd hors ² to drawe fram strete to strete,
 þat þe peces ffelle of ys fless aboute monye & grete.
³ þe taylors corue so monge peces, vor ys robe ne ssolde powe.
 He ne dorste þo carye nogt of þe wynter couwe.
 Suppe he let smyte of ys hede by þe ssoldren, as me sey,
 And let yt sette vpon tour of Londone an hey.
 And so he was hey man ymad, as he byhet hym to ys mede.
 Alle traytors & ⁴ louerd suyken God late hem so spede.

KNOUT was þo alone kyng, as wo seyþ, of ⁵ Engelon,
 Of Norþweye, ⁶ of Denemarch, & gret poer adde anhon-
 de,
 Ac Edmond þe gode kyng, þat so vyllyche me slou þo,
 Adde tueye gonge sones, ar he were to depe ydo,
 Edward & ⁷ Edmond, & breperen al so tueye
 Seynt Edward & Alfred, þat in Normandye were beye.
 Vor þes were kyng Edmond next, & ys eyrs also.
 Kyng Knout þogte hou he mygte best herof do,
⁸ To bynyme hem her erytage, & myd wuch wrong he mygte,
 And myd wuch treson, bote he adde som colour of rygte.

¹ In the *Ar.* ² *Deest Ar.*

³ His taillours corue him suche
 a robe, that none coueyte
 wolde, Ne that he ne durst
 after neuer carie for the colde

Ar. ⁴ Lord swykes *Ar.* ⁵

Engelond, *Ar.* ⁶ And of *Ar.*

⁷ Edmunde, half bretherne

twey *Ar.* ⁸ To byneme hem

her heritage how that he myght,
 As hit were by coloure of
 summe maner ryght. For thogh
 many may do atte his lust
 some thyng, Of wrong he
 wolle make a ryght as by co-
 louryng *Ar.*

Vor wanne man may do wat he wole & vnrygt ynou,
 Ofte he bryngþ vor coueytyse to rygte pur wou.
 He made a gret parlement, & brogte heye men þerto.
 As wo seyþ, ynele noþyng wyþoute lokyng do.
 þo bed he þe court segge soþ, & rygт vnderstonde,
 Wat forewarde þer were ymad ¹ in fourme of Engelonde,
 Bytuene hym & kyng Edmond, þe wule he was alȳue,
 And wam Edmond made ² hys eyr of ȳs londe wyþoute
 striue,
 And wam of ȳs gonges sones wardeyn ek ȳdo,
 And wat þyng he adde assygned ȳs tueye breþeren al so.
 Herof he bed hem segge soþ, as ȳt were glosyng.
 Vor he ne kepte, he seyde, myd vnrygt of no monne's þyng,
 þo stode þer somme vp, þat adde ynome her red,
 Vorto paye kyng Knout, & noȝt Edmond þat was ded,
 And seyde byuore al court, þat kyng Edmond byqueþ
 Hys kynedom & al ȳs lond kyng Knout byuore ȳs deþ,
 And þe warde of ȳs tuo sones, vorte hii of elde were.
 Alas! alas! þe trecherȳe, þat me myȝte ȳse þere!
 Vor þe dede was vergȳte anon, & þe quike vorto paye,
³ Hii bytoke þe qued her soule, þe kunde eyrs to bytraye.
 þȳs word was ȳholde stable, & ȳloked vor dome.
 Kyng Knout of Edmonde's londes anon seȳsyne nome,
⁴ And huld hym þo al clene kyng of al Engelonð,
 Of Norþweye, of Denemarch, gret poer he adde an honde.

¹ And fourme *Ar.* ² His
 heire with oute any stryue,
 And to whom his yong sones
 in warde shulde be do, *Ar.*
³ Hure soules by toke they
 to the fende, the rygт heire

to be tray *Ar.* ⁴ And helde
 him self a lone kyng of all
 Engelonð, And Norway and
 Denemarch, and grete power
 hadde in hond *Ar.*

Ech þogte he was Gode next, þat mýgte abbe ys grace,
 Of so gret poer þer býuore me ne kneu non in non place.
 þo he was of al Engeland kýng, wýpoute ¹ mone,
 He býgan to cuþe anon, þat he was kýng ² one.
 Alle þat were ogt ³ ysýb Edmond þe kýnge,
⁴ Oþer in alyance of ený loue, to deþe he let bringe,
 Oþer flemd hem out of Engeland, non byleued nere,
 Bote ys tueye zonge sones, þat so feble & tendre were.
 He ne mýgte, vor þe worlde's ssame, hem to deþe bringe.
⁵ He sende hem out of Engeland, to ⁶ & heye kýng
⁷ Býsyde Denemarch, þat he hem to deþe brogte,
 So ver ⁸ in onekeþelond, þer non man of hem ne rogte.
 Away! sely zonge þýnges, frendeles were hii þere,
 þat so ver, as mýlde lomb, to deþe ylاد were.
 þo hii to þe kýnge come, ⁹ þat he hem to deþe brogte,
 Vor þe heye blod, ¹⁰ of wam hii come, þe kýng hym býþogte,
 An adde reuþe of hem gret, & ys wille gan wyþ drawe,
 An ne mýgte, vor reuþe, vor non þýng bring hym of lýf dawe.
¹¹ To þe kýng of Hongari þýs sely chýldren tueye
 He sende hem vor to norýsy, þat he warded hem wel beye.

¹ Any mone, *Ar.* ² A lone
Ar. ³ Sibbe sir Edmunde
Ar. ⁴ Or of Aliaunce in any
 wey, to dethe *Ar.* ⁵ But
 sente *Ar.* ⁶ An *Ar.* ⁷ A
 lyte bý side *Ar.* ⁸ In couthe
 lande, wher no man of hem
 rought. Alas! the sely *Ar.*
⁹ To dethe that hem shulde
 haue brought, *Ar.* ¹⁰ They
 of come, he him sone by

thought *Ar.* ¹¹ To the kýng
 of Hungary the sely children
 tweye. The kýng hem faire
 vnderfenge for hure heigh no-
 bleý, So long fort Edmunde,
 that was the quene brothe
 [*sic*], Spoused his doughter,
 and seth made the other,
 That higt Edward, spousy
 the emperoure's newew *Ar.*

þe kyng hem vayre vnderuon, & honoured in ech wyse,
 An gret deuýte tolde of hem, vor her gentryse,
 So longe, þat he let Edmond, þat was þat on broþer,
 Sspousy ys owe dogter, & supþe he let þe oper,
 þat het Edward, spousy þe emperoure's ¹ mowe.
 þo adde hii boþe ýwýued wel, & nogt tolowe.
² Ac" Edmond leuede lute wule, & no chýld ³ nadde alýne.
 Ac Edward þe oper adde þre chýldren by ys wýue,
 A sone, þat ⁴ het Edward, & dogtren also tueye,
 Margarete & Cristýne, þat gode wommen were beye.
 þys gode chýldren agte be euermo in ⁵ munde.
 Vor Engeland, gýf hii nere, were gut out of kunde,
 As ge mowe ⁶ hure her afterward, in kýng Henrye's lýf,
 Hou Engeland com to kunde agen þoru þe god Mold ys wýf,
⁷ þat þes Margarete dogter was, Mold þe gode quene.
 Vor þys lond were gut out of kunde, gýf hii nadde ýbe, ých
 wene.

¹ *Non tantum cognata, sed
 filia re vera erat Henrici II.
 Imperatoris, nomenque ejus
 erat Agatha.* ² *Deest Ar.*

³ *Hadde Ar.* ⁴ Height Ed-
 gar, and also doughtren twey,
Ar. Et quidem recte Edgar.
⁵ Mýnde. For Engeland, ýf
 they nad i be, hadde be oute
 of kynde *Ar.* ⁶ Here after-
 warde, in Harry the furste's
 lýf, I hure, how *Ar.* ⁷ That
 doughter was of Mergarete,
 as ich vnderstande, By twene
 hure and Macolýn kyng of

Scotland. Knut of all Enge-
 lond was thoo kyng thorough
 oute. Hit is no nede to esshe,
 ýf he were kene and proute.
 Tho he was of Edmunde's
 sones, and all that with him
 were, Delyuered, he was
 proute i nough, and yet he
 was infere O kyng Ethel-
 rede's ii. sones, that were
 in Normandy, Aluered and
 Seynt Edward, lest hii wolde
 a stýge, Thorough Richard,
 duc of Normandy, *Ar.*

Kýng

Kyng Knout of al Engeland was þo kyng alout.
 Me ne dar nogt esse, wer he were kene þo & prout.
 þo he was of Edmonde's sones, & of al, þat myd hym were,
 Delyuered, he was fers ynou, ac somdel he was in fere
 Of Edmonde's tueye breþeren, þat wonede in Normandye,
 Alfred & Seynt Edward, laste hii gonne astye
 þoru þe duc of Normandye, þat her vncl was.
 Hym þogte were he syker of hem, hym ne doutede of no cas.
 Seynt Edward's moder þeruore he of sende,
 Emme þe quene of Engeland, þat ¹ he hyder wende,
² þoru conseyl of her broþer, þat was þe duc Rycharde,
 An þoru ensent of hyr tueye sones, Alfred & Seyn Edward,
 An were yspoused hym to wyf, & oure quene were al so.
 Wat halt yt to telle longe? þys dede was ydo.
 Vor kyng Edmond was aslawe a Seynt Androwe's tyd, ych
 wene,
 As in þe yer of grace a þousend and syxtene.
 And to þe ³ lammasse afterward he spousede þe quene,
 As in þe ger of grace a þousend and seuentene.

¹ She *Ar.* ² And the on
 of hure bretherne, that was
 duc Richarde, And thourgh
 assent of hure sones, Aluered
 and Edewarde, And spoused
 hym to wyue *Ar.* ³ And þa
 to-ƿopan KI. Aug. her ƿe
 cýng ƿeccan him Æðelpeder
 lafe þer oðƿer cýnger him
 to cƿene. Ricardes dohtor:
 Chron. Sax. sub an. MXVII.
Male proinde in Cod. Ar.
significatur, hasce nuptias

celebratas fuisse A. D. mvi.
 (As in the yer of grace Ml.
 and seuene) *Edmundumque*
occisum A. D. mvi. (For as in
 the yer of oure lorde Ml. and
 sixe yere Edmundes Irenside,
 her sone in lawe, slayne was
 ere.) *Et tamen in hoc ipso Co-*
dice Parliamentum (sive potius
magnum vel commune conci-
lium) Oxoniense A. D. m. xviii.
tentum fuisse rectissime etiam
asseritur.

gut to be þe sykerore, after þys spousynge,
 He let ys barons of Engeland to Oxenford bringe
 A þousand as in þe ȝer of grace and eyȝteþe ȝer,
 An a parlement vor hys stat of hem made þere.
 So þat ȝyf þer eny was, þat agen hym herte bere,
 Hym þ. ȝte hys poer non þyng nas, ac ¹ as vor nogt yt were.
² As was to hym al clene ysuore, þer nas non byhynde.
 þo was he al clene louered, to bynde and vnbynde.
 A wyf, þat her ³ Aylýne, he adde er of gret fame.
 By hyre he adde an sone, Harald was hys name,
 þat of þe kunde was of Denemarch, in eyþer alf al out.
 By Emme he adde anoper sone, þat het Hardeknout,
 þat beye were kynges after hym, as me ssal sone rede,
 þys kyng was þo þoruout al man of noble dede.
 þo he was alone kyng of grete londes þre,
 Hym þogte al þe world ne myȝte agen ys poer be.
 And napeles he bygan ys herte in bocsumnesse amende,
 An þogte on þe vayre grace, þat houre Louerd hym sende,

¹ All *Ar.* ² All were clene
 to hym i swore, ther was none
 be hynde *Ar.* ³ Helene *Ar.*
quam Ælfgifam, sive Æl-
givam, appellant alii. Quin-
etiam & hoc notandum, pleros-
que scriptores eandem concubi-
nam, non uxorem, Canuti fuis-
se asserere. Unde sane doctis-
simus Bradius in textu histo-
riæ suæ (p. 129.) Cnute not
 long before he died, appointed
 his eldest son *Swane*, by his

first Wife * *Elgiva*, to be king
 of *Norway*, and his second Son
Harold, by the same Woman
 to be king of *England*, and
Harde-Cnute his Son by *Em-*
me, king of *Danemarke*; *ex*
Hovedeno nimirum 251. a. at
in notis, * By most Writers
 reported to have been a Con-
 cubine, she was Daughter to
 a *Mercian* Noble-man, who is
 said to have been Earl of
Northampton.

An louede Englysse men, and Engeland þerto,
 An muche louede holý chýrche & susteynde also,
 An restorede abbeys, þat destrud were byuore,
 An chyrchen let vp arere, þat were arst as verlore,
 An let arere monye nýwe, & in stedes mest þere
¹ As he adde men aslawe, & batayles ýdo er,
² An vp Assesdone & þer aboute mest chýrchen he let rere,
 As vor her soulen, þat ýslawe were þere.
 Vor he & þe kýng Edmond mest armes þere bere,
 An mest man slagt þoru hem & batayles þer were.
 Seynt Alfen's body, þat ý martred was
 At Greneswuch þoru hys fader, as we tolde þat cas,
 At Seyn Poule's of Londone, as ýt was anerþe ýdo,
 Hys owe honde nome ýt vp, &, as ýt býuel þerto,
 He let ýt fayre honourý, & sende ýt atte fyne
 To þe munstre of Canterburý, ³ as he lýþ gut in ssrýne.
 þe þrydde ger ých vnderstonde, þat he was alone kýng,
 Fram hys lond of Denemarch me brogte hym týthyng,
 þat he was þere ýworred vaste of hys fon.
 He nome wýþ hym of Engeland god knýgt monýon,
 An myd gret poer & muche folc þuderward vende anon.
 So þat he sone come býsyde hys fon echon,
 An býleuede hym þer al nýgt, & al hys ost al so,
 An þogte anon amorwe strong bataýle do.
 A gret erl of þys lond, Godwýne was hys name,
 Myd hys poer myd hym was, þat monýon dude ssame.

¹ Where he *Ar.* ² As
 vpon Asshedoune and a boutē
 there, As for the sowles of
 hem that slayne there were.

Seynt Alphe Erchebýsshop-
 pe's body *Ar.* ³ And ther
 hit was in shrýne *Ar.*

Vor þys lond, as me ssal hure, ofte he dude býtraþe.
 He þogte þo hou he mygte þe kyng Knout best paye.
 Bý nýgte ¹ hym & hys poer he let army þere,
 And wende so anonywar, ² as þe kýnge's fon were,
³ An fond hem, as wo seyþ, aslepe. he leyde on hem to grounde,
 An slou and to drof hem alle in a lutel stunde.
 Amorwe" þo þe kyng wolde wende vp hys fon,
 An myste Godwýne & hys men, of gýle he dradde anon,
 þat þe Englysse hym býtraye wolde, he þogte of luper won
 Vor to sle þys Godwýne, and þe Englysse echon.
 An napeles he wende toward hys fon myd al hys poer vaste,
 Vor to smýte an bataýle, & þo ne wond he atte laste
 Nogt of hem bote caroyne, & þe bodyes dede al so,
 þo he vond, þat Godwýne such andede adde y do,
 An delyuered hym of hys fon, & ybrogt hym so aboue,
 Euereft he louede hym þe more, & al Englysse vor hys loue.
 þo he sey, þat Englysse men so gode in nede were,
 An hys fon were ouercome, nobýng he nas in fere.
⁴ þo he adde one þe kýnedom of grete londes þre,
 Hym þogte ⁵ al þe world ne mygte agen hys poer be.

¹ Hym self and *Ar.*
² Wher the *Ar.* ³ And founde
 hem muche del a slepe, so
 that in a stonde This En-
 mys of Swethe londe hii
 brought all to grounde. Ulf
 and eke Ergall of Swethe
 lond kýngus Fust [*sic*] to
 kyng Knutus host, at his
 comýngus, Muche harme
 had i doo, but in this case

wýse Godewýn with his men
 gate of hem the pryse. A
 morwe *Ar.* ⁴ Tho hadde he
 al on the kýngdomes of *Ar.*
⁵ That in all the worlde ne
 myght his pere be. Of all
 his proude dedis ne can iche
 telle nought, Bute of on tale
 ich wole, as hit cometh in
 thought *Ar.*

Of al hys proute dedes I ne may verbere nogt,
 þat I ne mot zou telle of on, nou yt comp in my þogt.
 A þousend as in þe ger of grace, & on & tuenty þerto,
 An in þe vifte ger þat kyng Knout in such poer was ydo,
 He ¹ wende, as noble syre, fram londe to londe,
 þat ² hym þogte al world ne ssolde agen hym stonde.
 As he wende aboute by þe see, & such poer adde an honde,
 Up achaere he sat adoun, al vp þe see sonde,
 An ³ enresonede hys men, as hii byuore hym stode,
 So þat þe tyme com of þe see flode,
 þat yt bygan to wexe vaste, as yt dep atte tyde.
 þe kyng byheld þe wexynge an boker al asyde,
 So þat þe water vaste waxe ⁴ vppard heȝ & wyde.
⁵ þogte þys grete louerd, gut ychelle abyde.
 þo yt was neȝ to hym ycome, baldelyche ⁶ spac
 An sturnelyche to þys water, þo yt alles out brac.
 “Water,” he seyde, “⁷ wat þencst on? ych rede ne com
 no ver.
 “Under stond, þat þou art al clene in my poer.
 “Vor þat lond, vp wan þou vnst, & vp wan ych sytte her,
 “Is clene myn al aboute. vor þou wost ynabbe no per.
 “þeruore ych ⁸ ote þe þyne wexyng anon lete,
 “þat þou ne be so hardy nogt, þyn louerde's clopes to wete,

¹ Wende a bonte as *Ar.*

² He thought in all the
 worlde none shulde him with-
 stonde *Ar.*

³ Spak to his
Ar. ⁴ *Potius*, uppard (*idem*
quod Anglo-Sax. uppeard.)

⁵ yut thought this grete lorde
 he wolde a byde ther *Ar.*

⁶ He spac *Ar.* ⁷ What
 thenkest thou? I rede come
 no ner *Ar.* ⁸ Hote *Ar.*

" Ne hys lymes, ac vp ¹ mynowe let me in pes sytte,
 " ² Oper, by þe fey þat ych ou to þe, ychelle rekeny mytte.
 þe water dude vorþ hys kunde, & wax euere vaste,
 So þat to þys grete louerd hýt com atte laste,
³ An watte hys ssone & hys vet. so longe yt wax an heý,
 þat yt watte hys brych al aboute, & euere vpard yt steý,
 So þat þys hupes smourte, & of cold were neý.
 þys grete louerd sturte hym vp, þo he oper ne sey,
 An wed hym vp to londe, hym þogte er late ynou.
 He býheld toward þe water, & hys grete herte wyþ drow."
 " Wyte," he seyde, " al men, þat anerþe wonyþ her,
 " ⁴ þat yt nys bote þe pure masse eny kynges poer.
 " Ne þat no man ys wurþe to be ycluped kyng,
 " Bote þe heye kyng of heuene, þat wrohte al þyng,
 " þat haþ heste of water, and of erþe al so,
 " Heuene & helle & ech þyng mot nede hys heste do,
 " An habbe hym as louerd, vor ynam non y wys,
 " þeruor me to clupye kyng, myd vnrygt yt ys.
 " þeruor ych býhote God, þat yne ssal kynges croune
 " Neuere bere anerþe, vor my poer ys þer doune.
 He wende hym vorþ to chýrche, & byuore þe rode com,
 An wyþ meke herte pyteslyche hys kynges croune nom,

¹ My nawne *Ar.* ² Or
 elles, by the fey that is me,
 ich wolle fyght mytte *Ar.*
³ Hit wette his hosen and his
 shone, and yut for pruyt he
 nolde Ryse fort he nedes
 moste, or elles drenche he

shulde. And thenne he sturte
 vppe of the water he thought
 late i now, And be hilde to-
 warde the water, & his grete
 hert with drow *Ar.* ⁴ That
 hit is bute the mase any
 kynges power *Ar.*

An

An sette vpon the rode heued, & seyde þat he alone
 Was wurþe to croune bere, & oþer kynges none.
 He býleuede þe croune þere, sykýnde wel sore,
 An þerafter vp hys heued ne com he namore.
 An me seyþ, þat he ne bar neuere þe croune of Engeland,
 Ac ne bar þulke ne non oþer þerafter, ých vnder stonde.
 Synþe god man he becom & aforced hym ýnou,
 An býhet God euereft afterward to býleue wou,
 An God & holý chýrche to louye mýd al hys mýgte,
 An make godes lawes, & susteyne ech rýgte.
 Þes byheste he held vol wel, & gode lawes ý nou
 He made þe beste þat mýgte be, & to ech godenesse drou.
 Vor þe manslagt þat he adde ýdo, & þe vnrygt ý lome,
 An vor þe monye gode cas þat hym ofte come,
 He byhet God to wende þe holy wey to Rome,
 So þat he & hys knýgtes wýþ god herte þen wey nome.
 An as he toward Rome wende bý moný alond,
 Wanne he ený luper lawes in ený stude vond,
 Þe prince, oþer louerd of stude, sone he out sogte,
 And bote he granted hym amendement, mýd tresour he ýt bogte,
 An vor he was man of such poer, vewe agen hym wrogte,
 So þat euere ware he come gode lawes he brogte.
¹ Gengyl men þat he vond in prison ek ýdo,
 Oþer in warde mýd vnrygt, he bogte hem out also.
 At Rome he was auonge uayre, and asoyled also.
 Agen he wende to Engeland, þo al þys was ý do.
 Þo he com agen, at Glastýnburý hym longede ar he were,
 Vor loue of kýng Edmond, þat ýbured was þere,

¹ Goude men *Ar.*

þat

þat he cluped hys broþer, vor þe treuþe þat bytuene hem was
her.

þat bodi he honourede y nou þo he com þere,
And al þe stude vor hys loue, & dude vayr offrynge,
An amendede þat hous myd mony a rýche þýnge,
An gef hem londe and rentes, and confermede al so
þe geftes, þat oþer kýnges hadde er ygyue þerto,
Of rentes and of londes, as þe kýng Cupred,
An kýng Centwýne & Ine, & supþe kýng Alfred,
Edward and Aþelston, Edmond and Edgar.
Her geftes he confermede, & to make ech man ýwar,
To holde þys geftes stable, amansý he let al so
Alle þat aboute were her geftes euere vn do.
He confermede her londes, as frelyche to holde y wýs,
By gode chartre & her rentes, as þe kýng huld hys.
þys kýng Knout was tuenty ger kýng of Engeland,
An in a þousend ger of grace & þrytty, ých vnderstonde,
An sýxe he deyde at Ssafteburý, & at Wynchestre myd gret
prute
At Seyn Swýthýnes he was ýbured, þere as he lýþ gut.

HARALD, ¹ þe kýnge's sone Knout, after hym was kýng.
ýcrouned he was at Oxenford, a ssrewe þoru alle þýng.
Of þe kunde he was of Denemarch, of þe eror ² wyf ý bore.
þe lasse he louede Englýsse men, & Engeland þer uor.

¹ *Desunt omnia metra, ad multa scripsit auctor prosaicus.*
Haraldum hunc spectantia, in ² *Hinc ait scriptor prosaicus*
Cod. Ar. in quo tamen de eodem *in Ar.* In the ýere of oure
lorde

þe vorste ger þat he was kȳng, Emme, þe gode quene,
 He drof out of Engeland, (& hys ssrewede made ysene)
 His stepmoder, hys fader wȳf, þat quene adde ybe tuye
 Of Engeland, & þat hys fader let vette in Normandye.
 þo þys quene was of londe ydryue, þoru hyre wyþerwȳne,
 Heo wende to þe erl of Flaundres, þat het Baldewȳne.
 þys erl hyre vayre vnderȳng, þat was hende & fre,
 And tok hyre þe castel of Bruges, inne vorto be.
 þere was þys gode quene, wyþoute eny striuȳnge,
 Vorte hyre stepsone was dede, Harald þe luþer kȳnge.
 Vor he nas kȳng bote four ger, & sȳx monþes vnneþe,
 Ar he laȳ at Oxenforde, & drou toward þe deþe,
 And deyde þer in pȳne ynou, & supþe hys bodȳ me ber
 To þe abbey of Westminster, & bured yt vayre þere.
 In þe ger of grace a þousend, & on & fourtyþe gere,
 þys kȳng deyde in Aueryl, monȳ glad man was þere.

HARDEKNOUT hys broþer þo þen weȳ sone nome
 Fram Denemarch in to Engeland, & to Sandwȳch com.
 þoru þe baronȳe of Engeland & of Denemarch al so
 Ichose he was to be kȳng, vor hii ensentede þerto.
 Vor he adde somdel to Engeland more kunde þan þe oþer,
 Vor he was, in hys moder alf, Seynt Edward's broþer.
¹ Sone so he was kȳng y mad, after hys moder he sende
 þe quene Emme to Flaundres, & bygan hyre stat amende,

lorde m.xxxvi. Knutus sone
 Harolde of Erle Elfelmus

doughter toke the regne.

¹ As non as he was Ar.

An

An huld hȳr vayre, as rȳgt was, hȳs moder & quene al so.
 Ac þȳs Hardeknout nas kȳng nogt follȳche ȳeres tuo.
 Vor þer faylede ¹ of" ten dawes, þat he ne deȳde ² of" ywȳs.
 At ³ Lamhupe he was ded, & ȳbured he was & ȳs
 At Seȳn Swythyne's at Wȳnchestre ⁴ bȳ hȳs fader þat lȳþ þere.
 Kȳnges of Denemarch in þȳs manere were
 Kynges here of þȳs lond, ech after oþer.
 þe sone vorst after þe fader, þe broþer after þe broþer.
 And Engeland was out of kunde sȳxe & tuenty ȳer,
 In worre & pȳne & sorwe ȳnou, as Seȳn Dunston ⁵ bȳ het her.
 Ac þo þȳs þre kȳnges were ded of Denemarch, þere nere
 • Byleuede namon in Engeland, þat of þe kunde were.
 þo moste ȳt nede come agen to þe rȳgt eȳr of kunde,
 þe holȳ man Seȳn Edward, þat euere worþ in munde.
 Vor ⁷ Aldred, hȳs eldore broþer, was arst aslawe here
 Wȳþ treson in Engeland, ȳchȳlle telle in wuch manere.
 Atȳme, to speke mȳd hȳs moder, to Engeland he com,
 • An gret folc of Normandȳe mȳd hȳm hȳder he nome.
 • An" þe false erl of Engeland, Godwȳne was ȳs name,
 (þat ¹⁰ euere" adde wȳþ treson þȳs lond y do ssame,)
 • And dorte he adde god, he þogte he wolde fonde
 Make hȳre ȳut, ȳyf he mȳgte, quene of Engeland.
 þat ¹² Aldred nolde spousy nogt hȳs dorte he was in fere,
 Vor prute & hȳs heȳnȳsse, ȳyf þat he kȳng were.

¹ Deest Ar.	² Deest Ar.	mo Ar.	⁷ Aluered Ar.
³ L. Lamhupe. Nam Lam-		⁸ And mucche peple	Ar.
hethe in Ar.	⁴ Be for his	⁹ Deest Ar.	¹⁰ Ofte tȳme Ar.
fadre three [l. there] Ar.		¹¹ A doughter Ar.	¹² Alue-
⁵ Seide er Ar.	⁶ Bȳlafte no	red Ar.	

To þe zongore broþer Seynt Edward hys hope was more
ynome,

Vor he was symple & myldore, & ¹ ep to ouercome.

þeruore þo he sey Alfred so gret heynesse drawe,

He þogte hou he mygte do, þat he were of lyf dawe.

To þe heye men of Engeland vaste he wende aboute,

And seyde, Engeland mygte be of Alfred in gret doute.

² Vor he þogte, ȝyf he were kyng, þat folc of Normandye

Al maystres make in Engeland, þoru" strengþe & tricherye,

An deseryth hem also þoru Normannes he þogte,

þeruore myd hym of Normandye so muche folc he brogte:

So þat ³ hey men of þe lond he brogte al to hys wylle,

⁴ þat hii nome Alfred, & al hys folc, myd trycherye stille,

An ladde hem vaste ybounde to Guldeforde al so.

Awey! sely gultelese men, lute adde hii mys do.

þo hii come to Guldeforde, þys erl Godwyne þe ssrewe

Lete þys gultelese men sette al arewe,

An telle out euere þe teþe man, & þe nyne þoru out he nome,

And let smyte of her alre heuedys, & made a reufol dom.

þo þe teþe was alyue, he þogte of more wou.

Hym þogte þer were to monye alyue of ynou.

Alle þat were alyue byleued, a rewe ef sone he drou,

An tolde of hem þe teþe out, & þe nyne slou.

So þat ⁵ þer byleuede alyue vewe þo,

And þulke out of Engeland he drof myd muche wo.

¹ Lithlyche to *Ar.* ² He saide, yf he were kyng, folke of Normandye All mastres in this londe shulde be an hye, And dissherite Englyssh men

thourgh *Ar.* ³ Certeyne men *Ar.* ⁴ So that they toke A-luered in a tyme all styllle *Ar.* ⁵ He ne laft but fewe a lyue thoo, *Ar.*

Alfred hii ladde to Ely, & ¹ pulte out boþe hys eye,
 An hulde hym þere in prison, ² vorte sely mon gan deye.
 Vas þys of þys Godwyne a ssrewe & luper dom,
 gut owre Lorde, ar he deyde, gret wreche þere of nom.
 Vor, as ge ssolle her after hure, he deyde in pyne ynou,
 An ssrewede þat he dude lute he bylou.

SEYNT Edward in Normandye was þo byleuede alone
 As bar, as wo seþ, of þe kunde, as he sprong of þe
 stone.

He dradde vor he was alone of þe tem byleuede þere,
 An vor þe traytors of Engeland so false & luper were,
 Leste he were of hys fon þoru treson ybogt,
 An, vor loue of hys erytage, so to deþe ybrogt.
 To God he made hys pleynte, ofte wepynd wel blyue,
 An namelyche þe wule hys fon of Denemarch were alyue.
 "Help me," he seyde, "in þys wo, Lord, bydde ych þe.
 " ³ Vor my frend & my nexte ney stondeþ agen me.
 " My fader, þat leuede here in worre & in stryf,
 " In worre & sorwe & sor ynou he endede hys lyf.
 " My breþeren beþ boþe aslawe þoru treson al so,
 " ⁴ My neueus beþ yfloynd, & out of Engeland ydo,"

¹ Putte *Ar.* ² Fort that
 he ganne deye. Me seith, that
 his nauell gutte oute I take
 was, A knyt to a post, and af-
 terward a pas He was i made
 by the poste ever goo a boutte,
 Fort he hadde i drawe hym

selfe his guttes al oute. Nas
 this of this Godewyne a full
 luther dome? *Ar.* ³ For
 thulke that shulde my frendes
 be stondesth a yest me *Ar.*
⁴ And my Cosyns i flemmed
 of londe both twoo, *Ar.*

An

" An my moder ¹ ywedded to my meste fo,
 " An ych alone byleued, woder ssal ych, Louerd, go?
 " Hii þat of my erytage al louerdess beþ
 " Wylneþ alle þyng most my deþ, as men yseþ.
 " ² And al pouere, Louerd, ycham to þe byleued ywys,
 " An þou wolt, Louerd, help be to hym þat faderles ys.
 " Al to soþe yt ys ycome, þat Seynt Dunston gan telle.
 " þe wreche of my ³ vncle deþ, þa' hys stepmoder let quelle,
 " My fader abogte yt dere ynou, & my breþeren bo.
 " So þat þer nys non byleued, bote ych, Louerd, & nanmo.
 " Nys yt vyue & syxtý zer, Louerd, non mon ago,
 " þat to Engelond, vor þulke deþ, vorst com such wo.
 " Hou longe ssal yt ylaste? Louerd, wyþ drau þyn honde.
 " Of þy wreche sende som ende, & reu on Engelond.
 þo þys kynges of Denemarch alle þre were dede,
 An Alfred al so aslawe, þe barons nome to rede,
 An oþer heye men al so, as God gef þat cas,
 An chose Seynt Edward to her kyng, þat kunde eyr þo was,
 As he was þerto ychose, er þan he were y bore.
 þo was yt to soþe y come, þat yseyd was byuore,
 þat Seynt Peter at Glastynburý to byssop Brygtwold seyde.
 þo com vorst pes to Engelond, after ⁴ þe'' wrecchede.
 Me sende after hym to Normandye, to Engelond ⁵ þat'' he com,
⁶ An lute folc of Normandye myd hym hyder nome,

¹ I wedded was to *Ar.*

stepmoder *Ar.* ⁴ *Deest Ar.*

² Alon pouer bilafte icham
to the, Lorde, I wys. Lorde,
as the luste, helpe the childe
that faderles is *Ar.* ³ Un-
cle's deth, that my [*l. hys*]

⁵ *Deest Ar.* ⁶ A fewe folke of
Normandye heder with him
he nome. So that with litell
vncouthe *Ar.*

So þat myȝd lute onekeþ folc to Engelond he drou.
 þe þeymen come agen hym myȝd joye & prute ynou,
 An vnderuonge hym as her louerd vayre þoru all þynge,
 An anester day at Wynchestre crouned hym to kyng.
 I sacred he was þo to kyng of erchebyssopes tuo,
 Of Canterbury & Euerwyk, & other byssopes al so.
 It was in a þousend ȝer, & fourty & tuo,
 After þat God anerþe com¹, þat he was crouned so.
 þo was joye in Engelond al oute in eche syde.
 Hys godenesse & hys gode los aboute sprong wel wyde,
 þat þer nas non god prince, ne kyng in none londe,
 þat ne wylkede enqueyntance of hym, ych vnderstonde.
 þe emperour of Rome to hym in gode loue ywys
 Obleged by hys messagers al þyng þat was hys.
 Vor Edmonde's sone yreneside, þat hys on broþer was,
 Hadde ywedded hys cosyne, he was glad of þat cas.
 An Seyn Edward ney kun was þe kyng of France al so,
 þat eche þyng clene þat hys was he obleged hym to.
 So þat þer nas prince nour, þat at hys wylle nas,
 Bote he one of Denemarch, þat euere hys fo was.
 Seynt Edward, vor al hys god, debonere was y nou,
 An namelyche to pouere men, to non prute he ne drou.
 Reufol he was to neody men, of hys almesse large & fre.
 Of more deuocyon non man in chyrche ne myȝt be.
 He was selde yseye wroþ, ne in glotonye, ne in prute.
 þey hys tresour were ylore, þer of he tolde lute.
 So holy lyf he ladde & god, so chast and so clene,
¹ þat hey men of þe lond wolde hem alday mene,

¹ That the hegh men of the londe wolde hit al day be
 mene,

þat hii nadde non eȳr bȳtuene hem, & þat gret perȳl ȳt was,
 Vor þer mȳgte come to al þe lond muche wo vor such cas.
 Vor ȳf he adde an kund eȳr bȳȳte bȳ hȳs wȳf,
 þe sykeror were þat lond, wuþ oute worre & strȳf.
¹ þe erl Godwȳne, þe false man, þat þe kȳnge's broþer slou
 Aldred, as ȳch tolde er, an doȳter god ȳnou
 Of holȳ lȳf & clene adde, Edȳþe was hȳre name,
 þat, as ȳt ȳs of hȳre ȳwȳte, & of hȳre holy fame,
 þat as þe rose sprȳng of þe brer, þat ssarp & kene ȳs,
 Al so com þe clene maȳde of þe luþer man y wȳs.
 þȳs luþer man was vaste aboute to heȳ men ȳlome,
 To brynge yt þerto, ȳef he mȳgte, þat þe kyng hȳs doȳter
 nome.

Me seyde þe kȳng, þat he moste nede weddȳ wȳf,
 An þat þet maȳde was hȳm best, vor hȳr clene lȳf.
 þe kȳng hȳm bȳþogte prȳuelȳche & stȳlle,
 þat in such cas god ȳt was, to do þe wȳlle.
 An vor heo was so clene maȳde, & of so holȳ lȳue,
 þe betere hym were in holȳnesse to nȳme hȳr to wȳue,"
 þan an heȳe kȳnge's doȳter, of ² verre londe ȳ broȳt,
 þat to hȳs holȳ lȳue nolde acordȳ noȳt.

mene, And that he ne hadde
 non heire gret perille hit
 was, *Ar.*

¹ Godewyne erle a dough-
 ter he hadde, that was of
 grete fame, And of clene lyf
 also, Edithe was hure name.
 And as the Roos of a brere
 spryngeth that kene is, Also

spronge this holy maȳde of
 luther kynd i wys. And suth
 that the kyng nede muste
 wedde a wȳf, Me saide the
 maȳde was to him good for
 hure clene lyf, That hit was
 better to him to haue hure to
 wȳf *Ar.* ² Ferne *Ar.*

¹ An weddede þys mayde," þat so holy & clene was,
 More vorto paye ² þat lond, þan vor eny oþer cas.
 Longe hii were to gadere, þys gode kyng & quene,
 Ac of ozt bote of holynesse lute yt was ysene.
 Vor God, as hii seyde ofte, hii toke to wýtnesse,
 þat bytuene hem neuere nas bote clannesse.
 Boþe hii were at one ³ worde, to lýbbe in clene lýue.
⁴ So þat hii were wyþoute eyr, me þýncþ, vor al hys wýue.
 þe kyng of Denemarch & hys men þretned hym wel vaste.
 So þat hii ⁵ greýþed hym hyderward atte laste.
 A Wytesoneday, as Seynt Edward at hys masse stod,
⁶ An bed vor þe pes of þe lond, þat God yt sende god,
 Rygt atte sacryng he stod as he lowe,
 In þe chýrche of Westmýnster, as men ⁷ býhelde ynowe,
 Hii þat hym were mest priue, asked wu yt were
 þe kyng þo he hem come, & wy he made such chere?
 " Certes, sýres," quap þe kyng, " ýhered be Gode's sonde,
 " þe luper men of Denemarch, myd her kyng of þe londe,
 " To her olde luperhede yturnd adde her þogt,
 " To ⁸ worry owr suete pay's, þat owr Louerd vs ap ybrogt.
 " An to day, in þys god tyme, her poer clene hii nome,
 " ⁹ An þe wynd hem payde wel, & to þe see hii come,
 " Vorto destrue Engeland, as hii abbeþ ofte ýdo.
 " An þulke tyme, þat ge ýseye þat ých somdel lou so,

¹ So that he this maide	him and to his londe	God
wedded, <i>Ar.</i>	² The <i>Ar.</i>	shulde sende pees gode, Atte
³ Accorde, <i>Ar.</i>	⁴ So that	sacryng he stod, right as
heirles was the kyng, for		thogh he lowgh, <i>Ar.</i>
all the quene his wyf <i>Ar.</i>		⁷ Hit
⁵ Dight <i>Ar.</i>		seigh i nowgh <i>Ar.</i>
⁶ And bade to		⁸ De-
		stourbe <i>Ar.</i>
		⁹ For the <i>Ar.</i>

" þe

“ þe kȳng by an laddre ¹ to þe ssȳp clam an heȳ,
 “ An þreu vp to doun in þe see, & adrentþe, as ȳch ȳsey,
 “ An hȳs men, as in wanhope, wende hem agen blyue,
 “ * So þat ȳch hopȳe to God paȳs, þe wule ȳcham alȳue.
 Messagers to Denemarch sone ȳsend were,
 And, as þe kȳng adde ȳsed, ³ to soþe hii founde þere.
 Neuer eft hii of Denemarch hȳder nolde come.
 Vor god prince al alond varþ þe bet ȳlome.
 Vor þe lond was fyue & syxtȳ zer in worre & in sore,
 As ⁴ he habbeþ ȳhurd byuore, & afterward gut more,
 As ge ssolle hure her afterward. ac þe wule he was kȳng,
 þat lond was in god loue & pes, wȳpoute eche strȳuynge.

SEYNT Edward broȳte to Engeland out of Normandȳe
 Men, ⁵ þat adde hȳm fleme ȳdo god & corteȳsye.
 And Roberd a clerc he louede mest, vor he gef hym þe bys-
 soprȳche

Of London, & supþe of Canterbury þe erchebȳssopprȳche.
 þo he was erchebȳssop, luþer he was and prout.
 þe kȳng hȳm ⁶ louede, & alle hȳs dedes þoru hȳm dude al out.
 þer was vp þe quene Emme, þe kȳnge's moder, ȳ do
 A luþer sclaundre, & vp þe bȳssop of Wȳnchestre al so,
 þat ⁷ hii in contenance to folȳche hem bere.
 þe erchebȳssop tolde þe kȳng more ⁸ þan þer were,

¹ To shipward clam an
 hiegh, And fell doune in the
 see, and a dreȳnte neigh, *Ar.*
² So that as for the Danes
 may ich be withoute strȳue.
 Messagers *Ar.* ³ The sothe
 they *Ar.* ⁴ ȳe *Ar.* ⁵ That,

while he flemed was, hadde
 do him courteseye *Ar.* ⁶ Lou-
 ed euer most, and dude by
 him al oute *Ar.* ⁷ Hii to
 gedere in contaunce *Ar.*
⁸ Than sothe were, *Ar.*

þat þer was foul lecherýe býtuene hem ý do,
¹ And þat þoru þe quene hýr sone was Alfred to deþe ýdo,
 And þat he ne mýgte nogt býleue, bote he amendement toke
 Of so vyl dede, wanne he adde her soules to loke.
 þe kýng leuede hym wel ýnou, & suer he nolde abyde,
 þat he nolde verst nýme vengeance in hýs sýde.
 þe býssop he býnome verst al hýs laý fe,
² And supþe hým in prison, & býnome hým hýs se.
 Hýs moder he dude in warde, & scars lýf lede her fonde
 In þe abbeye of Worwell, & býnome hyre hýr londe.
 þýs quene made deol ý nou, & hýr lettres wyde sende,
³ To býssopes, þat heo truste to, ýre stat vorto amende,
⁴ And þat heo wolde þoru furý ýre, gyf me wolde þat heo bere,
 Oþer trede, ssewý, þet heo gulteles were.
 þe kýng was meok & mýlde ýnou, an, as þe byssopes bade,
 Wolde hýs moder do alout, bote as þe oþer yt made.
 And napeles hii were aton," as hii wolde desyre,
 þat hýs moder ⁵ hýr skere ssolde mýd furý ýre.

¹ And that Aluered her
 sone thorgh her was dede al-
 so, Be cause that Knut and
 Hardeknut sheo loued thorgh
 al thing More that Ethelred,
 and other of his Ospring.
 As the commune fame was
 thorgh oute all the lond, That
 sheo loued Knut in hert, me
 wrong dude vnderstande.
 The Erchebisshop seide, he
 ne mýght let hit be so nought,
 And that to amendement hit
 moste nedes be brought. The
 kyng him leued of this thing,

and seide he nolde a bide, *Ar.*
² And brought him in pri-
 son, and him by name his see
Ar. ³ To heghe men, that
 heo truste to, *Ar.* ⁴ And
 seide, that sheo wolde thorgh
 fuyr ire, if that me hure
 bede, Preue, that heo was
 gultless of that ilke dede. The
 kyng was meoke and mylde i
 nowe after summe's rede,
 Wolde haue lette his moder
 goo, but summe hit with sede.
 Atte laste hii were atte on *Ar.*
⁵ Skere her self shulde *Ar.*

þe erchebyssop Roberd hurde of þys dome,
 An, þey he nere ¹ nogt ybe, to þys conseyl he com.
 þe byssopes ² he ladde a conseyl, "Louerdýnges," he seyde,
 " ³ Ich wene vor hys moder my louerd þe kýng gebede,
 " þat nys as no woman, ac as þe deuel ych doute,
 " þat, vorto ssende hyre owe sone þe kýng, heo ys aboute,
 " þat seýþ he ys ⁴ amansed, vor hyre copynere
 " þe byssop ⁵ he deþ in warde, of wan heo wole hýr skere.
 " gýf heo skery hyre of hým, hou wole heo vorþore mo
 " ⁶ Skere of þat heo aþ ydo, hyre sone's gret wo,
 " Of þat ⁷ heo Alfred hyre sone radde to deþe brynge,
 " And þat heo porueýde poýson to hyre sone þe kýnge?
 " Ac gýf heo hyre ⁸ skere wole of eche of þys þýnge,
 " And heo hyre skerynge do after my lokýnge,
 " And heo of scapye harmýles þe gultes echon,
 " ⁹ Icholle, vor me & vor þe kýng, þat gult nabbeþ non,
 " And grante, þat my dýgnyte me be al býnome,
 " And þat heo & þe byssop ek to hyre ¹⁰ sta agen come.
 " Let nýme four yrene ssares vor hýr sulue al afure,
 " An fyue vor þe byssop, & gýf heo yt may ¹¹ dure,

¹ Nat i bede, to <i>Ar.</i> ² He spake to thus, Lordynges, <i>Ar.</i> ³ The kýng for the quene his moder heder vs hath i bede. She fareth nat as a woman, but as a deuell, ich doute, And for to shende <i>Ar.</i> ⁴ A cursed, <i>Ar.</i> ⁵ That he dude in warde, of wham she thenketh hure skere. yf	sheo clenseth hure self of him, <i>Ar.</i> ⁶ Skere hure of <i>Ar.</i> ⁷ She Aluered hure sone let to deþ <i>Ar.</i> ⁸ Purge <i>Ar.</i> ⁹ Ich graunte, for me and for the kyng, that gultles mote she goon, And graunte, that all my dýgnyte me be all bý nome, <i>Ar.</i> ¹⁰ Stat <i>Ar.</i> ¹¹ Endure <i>Ar.</i>
---	---

" Wanne hii lÿggeþ in þe flor to steppe vp echon
 " After oþer bareuot, and heo býleue non,
 " þat heo ne steppe wÿþ folle fot wyþoute quakÿnge,
 " And ¹ gÿf vet bet þanne sauf, woute enÿ wemmÿnge,
 " Graunteþ hem al quyt. ac gÿf heo quakeþ² out,
 " Oþer steppþ býsyde, oþer hyre vet in enÿ wemme be ÿbrogt,
 " Holdeþ hem gultÿ of þe dede, & lateþ hem also
 " Al her lÿf, as wÿckemen, in strong prÿson be ÿdo.
 þys fourme was ygranted þo, & certeyn daÿ al so
 At Seyn Swythÿne's at Wÿnchestre, wanne yt ssolde be ÿdo.
 þo me tolde þe³ quene vore, heo was glad ÿnou.
 So þat þoru al Engeland⁴ þys word sone drou,
 þat, þo þe daÿ was ÿcome, so muche folc þer com,
 þat me nuste ware hem innÿ, vorto se þys dom.
 þe heÿe men neÿ of Engeland were þere echone,
 ⁵ To se Gode's grace of þe quene, bote erchebÿssop one.
 Ac he feÿnede hÿm somdel sÿk, &, neÿ þe see to be,
 He býleuede at Douere, gÿf need were, to fle.
 þe quene, þoru þe kÿnge's heste,⁶ ÿbrogt was also
 Fram Worwelle to Wÿnchestre,⁷ þys jugement to do.
 To Seyn Swythÿne's ssrÿne þen weÿ heo nom⁸ wel rÿgt,
 Gladlÿche þo heo þuder com, & býleued al nÿgt
 In wop & in orÿsons, þat reuþe yt was to se,
 And euere bed þe holyman hyre help vorto be.

¹ ÿf her feet be thanne saf
 with oute *Ar.* ² Ought, *Ar.*
 ³ Quene her of, heo *Ar.* ⁴ The
 tythyng here of drow. And
 thoo the day *Ar.* ⁵ To see

this purgyng of the quene, saf
 the Erchebisshop a lone *Ar.*
 ⁶ I brought forth was tho *Ar.*
 ⁷ Hure purgacion to doo *Ar.*
 ⁸ Full *Ar.*

As heo vel in a lute slep, Seyn Swythyn to hyre com.

“Dogter,” he seyde, “be studeuast to vnderuonge þy dom.

“Icham Swythyn, wam þou ¹ byst, & vergyf þy sone þys dede,

“An to passy þe fury yre, ² nane þou non drede.

þe quene heo was glad, þo heo awok, of þat þys godemon seyde.

³ þet folc com þycke a morwe, to se þys wonder dede,

An þe heymen come echon, þen dom to hure sone.

An þe kyng, þen dom vorto gyue, an heȝ sat on hys trone.

Byuore hym, vorto auonge hyr dom, þe quene me broȝte al so.

þe kyng hyr este sturnelyche, wer heo wolde þe dom do?

⁴ þe quene wepude wel sore, þe kyng ansuerede þys :

“Syre kyng, þou art my louerd & my sone ywys.

“Ich emme þat þe bere, & vor þe gronede ylome,

“þe wule þou in my wombe were, & ar þou fram me come.

“A sclaundre ys vp me ybroȝt of my chyldren tueye,

“Of þe and Alfred þy broȝer, þat my sones were beȝe,

“þat ych ssolde atte rede be, þy broȝer to deȝe brȝnge,

“And þe vorto apoȝsonȝ. & ȝut of þrydde þȝnge,

“þat ych sunne of lecherye myd Aylwyne al so,

“þat ys byssop of Wȝnchestre, ssolde abbe ydo.

“Ich ⁵ clupȝe God to wytnesse, þat ⁶ me to daȝ yhure,

“þat, ȝyf ych ⁷ of enȝ gultȝ am, ⁸ þat” ych mote þoru þys

fure

“Brenne byneȝe & perȝsy, þat me mowe yse þe wreche.

“An ȝf ych gulteles am þer of, þat God þet soȝe teche.

¹ Biddest, *Ar.*

thow no drede *Ar.*

peple *Ar.*

thenne wepyng sore, to the

² Haue

³ The

⁴ The quene

kyng seide thus: *Ar.*

⁵ Take

Ar. ⁶ He this daȝ hit hure,

Ar. ⁷ *Desunt* *Ar.* ⁸ *Deest*

þe quene was þo vorþ ylad ¹ myð mony a wepynde eye
 Of byssopes and of heymen, & of opere þat yt yseye.
 Hýre rýche cloþes were of ydo, bote þat ² heo was by weued
³ Hýre body wýþ a mantel, a wýmpel aboute her heued.
 þe legges bare býneþe þe kne, þat me mýgte eche stape yse.
 Awey! yuele býcome yt quene so bar vorto be.
 Me brogte vorþ ⁴ þýs fury ssares, & leyde ⁵ ys al arewe,
⁶ In þe bare erþe ysuope, Gode's grace to ssewe.
 þe byssopes ⁷ blessede þe ssares, & þe quene al so,
 And ladde hýre vorþ in eyþer half, ⁸ þýs judgement to do.
 þe quene þogte al on God, & to heuene caste hýre eye,
 And ne lokede no þýng donward, &, as hii alle yseye,
⁹ Heo stap vp þýs fury ýre, euerých stap al clene.
 Nuste heo hýr sulf wanne yt was, ne blenyte nogt ene.
 þer was joye & blysse y nou, & ¹⁰ mony a wepynde eye,
 Vorst vor fere, & suppe vor joye, þo hii þýs yseye.
 þe byssopes, þat hýre ladde, vor joye ¹¹ wepe al so,
 And ¹² herede God & Seyn Swythýn, þo þýs ¹³ miracle" was
 ido,

¹ With many a wepyng
 tere Of lordes and barons,
 and other that were there *Ar.*

² She *Ar.* ³ With a light
 mantell, and a veile a bout
 hur hefed. Hure legges bare
 bý nethe kne, me myght seë
 her shappe. Selcouth thing
 hit was to see a quene so bar-
 fote stappe *Ar.* ⁴ Thes *Ar.*

⁵ Hem *Ar.* ⁶ Upon the

playne erthe ther, Godde's

Ar. ⁷ Blessed tho the quene,
 an prayde for hure also, *Ar.*

⁸ Her pro þýs in *Ar.* ⁹ Heo
 stapped vpon the fuyry
 shares, harmeles all clene.

Herself he nust whanne hit
 was, ne blenched heo na ene
Ar. ¹⁰ Many a weping eye,

Ar. ¹¹ Wepte *Ar.* ¹² He.

ried *Ar.* ¹³ Deest *Ar.*

An

An ladde hyre outward of þe chyrche, þe quene bygan to crie :

“ Vor þe loue of Jhesu Crist, ne doþ nozt ¹ þe vylenye,

“ To do my penance wyþoute, ac in alle manere,

“ ² As yt me yloked war, in holy chyrche here.

“ Madame,” ³ quap þe byssopes, “ þou ⁴ aste ydo ywys.

“ So helpe me God,” quap þe quene, ⁵ “ ynuste nozt er þys.

“ No fur yne velde, nene sey in þysse place.

“ Bote nou ych yt verst yse, ⁶ yrede be Gode's grace.

“ Ledep me þanne to my sone, yat he mowe yse

“ My vet aboue, & eke byneþe, were hii ywemmed be.

þo hii brogte hyre to þe kyng, þe kyng lyggynge hii wonde,

Wepynde & open heued, to sprad al to þe grounde.

Hyt was longe ar he mygte speke, vor deol þat he made.

Atte laste he ros vp, as þe bissopes hym bade,

And vel to ys moder vet, adoun anon akne.

“ Moder,” he seyde, “ ych abbe mys ydo agen God & agen þe.

“ ⁷ þat Inam nozt wurþe to be þy sone, ac per Seynt charyte,

“ Vor þe pyte þat of þe Magdaleyn God adde, vorgyf yt me.

“ Sone,” quap hys moder þo, “ as al ⁸ þys men yseþ,

“ God ap vayre yssewed, þat we gultelese bep.

“ Atte bygunnyng þeruore agen þe byssop ych rede

“ ⁹ Amendement do, þat ys gultellesse of þe dede.

¹ This *Ar.* ² As hit or-

deyned to me was, in holy

Ar. ³ Seide *Ar.* ⁴ Hast it

do er this *Ar.* ⁵ I nust hit

nat I wys. No fuyre Ich felte,

ne say in this ilke place *Ar.*

⁶ Heried *Ar.* ⁷ I ne am not

worthy be thi sone, For

much the gilte Ich haue.

For thy of God and of the

mercý now ich craue *Ar.*

⁸ Thes folk I seeth *Ar.*

⁹ Amendement let be do, that

giltles is of that dede.

Sithen thow maiste a yenste

me, for ich mote be mylde, As

kendeliche the moder ought

to the childe *Ar.*

“ And

“ And suppe agen me þou myȝt, vor ich mot nede be mylde,
 “ As kunde of moder wole & blod agen my chylde.
 þo þe byssop was ycome ¹ wepynde wel sore,
 þe kȳng vel doun to hys vet, & cryde hym mylce and ore.
 þe byssop ² wepynde al so ver gaf yt hym anon.
 So þat þoru þe kȳnge's bone, þe byssopes echon,
³ Ech after oþer, asoylede þen kȳng of þys trespas
 Myd gerden in hys naked rug, & þat gret pyte was.
 þre strokes þe moder ek, ⁴ wepynde wel sore,
 gef hym ⁵ to asoyly, & ne myȝte vor reuþe more.
 þo custe þe kȳng ⁶ hys moder, & þe byssop suppe also,
 And herede gerne Seyn Swythȳn, þat such myracle adde ydo.
 þe kȳng þo ⁷ myd gode herte delyuery het anon,
 Boþe quene and byssop, her maners echon.
 Nyne tounes þe quene anon of þat byr owene was
 gef þe house of Seyn Swythȳn, vor þys holy cas.
 And þe byssop oþer nyne of hys erytage ywys.
 Vor he nyne fury ssares ygeue was al þys.
 þe kȳng ⁸ confermed her maners, & hym sulf gef al so
 Tueye God gode maners Seyn Swythȳn þerto,

¹ Wepȳng full *Ar.* ² We-
 pyȳng also for gaf him a non
Ar. ³ Assoilled him right
 there of his trespas With
 yerdes on his naked rigge,
 þat grete pite was *Ar.* ⁴ We-
 pyȳng full *Ar.* ⁵ For ab-
 solution, for rewthe sheo ne
 myȝht no more *Ar.* ⁶ And
 his moder, and the bisshoppes
 also, And hered God and

Seynt Swethȳne of this mi-
 racle i do *Ar.* ⁷ With goude
 hert let deliuere a non, Bothe
 the quene and bisshop, her
 londes every chon *Ar.* ⁸ Con-
 fermed al this, and him self
 yaf there to II. good Tounes,
 for that he hadde mysdoo, That
 wolde be xx. in all, hit was
 nat lite there. Hit wolde
 fynde the Couent wortes i

nowe

þat wolde be tuenty vnder al, & þat nas nogt lute þere.
 Vor yt wolde fynde hem lek worten y nowe by þe gere.
 Vor gode þe nexte kyng Edward, þat after hym come,
 Ne gef hem nogt follyche so muche wyþne hys kynedom.
 þe abbey of Seyn Denys Seynt Edward gef also
 þe priorye of Derheste, & londes þat her beþ þerto.
 þe erchebyssop of Canterburý sorý ynou was þo,
 þo he hurde of þe quene al hou yt was ygo.
 Hým þogte wel longe, ar he were ouer see,
 And byleuede al hys byssoprýche, & necome neuere eft age.
 þe quene & eke þe byssop, þe wule hii alýue were,
 Muche honourede Seyn Swýthyn fram gere to gere.
 Hys moder wende out of þys lýf, Emme þe god quene,
 In þe a þousend ger of grace & tuo & fyfty ych wene.
 Seynt Edward huld at ² Wýndelsore a uayr feste wýþalle,
 And as a gong man býuore ³ hým seruede in þe halle
 He spurnde mýd hys on vot, þat he vel almost abrod,
⁴ Ac he hente mýd hys oþer, so þat he abode.
 þe erl Godwýne, þe false man, seyde þo, “ ⁵ þat he on broþer,
 “ As ge seþ, in nede helpp þere þat oþer.
 þo ansuerede þe ⁶ kyng & seyde, “ so mýgte me
 “ Mý broþer helpe, Godwýne, gýf he moste vor þe.

nowe euery yere. To the ab-
 bey of Seynt Denys Seynt
 Edwarde yaf also The Pri-
 oury of Derhurst, *Ar.*

¹ He bilafte his bysshop-
 riche, and neuer cam a yee
Ar. ² Wýnchestre a fest
 grete with alle *Ar.* ³ Hem

Ar. ⁴ But þe other fote
 him halpe, so that *Ar.* ⁵
 Ther the on brother, Ase ye
 seith, in nede ofte helpeth the
 other *Ar.* ⁶ Kyng, so myght
 my brother me Ofte haue
 holpe, and he most for the
Ar.

þo was þys Iuper Godwyne ¹ of ssamed suyþe sore,
 “ Syre,” he seyde, “ gut me þyncþ, ² þat yuortrou þou art more
 “ To me of þy broþer deþ, & leuest hem ych yse,
 “ þat in falsnesse þe tolde, þat ych ssolde þy traytor be.
 “ ³ As wys deme God þat soþe, þat of ech þyng wot ende,
 “ And also late þys mossel bred þoru my þrote wende,
 “ Wyþ out harm of me, as I nadde neuere in non cas
 “ Gult of þy broþer deþ, ne þy traytor neuere I nas.
 Mossel he dude in to hys mouþ, ac þe kýng yt blessed er.
 Hyt byleuede amýdde hys þrote, astrangled he was rygt þere,
 And deyde atte borde al stýf, wyþ ssendnesse inou.
 Out al byneþe þe borde ⁴ Haral hys sone hym drou.
⁵ A þousend ger in þe ger of grace & þre & fyfty þys was.
 Lute harm, þey ech traytor ended in such cas.
 Of al hys kun in Engeland Seynt Edward nadde noȝt on.
 Vor hys broþeren were aslawe, oþer ⁶ yfleynd echon.
 þeruore þo þys holy man ⁷ as in to elde wende,
 To þe emperour of Rome after hys ⁸ neuen he sende
 Edward, ⁹ Edmonde's sone þat was Yrene syde,
 þat hys eyr were after hym, gýf he myȝte alyue abyde.

¹ Ashamed *Ar.* ² Thow
 mystrowest me more, And put-
 test vpon me thi brother, and
 nelt I leue me, For all that
 ich a quyt was by men of
 Noblete: And also wys ne-
 uer this morsell thourgh my
 throte passe, As ich of thi bro-
 ther deth never gulty nas.
 The morsell to his mothe he
 putte, but blessed was hit
 er Of a bisshop, so that ther

with a strangled he was
 ther. He deyde stýff atte borde
 in shamefull deth i now *Ar.*
³ *F. ac.* ⁴ Harold *Ar.* ⁵ A
 Ml. as in the yere of grase
 and. liii. this was *Ar.* ⁶ I
 flemed *Ar.* ⁷ *Deest Ar.* ⁸ Co-
 sýns [*l. cosyn*] *Ar.* ⁹ That
 was the sone of Edmunde
 Irenside, That he his heyre
 were *Ar.*

þys emperour hym sende, myd gode loue & fre,
 Edward & Agace hys wyf, & her chyldren þre
 þe zonge¹ Edward Adelyng, & also Margarete,
 And² Cristyne her soster, þat god were & suete.
 þo hii come to Engelond, glad was þe kyng þo,
 Vor he nadde in hys fader alf kunnesmen nanmo.
 þys was in a þousend zer & seuene & fyfty þerto
 As in zer of grace, þat þys dede was ydo.
 Ac Edward deyde sone, & ybured was wyþ gret prute
 At Seyn Poule's at Londone, as hys bones beþ gute:
 And hys sone³ Edward bote zong & tendre nas,
 þeruore þe kyng vor hys deþ þe sorrore was.
⁴ Vor þat chyld was wel zong, eyr & kyng to be,
 And he wuste wel, þat in þe lond⁵ muche wo me ssolde y se.
 And vor hys vncle in Normandye hym adde⁶ yusteyned er,
 þo he was⁷ fleyne & frendeles, ⁸ mo þan þruttý" zer,
 He wolde, þat hys sone sone after hym kyng were
 Wyllam duc of Normandie, rygt lawe þey yt nere.
⁹ Vor he was in hys moder alf next of hys blod,
 And þer nas non in hys fader alf þat þer to was so god.
 þer uore þys Wyllam bastard Engelond he byhet,
 And byqueþ in hys deþ vnel, ar he þat lyf let.

¹ Lege, Edgar Athelyng,
cum Ar. ² Christiene *Ar.*

³ Repone, Edgar, *cum Ar.*

⁴ For his sone Edgar to
 yonge was kyng to be *Ar.*

⁵ Muche stryf shulde be *Ar.*

⁶ Susteyned *Ar.* ⁷ Fleme

Ar. ⁸ Negh xxx. *Ar.* ⁹ For

in his moder half quene Em-

me he was the nexte bloode,

And as for the londe's prough

him thought none so goode *Ar.*

And þat muche vor þe londe's prou, vor hys neuen so gong
was.

Hou¹ Wyllam bastard was býgyte, Icholle telle þat cas.
Rychard duc of Normandye, Emme broþer þe quene,
Adde a sone, þat het Roberd, þat duc was supþe, Ich wene.
Roberd, þys noble duc, as he wende ouer lond,
A wel vayr mayde, as hym þogte, matresche he vond.
þys mayde hym payde suyþe wel, myd god wille he hýr nom,
And huld hýre as hys lefmon, as wo seyþ in hordom,
And byget on hýre þys Wyllam, &, vor he was so ýbore
Out of spoushod, me cluped hym Wyllam bastard þeruore.

¹ *Metra hac de re desunt in Ar. in quo tamen sequentia, eo pertinentia, narravit scriptor prosaicus, quibus similitudinem videas tam in Polychronico, quam & in Lelandi nostri Collect. Vol. VI. p. 296.*

After him [Richarde the III^{de}.] Robert his sone [was duc of Normandye,] a man of grete worthinesse. After him William Bastard, of wham this geste folweth. Robert duc of Normandye in a tyme as he dwelled in a toune of Normandie, i cleped Faleys, he caste his chere to a mayde in the toune, that me cleped Herlote. And, when sheo was brought to the duke's bedde, and shulde go therto, she toke her smok a boue atte coler hem, and rent hit doune to the foot, and leide it a wey

fram hure. And whenne sheo was esshet, why she dude soo? she answered and seide, hit was nat curtasye ne reson that thinges, that touched her feet & hure lowe thynges, shuld touche her lorde's mouthe ne visage, & so thulke same nyght the duc gat on her William Bastard. And after hure slepe sheo a woke, and made a grete gronyng and syghyng. So that the duc hurýng that, esshet of hure, why sheo sighed so? And sheo answered, "Lord ich haue
"worderliche [f. wonderliche]
"i mette. Me thought," quod sheo, "that a grete tree growe
"oute atte my wombe, and
"by shadowed alle Norman-
"dye." And after, whenne hit came to the tyme, when the childe was i bore, a non,
þourgh

Ar þat chýld were ýbore, a wel wonder cas
 þe moder mette bý hýre chýld, þat in hýr wombe was,
 þat hýs gottes were to drawe aboute al Normandýe,
 And eke aboute al Engeland, þat was to sýgnýfýe,
 þat he ssolde be duc of Normandýe, & kýng of Engeland,
 And bothe, as ýt suppe vel, holde in hýs honde.
 þe chýld ek þo ýt was ýbore, & to grounde com,
 Out of hýs moder wombe verst, boþe hýs honden he nom
 Vol of þe pondre & of þe erþe sturnelyche ýnou,
 And closedes to gader & hýs fustes boþe adrou.
 þo was yt jugged, þat he ssolde be, wýþ oute fayle,
 Hardy kýng & stalwarde, & muche do of bataýle.
 Al yt bycom to soþe suppe. he bygan gong ynou,
 To cuþe wat he wolde be, þat so gong hýs fustes adrou.

þourgh negligence of women
 attendýng a boutē his moder
 forýetýng hým, he was wal-
 wed into the strawe that was
 bý, and had caught his. ii.
 hondes so fulle ther of, that
 vnnethe, with oute grete
 harme, me mýght delyuere
 hit oute of his hondes. Wher-
 for, muche folke demed, he
 shulde wexe to summe grete
 auoíre of worlde's richesse.
 And as this childe was after
 in norýsshýng in Valeýs, a
 grete man [*sic hæc concipiun-
tur*] of the contre, I hote
 William Tallmage. So that
 a burgeýs, where as this
 childe was in norýsshýng,

prayde this William to come
 to his house, and visite his
 lorde's sone. This William
 Tallenage & alle his kynne
 hadde euer i hated this
 childe's fader and his kynne,
 and ýt not withstondýng
 that he cam to the hous,
 wher this childe was inne.
 And as non as this childe,
 that vnnethe coude speke,
 saugh him, sodeýneliche hit
 gan chide towards this
 man, and so ferde towards
 him, that me toke grete hede
 there of, supposýng hit myght
 nat be withoute grete ordi-
 nauce of God.

þat

þat chýld wax so wel & ýþen, as seýde fremde & sýbbe,
 þat he wolde be a noble mon, gýf he moste lybbe.
 Hys fader adde of hym eke gret joye & prýs,
 þat so gode sýgne adde so gong, to be stalwarde & wýs.
 Ar he were of sene ger old. þoru out moný a lond
 þe pope sende creýsery toward þe holýlond.
 Roberd duc of Normandye þe croýs nom atten ende,
 And garked hym wýþ opere to þe holylonde to wende.
 At Festamp, ar he wende vorþ, he made al Normandye
 Suerye, holde hys gong sone, as to seýgnorýe.
 gong duc he was on of sene ger vnneþe.
 Vor þe fader ne com neuere agen, ar he were brogt to deþe.
 And þys gong chýld byleued duc, & gret þyng adde an honde.
 þys was ar Seynt Edward were kýng of Engeland.
 And Seynt Edward byleuede vorþ myd hym, as he adde er
 ydo
 Myd hys fader in hys nede, & myd hys grantsyre al so.
 þeruore þo he was kýng, gret loue he gan bede
 þys Wyllam, vor hii susteyned hym so in hys nede.
 So þat suppe in hys elde, þo hys lyf was neý ydo,
 As in þe ger of hys kýnedom tuenty & tuo,
 Of þe croune of Engeland he nuste wat best do,
 Vor Edgar, hys neuen sone, wel gong was þerto
 To be kýng of Engeland, & hys owe lyf ssozt was,
 And he dradde of gret cótek alonde vor þat cas.
 Hym þogte to gyue Wyllam þys lond, hyt was best to do.
 Vor he was wurþe, & of hys blod, & best yt couþe wyte also.
 þeruor he gaf yt hym, as he byhet hym byuore,
 And sende to hym myd þe gýfte to Normandye þeruor

þe erl Harald þe quene broþer, as me wende, & oþer mo.
 Ac soþ yt ys, þat þe erl Harald passede þe see þo,
 Wyþ gret poer & folc ynou, so þat, as God yt wolde,
 Wyþ wynd he was in strange londe ydryue, þer he nolde.
 þere hii were, as strange men, ¹ grȳmȳlyche undervonge,
 And ynome to albe of here, & ybrogt in bendes stronge.
 Syr Gwȳ of Pountyn was hys name, þat hym adde in bende,
 And asked hem gret ramson, in prison vorto wende.
 Harald was of heȳe herte, & suor raþer he wolde
 gȳue þe duc of Normandȳe of hys tresor & of hys golde,
 þat so noble duc was & god, ² þan a such alue man as he was.
 To þe duc he sende sone, to helpe hym in þat cas.
 þe duc sende to Syr Gwȳ, so ³ þat Syr Gwȳ anon
 And adde Harald to þe duc, & hys felawes echon.
 þe duc vaȳre hym vnderuong, & honoured hym y nou,
 So þat, as rygt was, gret loue bytuene ⁴ hym drou.
 Harald, vor to paye hym wel, sende hym sone hys sonde,
 Hou þe kȳng hym ⁵ made after hym hys eȳr of hys londe.

¹ Greuȳliche vnderfonge
 In Sir Guȳ de Pounsoun's
 lond, and i prisoned wonder
 strong. And whenne they
 hadde ther a while thus i
 dwelte in bende, Sir Guy as-
 ked hem Raunson grete, of
 prison for to wende *Ar.* ²
 Than suche half man *Ar.* ³
 That he a non Ladde Harolde
 tho to him, and his felawes
 echon *Ar.* ⁴ Hem drowgh.
 Harold than, to queme the duc,
 seide sone his sonde, *Ar.* ⁵

Vol. I.

Maked after his dayȳ heire of
 Engeland. And Harold swor
 to the duc, and to him fast
 bonde, That to his by houe al
 on he wolde kepe the londe,
 And that the duke's doughter,
 whenne that tȳme come, That
 yong was thoo, in foreward to
 wȳf Harolde nome. And thus
 Harolde was i swor to do thes
 thinges twoo With also gret
 othe & bonde, as men myght
 doo *Ar.*

E E

And

And þat he wolde take hym to wyte his lond he vnderstode
 To his byefþe, & þat he wolde wardeyn be hym god.
 As strong vorewarde as hii mygte hii made & as hard,
 And vp holy relykes Harald suor to Wyllam bastard,
 Treulyche to wyte Engeland to hym, vorte he come,
 And þat he his one dogter to wyue also nome,
 þat gond was at þulke tyme, so þat his þynges tuo
 Wyþ as gret op he suor hym, as man mygte do.
 þo þis vorewarde was ymad hard & strong y nou,
 Harald toward Engeland wyþ gode loue drou.
 þe kyng he tolde al þat cas, þat bytuene hem was ydo,
 Hou he wolde to Wyllam trywe be, an his dogter spousy also.
 þo was þe kyng glad ynou, þat he wel to hym truste,
 And bytot hym þat lond, þat he wel to þis Wyllam yt wuste.
 Seynt Edward wuste of his deþ, ar he henne wende.
 Vor Seynt Jon euuangelyst byuore longe word sende,
 And sende hym tokne by a ryng, þat at Westmynstre gut ys,
 þat Seynt Edward þer byuore Seyn Jon gef ywys.
 þe kyng þo þet word hym com, & þen ryng ysey,
 He þonkede God þat he wuste, þat his deþ was so ney.
 His gode he delde pouere men, & made his bernas bare,
 And his tresorýe al so god, & to God hym made al gare.
 Glad he was of Westmynstre þat he ² let hym sulf rere,
 þat byuore hym was ybrogt to grounde, þoru luper kynges
 þat were.

¹ And by toke him all the | wýst Ar. ² Lette vppe a rere
 londe, to the duc that he | Ar.

Ac

Ac ¹ vorþ chýrche vnhalwed was, þeruor hým was wo.
 He þogte ² lete hys halwý to mýdewýnter anon þo.
 þey Seyn Peter hymself ³ ýhalwed adde er,
 gut he moste efsone vor þe nýwe worke þere.
 He sende after hys ⁴ baronye, at mýdewýnter ⁵ mýd hým to be.
 þo þe feste ýgadered was, deol me mýgte ýse.
 Vor þo ýt ssolde murgost be, þe kyng vnelede anon.
 And napeles glad he was hým sulf, ⁶ vor he wuste gon.
 And vor joye of hys deþe, & vor þe heye feste also,
 þe trauayl he nome to hým al, þat hem wolde vane to do.
 He ber þe croune, & huld þe deys mýd oþer atýl al so,
 And mýd gret semblant þe feste huld vorte þre dawes were
 ýdo.

A Seyn Jone's day he sey þat al com to god endynge,
 He made ac conferment to Westmynstre of eche þýnge,
 þat þoru hým hem ýgyue was, oþer þoru eny oþer kýnge,
 So þat no kýng after hým ne dude no destour brynge.
 þe chýrche⁷ he let halwý as a Chýldery masse day.
 Wel feble he was þere hým sulf, as al ¹ þat folc ý say.
 In a þousend ger of grace, & sýxe & sýxtý þerto,
 Hyt was þat þys holýman þys dede let do.

¹ For the churche *Ar.*

² To hadde halwed hur atte
midwýnter thoo *Ar.*

³ Her
hadde halwed er *Ar.*

⁴ Ba-
rons, *Ar.*

⁵ Negh *pro* mýd
in Ar.

⁶ For he wiste hoder
gon. ýut bare he the crowne,
& helde the deys with other
a týre also, And with gret
chere iii. dayes helde his

feste so. A Seynt Johen's day,

of all to make good endýng,

He confermed bý his chartre

in all maner thýng To West-

mýnstre the fredomes i vsed

ýut huder to, And ho that a

ýenst hem ought dude, let

sentence ther on doo. The

churche he lette halwe a Chil-

dermasse day *Ar.*

⁷ The *Ar.*

þo hýt was al wel ýdo, & ýbrogt to god ende,
 þe kýng feble & syk ynou to hys bed gan wende.
 þo was þer deol & sorwe ynou of men þat wuste þat cas,
 Vor hii wuste, þat to Engeland muche wo to come was.
 Worre & slagt, and oþer wo, & hunger & gret wou.
 þe quene vel bý hým adoun, & byclupte hým vaste ýnog
 Vorto hete hys colde lymes, þat non hete ne come to,
 þoru hete of hýre owe body, & of hýre cloþes al so.
 þe kyng lay as he were ysuowe almost dawes tuo.
 He gan, as he awoke of slepe, hys eyen þo vn do.
 He sat ¹ vpard vp hys bed, hys honden held vp anheý.
 “Louerd,” he seyde, “þat ech þýng madest queynte & sleý,
 “And changest ² poer & kýnedoms alat þý nowe rede,
 “And monne’s sones wreche sensst of her fader mýs dede,
 “gýf þýng, þat ých nou ýsey, ³ come of þý soþnesse,
 “get me poer yt to telle in al my feblesse,
 “Vorto ssewe þý poer, þat hii þat yt ýseþ
 “Douty þe, & of þe sýnne, þat hii in beþ,
 “Repentý mowe, & þer of hem amendý so,
 “⁴ þat hii ssulde hem fram þe harm, þat þou þencst hem do.
 Anon as þýs holymon ⁵ adde hys oryson ý do þere,
 Stalward man of speche he was, holy man as he were,
 þo gan he to ⁶ tellen þus: “þulke týme þat ych was
 “⁷ As man fleýne in Normandye, me com moný gød cas.

¹ Upwardes on his bedde,
Ar. ² Power and kyngdom
 atte thýne awne wille, And
 mannes sonns sendest wreche
 of his fader’s ille *Ar.* ³ Come
 shall of thý Rightwesnesse, *Ar.*
⁴ And pray the shilde hem

fro the harme, that thow hem
 thenkest doo *Ar.* ⁵ Hadde doo
 his prayere, Strong i now
 his speche was *Ar.* ⁶ Segge
Ar. ⁷ Flemed man in Nor-
 mandye, me cam *Ar.*

“Men

“ Men of relygyon ych louede wel y nou,
 “ An to me hem, þat best were, ¹ at vore alle oþer ych drou.
 “ ² An tuene holý men at vore alle oþer mest yc louede þere.
 “ Nou wot ych wel, þat ³ moný day in heuene boþe hii were.
 “ Hii tolde me, þat to Engeland after me ssolde come.
 “ Hii seyde me of þe wrecchede, ⁴ þat alonde aþ ȝare ýbe.
 “ þe wreche hyeþ & sone comeþ. & þat ssal me ýse.
 “ Vor prestes, myd vnclene honde & myd lechor's mode
 “ Al soyled, sacryeþ Gode's fless & hys blod.
 “ Ssepurdes hii ⁵ bet luþer, vor hii ne ⁶ wýteþ noȝt
 “ Her ssep fram þe ⁷ wolues. vor be hem ybroȝt
 “ þe melke & þe wolle clene. of oþer ⁸ þýng hii nolle telle.
 “ þe ssepurdes and þe ssep ⁹ al so ssulle to pýne of helle.
 “ As god heýmen of þe lond robbeors felawes beþ.
 “ Pouere men, þat hii mowe ouer, hii huldeþ as ȝe ýseþ.
 “ Nou wole vr Louerd ssake hys suerd, hys bowe ýs ýbend,
 “ And ¹⁰ prest aþ ýmade, vorto smýte men þat bet myswende.
 “ þo seyde ych myd drery mode, ȝyf hii wollep turne her þoȝt,
 “ An sorý be, & ¹¹ bete her sýnne, wolle vr Louerd vorȝýue
 hem oȝt?

¹ By fore *Ar.* ² Ac ii.
 holy men be fore *Ar.* ³ Ma-
 ný a day bothe in heuen they
 were. And now ryght bothe
 hii come to me, and the an-
 gwysses some Hii tolde me,
 that *Ar. adeo ut in Cod.*
nostro Harleyano metrum in-
tegrum omittatur. ⁴ That
 longe in londe hath be, Of
 whiche the wreche hiegh faste,
 as me shall i see. For Prestes
 with vnclene hondes, and with

lecherous mode, All i foyled,
 vseth to sacre Godde's flesh &
 blode *Ar.* ⁵ Beth *Ar.* ⁶ Ke-
 peth *Ar.* ⁷ Wolues, to hem
 that buthe by taught *Ar.*
⁸ Thýnges nele I tell *Ar.*
⁹ Also bothe shulleth to Hell.
 And also Robbers of the loude
 high mennes felewes beth.
 Power men, that hii mowe,
 hii buyldeth as ye seeth *Ar.*
¹⁰ Redy *Ar.* ¹¹ Let *Ar.*

" þat ys vor noȝt," þe oþer seyde, " vor þe folke's herte ys
 " So yharded, þat hii beþ blynde & deue ywys,
 " þat hii nolleþ non god þyng yhure ne yse.
 " þo seyde ych, ¹ wer vr Louerd wole euere wroþ be,
 " ² Wer he nolle grace do, & be of mylce more?
 " Wanne þat lond, after so gret joye, so vol worþ of sore,
 " Wat ende ssal þerof be, & wanne eny blýs,
 " Oþer comfort, after such sor?" þo seyde þe oþer þys:
 " A grene wexyng tre, þat ys fram hys more
 " Ismyte adoun, & þe brede of þe þre londes þerfram ybore,
 " Wanne yt ys eft by hym sulue, wýpout ech monne's rede,
 " Iturnd agen to hys rygte more, þat er was as dede,
 " And bygynþ to blowe, & supþe to bere frut,
 " þanne me may, wo yt ³ ysuchþ, to bote hoppe gut.
 þo þe quene, & hyre broþer Harald, hurde þys,
 And Roberd, þat wardeyn was of þe palays ywys,
 Hii wepe, & made deol y nou, vor hii seye þe soþnesse,
⁴ In wuche lecherye & oþer synne þe prestes songe her masse;
 And hou þe heye men of þe lond þe pouere to grounde broȝte,
 þe wreche, þat God wolde do, nas noȝt vor noȝt hii þoȝte.
 þe syȝte bytokneþ þus, as yt was vnderstonde:
 þys tre þe noble kynedom bytokneþ of Engelande.
 þe more bytokneþ þe rygte kunde, þat ech of oþer come,
 Fram kyng Alfred ⁵ þe kunde more, þat furst was yheled at
 Rome,

¹ Whether oure *Ar.* ² Whe-
 ther he woll yet grace *Ar.*
³ Seeth, for bote *Ar.* ⁴ How

in lecherie *Ar.* ⁵ The mo-
 narke, tha anoynted was atte
 Rome, *Ar.*

To Seynt Edward's fader, & to hym sulue al so.
 Ac þo he deyde wyþoute rygt eyr, þe wexynge was ydo,
 And þat tre ysmýte fram þe more ouer þre londres brede.
 Vor þe kynges were of Engeland of vn kunde sede.
 Verst Harald þe quene broþer, & Wyllam bastard also,
 And supþe hys sone Wyllam, þe rede kyng, þerto.
 Ac after þat Wyllam, þe rede kyng, yssote was by cas,
 And þe gode Henry hys broþer after hym kyng was,
 Seynt Edward's nece, þat of hys fader kunde come,
 And of þe rygte kunde of Engeland, kyng Henry to wyue nome,
 þat was Mold þe gode quene, þat in gode tyme was ybore;
 þo smot verst þys tre agen to hys kunde more,
 And Normandy þoru þe kyng, & þoru þe quene Engeland
 Joyned were þo kundelyche in one monne's honde.
 In a þosend ger of grace & syxe & sixty rygt,
 After vr suete Louerd in hys moder was alýgt.
 Kyng he was þre & tuenty ger, & six monþes þerto,
 And þre woke & syxte dawes, ar hys lyf were ydo.
 þo Seynt Edward adde þys ytold, he closede boþe hys eye,
 And þe verþe day of Janyuere in þys manere gan deye.
 Al þe franchyse of Engeland, & al joye & blysse,
 Myd hym was vaste ybured, þo me bured hym ywys.
 And þat me vond sone afterward myd mony deluol cas.
 At Westmýnstre a tuelfþe day þys gode man ybured was.

Whenne Seynt Edward
 thus tolde, he ganne to close
 his eyghe, The iiii. day of
 Januare thenne ganne he
 deye, In the yere of oure
 Lorde. Ml. lxvi. right After

that oure swete Lorde in his
 moder a light. Kyng he was.
 xxiii. yere and vi. moneths
 ther too, And iii. wakes and
 vi. dayes er his lyf was i doo.
 Al the fraunchise *Ar.*

HARALD þys false erl, þo Seynt Edward dede lay,
 Hým sulue he let crouny kýng þulke sulue day
 Falslyche. vor Seynt Edward so wel to hým truste,
¹ þat he býtot hým Engeland, þat he yt wel wuste
 To ² Wyllamme's byofþe bastard, duc of Normandye.
 Ac hým sulf he made kýng ³ myd such trecherye.
 Ac þe gode tryw men of þe lond wolde ⁴ abbe ymade kýng
 þe kunde eýr, þe gonge chýld, Edgar Apelyng.
⁵ Wo so were next kýng býkunde, me clupeþ hým Apelyng.
 þeruor me clupede hým so, vor býkunde he was next kýng.
 Ac Harald made hys weý býuore, ⁶ as myd suykedom,
 Myd gyftys & myd vayre byheste, & auong þe kýnedom.
 So þat somme hým chose alout, & somme hem hulde stýlle,
⁷ And soffrede as hii nozt ne mygte al opere's wýlle.
 So þat Harald was kýng, to wom þe hele þe kýnedom.
 And Seynt Edward's sygte bý hým to soþe come.
 Vor þo býgan þe wow vorst, as me mygte ýse,
 þat ssolde, as Seynt Edward seyde, bý þre kýnges day be.
 Vor ⁸ Coste, Harald broþer, þat he drof er in to Flaundre
 Bý kýnge's day Edward hym sulue to gret sclaundre,

¹ Thenne he by toke him

Ar. ² Williame's bý houe *Ar.*

³ With fals trechourie *Ar.*

⁴ Haue maked *Ar.* ⁵ He that

were nexte kyng by kynde,

Ethelyng he was, And there

fore me cleped hym so, for

nexte heire he was *Ar.* ⁶ All

with swikeldom, With yestes

and with faire bý hestes, to

yonge the kyngdom *Ar.*

⁷ And suffred thulke tyme as

men that myght not haue her

wille. So that Harolde to

wrothur hele helde the kyng-

dome, And sone, as Seynt Ed-

warde seide, after ward hit

come. And thoo by ganne the

wrake ferste, as all men

myght i see *Ar.* ⁸ *Pro Toste.*

At in Ar. Tostyn, Harolde's,

He

He com anon þo vppen hym myd gret poer & eye,
 Myd Harald ¹ Darfager kyng of Norþwey,
 And myd gret poer of Norþomber to Euerwyk hii com,
 And muche ² folc in þe Souþ syde boþe slowe & nome.
 Kyng Harald com agen hym myd poer strong ynou.

³ Bysyde Euerwyk hys ost agen hym he drou,
 In a stude, þat me clupede ⁴ Stamford brugge þo,
 And nou me clupeþ yt Batayle brugge, vor þe batayle þat
 was þo.

þer hii smyte to gadere, & made a sorȳ pleȳ.
 Vor þere was Tost aslawe, & þe kyng of Norþwey,
 And her syde ⁵ al byneþe; to ende yt com so
 þat Seynt Edward byuore seȳde of þelke breþeren tuo,
 þat hii ssolde to gadere fȳgte, & Harald aboue be.

⁶ þer me myȳte of þulke word þat soþnesse ȳse.
 Fram anon amorwe vorte myd ouer none,
 þo' batayle laste strong, ar ⁷ he were ydon,
 þe Englysse ouer þe brugg droue þe oþer at laste.

Ac þo þat water was bytuene, hii stode agen vaste.
⁸ On body þer was of Norþwey, betere nas þer non.

Vor he at stode vp þe brugg myd anax al on,
 And drof the Englysse men agen, ⁹ hym ne myȳte non atstonde.
 And slou mo þan fourty of hem myd hys owe honde,

¹ Lege, Harfager. ² Folke,
 that hem with stode, bothe
 slawe Ar. ³ A lite by side
 Euerwik the hostes ge-
 der drough, Ar. ⁴ Stayne-
 forde Ar. ⁵ Was all by ne-
 the; to ende cam hit thoo

Ar. ⁶ Ther of me myght
 atte thulke tȳme all the sothe
 i see. Fram ernemorwe fort
 hit was myddeouer none,
 The Ar. ⁷ Hit Ar. ⁸ A
 man ther was Ar. ⁹ That
 non myght him withstande.

And

And wuste hem so vorte after none vorte on myd gyle nome
 A ssyp, & ar he were ywar vnder þe brugg com,
 And smot hym ar he were ywar vnder foundement lowe
 Myd a sper, & so an heý, þat he deyde in a þrowe.
 A stalwarde pece þat was, nou God cuþe hys soule loue.
 þo þogte þe Englysse vor hys deþ þat hii were al aboue,
 And passede þe brugge anon, & slowe to grounde,
 So þat þe oþer partye býneþe was in astounde.
 þo" Harald ysey hys broþer aslawe, ¹ & þe kyng Arfager
 Of Norþweý & her folc, he ne huld nour hys pere.
 He ne geld nogt wel her mede, þat wyþ hym hys fon slowe,
 þeruore hys men þe lasse her herte to hym drowe.
 And þat hii kudde hym afterwarde, agen Willam bastard,
² As ge ssole sone yhure, vor he was euere assreward.

MUCHE aþ he sorwe ybe ofte in Engeland,
³ As ge mowe here & er yhure & vnderstonde,
 Of moný bataýle þat aþ ybe, & þat men þat lond nome,
 Verst, as ge abbeþ yhurð, þe emperours of Rome.

And slough him self fourty
 with a sparthe in hande. So
 atte laste vnder him pruy-
 liche on came lowe, And in
 the foundement him smote,
 that he deide in a throwe.
 Then were the Englysshmen
 a boue in lýtell stounde, And
 passed the brugge, and slowe
 downe to grounde. Tho *Ar.*
¹ And Harolde Herfager,
 He toke gret pruyte ther of,
 and helde non his pere, And
 yelde not well *Ar.* ² As ye

mowe ther of hure he after
 [*f.* here after] warde *Ar.*
³ As ye mowe i hure bý wrýt,
 as Ich vnderstande, Of ma-
 ny batailles that hath i be of
 men this londe that nome,
 Of Giauntes ferste & Bru-
 tonus, and suth of men of
 Rome. Of Saxons suthe and
 Danes thenne, and Norman-
 nus atte laste. And yut there
 wolle be more wrake, Icham
 fulle sore a gaste *Ar.*

Subbe Saxons & Englysse myd batayles stronge.
 Atte laste hey of Normandye, þat maystrus bet gut here,
 Wonne yt & holdeþ gut, y cholle telle in wuche manere.
 ' þo Willam bastard hurde telle of Haralde's suykedhede,
 Hou he hadde ymad hym kyng, & myd wuch fals hede.
 Vor þat lond hym was bytake, as hýt welle wuste,
 To wyte yt to hym wel, & he wel to hym truste.
 As þe hende he dude verste, & messagers hym sende,
 " þat he vnderstode hym bet hys dede vorto amende,
 " And þogte on þe grete oþ, þat he hym adde er ydo,
 " To wyte hym wel Engeland, & to spouse hys dogter also,
 " And hulde hym þerof vorewarde, as he by het ek þe kyng,
 " And bote he dude bytyme, he wolde sende hym oþer tȳþing,
 " And seche hym out ar tuelf monþe, & hys rygty's wynne,
 " þat he ne ssolde abbe in to al Engeland, & erne to wyte hym.
 Harald hym sende word, " þat folye yt was to truste
 " To such oþ, þat was ydo myd strengþe, as he wel wuste.
 " Vor gýf a mayde treuþe plýgte, to do a fole dede
 " Al one priuýlyche, wýþ out hyre frendes rede,
 " þulke vorewarde ys vor nogt. & wat loker yt agte her,
 " þat ych suor an oþ, þat was þo al in þy poer,
 " Wýþoute consel of al þe londe, of þýng þat mýn nogt nas?
 " þeruor ned oþ ysuore, nede ybroke was.
 " And gýf þou me wolt seche in Engeland, ne be þou no so
 sturne
 " Syker þou ne ssalt me fynde in none hurne.

Hic perplura prosaice habentur in Ar. haud paucis | *nimirum metris in eodem prætermisis.*

þo Willam hurde, þat he wolde susteny hys trecherye,
 He let of sende hys knyghtes of al Normandy,
 To conseyly hym in þys cas, & to helpe hym in suche nede,
 And he gan of her porchas largelyche hem bede,
 As hii founde suppe in Engeland, þo yt ywonne was,
 þe betere was toward hym her herte vor þys cas.
 þe duc Wyllam hys wylle among hem alle seyde,
 þat four þynges hym made mest bygynne þulke dede.
 Vor Godewyne, Haralde's fader, to depe let do
 So vyllyche Alfred, hys cosyn, & hys felawes also.
 And vor Harald adde hys of ybroke, þat he suor myd hys
 rygt honde,
 þat he wolde to hys byofþe wytte Engeland.
 And vor Seynt Edward hym gef Engeland al so.
 And vor he was next of hys blod, & best wurþe þerto,
 And vor Harald nadde non rygt bote in falshede.
 þes þynges hym made mest bygynne þys dede.
 And vor he wolde, þat all men yseye hys trywede,
 To þe pope Alysander he sende in such cas hym to rede.
 Haralde's falshede þo he pope ysey þere,
 And perauentere me hym tolde more þat soþ were,
 þe pope asoyled & blessed Wyllam & al hys,
 þat into þys batayle myd hym ssolde ywys,
 And halewede hys baner, þat men at vore hym bere.
 þo was he & al hys gladdore þan hii er were.
 So þat þys duc adde agen heruest al gare
 Hys barons & hys knyghtes, myd hym vorto fare.
 To þe hauene of Seyn Walry þe duc wende þo
 Myd þe men þat he adde, & abyde mo.

After

After heruest þo her ssýppes & al hii preste were,
 And wýnd hem com after wýlle, her seýles hii gon rere,
 And hyderwarde in þe se wel glad þen weý nome.
 So þat býsýde Hastýnges to Engeland hii come,
 Hem þogte, þo hii come alond, þat al was in her honde.
 At see sone as þe duc Wýllam hys fot sette alonde,
 On of hys knýgtes gradde, “ holde vaste Wýllam nou
 “ Engeland, vor þer nýs non kýng bote þou.
 “ Vor syker þou be, Engeland ys nou þýn ýwýs.
 þe duc Wýllam anon verbed al hys,
 þat none nere so wod, to robbý, ne no manere harm do þere
 Vpe þe lond, þat hys was, bote hem þat agen hým were.
 And an fourtý nýgt hý býleuede þere aboute,
 And conseýlede of bataýle, & ordeýnd her route.
 Kýng Harald sat glad ýnou at Euerwyke atte mete,
 So þat þer come a messenger, ar he adde ý gete,
 And seyde, þat duc Wýllam to Hastýnges was ýcome,
 And hys baner adde ýrerd, & þe contreye al ýnome.
 Harald, a man wýþ grete herte corageus ý nou,
 As he of non man ne tolde, þuderwarde vaste drou.
 He ne let nozt clupýe al hys folc, so wyllefol he was,
 And al vor in þe oþer bataýle hým vel so vayr cas.
 þo þe duc Wýllam wuste, þat he was ýcome neý,
 A monek he sende hým in message, & dude as þe sleý,
 þat lond, þat hým was ýgyue, þat he ssolde ýt vp gelde,
 Oþer come, & dere em þe rýgt myd suerd in þe velde.
 gýf he seyde, þat he nadde non rýgt þerto,
 þat vp þe pope lokýnge of Rome he ssolde ýt do,

And

And he wolde þerto stonde, al clene wyþoute fyȝte,
 Wer Seynt Edward yt hym ȝef, & wer he adde þerto rȝt.
 Harald sende hym word agen, þat he nolde hym take non lond,
 Ne non lokȝnge of Rome, bote suord & rȝt honde.
 þo yt oþer ne myȝte be, eyþer in hys syde
 Conseȝlede and ȝarked hem, bataȝle vorto abyde.
 þe Englysse al þe nȝt byuore vaste byȝon to sȝnge,
 And spende al þe nȝt in glotonȝe & in dryngȝnge.
 þe Normans ne dude noȝt so, ac hii cryde on God vaste,
 And ssryue hem ech after oþer, þe wule þe nȝt ylaste,
 And amorwe hem lete asely wyþ mylde herte ynou.
 And supþe þe duc wyþ hys ost toward þe bataȝle drou,
 An stounde he gan abyde, & hys knyȝtes rede.
 “ȝe knyȝtes,” he seyde, “þat bet of so noble dede
 “þat nere neuere ouercome, ne ȝoure elderne naþemo,
 “Understondeþ of þe kyng of France þat ȝoure elderne dude
 wo,
 “Hou my fader in Parus amȝdde hys kyndedom,
 “Myd prowesse of ȝoure faderes myd strengþe hym ouercome.
 “Understondeþ hou ȝoure elderne þe kyng nome al so,
 “And helde hym vorte he adde amended þat he adde mys do,
 “And Rycharð, þat was þo a chyld, hii ȝelde Normandȝe,
 “þat was duc her byuore, & to such maȝstrie,
 “þat at eche parlement, þat he in France were,
 “þat he were yȝurd wyþ a suerd, þe wule þat he leuede þere,
 “þat þe kyng of France ne hys so hardy were,
 “þat atte parlement knyȝf ne suerd bere.
 “Understoundeþ eke þe dedes, þat þulke Rycharð dude al so,
 “þat he ne ouercome noȝt kynges alone, ac ȝut more þerto.

“Ac

- “ Ac he ouercom þe deuēl, & adoun hȳm caste
 “ To gadere as hii wrastled, & bond hȳs honden vaste
 “ Bȳ hynde at hȳs rugge. of such prowesse ge þenche,
 “ Nessame ge nogt þat Harald, þat euere was of luper wrenche,
 “ An býuore gou was versuore, þat he wole mȳd hȳs tayle
 “ Turne hys wombe toward vs, & hȳs face in batayle.
 “ Vnderstondeþ þe suȳkedom, þat hȳs fader & he wroȳte,
 “ And hii þat mȳd hȳm beþ, þo hii to deþe broȳte
 “ So vȳllȳche Alfred mȳ cosȳn, & goure kunes men also.
 “ Hou myȳte in enȳ wȳse more ssame be do?
 “ Monȳe, þat dude þulke dede, ge mowe here to daȳ yseȳ.
 “ Hou longe ssolle her luper heued aboue her ssoldren be?
 “ Adraweþ goure suerdes, & lokeþ wo maȳ do best,
 “ þat me se goure prowesse fram þe Est to þe West.
 “ Wote awrete þat gentȳl blod, þat so vȳllȳche was ȳnome
 “ Of houre kunes men. vor we mowe wel. vr tȳme ȳs nou
 ȳcome.

þe duc nadde nogt al ȳsed, þat mȳd ernest gret
 Al ȳs folc wel atyled to þe batayle sscet.
 A sueȳn, þat het Taylefer, smot vorþ býuore þere,
 And slou anon a Englysse man, þat a baner bere,
 And efsone anoper baneur, & þe þȳȳdde almest al so,
 Ac hȳm sulf he was aslawe, ar þe dede were ydo.
 þe furst ende of hys ost býuore Harald mȳd such gȳne
 So þȳcke sette, þat non man ne myȳte come wȳþȳnne,
 Wȳþ stronge targes hem býuore, þat archers ne dude hem nogt,
 So þat Normans were ney to grounde ȳbroȳt.
 Wyllam byþoȳte an queintȳse, & bygan to fle vaste,
 And hȳs folc vorþ wȳþ hȳm, as hii were agaste,

And

And flowe ouer a longe dale, & so vp an heȝ.
 þe Englysse ost was prout ynou, þo hii þȝs ysey,
 An bygonne hem to sprede, & after þen weȝ nome.
 þe Normans were aboue þe doune, þe opere vpard come,
 And bytúrnde hem aboue al heselyche, as yt wold be adon-
 ward.
 And oper byuore ne myȝte noȝt so quiclyche vpard.
 And hii were byuore al to sprad, þat ne myȝte bytuene hem
 wende.
 þe Normans were so wel porueȝd aboute in ech ende,
 And stones adonward slonge vp hem y nowe,
 And myȝd speres & myȝd flon vaste of hem slowe,
 And myȝd suerd & myȝd ax. vor hii, þat vpard nome,
 Ne myȝte non wȝlle abbe of dunt, as hii þat donward come,
 And her vantwarde was to broke, þat ne myȝte wyþynne
 hem wende,
 So þat þe Normans vaste slowe in eche ende.
 Of Englysse al vor noȝt þat valeȝe was neȝ
 As heȝe yfuld myȝd dedemen, as þe doune an heȝ.
 þe ssetares donward al uor noȝt vaste slowe to grounde,
 So þat Harald þoru þe neȝe yssotte was deþe's wounde.
 And a knyȝt þat ysey, þat he was to grounde ybroȝte,
 And smot, as he laȝ byneþe, & slou as vor noȝt.
 Fram þat yt was amorwe þe bataȝle ylaste strong
 Vorte yt was neȝ myȝd ouernon, & þat was samdel long.
 Monȝ was þe gode dunt, þat duc Wȝllam ȝef adaȝ.
 Vor þre stedes he slou vnder hȝm, as muche folc ysaȝ
 Ver prȝked, & ver arnd about, & ver wounded also,
 And debrȝsed aȝen dedemen, ar þe bataȝle were ydo.

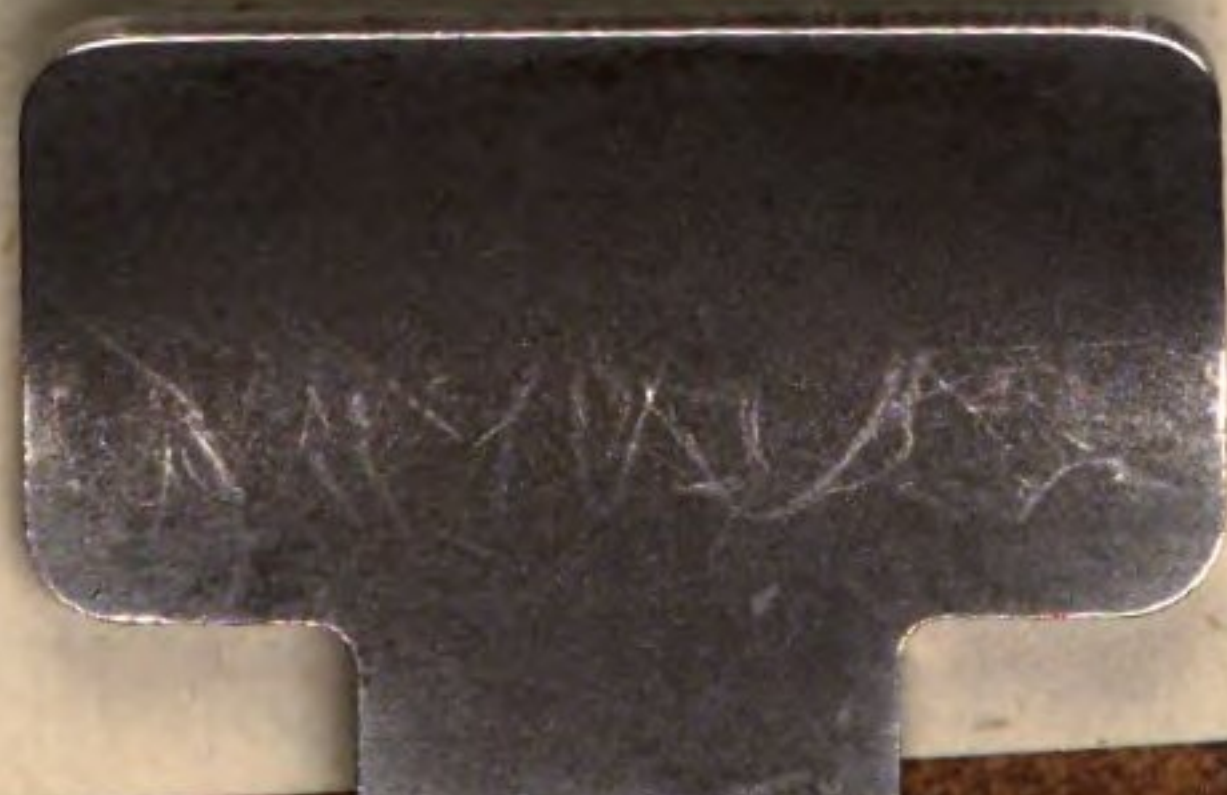
And

And gut was Wyllam's grace þulke day so gode,
 þat he nadde no wounde, war þoru he ssedde an drop blod,
 þus, lo! þe Englysse volc vor naȝt to grounde come
 Vor a fals kȳng, þat nadde non rȳgt to þe kȳnedom,
 And come to a nywe louerd, þat more in rȳgte was.
 Ac her noþer, as me may ysey, in pur rȳgt nas.
 And þus was in Normannes hond þat lond ybroȝt ywȳs,
 þat anaunter ȝyf euermo keuerynge þereof ys.
 Of þe Normannes beþ þȳs hey men, þat beþ of þȳs lond,
 And þe lowe men of Saxons, as ȳch vnderstonde.
 So þat ȝe seþ in eyþer syde wat rȳgte ȝe abbeþ þerto,
 As ȳch vnderstonde, þat yt was þoru Gode's wȳlle ydo.
 Vor þe wule þe men of þȳs lond pur heþene were,
 Non lond, ne no folc agen hem in armys nere.
 Ac nou supþe þat þet folc anong Cristendom,
 And wel lute wule hii hulde þe byþeste, þat hii nome,
 And turnede to sleuþe, & to prute, & to lecherȳe,
 To glotonȳe, & heȳe men mucche to robberȳe,
 As þe goster in a uȳsyon to Seynt Edward seyde,
 Wu þer ssolde in Engeland come such wrecchede,
 Vor robberye of heȳ men, vor clerken hordom,
 Hou God wolde sorwe sende in þȳs kȳnedom.
 Bytuene Mȳhelmasse & Seynt Luc, a Seyn Calyخته's day,
 As vel in þulke ȝere in a Sater day,
 In þe ȝere of Grace, as yt vel al so,
 A þousend & syxe & syxtȳ, þȳs batayle was y do.
 And duc Wyllam was þo old nyne & þrytty ȝer.
 And on & þrytty ȝer he was of Normandy duc er.

þo þys batayle was ydo, duc Wýllam let brýnge
 Vayre hys folc, þat was aslawe, anerþe þoru alle þýnge.
 Alle þat wolde leue he gaf, þat hys son anerþe brogte.
 Haralde's moder vor hýr sone wel zerne hým býsogte
 By messagers, & largelyche hym bed of hýr þýnge,
 To grante hyre sone body anerþe vorto brynge.
 Wýllam yt sende hýr vayre ynou, wypoute eny þýnge waruore:
 So þat yt was þoru hýre wyþ gret honour ýbore
 To þe hous of Waltam, & ybrogt anerþe þere,
 In þe holý rode chýrche, þat he let hym sulf rere,
 An hous of relygyon, of canons ywys.
 It was vayre anerþe ýbrogt, as yt gut ýs.
 Wýllam, þys noble duc, þo he adde ydo al þys,
 þen wey he nome to Londone he & al hys,
 As kýng & prince of lond, wyþ nobleýe ýnou.
 Agen hým wyþ vayre processyon þat folc of toun drou
 And vnderuonge hym vayre y nou, as kýng of þys lond.
 þus come, lo! Engeland into Normannes honde.
 And þe Normans ne couþe speke þo bote her owe speche,
 And speke French as dude atom, & here chýldren dude al so
 teche.
 So þat heýmen of þys lond, þat of her blod come,
 Holdeþ alle þulke speche, þat hii of hem nome.
 Vor bote a man couþe French, me tolþ of hým wel lute.
 Ac lowe men holdeþ to Englyss, & to her kunde speche gute.
 Ich wene þer ne be man in world contreyes none,
 þat ne holdeþ to her kunde speche, bote Engeland one.
 Ac wel me wot vorto come bothe wel yt ýs,
 Vor þe more þat a man con, þe more worþ he ýs.

RO.

154 - 224.



Robert

Robert of Glocester's Chronicle To which is added, besides a Glossary and other improvements, a continuation (by the author himself) of this Chronicle from a ms. in the Cottonian Library
Bd.: Vol. 1

London (1810)

P.o.angl. 153 m-1

urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10746720-9